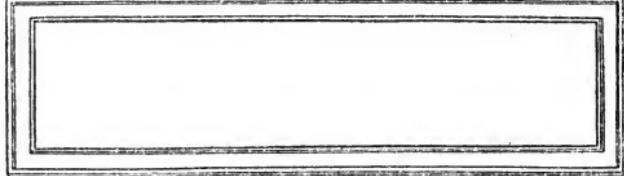
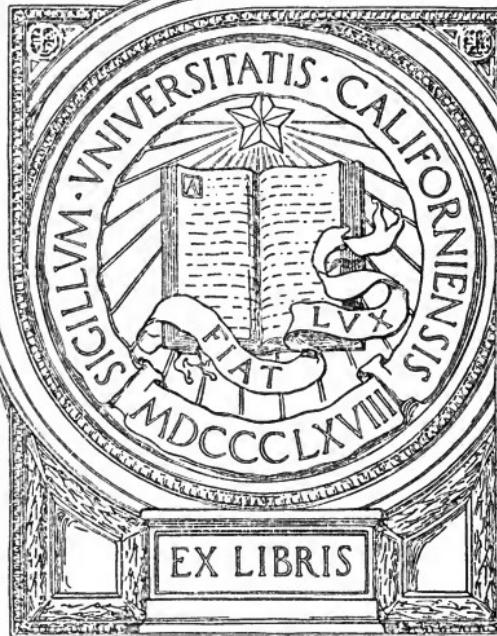
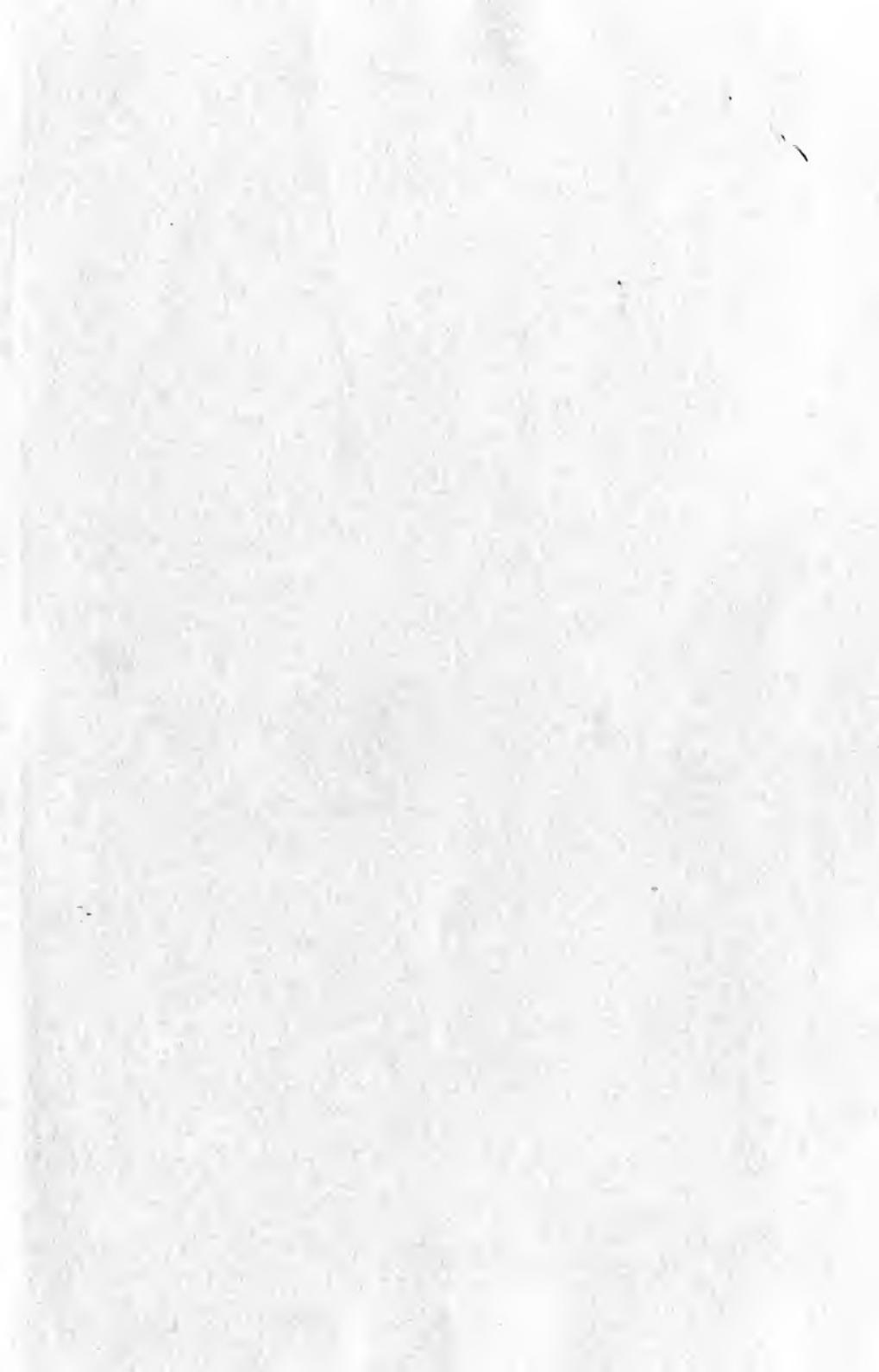




GIFT OF  
*Professor Chambers*







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



*rown*  
A

# PRACTICAL COURSE

WITH THE

# SPANISH LANGUAGE.

ON WOODBURY'S PLAN WITH GERMAN.

BY

H. M. MONSANTO, A. M.,

LATE ASSISTANT PROFESSOR IN THE UNITED STATES NAVAL ACADEMY  
AT ANNAPOLIS,

AND

LOUIS A. LANGUELLIER, LL.D.,

LATE TUTOR IN THE COLLEGE OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK.

"Pocos preceptos y mucha práctica."



IVISON, BLAKEMAN, TAYLOR, & CO.  
NEW YORK AND CHICAGO.

PRESERVATION  
COPY ADDED

MIF 7/3/90

786  
M754

COPYRIGHT, 1875.

BY H. M. MONSANTO AND LOUIS A. LANGUELLIER.

## P R E F A C E.

---

IN preparing the present work it has been the aim of the authors, while excluding nothing of practical value which has already been placed before the public, to combine with the best features of the most approved methods the results of their own experience. While endeavoring to render this work a valuable assistant in the class-room, they have sought at the same time to adapt it to the purposes of private instruction, and in so doing have availed themselves to a great extent of the admirable plan presented in Woodbury's Practical Course with the German Language. Accordingly the lessons are arranged in the following order :—

1. THE SUBJECTS OF THE LESSON.
2. EXAMPLES, accompanied by their nearest English equivalents, and made to illustrate the grammatical and idiomatic principles which are involved in the Lessons.
3. VOCABULARIES placed before the Exercises, the masculine and feminine names being grouped separately, and other parts of speech arranged alphabetically for convenience of reference.
4. SPANISH EXERCISES. The sentences in Spanish require only the application of the instructions contained in the Lesson, or in the preceding ones, for their translation into English.
5. ENGLISH EXERCISES. The analogous sentences in English are presented in immediate connection with the preceding ones in Spanish. The principles applied in the Spanish Exercises are thus made a most convenient and effective auxiliary

in the still more advanced and difficult work of translating English into Spanish.

6. GRAMMATICAL AND IDIOMATIC PRINCIPLES. This division may be employed by means of the references either in connection with the preceding instructions, or, when not thus required, may be applied both as a test of the pupil's previous deductions, and at the same time as an appropriate and impressive review.

The rules on pronunciation will, it is hoped, be found as complete as possible, and the selection of sentences in the Exercises an improvement on those of many former methods. The conjugation of all the irregular verbs in general use will be found at the end of the book, together with a brief sketch on the formation of the Spanish language, and also a complete dictionary of all the words used in the different Exercises.

It will be seen that the book does not contain a Second Part devoted to a systematic rearrangement of the grammatical facts contained in the several lessons. Such a Second Part is, we believe, seldom used by students, and we have been careful, as far as possible, in the construction of our lessons to insert together all the facts pertaining to each part of the subject. So the course of our book corresponds very nearly to that which would be adopted in a systematic grammar.

While respectfully presenting this work to the public, the authors indulge the hope that it may prove a welcome auxiliary to the acquisition of the Spanish language.

H. M. MONSANTO.  
LOUIS A. LANGUELLIER.

NEW YORK, July, 1875.

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGES
PREFACE . . . . .	iii
INDEX . . . . .	vii
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	13
§ 1. Letters and Sounds. — Alphabet. . . . .	13
§ 2. Pronunciation . . . . .	14
1. Vowels . . . . .	14
2. Diphthongs . . . . .	14
3. Triphthongs . . . . .	15
§ 3. Consonants . . . . .	15
§ 4. Double Letters . . . . .	19
§ 5. Syllables . . . . .	19
§ 6. Accent . . . . .	20
§ 7. Punctuation . . . . .	22
§ 8. Exercises in Pronunciation . . . . .	22
LESSONS :	
I. Article, different Forms . . . . .	25
II. Plural . . . . .	28
III. Contraction of Preposition with Article . . . . .	32
IV. Pronouns . . . . .	35
V. Verbs <i>ser</i> and <i>estar</i> . . . . .	40
VI. Use of the Prepositions <i>de</i> and <i>para</i> . . . . .	46
VII. The Negative . . . . .	49
VIII. Adjectives, Formation of the Feminine . . . . .	54
IX. Place of Adjectives . . . . .	59
X. Diminutive and Augmentative Nouns . . . . .	64
XI. Adjectives, Comparative and Superlative Relative . . . . .	70
XII. Superlative Absolute. Adjectives and Adverbs . . . . .	76
XIII. Possessive Adjectives . . . . .	81
XIV. Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	86
XV. Demonstrative Adjectives . . . . .	91
XVI. Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	94
XVII. Auxiliary Verb <i>haber</i> . . . . .	99
XVIII. Auxiliary Verb <i>haber</i> ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	103
XIX. Present Participle, or Gerund . . . . .	107
XX. Cardinal Numbers . . . . .	112
XXI. Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	117
XXII. Pronouns in Simple Tenses . . . . .	122

XXIII. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	129
XXIV. Auxiliary Verbs, <b>haber</b> , <b>tener</b> . . . . .	136
XXV. Idiomatic Uses of <b>tener</b> . . . . .	143
XXVI. Auxiliary Verbs, <b>ser</b> , <b>estar</b> . . . . .	149
XXVII. <b>Haber</b> and <b>ser</b> used as Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	156
XXVIII. The Time of the Day, etc. . . . .	161
XXIX. Use of the Article . . . . .	165
XXX. Personal Pronouns with Prepositions and Verbs . . . . .	171
XXXI. The Respective Place of Pronouns . . . . .	176
XXXII. Regular Verbs, Present Indicative . . . . .	180
XXXIII. Irregular Verbs of the First Conjug., Present Indicative	183
XXXIV. Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjug., Present Indicative	188
XXXV. Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjug., Present Indicative	193
XXXVI. Imperfect Tense, Indicative Mood . . . . .	199
XXXVII. The Past Definite or Preterite, and the Past Indefinite	203
XXXVIII. Irregularities of the Preterite . . . . .	209
XXXIX. The Past Anterior and the Pluperfect (Indicative) . . . . .	215
XL. The Future and Future Anterior . . . . .	218
XLI. Imperative Mood . . . . .	223
XLII. Subjunctive Mood, Present . . . . .	228
XLIII. Imperfect and Pluperfect (Subjunctive) . . . . .	236
XLIV. Conditional and Potential (Subjunctive) . . . . .	243
XLV. Subjunctive Future and Future Perfect . . . . .	251
XLVI. Infinitive Mood . . . . .	253
XLVII. The Infinitive governed by Prepositions . . . . .	261
XLVIII. The Gerund or Present Participle . . . . .	264
XLIX. The Past Participle . . . . .	269
L. The Past Participle ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	274
LI. The Passive Verb . . . . .	278
LII. Reflective Verbs . . . . .	282
LIII. Reflective Verbs ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	288
LIV. Periphrastic Verbs . . . . .	292
LV. Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	298
LVI. Government of Verbs . . . . .	301
LVII. Government of Adjectives . . . . .	304
LVIII. The Adverbs . . . . .	308
LIX. The Preposition . . . . .	313
LX. Defective Verbs . . . . .	319
LXI. Agreement of the Verb with its Subject . . . . .	321
LXII. Conjunctions and Interjections . . . . .	324
TABLE OF TERMINATIONS OF THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS, . . . . .	327, 328
LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL IRREGULAR VERBS . . . . .	328 - 369
FORMATION OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE . . . . .	370 - 372
GENERAL VOCABULARY . . . . .	373 - 398
1. Spanish-English . . . . .	373
2. English-Spanish . . . . .	386

# INDEX.

The heavy-face figures refer to the LESSONS, the light-face figures to the RULES; as, for instance, **3.** 1–3 denotes Lesson 3, Rules 1–3, &c. When page or section is referred to, p. or § is given with the figures.

## A.

**A** or **An**, **1.** 3.

**Á**, **3.** 1. When used with active verbs, **18.** 3. When not used with an active verb, **18.** 4; **20.** 6; **23.** 2. When used with **el cual** (*la cual*, etc.), **23.** 6. When used before a following Infinitive, **48.** p. 254, 3. Used after **volver**, **48.** 9 *in fine*. Used with some Periphrastic verbs, **54.** 1–6. Complement of another Preposition, **59.** p. 314. Its use, **59.** 1.

**Ablative absolute**, **49.** 5.

**Accent**, p. 20, § 6.

**Accusative case**, **22.** 6; **23.** 2–6; **30.** 1; **31.** 1, 2, 4.

**Active verb**, **51.** 1, 2. Becoming a Reflective Verb, **52.** 1. When becoming an Impersonal Verb, **55.** 2.

**Adjectives**, repeated before nouns, **1.**

4. Plural formed as with nouns, **2.** 8. Formation of the Feminine, **8.** 1–5. Referring to two nouns in the singular, **8.** 6. Referring to two nouns of different genders, **8.** 7. Place of Adjectives, **9.** 1–4. Used also as nouns, **9.** 5. Comparative and Superlative Relative, **11.** Government of Adjectives, **57.** 1–7. Used as adverbs, **58.** 9.

**Á donde.** See **donde**.

**Adverbs**, Comparative and Superlative, **11.** 12; **13.** 9, Rem. 3. Different sorts of Adverbs, **58.** pp. 308, 309. Their place, **58.** 1. Their formation, **58.** 2. Used diminutively or augmentatively, **58.** 8.

**Ago**, its translation, **27.** p. 157.

**Agreement of the verb with its subject**, **61.**

**Al**, **3.** 1.

**Á la**, **3.** 1.

**Á las**, **3.** 1.

**Algo**, when used with **tener**, **25.** 3.

**Algún**. See **alguno**.

**Alguno** (**algunos**, **alguna**, **algunas**), **4.** 8; **7.** 11, and Obs.; **9.** 6, Rem. 1.

**Allí está** and **hay**, p. 158.

**Á los**, **3.** 1.

**Alphabet**, p. 13, § 1.

**An** or **A**, **1.** 3.

**Andar**, when it may be used instead of **ir**, **48.** 4.

**Ante**, its use, **59.** 2.

**Años**, used with **tenor**, **25.** 4.

**Any**, **4.** 8.

**Aquel**, aquella; **este**, esta; **ese**, esa. Their different meaning, **15.** 1; **16.** 2.

**Aquello**, **eso** and **esto**, their difference of meaning, **16.** 1, 3–5.

**Article**, Definite, **1.** Indefinite,

**I.** 3. **13.** 9, Rem. 2. Not separated from the Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun, **16.** 8. When omitted, **23.** 7. Its use, **29.** 1-10 and 1-8. When used with an Infinitive, **46.** 13, 14.

**Augmentative nouns and adjectives,** **9.** 1-4. Sometimes accented differently, R. 4, General Obs.

**B.**

**Buen.** See **Bueno.**

**Bueno,** **9.** 6, Rem. 1.

**C**

**Can,** **44.** 11, 1.

**Cardinal numbers,** **20.** When ending in **os** and **as**, **20.** 2. When used with **y**, **20.** 3. When used instead of the ordinal numbers, **21.** 4, Obs.; R. 5, 6.

**Ch,** p. 16, § 3.

**Cien.** See **Ciento.**

**Ciento**, when becoming **cien**, **20.** 4.

Used with **mil**, **20.** 8.

**Collective noun**, when put in the singular *or* in the plural, **61.** 8.

**Collective numbers,** **21.**

**Collective partitive,** **61.** 8.

**Como**, when governing the Infinitive mood, **47.** 2.

**Compound tenses**, in Reflective Verbs, **52.** 5.

**Comparative**, its formation, **11.** 1-9.

**Comparative and Superlative,** **11.** 12.

**Compound gerund,** **48.** 6, 8.

**Compound nouns,** **1.** 5; General Obs. 5-6.

**Con**, when used before a following Infinitive, **46.** p. 255, R. 8; **48.** 5, 2, Note. Complement of an Adjective, **57.** 4. Its use, **59.** 3.

**Conditional,** **44.**

**Conjunctions**, requiring the Subjunc-

tive mood, **44.** 2-4, 7, 10. List of the Principal Conjunctions, **62.**

**Conjunctive expressions**, requiring the Subjunctive mood, **42.** 10. List of Conjunctive expressions, **62.**

**Conmigo,** **30.** 10.

**Conocer** and **Saber,** **14.** 9.

**Consigo,** **30.** 10.

**Contigo,** **30.** 10.

**Consonants**, p. 15, § 3.

**Contents**, pp. v, vi.

**Could,** **44.** 11, 2.

**Cual**, when used with **tal**, **23.** 7 c.

**Cual and que,** **23.** 9.

**Cuál**, Interrogative Pronoun, **23.** 11.

**Cuando**, used with Subjunctive future, **45.** 1.

**Cuanto** (*cuanta, cuantos, cuantas*), how translated, **23.** 13.

**Cuyo**, its uses, **23.** 8. As an Interrogative Pronoun, **23.** 11.

**D.**

**D**, when suppressed in Reflective Verbs, **52.** 7.

**Dative case,** **30.** 1; **31.** 1, 2, 4.

**Days of the week,** **20.**

**De**, **3.** 1, 2; **6.** 1-3. Used with the Definite Article before **nosotros**, **14.** 6. Used with **ser**, **14.** 8. Used before a following Infinitive, **46.** p. 254, R. 2 note, 5 and note, 9 and note, **10.** 3, 11. Used after a Past Participle, **49.** 7. Used with some Periphrastic Verbs, **54.** 1, 5, 6. Preceded by a verb, **56.** 1, 2. Complement of an Adjective, **57.** 1-4, 7. Complement of another Preposition, **59.** p. 314. Its use, **59.** 4. Used after a partitive noun, **61.** 8.

**Dé and de**, p. 20, § 6, 1.

**Deber,** **18.** 2.

**Defective verbs,** **60.**

**Definite article**, **1.** 1; **13.** 5, 7. Used

with **de** before **nosotros**, 14. 6.  
 Used with verbs expressing moral or physical properties, 25. 6 and Obs. When used to translate **on**, 28. 3. Its use, 29. 1 - 10 and 1 - 8. When omitted, 29. 8. Exceptions, 1 - 5.  
**Del**, 3. 1.  
**De la**, 3. 1.  
**De las**, 3. 1.  
**De los**, 3. 1.  
**Demonstrative adjectives**, 15. 1 - 4. Generally precede the noun, 15. 2. Must be repeated before every noun, 15. 3.  
**Demonstrative pronouns**, 16. 1 - 10.  
**Descriptive Tense**, 36. 3.  
**Diminutive nouns and adjectives**, 10. 1 - 4. Sometimes accented differently, R. 4, General Obs.  
**Diphthongs**, p. 14, § 2. 2.  
**Direct object**, 52. 1, 2, 4.  
**Direct pronouns**, 30. 1 - 12.  
**Divisions of the day**, 20. p. 113; 28. p. 162.  
**Doble**. See p. 118 (Multiplicative Numbers) and 21. 8.  
**Don**, 9. 6.  
**Doña**, 9. 6.  
**Donde**, when preceded by **á** (**á donde**), and by **en** (**en donde**), 15. 4. Used as a Relative Pronoun, 23. 10. When governing the Infinitive, 47. 2.  
**Double letters**, p. 19, § 4. See also **ch** and **ll**.

**E.**

**É** and **y**, 18.  
**El**, 1. 1. Used (by euphony) instead of **la**, 2; 13. 4.  
**El de él** (*or de ella, de ellos, de ellas*). Used instead of **el suyo, la suya**, etc.  
**Él**, 4. 6; 13. 5.  
**Él** and **el**, p. 20, § 6. 1; 4. 6.  
**El** (*or la, los, las, lo*) **de V**, 14. 4.  
**El cual** (*la cual*, etc.) When used and how, 23. 6.

**Ella**, 4. 6; 13. 5.  
**Ellas**, 4. 6; 13. 5.  
**Ello**, used instead of **eso**, 16. 9. Corresponding to **it**, 16. 9.  
**Ellos**, 4. 6; 13. 5.  
**El suyo, la suya**, used instead of **vuestro, vuestra**, 14. 3.  
**En**, used with a Present Participle, 19. 8 and Obs. When used before a following Infinitive, 46. p. 254, R. 7. Its use as a Preposition, 59. 5.  
**En donde**. See **Donde**.  
**English-Spanish Vocabulary**, p. 386.  
**Ese, esa ; este, esta ; aquél, aquélla**; their different meaning, 15. 5.  
**Eso, esto** and **aquello**, their difference of meaning, 16. 1, 3 - 5.  
**Estar**, used with a Past Participle, 18. 1. Used with a Present Participle, 19. 3. Not used with **ser**, **ir**, **venir**, 19. 4. Its Present Participle often preceding another Present Participle, 19. 9. Used instead of **tener**, 25. 1, Obs. **a, b, c**. Its conjugation, 26.  
**Estar** and **ser**, 5. 1 - 3. Used instead of **tener**, 25. 1, Obs. **a, b, c**. Their conjugations, 26.  
**Este, esta ; ese, esa ; aquél, aquélla**; their different meaning, 15. 1; 16. 2.  
**Esto, eso**, and **aquello**, their difference of meaning, 16. 1, 3 - 5.  
**Exclamation-point** (!), p. 22, § 7, 2.  
**Exclamatory phrases**, 62.

**F.**

**Feminine gender**, 1. 1.  
**Formation of the Spanish language**, pp. 370 - 372.  
**Fractional numbers**, 21.  
**Future anterior**, 40. 6.  
**Future perfect**, 45. 1.  
**Future tense**, 30. 5, Obs. Its formation, 40. 1 - 4. When used instead

of the Imperative, 40. 5. Subjunctive future, 45. 1.  
**Futuro perfecto**, 42. 5, a.

**G.**

**Genders**, 1. 1 and General Obs.  
**General Vocabulary**, Spanish-English, p. 373. English-Spanish, 386.  
**Genitive case**, 30. 12.  
**Genitivo partitivo**, 46. 5 and Note.  
**Gerund**. See **Present Participle**.  
**Government**, of Verbs, 56. Of Adjectives, 57. Of Adverbs, 58. 6. Of Prepositions, 59. 1-7.  
**Gran**. See **Grande**.  
**Grande**, 9. 6, Rem. 3 and note.

**H.**

**Haber**, 17. 1, 2. Cannot be separated from the principal verb, R. 1. Its conjugation, 24. Used as Impersonal Verb, 27. 1, and translated by *ago, there to be, since, this, there, etc.*, 27. 2. Expressing an *action or a state which still continues*, p. 157. Expressing *measure or distance*, p. 157. Used with **que** before an Infinitive, 27. 3. Used impersonally, 55. p. 298.

**Haber and tener**, 17. 1. Their conjugations, 24.

**Haber de**, 18. 2.

**Hacer**, when used instead of **haber**, 27. 2, Obs. When followed by an Infinitive, 46. 12. Used impersonally, 55. p. 298.

**Hay and allí está**, p. 158.

**Hijos míos!** 13. 9.

**Holidays**, 28. p. 162.

How exclamatory, rendered by **que**, 23. 12.

**I.**

**Imperative mood**, 41. 1-7. Used with pronouns, 41. p. 224, 3, 6. Of Reflective Verbs, 52. 7.

**Imperative-affirmative**, 31. p. 177; 41. 1-7. -Negative, 31. p. 177; 41. 5, c, 6.

**Imperfect**, of the Indicative, its formation, 36. p. 199; its use, 36. 1-3. General Obs. on the Imperfect of the Indicative, 37. 7. Of the Subjunctive, its three forms, 43. 1; its use, 43. 2, 4, 5.

**Imperfect conditionals**, 44. 2.

**Impersonal verbs**, 55. 1-4. Essentially or Accidentally Impersonal Verbs, 55. 2. Peculiarities of some Impersonal Verbs, 55. 4.

**Indefinite article**, 1. 3. When omitted, 5. 4 and Obs.; 29. 8. Exceptions, 1-5.

**Indicative mood**, Present, 32. 35. Imperfect, 36. Preterite or Past Definite, 37. Past Anterior, 39. Pluperfect, 39. Future and Future Anterior, 40.

**Indirect object**, 52. 1, 2, 4.

**Indirect pronouns**, 30. 1, 2, 9-12.

**Infinitive mood**, 46, 47. When used as a noun, 46. 13; with or without the Article, 14. Governed by Prepositions, 47. 1; by the conjunctions **como**, **que**, the adverb **donde**, or an Interrogative Pronoun, 2; rendered by the Present Indicative or the Subjunctive Mood, 3. When may be used instead of the Gerund, 48. 3, 5, Note. When used with **con**, 48. 5, 2, Note.

**Infinitive**, preceded by **que** and **haber**, 27. 3.

**In order to**, 46. 6.

**Interjections**, 62.

**Interjectional phrases**, 62.

**Interrogation-point** (¿), p. 22, § 7, 1.

**Interrogative pronouns**, 23. When governing the Infinitive, 47. 2.

**Interrogative sentence**, 4. 7.

**Ir**, not used with **estar**, 19. 4. Used

with an adverb, **35. 7.** Used with **por**, **35. 7.** Obs. Imperfect Indicative, **36.** pp. 199, 200. When it may be used instead of **andar**, **48. 4.** When it may be used instead of **estar**, **51. 7.**

**Irregular verbs**, first conjugation, **33. 1-4**; second conjugation, **34. 1-10**; third conjugation, **35. 1-9.**

**Irregular verbs**, list of the principal Irregular Verbs, pp. 328-369.

**Irse**, **53.** p. 288.

**It**, sometimes not rendered in Spanish, **16. 10.** Different ways of translating it, **22. 6.**

**Its**, **13. 6.**

### J.

**Jamas**, used with **no**, **7. 3.** **Jamas** and **nunca**, **3-5.**

### L.

**La**, **1. 1-2; 13. 4.** As a Pronoun in Simple Tenses, **22. 1-2.** In compound tenses, **22. 3.** Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22. 4** and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. When translated by **it**, **22. 6.** Used with **una** to translate *one o'clock*, **28. 1.**

**Las**, **2. 1; 13. 4.** As a Pronoun in Simple Tenses, **22. 1, 2.** In Compound Tenses, **22. 3.** Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22. 4** and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. When translated by **them**. Used with a numeral to indicate the *time of the day*, **28. 1.**

**Le**, used in Simple Tenses, **22. 1, 2.** In Compound Tenses, **22. 3.** Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22. 4** and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. When translated by **it**, **22. 6.** Used with a pronoun and **V.** or **V. V.**, **30. 7.**

**Les**, grammatical translation of *to them*, **22. 6.**

**Ll**, p. 17, § 3.

**Lo**, **1. 1, 2** and Rem. **1, 2.** Used with Possessive Pronoun, **14. 7.** As a Pronoun in Simple Tenses, **22. 1, 2.** In Compound Tenses, **22. 3.** Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22. 4** and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. Declinable and undeclinable, p. 125; **22. 5.** When translated by **it**, **22. 6.**

**Los**, **2. 1; 13. 4.** As a Pronoun in Simple Tenses, **22. 1, 2.** In Compound Tenses, **22. 3.** Joined with the Infinitive and Gerund, **22. 4** and p. 124. Placed after the verb, p. 124. When translated by **them**, **22. 6.**

### M.

**Mal.** See **Malo.**

**Malo**, **9. 6**, Rem. 1.

**Mandar**, when followed by an Infinitive, **46. 12.**

**Mas de**, **20. 7.**

**Masculine gender**, **1. 1.**

**May**, **44. 11, 1.**

**Medio** (*media*), used to indicate *the time of the day*, **28. 1.**

**Medio and mitad**, **21. 7.**

**Ménos**, used to indicate *the time of the day*, **28. 2.**

**Ménos de**, **20. 7.**

**Mi and mi**, p. 20, § 6, 1.

**Might**, **11, 2, 3.**

**Might have**, **44. 11, 7.**

**Mil**, when used in the plural, **20. 5.** Used with **ciento**, **20. 8.**

**Mio**, **13. 9.**

**Mismo, misma**, used with a Possessive Pronoun, **14. 2.** Used with a Demonstrative Pronoun, **16. 5.**

**Mitad and medio**, **21. 7.**

**Months of the year,** 21.

**Moods,** Indicative, 32-40. Imperative, 41. Subjunctive, 42-45. Infinitive, 46-50.

**Multiplicative numbers,** 21.

### N.

**Nada** used with **ni**, 7. 6. Meaning *not anything*, 7. 11, Obs. When used with **tener**, 25. 3.

**Nadie** used with **ni**, 7. 6. Meaning *not anybody*, 7. 11, Obs.

**Narrative tense,** 37. 7.

**Negative,** 7. **Double negative,** 7. 2.

Two negatives after the verb, 7. 7.

**Neuter article,** 1. 1 and Rem. 1, 2.

**Neuter gender,** 1. 1 and Rem. 1, 2.

**Neuter verb**, when becoming a Reflective Verb, 52. 1. When becoming Impersonal Verb, 55. 2, 3.

**Ni** used with **jamas**, **nunca**, **nada**, **nadie**, etc., 7. 6. Requiring the plural, 61. 2.

**Ningun.** See **ninguno**.

**Ninguno** (**ningunos**, **ninguna**, **ningunas**), 7. 9 and Obs.; 9. 6, Rem. 1.

**No**, put before the verb, 7. 1. When omitted, R. 2, Obs., R. 3. Used by emphasis with an affirmative sentence, 7. 8 and Note. Put at the end of a sentence, R. 10.

**Nos**, when becoming **no**, 30. 8.

**Not anybody**, 7. 11, Obs.

**Not anything**, 7. 11, Obs.

**Nouns** ending in **o**, **a**, **cion or tion**, **tad or dad**. See 1. 5, General Obs.

Having no plural, 2. 9. Having no singular, 2. 9.

**Nos** and **nosotros**, 4. 2.

**Nosotros** and **nos**, 4. 2.

**Numbers.** See **Cardinal**, **Ordinal**, **Collective**, **Fractional**, and **Multiplicative numbers**.

**Nunca** used with **no**, 7. 3. **Nunca** and **jamas**, R. 3, Obs.

### N.

**N**, p. 17, § 3.

### O.

**Ó**, when requiring the Plural, 61. 2.

**Ó and ú**, 18. p. 104.

**Object** before the subject, 4. 5. Preceded by a cardinal number, 20. 6.

**O'clock**, its translation, 28. 1.

**On**, when translated in Spanish by the Definite Article, 28. 3.

**One**, 1. 3.

**Ordinal numbers**, 21. Agree in gender and number with the noun, 21. 1. When used without the Article, 21. 4. When used instead of a Cardinal Number, 21. 5.

**Otro**, 16. 4.

### P.

**Para**, 6. 3. When used before a following Infinitive, 46. p. 254, 6. Its use, 59. 6.

**Para siempre** used with **jamas**, 7. 5.

**Participio absoluto**, 30. 3.

**Participio de Preterito**, 48. 6.

**Participio pasivo**, 49. 3.

**Participios activos**, 48. 1.

**Participios de presente**, 48. 1.

**Participle.** See **Present Participle** and **Past Participle**.

**Passive verb**, 51. 1-7.

**Past Anterior**, its formation, 39. 1. Its use, R. 2 and Obs. 1, 2.

**Past Definite.** See **Preterite**.

**Past Indefinite**, 37. 1, 5-7.

**Past Participle**, ends in Regular Conjugation, viz. in **ado** for the first conjugation, and in **ido** for the second and third conjugations, 17. 5; 49. 1. Irregular Past Participles, 18. Agrees with its subject, when accompanied by **estar**, 18. 1. Always formed regularly in the Irregular Verbs of first conjugation, 33. 3.

- Irregular Participle, **49.** p. 269.  
 Having sometimes an active meaning, **49.** p. 269. Considered as an Adjective, **49.** 2, 4. Invariable when joined with **haber**, **49.** 3. Used as an abbreviation of the Gerund, **49.** 5, 6, and Note. Preceded by a preposition, **49.** 6, and Note. Requiring after them **de** or **por**, **49.** 7. Having an active and a passive meaning, **49.** 8. Used as feminine nouns, **49.** 9. Verbs having two past participles, one regular and one irregular. Their different uses, **50.** p. 274 and R. 1. When invariable, **51.** 5, 6. Used as adjective governs **de** or **por**, **57.** 6.
- Perfect of the subjunctive**, **42.** 12.
- Periphrastic verbs**, **54.**
- Pero** and **sino**, **18.** 5.
- Personal pronouns**, used with prepositions, **30.** 1-3, 9-11. Used with verbs, **30.** 1-12. Used with Reflective Verbs, **52.** 1, 2.
- Plural of nouns**, **2.** 2-9. Of adjectives, 8. Used with verbs, **61.** 1-3, 6.
- Pluperfect**, of the Indicative, **39.** 3, and Obs. Of the Subjunctive, **43.** 2, Obs., 6; **44.** 9.
- Ponerse**, **53.** 2.
- Por**, used with **ir**, **35.** 7, Obs. Used with **comenzar**, **empezar**, and **acabar**, **46.** 4. Meaning *on account of* or *because*; meaning *instead of*, **47.** 1. Used after a Past Participle, **48.** 7. Used after an adjective, **57.** 4. Its use, **59.** 7.
- Por siempre** used with **jamas**, **7.** 5.
- Possessive adjectives**, their agreement, **13.** 1. Repeated before every noun, 2. Not used after a noun, **13.** 9.
- Possessive pronouns**, **14.** Their agreement, **14.** 1. Used emphatically with **mismo**, **misma**, **propio**, **propria**, **14.** 2. Used with **lo**, **14.** 7.
- Postrero**. See **Postrero**.
- Postrero**, **9.** 6, Rem. 1; **21.** 2.
- Potential**, **46.** 11.
- Preface**, pp. iii, iv.
- Prepositions**, **30.** 1-3, 7, 9, 10. Must be repeated before every pronoun, **30.** 11. Preceding a Past Participle, **49.** 6, and Note. Following a verb, **56.** 1, 2. Following an adjective, **57.** 1-7. Preceded by an adverb, **58.** 6. Requiring **de** after them, **59.** p. 314. Requiring **á** after them, **59.** p. 314.
- Prepositional phrases**, requiring **de** after them, **59.** p. 314.
- Present indicative**, **31.** 1-5. Used instead of the Future, **32.** 2. Used instead of the Past Tense, **32.** 2. Its formation in Regular Verbs, **32.** 4, 5; in Irregular Verbs of First Conjugation, **33.** 1, 2, 4; in Irregular Verbs of Second Conjugation, **34.** 1-10; in Irregular Verbs of Third Conjugation, **35.** 1-9. When used concurrently with the Present Subjunctive, **42.** 6, 9. May govern the Conditional, **44.** 8. When used instead of the Present Indicative, **47.** 3.
- Present Participle**, or **Gerund**, ends (in Regular Verbs) in **ando** for the first conjugation, and in **iendo** for the second and third conjugation, **19.** 1. Present Participle of verbs ending in **eer** and **uir**, **19.** 2. Used with **estar**, **19.** 3. Its use, **19.** 5-7. Used with **en**, **19.** 8, and Obs. Used with the Present Participle of **estar**, **19.** 9. Used instead of an adverb, conjunction, or preposition, **19.** 10. Always formed regularly in the Irregular Verbs of First Conjugation, **33.** 3. When used after another verb, **46.** 4 and Note, 8 and Note. Has two forms, the one in **ante** or **ente** and the second in **ando** or **iendo**, **48.** 1. When used concur-

rently with the Infinitive, **48.** 3. When translated in English by the conjunctions **as**, **since**, **if**, and the adverbs **when**, **while**, **whilst**, **48.** 7, and by **como**, **luego que**, **cuando**, **asi que**, **7**, Note. Its use, **48.** 1-8. When ending in **endo**, **48.** 9. Considered as an adjective, **49.** 2.

**Present subjunctive**, its formation, **42.** p. 229. Its use, **42.** 1-11. When used concurrently with the Present Indicative, **42.** 6, 9, or with the Imperfect Subjunctive, **43.** 3, 4.

**Preterite or past definite**, its formation, **37.** p. 203. Its use, **37.** 1-4, 7. Its irregularities, **38.** 1-5. Used with the Past Anterior, **39.** 2, Obs. 1. When requiring the subjunctive mood, **44.** 9.

**Preterito perfecto**, **42.** 5, a.

**Primer**. See **Primero**.

**Primero**, when becoming **primer**, **21.** 2. When used instead of **uno**, **21.** 6.

**Primo**, when used instead of **primero**, **21.** 3.

**Pronombres inclíticos**, **30.** 1, 2, 4-6, 9; **31.** 2.

**Pronombres indirectos**, **30.** 1, 2.

**Pronouns** left out in conjugating a verb, **4.** 6. Their respective places, **31.** 1-3. Accompanying Reflective Verbs, **52.** p. 282.

**Pronunciation**, p. 14, § 2. Exercises, p. 22, § 8.

**Propio**, **propia**, used with a Possessive Pronoun, **14.** 2.

**Punctuation**, p. 22, § 7.

### Q.

**Que** as a Relative Pronoun when used as a subject, **23.** 1. When used as an Accusative, **22.** 2. When accompanied by **el** (or **la**, **los**, **las**, **lo**), **23.** 3. Is never suppressed, **23.** 4. May precede the person or object, **23.** 4,

Obs. When preferable to **quien**, **23.** 5, Obs. Used as an exclamation, **23.** 12. Used with **haber** and an Infinitive, **27.** 3. Can never be understood, and must be repeated before every subordinate verb, **42.** 4 and Obs. When used with the Present Indicative, **46.** 1. When governing the Infinitive, **47.** 2.

**Que and cual**, **23.** 9.

**Qué**, Interrogative Pronoun, **23.** 11.

**Quedar**, when may be used instead of **ser**, **51.** 7.

**Qué de**, when used, **23.** 13.

**Quien**, used instead of **que**, **16.** 7. Relating only to persons, **23.** 5.

**Quién**, Interrogative Pronoun, **23.** 11.

**Quienes**. See **Quien**.

**Quitarse**, **53.** 2.

### R.

**Reciprocal or mutual action**, **52.** 6.

**Reflective verbs**, **52.** 1-9. Being conjugated with two Personal Pronouns, **52.** 1. Essentially Reflective Verbs and Accidentally Reflective Verbs, **52.** 2, 8. Their different meaning, **52.** 8, 9. Verbs being Reflective in Spanish and not in English, **52.** 3. Being conjugated with another verb, **52.** p. 283 and R. 4. Expressing a reciprocal or mutual action, **52.** 6. Referring to parts of the body, **53.** p. 288, and R. 1. Requiring **de** after them, **56.** 2.

**Regular verbs**, table of their termination, p. 328, 329. See **Verbs**.

**Relative pronouns**, **23.** When requiring the Subjunctive Mood, **42.** 9.

### S.

**S**, when suppressed in Reflective Verbs, **52.** 7.

**Saber and conocer**, **14.** 9.

**San.** See **Santo.**

**Santo,** 9. 6, Rem. 2 and Obs.

**Se,** 31. 3, 4. Used with a passive sentence, 51. 3.

**Sé** and **se**, p. 20, § 6, 1.

**Seasons,** 21.

**Señor,** 9. 6.

**Señora,** 9. 6.

**Ser**, used to express possession, 14. 8.

Used without adjective, is accompanied by **de**, 14. 8. Not used with **estar**, 19. 4. Used instead of **tener**, 25. 1, Obs. *a, b, c.* Its conjugation, 26. Used as Impersonal Verb, 27. 1. Imperfect Indicative, 36. pp. 199, 200. Used with Passive Verbs, 51. 1.

**Ser** and **estar**, 5. 1-3. Used instead of **tener**, 25. 1, Obs. *a, b, c.* Their conjugations, 26.

**Ser de mas edad**, 25. 4, Obs.

**Should**, 44. 11, 2, 4.

**Should have**, 44. 7.

**Should like to**, 44. 11, 5.

**Si**, when used in the subjunctive (or conditional), 44. 2-4; 45. 1.

**Singular**, when the subject is put in the singular, 61. 4-8.

**Sino** and **pero**, 18. 5.

**Solamente**, when used instead of **sino**, 18. 6.

**Some**, 4. 8. .

**Si** and **si**, p. 20, § 6, 1.

**Spanish-English Vocabulary**, p. 373.

**Su**, 13. 3, 6.

**Subject or nominative**, 52. 1. When subjects are not of the same person, 61. 4. Composed of two Infinitives, 61. 5.

**Subjunctive mood**, 42-45. Present, 42. Imperfect, 43. Pluperfect, 43.

Conditional, 44. Potential, 44. 11.

Future, 45. Future Perfect, 45.

When used instead of the Infinitive, 47. 3. Required after some prepositions, 57. 2.

**Superlative and comparative**, 11, 12.

**Superlative absolute**, its formation, 11. 1-9.

**Sus.** See **Su.**

**Suyo**, 13. 9.

**Syllables**, p. 19, § 5.

## T.

**Tal**, when used with **cual**, 23. 7, c.

**Tener**, 9. 5; 17. 1, 3. Its conjugation, 24. Its idiomatic uses, 25. 1, 2-5, 7, 8.

**Tener** and **haber**, 17. 1. Their conjugations, 24.

**Tener algo malo**, 25. 5.

**Tener mas edad**, 25. 4, Obs.

**Tener que**, 18. 2; 25, 8.

**Tercer**. See **Tercero**.

**Tercero**, 9. 6, Rem. 1; 21. 2, Obs.

**Tercio**, when used instead of **tercero**, 21. 3.

**That of**, 16. 6.

**That which**, 16. 7.

**Them**, how to translate it, 22. 6.

**The one which**, 16. 7.

**There to be**, how translated, 27. 2.

**They**, sometimes not rendered in Spanish, 16. 10.

**Those of**, 16. 6.

**Those which**, 16. 6.

**Time of the day**, how indicated, 28. 1-2.

**To**, meaning in **order to**, 46. 6.

**To be wrong**, 25. 2, Obs.

**Todos**, 27. p. 158.

**To them**, how to translate it, 22. 6.

**Transitive verb**, 51. 1, 2.

**Triphthongs**, p. 15, § 2, 3.

**Triple**. See p. 118 (Multiplicative Numbers) and 21. 8.

**Tú**, 4. 1.

**Tuyo**, 13. 9.

## U.

**Ú and o**, 18.

**Un.** See **Uno**.

**Uno, una,** 1. 3 ; **9.** 6, Rem. 1. Their plural, 20. 1. When dropping its **o,** 1. 3 ; 20. 4. **Una** used with **la** to indicate *one o'clock*, 28. 1.  
**Usted** (or **V.**), 4. 3 and Note, R. 6 ; 13. 3, 4. Used with **le**, 30. 7.  
**Ustedes** (**V. V.**), 4. 3 and Note, R. 6 ; 13. 3, 4. Used with **le**, 30. 7.

**V.**

**Vé** and **ve**, p. 20, § 6, 1.  
**Venir**, not used with **estar**, 19. 4.  
**Venir por**, 35. 5, Obs., R. 7, Obs.  
**Ver**, Imperfect Indicative, 36. pp. 199, 200.  
**Verbs**, conjugated interrogatively, 4. 4, 5. Conjugated without pronouns, 4. 6. First conjugation ending in **ar**, second conjugation in **er**, third in **ir**, 17. 4. Present Indicative, 32-35. Imperfect Indicative, 36. Past Definite or Preterite, 37. Past Indefinite, 37. Past Anterior, 39. Pluperfect Indicative, 39. Future and Future Anterior, 40. Imperative Mood, 41. Subjunctive Mood, 42-45. Infinitive Mood, 46, 47. Gerund or Present Participle, 48. Past Participle, 49, 50. Passive Verb, 51. Reflective Verbs, 52, 53. Periphrastic Verbs, 54. Impersonal Verbs, 55. Government of Verbs, 56. Requiring no preposition before the following Infinitive, 46. p. 253, R. 1, 10, 1. Requiring **á** before the following Infinitive, 46. p. 254, R. 3, 10, 2. Requiring **de** before the following Infinitive, 46. p. 254, R. 2, Note, 5 and Note, 9

and Note, 10, 3, 11. Requiring **para** before the following Infinitive, 46. p. 254, R. 6. Requiring **en** before the following Infinitive, 46. p. 254, R. 7, 10, 4. Requiring **con** before a following Infinitive, 46. p. 255, R. 8, 10, 5. When used before a Gerund, 46. 4 and Note. Having a different meaning according to the following preposition, 46. 9 and Note. Verbs having two Past Participles, one regular, the other Irregular. Their different use, 50. p. 274 and R. 1. Defective verbs, 60. Agreement of the verb with its subject, 61. 1-8. Table of Terminations of the three Regular Verbs, p. 326, 327. List of the principal Irregular Verbs, pp. 328-369.

**Vocabulary**, Spanish-English, p. 373. English-Spanish, p. 386.

**Volver á**, 48. 9, *in fine*.

**Vos**, 4. 3, and Note.

**Vosotros**, 4. 3 and Note ; 41. 6.

**Vowels**, p. 14, § 2, 1.

**Voz pasiva**, 51.

**Vuestro, vuestra**, 13. 3.

**W.**

**We**, 4. 2.

**Would**, 44. 11, 2, 6.

**Y.**

**Y** and **é**, 18. When used with Cardinal Numbers, 20. 3. Used to indicate the *time of the day*, 28. 2.

**Ya**, 58. 10.

**You**, 4. 3 and Note.



# PRACTICAL SPANISH COURSE.

## INTRODUCTION.

### § 1. Letters and Sounds.

#### The Alphabet.

#### El Alfabeto.

1. The usual Spanish alphabet contains twenty-seven letters. The letters have the following names :

Letters.	Names.	Letters.	Names.	Letters.	Names.
A, a.	Ah.	I, i.	Ee.	Q, q.	Coo.
B, b.	Bay.	J, j	(no equivalent).	R, r.	Er'ay.
C, c.	Thay.	L, l.	A'ilay.	S, s.	Es'say.
CH, ch.	Tchay.	LL, ll.	A'il'yay.	T, t.	Tay.
D, d.	Day.	M, m.	A'imay.	U, u.	U (in bull).
E, e.	Ay.	N, n.	A'i'nay.	V, v.	Vay.
F, f.	Aifay.	Ñ, ñ.	A'i'nyay.	X, x.	Ay'kiss.
G, g.	Hay.	O, o.	Oh.	Y, y.	Eegreeaygah.
H, h.	Ah'tchay.	P, p.	Pay.	Z, z.	Thai'tah.

REMARK. — The letter **k** does not belong to the Spanish alphabet, and is only found in a few foreign words, as *Kirte eleison*, *Konisberga*, etc. The same may be said of the letter **w**. Ex.: *Washington*, *Newton*, etc.

2. All these letters are of the feminine gender. Ex.: *una b*, *una jota*, etc.

3. They are divided, as in English, into Vowels and Consonants.

## § 2. The Pronunciation. La Pronunciacion.

The Spanish language does not present in its pronunciation the same difficulties as the English language. We may say, in fact, that Spanish is pronounced as it is written, and written as it is pronounced, all the letters, with very few exceptions, being sounded in the words. The following rules on the way of pronouncing the vowels and consonants, together with those referring to the accentuation of the words, and to diphthongs and triphthongs, will, we trust, enable the students of the Spanish language to acquire a correct pronunciation in a comparatively limited time.

### 1. Vowels. Vocales.

The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. They are sounded :

- a** like *a* in *far* : Malaga, papa, bata.
- e** like *ay* in *may* : elemento, padre, come.
- i** like *ee* in *see* : mira, libra, ira.
- o** like *o* in *no* : obra, dorado, mono.
- u** like *oo* in *food* : muro, uno, comun.
- y** as a vowel like the Spanish *i* : voy, doy, soy.

**REMARK.**— The **y** is considered as a vowel when it stands by itself, as in **y, and**; at the end of a word, as in **rey, king**; or of a syllable immediately followed by a consonant. But, at the beginning of a syllable, **y** is generally considered as a consonant, as in **ya, already**; **yerba, herb**.

The custom of using the letter **i** instead of **y** is, however, becoming more general.

### 2. Diphthongs. Diptongos.

Besides the simple sounds, there are in Spanish compound sounds, in which the two sounds are distinctly heard by a single emission of the voice. The sounds of Diphthongs are produced by the rapid utterance of the vowel sounds of which they are composed.

The Diphthongs are sixteen in number :

<b>ai or ay:</b>	{ dábais, <i>you gave</i> ; hay, <i>there is, there are</i> .	<b>io:</b>	precio, <i>price</i> .
<b>au:</b>	pausa, <i>pause</i> .	<b>iu:</b>	ciudad, <i>city</i> .
<b>ei or ey:</b>	{ veis, <i>you see</i> ; ley, <i>law</i> .	<b>oe:</b>	héroe, <i>hero</i> .
<b>ea:</b>	línea, <i>line</i> .	<b>oi or oy:</b>	{ sois, <i>you are</i> ; voy, <i>I go</i> .
<b>eo:</b>	virgíneo, <i>virginal</i> .	<b>ua:</b>	fragua, <i>forge</i> .
<b>eu:</b>	deuda, <i>debt</i> .	<b>ue:</b>	dueño, <i>master</i> .
<b>ia:</b>	gracia, <i>grace</i> .	<b>ui or uy:</b>	{ ruido, <i>noise</i> ; muy, <i>very</i> .
<b>ie:</b>	cielo, <i>heaven</i> .	<b>uo:</b>	arduo, <i>arduous</i> .

REMARK. — There are some of these combinations, however, which are not always diphthongs, as **ai** and **ei**, which are diphthongs in **baile**, *ball*; **ley**, *law*; but not in **raiz**, *root*; **lei**, *I read*; **rei**, *I laughed*; etc.

This is also the case with **ia**, **io**, **ua**, which are diphthongs in **gracia**, *grace*; **vicio**, *vice*; **fragua**, *forge*; but not in **varia**, *he varies*; **brio**, *brio*; **efectúa**, *he effectuates*; etc.

In fact, whenever in these combinations the **i** and **u** are accented (**í**, **ú**), each vowel forms a distinct syllable.

### 3. Triphthongs. TRIPTONGOS.

There are four Triphthongs in Spanish :

<b>iai:</b>	preciais, <i>you value</i> .
<b>ieis:</b>	vacieis, <i>you may empty</i> .
<b>uai:</b>	santiguais, <i>you bless</i> .
<b>uei or uey:</b>	averigueis, <i>you may search</i> ; buey, <i>ox</i> .

### § 3. Consonants. CONSONANTES.

Many of the Consonants sound as in English.

The following are the rules referring to those which differ in the two languages.

**C** has two sounds, as it has in English.

1. Before the vowels **e** and **i** (*ce*, *ci*) it has nearly the sound of the English **th** in *thick*, *thin*, etc. :

cena, cima, decente, recibe, dice.

2. Before the vowels **a**, **o**, and **u** (*ca*, *co*, and *cu*), and before Consonants, it sounds like **k** in English :

cola, cabo, cuna, criado, clamor.

**CH** is considered by the Spanish Academy as a distinct letter, double in figure, but simple in value. It has the same sound as the English **ch** in *church*, *chair*, *chin*, etc.:

macho, mucho, chupa, rancho, dicha.

**REMARK.**— In editions anterior to 1808, **ch** is found followed sometimes by a Consonant, as in *Christo*, *Christ*; *Christianismo*, *Christianity*; and sometimes by a vowel with a circumflex accent, as in *chimica*, *chemistry*; *chimera*, *chimera*; in both of which cases the **ch** has the sound of **k**. Nowadays the **h** is dropped in those words in which the **ch** was followed by a Consonant, while in those words in which the **ch** was followed by a vowel marked with a circumflex accent the letters **qu** (pronounced like **k**) have been substituted for **ch**. We therefore write *to-day*: *Cristo*, *Cristianismo*, *quimera*, *química*.

**G** has two sounds, as it has in English.

1. Before **a**, **o**, **u**, **l**, **r** it sounds as in English :

gato, gorro, gusano, gloria, grito.

2. Before **e** and **i** it sounds like the English **h** aspirated :

gente, gigante, ingenio, agilidad, ginete.

3. Before **m** and **n** it has the Latin and English pronunciation :

digno, indigno, ignorante, enigma.

4. To preserve the hard sound of **g** before **e** and **i** the vowel **u** (*gu*) must be inserted before them :

guerra, guia, guineo, guirlanda, guitarra.

**NOTE.**— In this case the **u** is silent. When, however, the **u** is to be pronounced after the **g**, and before the letters **e** and **i**, a *diáresis* (‘) must be placed over the **u** (ü):

antigüedad, argüir, agüero, magüeto.

**H** is mute, and only lightly aspirated before **ue**:

hombre, horca, alharaca, hora, honor.  
hueso, huevo, hueco, huerto, vihuela.

**OBSERVATION.**— The letter **h** has been retained in many words, though not pronounced, and in many cases it has taken the place of the letter

**f**, formerly used. Thus **fijo**, **son**; **facer**, *to do*; **fermosura**, *beauty*, are now written **hijo**, **hacer**, **hermosura**, etc.

**J** is pronounced guttural before all the vowels, that is to say, like the Spanish **g** before **e** and **i**:

paja,      jabon,      caja,      cajita,      jefe.

OBSERVATION. — Some of the modern writers have adopted the **j** instead of the **g** when this letter comes before the vowels **e** and **i**. Thus they write **jeneral**, **jirafa**, instead of **general**, **general**; **girafa**, **giraffe**; etc., but this change has not yet been generally sanctioned.

**LL** is liquid, and pronounced as in the English words *William*, *brilliant*:

llaga,      calle,      llover,      caballo,      pollo.

**N** has a liquid sound, and is pronounced nearly like **ni** in *minion*, or like the **gn** in French:

señor,      enseñar,      niño,      sueño,      añadir.

NOTE. — The mark over the **n** (~) is called *tilde* in Spanish.

**Q** is always followed by **u** and another vowel, and has the sound of **k** or hard **c** (the **u** being silent):

parque,      aquí,      querido,      despique,      queja.

OBSERVATION. — According to modern orthography, whenever the diphthongs **ua**, **ue**, **uo** follow immediately the **q**, and the **u** is sounded, the **q** is replaced by a **c**: **cuadro**, **cuervo**, **acuoso** (instead of **quadro**, **quervo**, **aquoso**, etc.).

**R** is trilled more than in English, but with less force between two vowels or in the middle of a word. When double, both letters must be distinctly heard :

rosa,      pintura,      lirio,      cara,      perla,  
carro,      guerra,      cerrajo,      perro,      carrera.

**S** has always the hissing sound, like **ss** in English, as in *assembly*:

sabio,      famoso,      paseo,      pesadumbre,      rosa.

OBSERVATION. — **S** is only doubled in Spanish in compound words. Those words, derived from the Latin, which were formerly written with

double **ss**, as *santissimo*, *missa*, are now written with one **s**: *santísmo*, *misa*, etc.

Neither is the **s** ever followed by a consonant when commencing a word, as in the Latin words *scientia*, *Scipio*; and, in order to avoid this *liquid s*, the Spanish write *ciencia* (suppressing the **s**) or *Escipion* (having it preceded by an **e**).

**V** is pronounced as in English :

velo,      valor,      voluntad,      bravo,      ave.

REMARK. — Spaniards often give to this letter the sound of **b**, but the Academy disapproves of it.

**X** sounds like **cs** or **ks** in English, as in *wax* :

axioma,      examinar,      reflexion,      exagerar,      exuberancia.

OBSERVATIONS. — 1. The **x** had formerly the sound of the Spanish **j**, or **g** before **e** and **i**, but according to the modern orthography the **x** is replaced by a **g** or a **j** whenever it has the guttural sound. Thus, the following words which were formerly written *xefe*, *xergon*, *baxeza*, *baxar*, *baxo*, etc., are written to-day *jefe* or *jefe*, *jergon*, *bajeza*, *bajar*, *bajo*, etc.

Finally, in those words in which the **x** precedes a consonant and ends a syllable, as in *extraniero*, *extorsion*, *extremo*, etc., the **x** is generally replaced by an **s**, as *estrangero*, *estorsion*, *estremo*; and, although the Academy does not approve of this modification, many Spanish writers and grammarians have adopted it. In those words in which the **x** is followed by an **h**, the **x** is, however, preserved. Thus we write *exhortar*, *exhalar* (and not *eshortar*, *eshalar*).

2. The **x** at the end of such words as *relox*, *carcax*, *almaradux*, etc., which formerly changed the **x** into **j** for the plural, as *relojes*, *carcajes*, etc., is now replaced by a **j**; and these words are written now *reloj*, *carcaj*, *almaraduj*, etc.

3. In such words as *salsifrax*, in which the **x** is changed into **c** for the plural, as *salsifraces*, some writers replace the **x** by a **c** and others by a **z**.

**Z** is pronounced like the English **th** in the word *thin*, or like the Spanish **c** before **e** and **i**. This letter precedes the vowels **a**, **o**, and **u** (*za*, *zo*, and *zu*) :

zapato,      tizon,      zumo,      zorra,      corazon.

#### § 4. Double Letters. Duplicacion de las letras.

The Spanish Academy, conforming to the pronunciation, has suppressed double consonants when one alone is pronounced. In the Spanish books printed nowadays the double letters **tt**, **ss**, **ff**, **bb**, etc., are no longer found, and **cc**, **nn**, and **rr** only when both consonants are sounded, as in the words *acceso*, *ennoblecer*, *barro*. Double **l** (*ll*) is to be considered only as a letter of the alphabet, and not as a double consonant. Most words, ending in English in *ction*, change in Spanish the **t** into **c**, as **accion**, *action*; **produccion**, *production*. This is also the case with the derivatives of these words.

#### § 5. Syllables. Silabas.

There are four rules in Spanish for the division of words into Syllables :

1. In compound words formed from prepositions and other parts of speech the preposition forms a separate syllable, as in :

ab-ne-ga-cion, ab-ro-ga-cion, con-ca-vi-dad, sub-ver-sion.

**OBSERVATION.** — Whenever the preposition is accompanied by an **s**, this letter must not be separated, however, from the preposition.

cons-tru-ir, ins-pi-rar, pers-pi-ca-cia.

2. Vowels forming a diphthong or triphthong must not be separated :

gra-cio-so, a-pre-cian, pre-cia-is.

3. Whenever a consonant is found between two vowels, it is joined to the vowel which follows it :

a-mor, -le-cho, a-gua, flu-xion, co-fre.

4. The letters **ch** and **ll**, although simple in their pronunciation, must not be divided :

cha-le-co, chi-co, ca-lle, co-che, ca-ba-llo.

**OBSERVATION.** — When double **c**, double **n**, and double **r** occur in a word, one of these letters is placed in each syllable :

ac-cion, en-no-ble-ce, per-ro.

### § 6. Accent.      Acento.

**1.** Accent in its common acceptation is but a sign placed over syllables to show that they must be uttered more forcibly than the others. The Spaniards have but one accent, the acute ('); in Spanish **acento agudo**. It is often used to mark the distinction between words otherwise written alike, but never changes the sound of the vowel. Thus we accent *él, he*; *mi, me*; *si, yes, one's self*; *dé, sé*, and *vé* (from the verbs *dar*, to give; *saber*, to know; *ser*, to be; *ver*, to see) to distinguish these monosyllables from *el, the* (article); *mi, my* (possessive adjective); *si, if* (conditional particle); *de, of* (preposition); *se, himself* (pronoun); and *ve, go thou*.

The vowels **a, e, o, and u** must also be accented when standing alone or forming parts of speech, so that they may not be pronounced as if belonging to the preceding or the following word :

Juan é Ignacio, á la ida ó á la vuelta,  
verán á Madrid, ú otro punto in-  
mediato,

*John and Ignatius, on their trip  
to and fro, will see Madrid or  
some other neighboring place.*

The student will consequently have to give a greater stress of voice on the accented syllables or vowels when reading Spanish :

válido,	azúcar,	rubí,	línea,	cutáneo,
crisis,	ágil,	alférez,	música,	café,
ortografía,	continúa,	habló,	níspero,	María.

**2.** Every word has, however, in Spanish its unwritten accent, because there is always a syllable on which the voice must chiefly dwell. This inflection of the voice, this rhythmic accent, is the most difficult to be acquired by foreigners, because harmony cannot be expressed by written words, and yet harmony is to a language what color is to a picture. By observing the following simple rules, however, the student will be enabled to obtain a correct pronunciation :

1. Unaccented words of two or more syllables ending with a vowel are accented on the penultimate syllable :

cabo,      cola,      curioso,      Cristianismo,      constante,  
encargo,      lluvia,      tragedia,      conquista,      guerrero.

2. Unaccented words ending with a consonant are accented on the last syllable, and the last consonant is sounded strongly if the word has but one syllable :

general,      pan,      dar,      señor,      significar,  
pasión,      papel,      verdad,      cruz,      zumbón.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Words in the plural retain the accent of the same words in the singular.

hombre, *man*; hombres, *men*.      águila, *eagle*; águilas, *eagles*.  
general, *general*; generales, *generals*.      mio, *mine* (sing.); mios, *mine* (pl.)

NOTE.—But the plural **caractéres** is accented differently from the singular : **carácter**, *character*.

2. In the conjugation of verbs, the penultimate syllable is accented unless a written accent is placed on one of the syllables.

tomo, <i>I take.</i>	tomamos, <i>we take.</i>
tomas, <i>thou takest.</i>	tomais, <i>you take.</i>
toma, <i>he takes.</i>	toman, <i>they take.</i>

NOTE.—Thus **tomó**, *he took*, is not sounded in the same way as **tomo**, *I take*.

3. In patronymic names ending in **z** the penultimate syllable is always long :

Perez,      Sanchez,      Fernandez,      Rodriguez,      Jimenez.

3. Unaccented words ending in **ia**, **ie**, **io** follow Rule 1, except when they are monosyllables, or when they are found in the conjugation of verbs where the accent rests on the **i**:

*Monosyllables* : dia,      rio,      mio,      tio,      rie.

*Verbs* :      tenia,      comeria,      tomarian,      dirias,      serian.

GENERAL REMARK.—The foregoing rules on the accented and unaccented words will, we think, be found sufficient to enable students to obtain a correct pronunciation. In accented words, of course, the rules given for unaccented words have to be set aside, and the *written accent* is to be the supreme guide of the reader. When writing under dictation it will be easy to distinguish by the intonation of the speaker whether any

accent is to be placed on the words or not. The Spanish Academy does not consider it a mistake to put an accent wherever it is superfluous, and even adopts it in interrogations or exclamations to give more stress to the sentence :

<i>i</i> Qué me quieres ?	<i>What do you wish from me ?</i>
<i>i</i> Cuándo te vas ?	<i>When are you going away ?</i>
<i>i</i> Cómo llueve !	<i>How it rains !</i>
<i>i</i> Quién lo creyera !	<i>Who would believe it !</i>

### § 7. Punctuation. Puntuacion.

1. Punctuation is in Spanish the same as in English. However, as it often happens, in the Spanish language, that punctuation alone indicates the interrogative sense of the sentence, and that, if the period be long, the reader is informed too late of the interrogation; the Spanish Academy sometimes makes use of a reversed sign of interrogation (*i*) at the beginning of the sentence, besides the regular sign (?) at the end of the same :

*i* Serán perdidos tantos ejemplares  
y escarmientos como presencia-  
mos cada dia para persuadirte à  
mudar de vida y entrar en la  
senda del honor y de la virtud ?

*Are all those examples and ex-  
periences which we daily see, and  
which ought to persuade you to  
change your life and enter the  
path of honor and virtue, to be  
lost on you ?*

2. The same rule is observed in long periods with regard to the exclamation-point, and an inverted sign (*i*) is placed at the beginning of a long exclamative sentence :

*i* Cuánta debió ser la confusión y  
el sentimiento de los que creyendo  
encontrar el oro á montones  
no encontraron sino hambre, pe-  
nalidades y peligros !

*What must have been the confusion  
and regrets of those who thought  
they would find gold in large  
quantities, and met only hunger,  
sufferings, and dangers !*

### § 8. Exercises in Pronunciation.

#### El Universo.

##### I.

Con el nombre de *universo* se designa cuanto existe en el mundo entero, es decir, el sol, las estrellas, la tierra, cuanto nuestra vista

alcanza en las profundidades del aire, y cuanto hay todavía mas allá de lo que podemos ver. Por mas pequeños que seamos, y por más débil que nuestra vista sea, podemos admirar una parte de este inmenso espectáculo. El sol, en medio de esos numerosos globos que brillan, en toda la bóveda celeste, es entre todas las obras de Dios la que se presenta con mayor lucimiento y majestad, es una eterna lumbrera colocada en el centro del mundo para esparcir la luz por todas partes, y á una distancia que no nos es posible determinar. Es como el rey de los astros.

## II.

El sol, que nos parece tan pequeño, á causa de la suma distancia suya, es, segun los astrónomos, mil y cuatrocientas veces mayor que la tierra.

Su figura es la de un globo ; y el calor y la luz que él esparce en el universo, nos dan á conocer que su materia es el fuego mismo ó que está inflamada de continuo. Le vemos parecer todas las mañanas en el oriente, elevarse en el cielo hasta medio dia, bajar despues y desaparecer del horizonte por el occidente. El sol no nuda de sitio, y permanece en el centro del mundo para dar luz á cuanto le rodea. Se han notando ciertas manchas sobre este cuerpo tan reluciente, y se ha descubierto que él giraba, sobre sí mismo como giraría una bala atravesada con un asador. Estas manchas se descubren desde luego en una extremidad de este astro, se adelantan, se ven despues en la otra extremidad, y desaparecen finalmente por detras para volver á parecer de nuevo de allí á algun tiempo. Se ha observado que para volver al punto de que ellas partieron, le son necesarios veinte y siete días, tiempo necesario al sol por consiguiente para dar una vuelta completa sobre el eje suyo. Se valúa que el sol dista de nosotros treinta y cuatro millones trescientas cincuenta y siete mil cuatrocientas y ochenta leguas.

## III.

Se distinguen estos tan numerosos astros en estrellas fijas, porque no las vemos mudar de lugar, y en planetas ó estrellas errantes, porque giran en mayor ó menor tiempo alrededor del sol. Se presume que las estrellas fijas son unos globos luminosos semejantes al sol, y que dan luz á varios mundos muy remotos para que nuestra vista pueda alcanzarlos á ver. Si las estrellas nos parecen mas pequeñas que el astro que nos dispensa el dia, nace de que ellas están infinitamente

mas apartadas de nosotros. Juzgad de su magnitud é inmensa distancia por la que está mas inmediata á la tierra, y que se llama *Sirio*: se cree que esta estrella fija dista de nosotros cuatrocientas mil veces mas que el sol, y que su diametro ó anchura es de treinta y tres millones de leguas.

Los planetas son en número de siete y se diferencian de las estrellas fijas, á causa de que giran alrededor del sol, y no tienen luz de sí mismos: aquella con que brillan, les viene del sol. Se presume que estos inmensos globos son, al modo de la tierra, unos mundos habitados.

#### IV.

La tierra es redonda como una bola. Sus montañas y valles, que nos parecen tan considerables, pueden compararse, cuando mas, con las desigualdades que se ven en la cáscara de una naranja, y que no impiden que este fruto tenga una figura redonda.

Ella gira sobre sí misma como una bola que está atravesada con un asador de hierro. Este movimiento, que se llama rotacion, le proporciona alternativamente el dia y la noche ; es decir, que la parte que está vuelta hacia el sol goza de la luz, mientras que la parte opuesta está en la obscuridad. Pero, como la tierra da esta vuelta sobre sí misma en veinte y cuatro horas, resulta de esto, que ella tiene en este espacio de tiempo el dia y la noche.

La tierra, ademas de este movimiento de todos los dias, tiene otro que se ejecuta en un año ; ella da una vuelta inmensa alrededor del sol. Este último movimiento produce las diferentes estaciones del año.

**Leccion I.****Lesson I.**

ARTICLES, DIFFERENT FORMS.

**El,**  
**La,**  
**Lo,**

**Un,**  
**Una,**

*the.**a, an, one.***Ejemplos.**

El hombre tiene el libro.  
 La mujer tiene la mesa.  
 ¿Quien tiene la pluma ?  
 El padre tiene un caballo.  
 La madre tiene una casa.  
 El general es prudente.  
 La señora es amable.

**Examples.**

The man has the book.  
 The woman has the table.  
 Who has the pen ?  
 The father has a horse.  
 The mother has a house.  
 The general is prudent.  
 The lady is amiable.

**Vocabulario.**

**El amigo,** *the friend.*  
**El caballo,** *the horse.*  
**El caballero,** *the gentleman.*  
**El dinero,** *the money.*  
**El hermano,** *the brother.*  
**El hijo,** *the son.*  
**El jardin,** *the garden.*  
**El libro,** *the book.*

**El niño,** *the child.*  
**El panadero,** *the baker.*  
**El tio,** *the uncle.*  
**La casa,** *the house.*  
**La hermana,** *the sister.*  
**La hija,** *the daughter.*  
**La llave,** *the key.*  
**Carlos,** *Charles.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Es,** *is.*  
**Luisa,** *Louisa.*  
**Mi,** *my.*  
**Muy,** *very.*  
**Pobre,** *poor.*  
**Quien,** *who, whom.*  
**Tiene,** *has.*  
**Y,** *and.*

**Exercise 1.**

1. El niño tiene un libro. 2. Carlos es mi hermano. 3. Luisa es mi hermana. 4. ¿Quien tiene la llave ? 5. Mi amigo tiene la llave y la pluma. 6. El caballo es grande. 7. Mi tio es pobre. 8. La casa es grande. 9. El panadero tiene un hijo y una hija. 10. Mi amigo tiene una casa y un jardin. 11. El jardin es muy grande. 12. El caballero tiene el dinero.

**Exercise 2.**

1. My house is very large. 2. My brother has a horse. 3. The gentleman has a house. 4. The baker is my friend. 5. The general is very poor. 6. Charles has my pen. 7. My table is very large. 8. My uncle is very prudent. 9. The daughter has a house, and the son has a garden. 10. The woman is very amiable. 11. My brother is a child. 12. The book is very large.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** There are three genders in the Spanish language: the **masculine**, the **feminine**, and the **neuter**.

The definite article has in the singular a distinct form for each gender: masculine, **el**; feminine, **la**; neuter, **lo**:

*El padre, the father.*    *La madre, the mother.*    *Lo bueno, the good.*

**REMARKS.** — 1. The neuter gender is only applicable to adjectives (*numeros adjetivos*) taken in an unlimited or indefinite sense, as: **lo bueno**, *the good* or *what is good*; **lo peor**, *the worst* or *what is worst*; etc.

This NEUTER GENDER, which has no *plural*, is therefore never applied to persons or things, but only to adjectives *taken substantively*, and to substantives *taken adjectively*: **Todo era grande en San Luis**, *lo rey*, *lo santo*, **lo capitán**, *everything was great in St. Louis* (Louis IX.), *the king*, *the saint, the captain*.

2. The neuter article is not placed indifferently before all adjectives taken substantively. Thus, in the following sentences: **El malo será castigado**, *the wicked shall be punished*; **El azul de este paño es demasiado oscuro**, *the blue of this cloth is too dark*; — we could not make use of the neuter article **lo**, because those adjectives are taken substantively and are sufficiently determinate. It is evident, in fact, that in the first sentence, the word **hombre**, *man*, is understood, before **malos**, *wicked*; and in the second sentence, the word **color**, *color*; before **azul**, *blue*.

**2.** Although the article **el** belongs only to the masculine gender, it may be placed, for the sake of euphony, before feminine nouns beginning with a long **a**, that is to say, whenever the stress of voice rests on that initial letter: **el agua**, *the water*; **el alma**, *the soul*; **el ala**, *the wing*; **el águila**, *the eagle*; **el ave**, *the bird*. It must be observed, however, that this change of article is only

admitted in the singular, and that we must say in the plural, **las aguas, las almas, las alas**, etc.

Adjectives accompanying the singular of such nouns must be placed in the feminine : **el agua es fria**, *the water is cold*; etc.

The same rules are to be observed in reference to words beginning with an **h**, as : **el hacha es pesada**, *the ax is heavy*; **las hachas**, *the axes*; etc.

Nouns like **América**, *America*; **abeja**, *bee*; **alegría**, *joy*; **habitación**, *habitation*; etc. take the feminine article **la**, because the first **a** is not accented : **La América, la habitación**, etc.

**3.** The Indefinite Article **a**, **an**, or the numeral **one**, is rendered by **un** before a masculine noun (the **o** of **uno** being dropped before a noun), and by **una** before a feminine noun :

Un hermano, *a brother*.

Una hermana, *a sister*.

Un libro, *a book*.

Una mesa, *a table*.

**4.** Adjectives should always be repeated before the nouns they qualify :

El padre y la madre.

The father and (*the*) mother.

La casa y el jardín.

The house and (*the*) garden.

El buen lápiz y la buena pluma. The good pencil and (*the good*) pen.

NOTE.—Some writers do not always observe this rule.

**GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE GENDERS.**—The Gender of nouns is generally known by their terminations :

**1.** Nouns ending in **o** are masculine :

Except **mano**, *hand*; and **nao**, *vessel*.

**2.** Nouns ending in **a** are generally feminine.

Those expressing rank, titles, and professions, as **papa**, *pope*; **profeta**, *prophet*, etc., and those ending in **ma** derived from the Greek, as **clima**, *climate*; **idioma**, *idiom*; **poema**, *poem*; **dilema**, *dilemma*; **diploma**, *diploma*; **dogma**, *dogma*; etc., and some others, are, however, of the masculine gender.

A few of these words may be used either as masculine or as feminine.

**3.** Nouns ending in **ción** or **tion** are of the feminine gender, as **cuestión**, *question*; **meditación**, *meditation*; etc.

These words are the same in both languages, except that, in Spanish, the **t** of the termination *tion* of the English word is changed into a **c** whenever it has the sound of *sh*.

4. Nouns ending in Spanish in **tad** or **dad**, — terminations which correspond to the Latin termination **tas**, and to the English termination **ty**, — are of the feminine gender, as **humanidad**, *humanity*; **puridad**, *purity*; **adversidad**, *adversity*; etc.

GENERAL RULE FOR LATIN SCHOLARS. — Nouns derived from the Latin preserve in Spanish the same gender they have in Latin, with this exception that those which are neuter in Latin are masculine in Spanish.

5. Compound nouns take the gender of the second word if the same is in the singular. Thus, the words **aguamiel**, *honey and water*; **contrahaz**, *wrong side*; are feminine; whilst **archilaud**, *a kind of lute*; and **portafusil**, *gun-belt*; are masculine.

6. Compound words of which the second word is in the plural are always masculine, even if the second word is feminine, as : **cortaplumas**, *pen-knife*; **mondadiéntes**, *tooth-pick*; **sacabotas**, *boot-jack*; etc.

OBSERVATION ON OTHER TERMINATIONS. — Nouns having other terminations are subject to so many exceptions that it is impossible to establish satisfactory rules in regard to them.

Thus, **mar**, *sea*, is of both genders, but words compounded with *mar* are always feminine, as **bajamar**, *low-tide*; **pleamar**, *high-tide*. **Mar**, joined to a proper noun, should be in the masculine, as **el mar Báltico**, *the Baltic sea*, etc.

## Lección II.

### PLURAL.

**Los**, plural of **el**, }  
**Las**, plural of **la**, } *the.*

#### Ejemplos.

El caballo es grande.  
 Los caballos son grandes.  
 Enrique tiene un libro.

#### Examples.

The horse is large.  
 The horses are large.  
 Henry has a book.

Maria tiene dos libros.	Mary has two books.
Mi tio tiene tres casas.	My uncle has three houses.
El general tiene cuatro caballos.	The general has four horses.
Las señoras son amables.	The ladies are amiable.
Los niños tienen dos plumas.	The children have two pens.
El general es rico.	The general is rich.
Los generales son ricos.	The generals are rich.
El reloj es hermoso.	The watch is fine.
Los relojes son hermosos.	The watches are fine.
El Inglés es bueno.	The Englishman is good.
Los Ingleses son buenos.	The Englishmen are good.
El paráguas es grande.	The umbrella is large.
Los paráguas son grandes.	The umbrellas are large.
El juez es justo.	The judge is just.
Los jueces son justos.	The judges are just.

**Vocabulario.**

**El abanico**, *the fan.*  
**El Americano**, *the American.*  
**El centavo**, *the cent.*  
**El cuarto**, *the room.*  
**El Frances**, *the Frenchman.*  
**El Inglés**, *the Englishman.*  
**El lápiz**, *the pencil.*  
**El muchacho**, *the boy.*  
**El oro**, *the gold.*  
**El pájaro**, *the bird.*  
**El perro**, *the dog.*  
**El sombrero**, *the hat.*  
**El teatro**, *the theatre.*  
**La ciudad**, *the city.*  
**La muchacha**, *the girl.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Cuatro**, *four.*  
**De, of.**  
**Dos**, *two.*  
**Enrique**, *Henry.*  
**Hermoso**, *handsome, fine.*  
**Industrioso**, *industrious.*  
**Joven**, *young.*  
**Juan**, *John.*  
**Negro**, *black.*  
**Pequeño**, *small, little.*  
**Son**, *are.*  
**Tienen**, *have.*  
**Tres**, *three.*  
**Vigilante**, *watchful.*  
**Ya**, *already.*

**Exercise 3.**

1. Carlos y Enrique son los amigos de mi hermano. 2. El general tiene tres hermosos caballos. 3. Los sombreros son negros. 4. Los muchachos tienen dos centavos. 5. Las señoras tienen un abanico.
6. Los Franceses y los Ingleses son amigos. 7. Los pájaros son hermosos. 8. La señora tiene dos hijos y tres hijas. 9. Mi amigo tiene dos hermanas. 10. Los Americanos son industriosos. 11. Los dos amigos son pobres. 12. Las tres muchachas son amables. 13. Los perros son vigilantes. 14. Los lápices son de oro. 15. ¿Quién tiene

los libros? 16. Juan tiene los libros y las plumas. 17. Las hijas de mi amigo son jóvenes. 18. Los cuartos de la casa son pequeños. 19. Las hijas de mi tío son ya grandes. 20. Los teatros de la ciudad son hermosos.

### Exercise 4.

1. The two horses are black.
2. The brothers of my friend are young.
3. The two gentlemen are English.
4. Henry has two handsome dogs.
5. The friends of my brother are very poor.
6. The city has three theatres.
7. Charles and John are friends.
8. The American has two brothers and three sisters.
9. My uncle has four houses.
10. The two Frenchmen are very amiable.
11. The fans of the ladies are very fine.
12. The English have handsome horses.
13. The houses of the city are very large.
14. The generals are very prudent.
15. The hats are black.
16. The boys have three pencils.
17. John and Henry are small.
18. The rooms of my house are large.
19. The bakers are poor.
20. Charles has two pencils.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

**1.** The plural of the article **el** is **los**, and that of the article **la** is **las**.

**2.** Nouns ending with an *unaccented* vowel form their plural by adding **s**:

El hermano, <i>the brother</i> ;	La hermana, <i>the sister</i> .
Los hermanos, <i>the brothers</i> ;	Las hermanas, <i>the sisters</i> .

**3.** Nouns ending with a consonant, or with an *accented* vowel, form their plural by adding **es**:

El general, <i>the general</i> ;	Los generales, <i>the generals</i> .
La mujer, <i>the woman</i> ;	Las mujeres, <i>the women</i> .
El alelí, <i>the gilliflower</i> ;	Los alelías, <i>the gilliflowers</i> .
El albalá, <i>the certificate</i> ;	Los albaláes, <i>the certificates</i> .

OBSERVATION.—The few Spanish words ending with an accented é, ó and ú, form, however, their plural by the addition of an **s**. Thus, *pié*, *foot*; *café*, *coffee*; *té*, *tea*; *fricandó*, *fricandeau*; *tisú*, *tissue*; etc., become in the plural *piés*, *cafés*, *tés*, *fricandós*, *tisús*.

*Papá*, *papa*; *mamá*, *mamma*; *sofá*, *sofa*, likewise take **s** for the plural.

*Maravedi*, *maravedi*, forms its plural in three ways, and is written *maravediés*, *maravedis*, and *maravedises*.

4. Nouns ending in **s**, of which the last syllable is *short*, remain unchanged.

Those which have the last syllable *long* add **es**:

El lunes, <i>the Monday</i> ;	Los lunes, <i>the Mondays</i> .
La hipótesis, <i>the hypothesis</i> ;	Las hipótesis, <i>the hypotheses</i> . (pl.)
El Frances, <i>the Frenchman</i> ;	Los Franceses, <i>the Frenchmen</i> .
El Inglés, <i>the Englishman</i> ;	Los Ingleses, <i>the Englishmen</i> .

5. Nouns ending in **z** change this letter into **c**, and add **es** for the plural :

El juez, <i>the judge</i> ;	Los jueces, <i>the judges</i> .
La luz, <i>the light</i> ;	Las luces, <i>the lights</i> .

OBSERVATION.— Some writers do not admit this change of the **z** into **c**, and simply add **es** to form the plural of these nouns ending in **z**.

6. Proper nouns follow the same rules as common nouns :

Los Cervantes y los Mendozas,	<i>The Cervantes and Mendozas</i> .
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------

7. Although in a few compound nouns, as **casamata**, *casemate*; **ricohome** or **ricohombre**, *a Spanish nobleman in the Middle Ages*; each of the words takes the plural form, making **casasmatas**, **ricos hombres**; in most other words the last word only is put in the plural, as **barbacana**, *an outwork in a fort*; **aguachirle**, *a sort of drink*; which make **barbacanas**, **aguachirles**, etc., in the plural.

8. Adjectives, as will be seen hereafter, agree in gender and number with the nouns which they qualify.

The Plural of Adjectives is formed like the plural of nouns :

El muchacho es bueno,	<i>The boy is good.</i>
Los muchachos son buenos,	<i>The boys are good.</i>

9. In Spanish, as well as in English, there are nouns which are only used in the singular, and others which have no singular, as : **albricias**, *presents*; **angarillas**, *cruet-stands*; **viveres**, *provisions*; **trebedes**, *tripods*; etc.

NOTE.— There are a few words which have or have not any singular according to their meaning, as **esposas**, *hand-cuffs*; which is not the plural of **esposa**, *wife*; **grillos**, *irons*; which is not the plural of **grillo**, *cricket*; and a few others.

**Lección III.****CONTRACTION OF PREPOSITION WITH ARTICLE.****De, of, from.****Del, masc. sing.****De la, fem. sing.****De los, masc. pl.****De las, fem. pl.****Á, to, at.****Al, masc. sing.****Á la, fem. sing.****Á los, masc. pl.****Á las, fem. pl.****Declinación.****Masculine Singular.**El hombre, *the man.*Del hombre, *of or from the man.*Al hombre, *to or at the man.***Feminine Singular.**La mujer, *the woman.*De la mujer, *of or from the woman.*Á la mujer, *to or at the woman.***Ejemplos.**

El sombrero del muchacho es nuevo.

La hermana de mi amigo es pobre.

El padre de Juan es rico.

Los libros de los muchachos son buenos.

Las puertas de las casas son grandes.

Carlos sale de la casa.

El cazador viene del bosque.

La lluvia viene de las nubes.

El rico da dinero al pobre.

La madre escribe á la hija.

El general habla á los soldados.

La señora habla á las muchachas.

El hombre llama á la puerta.

Juan habla del hombre y de la mujer.

Enrique escribe al padre y á la madre.

**Lesson III.****CONTRACTION OF PREPOSITION WITH ARTICLE.****Á, to, at.****Al, masc. sing.****Á la, fem. sing.****Á los, masc. pl.****Á las, fem. pl.****Declension.****Masculine Plural.**Los hombres, *the men.*De los hombres, *of or from the men.*Á los hombres, *to or at the men.***Feminine Plural.**Las mujeres, *the women.*De las mujeres, *of or from the women.*Á las mujeres, *to or at the women.***Examples.**

The boy's hat is new.

My friend's sister is poor.

John's father is rich.

The boys' books are good.

The doors of the houses are large.

Charles comes out of the house.

The hunter comes from the wood.

The rain comes from the clouds.

The rich give money to the poor.

The mother writes to the daughter.

The general speaks to the soldiers.

The lady speaks to the girls.

The man knocks at the door..

John speaks of the man and woman.

Henry writes to the father and mother.

**Vocabulario.**

- El árbol,** *the tree.*  
**El bosque,** *the wood.*  
**El buque,** *the vessel, the ship.*  
**El carnicero,** *the butcher.*  
**El carpintero,** *the carpenter.*  
**El cazador,** *the hunter.*  
**El comerciante,** *the merchant.*  
**El consejo,** *the advice.*  
**El dependiente,** *the clerk.*  
**El dinero,** *the money.*  
**El habitante,** *the inhabitant.*  
**El médico,** *the physician.*  
**El Norte,** *the North.*  
**El padre,** *the father.*  
**El principe,** *the prince.*

**Vocabulary.**

- La carne,** *the meat.*  
**La cereza,** *the cherry.*  
**La cocinera,** *the cook.*  
**La madre,** *the mother.*  
**La manzana,** *the apple.*  
**Con,** *with.*  
**Da,** *gives.*  
**Dulce,** *sweet.*  
**Escribe,** *writes.*  
**Hábil,** *skillful.*  
**Nuevo,** *new.*  
**Rico,** *rich.*  
**Sale,** *goes or comes out.*  
**Verde,** *green.*  
**Viene,** *comes.*

**Exercise 5.**

1. El médico del principe es mi hermano.
2. La señora de la casa es mi hermana.
3. La madre da un consejo á la hija.
4. ¿ Quien tiene el libro de Carlos ?
5. El hijo del panadero tiene el libro y la pluma de Carlos.
6. ¿ Quien tiene la llave de la casa ?
7. Mi padre tiene la llave de la casa y del jardin.
8. La casa del padre de Juan es muy grande.
9. Los habitantes de la ciudad son industriosos.
10. El Inglés es el padre de las muchachas.
11. Los caballos de los Franceses son hermosos.
12. El cazador sale del bosque con los perros.
13. Los hermanos del general son pobres.
14. El dependiente escribe al comerciante.
15. Los muchachos del Frances tienen manzanas.
16. Las cerezas del jardin son dulces.
17. El carnicero vende la carne á las cocineras.
18. El buque viene del Norte.
19. Los Americanos son amigos de los Franceses.
20. La hija del carpintero escribe á las amigas de mi madre.
21. La madre del carpintero es cocinera en la casa del comerciante.
22. La madre del médico da dinero al carnicero.
23. Los buques de los Americanos son nuevos.
24. El padre del principe es rico.
25. El dependiente da cerezas á mi hijo.
26. ¿ Quién da dinero al carpintero ?
27. El comerciante da dinero al hermano del carpintero.
28. Las manzanas del Norte son dulces.

**Exercise 6.**

1. Charles's brother is my father's clerk.
2. Louisa writes to my father and mother.
3. The horses of the Englishmen are large.
4. The apples of the garden are sweet.
5. Henry writes to the two friends.
6. The dog comes [out] of the garden.
7. The sons of the physician are clerks.
8. The generals of the prince are very prudent.
9. The horses of the general are black.
10. Who gives money to the sons of the Frenchman?
11. My father gives money to the sons and (to the) daughters of the Frenchman and of the Englishman.
12. The trees of the forest are green.
13. The merchants of the city are very rich.
14. The ship of Charles's father is new.
15. The sailors of the vessel are skillful.
16. My friend's sisters are very young.
17. My uncle has the key of the houses.
18. Charles and Henry are the friends of the two Americans.
19. Who has the fans of the ladies?
20. Louisa's sisters have the fans.
21. The advice of the physician to the merchant is good.
22. The carpenter is the brother of the butcher.
23. The mother gives money to the cook for (para) the butcher.
24. The dog of the hunter is good.
25. The brothers of the clerk are rich.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** Of the, from the, are rendered in Spanish in the masculine singular by **del** (instead of *de el*), while to the, at the, also in the masculine singular, are rendered by **al** (instead of *a el*) :

El libro del muchacho,	<i>The boy's book</i> (the book of the boy).
El general habla al soldado,	<i>The general speaks to the soldier.</i>

**2.** Nouns undergo in Spanish no change of form in the Possessive Case, possession being indicated by placing the name of the object possessed before **de**, *of*; and the name of the possessor after it :

El libro de Carlos,	<i>Charles's book</i> (the book of Charles).
La pluma de la muchacha,	<i>The girl's pen</i> (the pen of the girl).
La casa del hijo del médico,	<i>The physician's son's house</i> (the house of the son of the physician).

## Leccion IV.

## Lesson IV.

## PRONOUNS.

Verb, **tener**, *to have*.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

<b>Yo,</b> <i>I.</i>	<b>Nosotros, nosotras, nos, we.</b>
<b>Tú,</b> <i>thou.</i>	<b>Vosotros, vosotras, vos (usted,<sup>1</sup> ustedes<sup>1</sup>), you.</b>
<b>Él,</b> <i>he, it.</i>	<b>Ellos, they, masc.</b>
<b>Ella,</b> <i>she, it.</i>	<b>Ellas, they, fem.</b>

Present Tense of **tener**, *to have*.

## First Form.

Affirmatively.		Interrogatively.	
Yo tengo,	<i>I have.</i>	Tengo yo ?	<i>have I?</i>
Tú tienes,	<i>thou hast.</i>	Tienes tú ?	<i>hast thou?</i>
Él tiene,	<i>he has.</i>	Tiene él ?	<i>has he?</i>
Ella tiene,	<i>she has.</i>	Tiene ella ?	<i>has she?</i>
Nosotros tenemos,	<i>we have.</i>	Tenemos nosotros ?	<i>have we?</i>
Vosotros teneis,	<i>you have.</i>	Teneis vosotros ?	<i>have you?</i>
Ellos tienen,	<i>they (masc.) have.</i>	Tienen ellos ?	<i>have they (masc.)?</i>
Ellas tienen,	<i>they (fem.) have.</i>	Tienen ellas ?	<i>have they (fem.)?</i>

## Second Form.

	Second Form.	Third Form.
Tengo,	<i>I have.</i>	Tengo,
Tienes,	<i>thou hast.</i>	Tienes,
Tiene,	<i>he has, she has.</i>	Tiene,
Tenemos,	<i>we have.</i>	Tenemos,
Teneis,	<i>you have.</i>	Usted tiene,
Tienen,	<i>they have.</i>	Ustedes tienen,
		Tienen,

## Ejemplos.

{ Tiene el hombre dinero ?  
i Tiene dinero el hombre ? }

## Examples.

Has the man money ?

<sup>1</sup> **Usted**, *sing.*, **ustedes**, *pl.*, were abbreviated in the following way : **Vm.** **V<sup>m</sup>d.** or **V<sup>d</sup>** (for the singular), and **Vms.** **V<sup>m</sup>ds.** or **V<sup>d</sup>s.** (for the plural); but at present **usted** is represented by **V.**, and **ustedes** by **V. V.**

Él tiene dinero y crédito.	He has money and credit.
¿ Que tiene V. ?	What have you ?
Tengo oro y plata.	I have gold and silver.
¿ Que tiene la mujer ?	What has the woman ?
Ella tiene manzanas y peras.	She has apples and pears.
¿ Que tienen V. V. ?	What have you ?
Tenemos pan y queso.	We have bread and cheese.
¿ Tienen fusiles los soldados ?	Have the soldiers any guns ?
Tienen fusiles y sables.	They have guns and sabers.
¿ Tengo yo vino ?	Have I any wine ?
V. tiene poco vino.	You have little wine.
¿ Quien tiene las plumas ?	Who has the pens ?
Las muchachas tienen las plumas.	The girls have the pens.

#### Interrogative Form used Affirmatively.

Tiene V. un hermoso caballo.	You have a fine horse.
Tienen los Ingleses muchos buques.	The English have many ships.
Tiene la señora dos hijos.	The lady has two sons.
Tiene Carlos un lápiz y una pluma.	Charles has a pencil and a pen.

#### Vocabulario.

**El amigo**, *the friend.*  
**El crédito**, *the credit.*  
**El fusil**, *the gun.*  
**El hombre**, *the man.*  
**El pan**, *the bread.*  
**El pollo**, *the chicken.*  
**El queso**, *the cheese.*  
**El sable**, *the saber.*  
**El vino**, *the wine.*

**La mesa**, *the table.*  
**La pera**, *the pear.*  
**La plata**, *the silver.*  
**Algo**, *something, anything.*  
**Aquí**, *here.*  
**Bueno**, *good.*  
**Con**, *with.*  
**En**, *in.*  
**Hoy**, *to-day.*

#### Vocabulary.

**Mucho**, *a, much.*  
**Muchos**, *as, many.*  
**No**, *no.*  
**Pero**, *but.*  
**Poco**, *adv., little.*  
**Qué**, *what.*  
**Señor**, *sir, Mr.*  
**Sí**, *yes.*  
**Sobre**, *on, upon.*

#### Exercise 7.

1. ¿ Tiene V. algo sobre la mesa ? 2. Si, señor, tengo un libro sobre la mesa. 3. ¿ Tiene carne el carnicero ? 4. Tiene carne y pollos. 5. ¿ Tiene el Inglés una casa en la ciudad ? 6. Él tiene dos casas aquí. 7. ¿ Tienen V. V. mucho dinero ? 8. Tenemos poco dinero, pero mucho crédito. 9. ¿ Qué tiene la hija del panadero ? 10. Ella tiene manzanas y peras. 11. ¿ Qué tienen los muchachos ? 12. Tienen cerezas. 13. ¿ A quién escribe Carlos ? 14. El escribe á mi amigo. 15. ¿ Habla V. á los muchachos ? 16. No, señor, mi hermano habla

- á los muchachos y á las muchachas. 17. ¿ Con quien sale V.? 18. Con mi padre y mi madre. 19. ¿ Tiene el general un hijo? 20. Él tiene un hijo y dos hijas. 21. Los comerciantes tienen buenos dependientes. 22. ¿ Qué da V. al pobre hombre? 23. Pan y dinero. 24. Los cazadores tienen buenos perros. 25. ¿ Tienen buenos fusiles? 26. Sí, tienen.

### Exercise 8.

1. Have the generals good horses? 2. They have very good horses. 3. Has the Englishman much money? 4. He has very little.
5. Have the merchants much wine? 6. They have very little wine.
7. Are you Charles's friend? 8. No, Charles is my brother's friend.
9. Have you (any) chickens to-day? 10. Yes, sir, we have chickens and meat.
11. The English have many ships, and the French have many soldiers. 12. My brother has a horse, and I have a dog.
13. We have a very fine theater in the city. 14. Has my brother (any) books on the table?
15. Yes, sir, he has books, pens, and pencils on the table. 16. Do you go out to-day?
17. No, sir, but my brother goes out with my sister. 18. What do you give to Charles?
19. A handsome hat. 20. The baker's sons have a room in my house.
21. To whom do you write? 22. To Henry's brother. 23. We have two dogs in the garden. 24. Have the children a book?
25. They have two.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

**1.** The pronoun **tú**, *thou*, is used more frequently in Spanish than in English. It indicates *familiarity*, *affection*, *intimacy*, and is therefore frequently used among relations, intimate friends, and older persons when addressing children, etc. :

¿ Qué tienes tú, Juanito?      *What have you, Johnny?*

**2. We** is rendered in Spanish by **nos** and **nosotros**, *masc.*; **nosotras**, *fem.*; but **nos** is used in the nominative case only by sovereigns, dignitaries, and tribunals in Church and State, in their official capacity :

Nos, D. N., Obispo de N...	<i>We, D. N., Bishop of N...</i>
Nos los Inquisidores...	<i>We the Inquisitors...</i>

**NOTE.** — In the usual style, **nosotros**, *masc.*, **nosotras**, *fem.*, is always used.

**3. You** is rendered in Spanish by **vos**, **vosotros**, *masc.*, **vosotras**, *fem.*; and also by **usted** (or **V.**) for the singular of both genders, and **ustedes** (or **V. V.**) for the plural.

**Vos** is used only in elevated style, or when addressing the Deity, saints, kings, and sovereigns when the title of Majesty is omitted :

De vos espero alivio, Señor,  
A vos elevo mis súplicas, Rey y  
Señor,  
Vos, Señor, podeis remediar mi  
desgracia,

*From thee I expect relief, O Lord.  
To thee I raise my prayers, King and  
Lord.  
Thou, O Lord, canst relieve my misery.*

**Vosotros** is used by orators and speakers when addressing their auditors.

**Usted** and **ustedes** are used in the usual style and conversation ; the first being used for the singular and the second for the plural. **Usted** being a contraction of **vuestra merced**, *your Lordship*, and **ustedes** a contraction of **vuestras mercedes**, *your Lordships*, always require the verb in the third person singular or plural, as would be the case in English, should we use the same way of addressing persons.

Thus, **tiene usted?** (which is the abbreviation of **tiene vuestra merced?** and is generally written **tiene V.?**) means in reality : *has your Lordship?* and **tienen ustedes?** (which is the abbreviation of **tienen vuestras mercedes?** and is generally written **tienen V. V.?**) means, *have your Lordships?* Accordingly, in Spanish as well as in English, the verb in these two sentences, or others alike, is put in the third person *singular* with the *first* sentence, and in the third person *plural* with the *second*.

It will therefore be sufficient for the student to know the third person singular and the third person plural of the different tenses of a verb to be able to use **usted** and **ustedes** correctly. Thus, instead of expressing himself as in English, that is, instead of employing the second person and saying, for instance : **vosotros teneis**, *you have*; **vosotros sois**, *you are*; **vosotros salis**, *you go out*; **vosotros dais**, *you give*; **vosotros escribis**, *you write*; etc., he will say :

**With usted when addressing one person :**

- Usted tiene,** literally *your Lordship has*, for you (*sing.*) have.  
**Usted es,** " *your Lordship is*, " you (*sing.*) are.  
**Usted sale,** " *your Lordship goes out*, " you (*sing.*) go out.  
**Usted da,** " *your Lordship gives*, " you (*sing.*) give.  
**Usted escribe,** " *your Lordship writes*, " you (*sing.*) write.

**With ustedes when addressing two or more persons :**

- Ustedes tienen,** literally *your Lordships have*, for you (*pl.*) have.  
**Ustedes son,** " *your Lordships are*, " you (*pl.*) are.  
**Ustedes salen,** " *your Lordships go out*, " you (*pl.*) go out.  
**Ustedes dan,** " *your Lordships give*, " you (*pl.*) give.  
**Ustedes escriben,** " *your Lordships write*, " you (*pl.*) write.

NOTE. — We use, in fact, the same form of expressing ourselves in English when we say, speaking to a Judge, an Archbishop, etc.: *Your Honor knows ...; your Grace is ...; etc.*, instead of the plain and usual: *You know ...; you are ...; etc.* In conjugating verbs the student will use **vosotros** as given, but when addressing a person or persons will use **usted** and **ustedes**.

**4.** Verbs are conjugated interrogatively by placing the verb before its subject. This takes place in all cases of interrogation, as is the case with *to have*, *to be*, *to will*, etc.:

<i>i Tengo yo ?</i>	<i>Have I ?</i>
<i>i Tiene el hombre ?</i>	<i>Has the man ?</i>
<i>i Sabe el padre ?</i>	<i>Does the father know (lit. knows the father) ?</i>
<i>i Van los muchachos ?</i>	<i>Do the boys go ?</i>
<i>i Qué dice la señora ?</i>	<i>What does the lady say ?</i>
<i>i Que decian los hombres ?</i>	<i>What did the men say ?</i>
<i>i Sabe V. cuando viene mi padre ?</i>	<i>Do you know when my father comes (lit. when comes my father) ?</i>

**5.** In interrogative sentences it is considered an elegant way of expressing one's self, to place the object before the subject when the latter is not a pronoun :

<i>i Tiene dinero el hombre ?</i>	<i>Has the man any money ?</i>
<i>i Es bueno el vino ?</i>	<i>Is the wine good ?</i>

**6.** Each person of the verb having generally in Spanish, as in Latin, a different termination, the accompanying pronouns may be and are generally left out in conversation, and even in the conjugation, when the sentence is otherwise sufficiently clear.

But **usted** and **ustedes** should not be left out, however, as they accompany the verb in the third person singular and third person plural, as well as **él**, *he*; **ella**, *she*; and **ellos** (masc.), **ellas** (fem.), *they*, and as their omission might create confusion :

Tengo, <i>I have.</i>	Tenemos, <i>we have.</i>
Tienes, <i>thou hast.</i>	Tienen, <i>they have.</i>
Sale, <i>he or she goes out.</i>	Salen, <i>they go out.</i>

OBSERVATION.—In interrogative sentences it is also better to preserve the pronouns.

7. As a sentence may be construed in different ways in Spanish, as will be seen hereafter, the interrogative form may often be found in affirmative sentences :

Tiene V. razon,	<i>You are right.</i>
Es V. muy bueno,	<i>You are very kind.</i>
Habla V. muy bien,	<i>You speak very well.</i>

8. *Some* or *any*, before nouns, are either left out or rendered by **algun**, **alguna**, **algunos**, **algunas**. When standing alone, *alguno*, *alguna*, *algunos*, *algunas* are used :

<i>i</i> Tiene V. vino or algun vino ?	<i>Have you (any) wine ?</i>
Tengo alguno,	<i>I have some.</i>

---

## Leccion V.

Verbs **ser** and **estar**, *to be.*

Present Tense of **ser**, *to be.*

Affirmatively.

Yo soy,	<i>I am.</i>
Tú eres,	<i>thou art.</i>
Él es,	<i>he is.</i>
Ella es,	<i>she is.</i>
Nosotros somos,	<i>we are.</i>
Vosotros sois,	<i>you are.</i>
Usted es (sing.),	<i>you are.</i>
Ustedes son (pl.),	
Ellos son,	<i>they (masc.) are.</i>
Ellas son,	<i>they (fem.) are.</i>

Interrogatively.

Soy yo ?	<i>am I ?</i>
Eres tú ?	<i>art thou ?</i>
Es él ?	<i>is he ?</i>
Es ella ?	<i>is she ?</i>
Somos nosotros ?	<i>are we ?</i>
Sois vosotros ?	<i>are you ?</i>
Es usted (sing.) ?	
Son ustedes (pl.) ?	
Son ellos ?	<i>are they (masc.) ?</i>
Son ellas ?	<i>are they (fem.) ?</i>

## Lesson V.

**Ejemplos.**

La vida es corta.  
 Somos mortales.  
 Mi padre es médico.  
 Mis hermanos son pintores.  
 Carlos es bueno.  
 Juan y Enrique son malos.  
 El profesor es muy docto.  
 V. es muy alto.  
 Los muchachos son pequeños.  
 María es mi hermana.  
 La madre es vieja.  
 El padre es ciego.  
 La muchacha es bonita.  
 La leche es blanca.<sup>1</sup>  
 El plomo es pesado.  
 El reloj es de oro.  
 Los candeleros son de plata.  
 El dinero es mío.  
 La casa es del médico.  
 Este vino es de España.  
 La flor es para mi hermana.  
 La máquina es para copiar cartas.  
 ¿Quién es V. ?  
 El amor de Dios es el principio de la sabiduría.

**Examples.**

Life is short.  
 We are mortal.  
 My father is a physician.  
 My brothers are painters.  
 Charles is good.  
 John and Henry are bad.  
 The professor is very learned.  
 You are very tall.  
 The boys are small.  
 Mary is my sister.  
 The mother is old.  
 The father is blind.  
 The girl is pretty.  
 Milk is white.  
 Lead is heavy.  
 The watch is of gold.  
 The candlesticks are of silver.  
 The money is mine.  
 The house belongs to the physician.  
 This wine is from Spain.  
 The flower is for my sister.  
 The machine is to copy letters.  
 Who are you ?  
 The love of God is the beginning of wisdom.

Present Tense of *estar*, *to be*.

## Affirmatively.

Yo estoy,	<i>I am.</i>
Tú estás,	<i>thou art.</i>
Él está,	<i>he is.</i>
Ella está,	<i>she is.</i>
Nosotros estamos,	<i>we are.</i>
Vosotros estais,	
Usted está ( <i>sing.</i> ),	<i>you are.</i>
Ustedes estan ( <i>pl.</i> ),	
Ellos estan,	<i>they (masc.) are.</i>
Ellas estan,	<i>they (fem.) are.</i>

## Interrogatively.

Estoy yo ?	<i>am I ?</i>
Estás tú ?	<i>art thou ?</i>
Está él ?	<i>is he ?</i>
Está ella ?	<i>is she ?</i>
Estamos nosotros ?	<i>are we ?</i>
Estais vosotros ?	
Está usted ( <i>sing.</i> ) ?	<i>are you ?</i>
Estan ustedes ( <i>pl.</i> ) ?	
Estan ellos ?	<i>are they (masc.) ?</i>
Estan ellas ?	<i>are they (fem.) ?</i>

<sup>1</sup> See L. 8.

**Ejemplos.**

Mi hermana está triste.  
 Yo estoy muy contento.  
 El café está frio.  
 La carne está asada.  
 Los muchachos estan en la calle.  
 Mi amigo está en Paris.  
 Carlos está enfermo.  
 ¿ Donde está mi sombrero ?  
 El sombrero está de moda.

**Examples.**

My sister is sad.  
 I am very pleased.  
 The coffee is cold.  
 The meat is roasted.  
 The boys are in the street.  
 My friend is in Paris.  
 Charles is sick.  
 Where is my hat ?  
 The hat is in the fashion.

**Ser and estar compared.**

Ser bueno, *to be good.*  
 Ser malo, *to be bad (wicked).*  
 Ser vivo, *to be lively.*  
 Ser cansado, *to be tiresome.*

Estar bueno, *to be well (in health).*  
 Estar malo, *to be ill (sick).*  
 Estar vivo, *to be alive.*  
 Estar cansado, *to be tired.*

**Vocabulario.**

**El abogado,** *the lawyer.*  
**El campo,** *the country.*  
**La calle,** *the street.*  
**La puerta,** *the door.*  
**Agrio,** *sour.*  
**Ahora,** *now.*

**Bueno,** *good, well.*  
**Cerrado,** *closed, shut.*  
**Contento,** *pleased, satisfied.*  
**Donde,** *where.*  
**Gracias,** *thank you.*  
**Joven,** *young.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Léjos,** *far.*  
**Londres,** *London.*  
**Malo,** *bad, ill.*  
**Nadie,** *nobody, no one.*  
**Triste,** *sad.*  
**Sabe V.?** *do you know ?*

**Exercise 9.**

1. Los dos hermanos de Carlos estan ahora en Paris. 2. ¿ Quién es V. ? 3. Soy el hijo del médico. 4. ¿ Donde estan los libros ? 5. Estan sobre la mesa en mi cuarto. 6. ¿ Es V. médico ? 7. No, señor, soy abogado. 8. ¿ Es bueno el vino ? 9. Está agrio. 10. Las muchachas estan en el jardin, y los muchachos estan en la calle. 11. La hija del panadero es muy jóven. 12. Juan y Maria estan en la casa del general. 13. Mi casa está muy léjos de aquí. 14. Los dos médicos son Franceses. 15. ¿ Es V. Americano ? 16. No, señor, soy Ingles. 17. ¿ Es V. de Londres ? 18. Sí, señor, soy de Londres, y mi padre es de Liverpool. 19. Los dos hijos del carpintero estan muy malos. 20. ¿ Donde está Juan ? 21. Está con mi hermano. 22. El café es bueno, pero está frio. 23. ¿ Estan V. V. contentos ? 24. Estamos muy contentos ahora. 25. ¿ Quién está en mi cuarto ? 26. Nadie,

el cuarto está cerrado. 27. La hija del general es muy amable.  
 28. ¿Con quién está mi madre? 29. Ella está con mis (*my*) dos hermanas. 30. Los cazadores están en el bosque.

### Exercise 10.

1. Do you know where the book is (where is the book)? 2. The book is on the table. 3. Where is the father now? 4. He is in London. 5. Is he well? 6. He is very well, thank you. 7. Are the Americans and the English friends? 8. They are friends now. 9. Who are you? 10. I am Charles's friend. 11. Where is he? 12. He is in the country. 13. The two sons of the physician are small, but they are very bad. 14. Here is my book. 15. Is the cheese good? 16. The cheese and the bread are very good. 17. Is the baker an American? 18. No, sir, he is a Frenchman. 19. The two hunters are brothers. 20. Are you pleased here? 21. Yes, we have money, and we are pleased. 22. My brother's friend is a lawyer. 23. Who is at the door? 24. A boy with apples. 25. John and Henry are in the city. 26. Where are the chickens? 27. The chickens are now in the garden. 28. The wine is sour and bad. 29. Who is sad? 30. Nobody is sad here.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

**1.** Although the two Spanish verbs ***ser*** and ***estar*** are both rendered in English by the verb ***to be***, they cannot be used indifferently one for the other, and there is perhaps no greater difficulty for the English student than the one attending the proper use of these verbs.

**Ser** is used when the attribute is *inherent* or *essential* to the subject, while ***estar*** is to be used when the attribute is only *accidental* or *temporary*. This, however, will be more clearly shown by the following rules :

**Ser** is used :

1. To express the *condition*, *trade*, *profession*, *employment*, *rank*, *dignity of persons*, etc. :

Ser pintor, *to be a painter.*

Ser general, *to be a general.*

Ser juez, *to be a judge.*

Ser rey, *to be a king.*

Ser librero, *to be a bookseller.*

Ser soldado, *to be a soldier.*

2. To express the *qualities* pertaining to *the mind, the soul, the heart, and disposition* :

Ser virtuoso, <i>to be virtuous.</i>	Ser tierno, <i>to be tender.</i>
Ser hábil, <i>to be skillful.</i>	Ser alegre, <i>to be merry.</i>

3. To express the *qualities* and *defects* of persons and things when deemed permanent :

Ella es bonita, <i>she is pretty.</i>	El hombre es sordo, <i>the man is deaf.</i>
Él es feo, <i>he is ugly.</i>	Pedro es ciego, <i>Peter is blind.</i>

4. To express *general truths* :

La vida es corta, <i>life is short.</i> <sup>1</sup>	La muerte es terrible, <i>death is terrible.</i>
--	--

5. To indicate the *size, volume, etc.*, of persons or things :

Ser chico, <i>to be small.</i>	Ser grueso, <i>to be stout, thick, etc.</i>
Ser grande, <i>to be tall.</i>	

6. To express the *number* of persons or things :

Los enemigos eran diez mil, y nosotros tres éramos solo cinco mil,	<i>The enemies were ten thousand, and we were only five thousand.</i>
---	---

7. To express the *natural qualities* of substances :

La miel es dulce, <i>honey is sweet.</i>	El plomo es pesado, <i>lead is heavy.</i>
--	---

8. In connection with the *materials* of which objects are made :

El reloj es de oro,	<i>The watch is of gold.</i>
Los candeleros son de hierro,	<i>The candlesticks are of iron.</i>

9. To indicate *possession, origin, destination, aptness, etc.*:

El libro es mio,	<i>The book is mine.</i>
Este vino es de Francia,	<i>This wine is from France.</i>
Este muchacho es de Madrid,	<i>This boy is from Madrid.</i>
El libro es para V.,	<i>The book is for you.</i>
Él no es para trabajar,	<i>He is not fit to work.</i>

10. When **to be** means *to happen* :

<i>i</i> Cuando será eso ?	<i>When will that be (happen) ?</i>
----------------------------	-------------------------------------

11. When speaking of day, night, time, etc. :

Es de dia, <i>it is day.</i>	Es tarde, <i>it is late.</i>
Es de noche, <i>it is night.</i>	Es temprano, <i>it is early.</i>

<sup>1</sup> See L. 29, p. 169.

12. When used impersonally and governing the following infinitive with the preposition **de**:

Es de desear que llegue hoy,     *It is desirable that he should arrive to-day.*

**2. Estar** is used :

1. To express the *state of health*:

Estar bueno, *to be well.*     Estar malo, *to be ill.*

2. To express *existence in a locality*:

Estar en el campo,     *To be in the country.*  
Él estaba á la puerta,     *He was at the door.*

3. When joined to certain adjectives to express *a state, a way of being, or feelings and emotions*:

Estar alegre,     *To be merry.*  
Estar contento,     *To be pleased.*  
El agua está caliente,     *The water is warm.*

4. As auxiliary to conjugate a verb in the gerund:

Estoy comiendo, *I am eating.*     Él esta leyendo, *he is reading,* etc.

5. Before adverbs or adverbial expressions denoting *condition*:

Mi sombrero está de moda,     *My hat is in the fashion.*  
Estamos de prisa,     *We are in a hurry.*  
La casa está bien fabricada,     *The house is well built.*

6. To express *intention, willingness, readiness*, and to express that a thing is not completed:

Yo estoy para salir,     *I intend to go out.*  
Yo estaba por echarle de casa,     *I wished to put him out of the house.*  
La casa está por acabar,     *The house is not yet finished.*

7. To express *occupation or disposition of the body or mind*:

Hoy estoy de guardia,     *To-day I am on duty.*  
Él estaba de riña,     *He felt like quarreling.*

8. When speaking of *dignities and offices temporarily held*, **estar** may be used with the preposition **de**:

El general H. está de gobernador de la isla de Cuba,     *General H. is (acting) governor of the island of Cuba.*

It would, however, be perfectly correct to say :

El general H. es gobernador de la isla de Cuba,

the first sentence being only a more elegant way of expressing one's self.

### 3. Ser and estar compared :

**Ser alegre** means *to be of a merry disposition*, whilst **estar alegre** means *to be merry at a certain moment, etc.* These examples, which might be multiplied indefinitely, will be found sufficient to explain the difference which exists in Spanish between **ser** and **estar**, when the attribute is inherent in the subject, or when it is only accidental. (See EXAMPLES.)

### 4. The Indefinite Article is omitted before words indicating *professions* or *nationality*, unless they are preceded by adjectives :

Este hombre es soldado,      *This man is a soldier.*

Es un buen soldado,      *He is a good soldier.*

Él es Frances,      *He is a Frenchman.*

OBSERVATION.—The Indefinite Article may be omitted, however, when the noun is accompanied by an adjective, especially when adjective and noun express but one inseparable idea : **El es buen músico**, *he is a good musician.*

## Lección VI.

### USE OF THE PREPOSITIONS DE AND PARA.

#### Ejemplos.

Pablo tiene un reloj de oro. {

Tenemos dos mesas de mármol.

¿ Tienen V. V. plumas de acero ?

Tenemos plumas de oro y de acero.

Adolfo tiene un chaleco de seda.

El médico tiene una casa de madera.

Los muchachos tienen un tintero {  
de plomo.

## Lesson VI.

#### Examples.

Paul has a gold watch (a watch of gold).

We have two marble tables.

Have you any steel pens ?

We have gold and steel pens.

Adolphus has a silk waistcoat.

The physician has a wooden house.

The boys have a leaden inkstand.

Tenemos una máquina de lavar.  
 Compañía de Relojes de Nueva York.  
 Carruajes de primera clase.  
 Una bomba de vapor.  
 Agua de Florida.  
 Un maestro de escuela.  
 Una máquina de coser.

Mesas para comedor. {

Tinte para el pelo.  
 Polvos para insectos.  
 Efectos para marineros.

We have a washing-machine.  
 New York Watch Company.  
 First-class carriages.  
 A fire-engine.  
 Florida water.  
 A schoolmaster.  
 A sewing-machine.

Dining-room tables (tables for dining-rooms).

Hair-dye (dye for the hair).  
 Insect powders (powder for insects).  
 Sailors' goods (goods for sailors).

### Vocabulario.

**El algodón**, the cotton.  
**El almacén**, the store. } .  
**El arce**, the maple.  
**El azúcar**, the sugar.  
**El billar**, the billiard.  
**El cuchillo**, the knife.  
**El extinguidor**, the extinguisher.  
**El fabricante**, the manufacturer.  
**El fuego**, the fire.  
**El hierro**, the iron.  
**El instrumento**, the instrument.  
**El joyero**, the jeweler.  
**El pedazo**, the piece.  
**El plomo**, the lead.  
**El tiempo**, the time.  
**El tintero**, the inkstand.  
**El vapor**, the steam.  
**El vidrio**,<sup>1</sup> the glass.

### Vocabulary.

**La caja**, the safe, the box.  
**La caña**,<sup>2</sup> the cane.  
**La caoba**, the mahogany.  
**La cerveza**, the beer.  
**La hacienda**, the estate.  
**La seda**, the silk.  
**Allí**, there.  
**Champaña**, Champagne.  
**Célebre**, celebrated.  
**Desde**, since.  
**Escribo**, I write.  
**Para**, for.  
**Quiere V.?** Will you have? Do you wish?  
**Quiero**, I wish, I will have.  
**Señor**, sir.  
**Señora**, madam, Mrs.  
**Vende**, sells.

### Exercise 11.

1. ¿Qué vino tiene V. en la casa?
2. Tengo vino de Champaña.
3. Las plumas de acero de Spencer son muy célebres.
4. Tenemos

<sup>1</sup> **Vidrio**, glass, refers only to the substance called glass, while **vaso** is used for a glass to drink in.

<sup>2</sup> **Caña**, cane, does not refer to a walking-stick, which is **un bastón**.

una caja de hierro en el almacén. 5. Tenemos también un extinguidor de fuego. 6. ¿ Tienen V. V. una mesa de billar ? 7. Tenemos dos. 8. Mi hermano vende instrumentos para joyeros. 9. ¿ Y qué vende V. ? 10. Soy fabricante de mesas para comedor. 11. Mi hermano es dependiente en la Compañía de Manhattan. 12. ¿ Tienen V. V. una máquina de vapor en la hacienda ? 13. Si, señor, tenemos una desde mucho tiempo (a long time). 14. ¿ Quiere V. un paraguas de seda ó de algodón ? 15. Quiero uno de seda. 16. El padre de Enrique tiene una casa de campo. 17. Mi hermana tiene un traje de seda. 18. Tenemos una mesa de caoba. 19. ¿ Quiere V. azúcar de caña ? 20. Quiero azúcar de arce.

### Exercise 12.

1. What will you have ? 2. I wish a piece of bread. 3. Do you write with a gold pen ? 4. No, sir, I write with a steel pen. 5. In what company are you (a) clerk ? 6. In the New York Watch Company. 7. What does your (*su*) brother sell ? 8. He sells silk hats. 9. Have you a glass inkstand ? 10. No, sir, I have a leaden inkstand. 11. What knife will you have ? 12. I wish a butcher's knife. 13. What hat has Henry ? 14. He has a hunter's hat. 15. Does the merchant sell wine ? 16. He sells wine and beer. 17. With whom are the hunters in the wood ? 18. They are there with the young soldier. 19. Have the ladies a fan ? 20. They have two fans.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

1. The *material of which a thing is made* is indicated by the preposition **de, of, from**, between the name of the thing and that of the material :

Un sombrero de seda,	<i>A silk hat</i> (lit. <i>a hat of silk</i> ).
Un reloj de oro,	<i>A gold watch</i> ( <i>a watch of gold</i> ).

2. The word representing the *nature, species, locality or quality-of a thing*, which in English is placed first, comes second in Spanish, and is joined to the first noun by **de, of, from** :

Un traje de verano,	<i>A summer dress.</i>
Agua de lluvia,	<i>Rain-water.</i>
Vino de Burdeos,	<i>Bordeaux wine, claret.</i>
Azúcar de caña,	<i>Sugar-cane.</i>

3. The word representing *a particular use, appendage, purpose, physical or moral property, place where things are kept*, etc., comes second in Spanish, and is generally joined to the first noun by the prepositions **para**, *for*; or **de**, *of, from*:

Máquina para gas,	<i>Gas-machine.</i>
Jaulas para pájaros,	<i>Bird-cages.</i>
Estante para sombreros,	<i>Hat-stand.</i>
Máquinas de coser,	<i>Sewing-machines.</i>

---

## Leccion VII.

## Lesson VII.

### THE NEGATIVE.

**No tener**, *not to have.*

Negatively:

Yo no tengo (no tengo),	<i>I have not.</i>
Tú no tienes,	<i>thou hast not.</i>
Él no tiene,	<i>he has not.</i>
Ella no tiene,	<i>she has not.</i>
Nosotros no tenemos,	<i>we have not.</i>
Vosotros no teneis,	
Usted (sing.) no tiene,	
Ustedes (pl.) no tienen,	
Ellos no tienen,	<i>they (masc.) have not.</i>
Ellas no tienen,	<i>they (fem.) have not.</i>

Negatively and Interrogatively:

No tengo yo ?	<i>have I not ?</i>
No tienes tú ?	<i>hast thou not ?</i>
No tiene él ?	<i>has he not ?</i>
No tiene ella ?	<i>has she not ?</i>
No tenemos nosotros ?	<i>have we not ?</i>
No teneis vosotros ?	
No tiene usted (sing.) ?	
No tienen ustedes (pl.) ?	<i>have you not ?</i>
No tienen ellos ?	<i>have they (masc.) not ?</i>
No tienen ellas ?	<i>have they (fem.) not ?</i>

**Ser and estar, to be.**

Negatively :

Yo no soy, }  
 Yo no estoy, }  
 etc.            etc.

Negatively and Interrogatively :

No soy yo ? }  
 No estoy yo ? }  
 etc.            etc.

**Negative with****Jamas,** never, ever.**Nada,** nothing, not anything.**Nadie,** nobody, not anybody.**Ni,** neither, nor.

Yo no tengo nada, or nada tengo. }

Yo no quiero ninguno, or ninguno quiero.

Él no está jamas en casa, or jamas está él en casa.

Él no tiene nunca dinero, or nunca tiene él dinero.

No sale nadie, or nadie sale.

No tengo ni pan ni queso, or ni pan ni queso tengo.

**Ninguno,** (sing.) } no one, none, no,**Ningunos,** (pl.) } not any.**Nunca,** never.

I have nothing ; I don't have anything.

I don't wish any.

He is never at home.

He never has any money.

Nobody goes out.

I have neither bread nor cheese.

**Ejemplos.**

¿ Es pobre el hombre ?

No es pobre, es rico.

¿ No tiene V. dinero ?

Ni dinero ni crédito tengo.

¿ No quiere V. pan ?

Nada quiero hoy.

¿ No sale mi padre hoy ?

Él no sale.

Luisa no es amable.

¿ Vende sombreros el comerciante ?

Él no vende ningunos.

¿ Qué tiene V. en la caja ?

Nada tengo.

Nadie sabe la lección.

Isabel no es dichosa.

Ni libros ni plumas tengo.

**Examples.**

Is the man poor ?

He is not poor, he is rich.

Have you no money ?

I have neither money nor credit.

Don't you wish any bread ?

I don't wish anything to-day.

Does not my father go out to-day ?

He does not go out.

Louisa is not amiable.

Does the merchant sell hats ?

He does not sell any.

What have you in the box ?

I have nothing.

Nobody knows the lesson.

Isabel is not happy.

I have neither books nor pens.

## Vocabulario.

**El aceite**, the oil.  
**La lámpara**, the lamp.  
**La lección**, the lesson.  
**La luz**, the light.  
**Abajo**, down stairs.  
**Alguno**, some, any, some one, any one, somebody, anybody.  
**Aquello**, that, that thing.

**Compra V.?** do you buy?  
**Compro**, I buy.  
**Esto**, this, this thing.  
**Jamas**, never, ever.  
**Listo**, ready.  
**Nada**, nothing, not anything.  
**Nadie**, nobody, not anybody.  
**Ni**, neither, nor.  
**Ninguno**, not any, none, no.

## Vocabulary.

**Nunca**, never.  
**Porqué?** why?  
**Porque**, because.  
**Sabe V.?** do you know?  
**Yo sé**, I know.  
**Sin**, without.  
**Todavía**, yet.  
**Vendo**, I sell.

## Exercise 13.

1. *¿ Tiene V. dinero hoy ?*
2. *Tengo dinero, pero no tengo pan en la casa.*
3. *¿ Está malo el muchacho ?*
4. *No está malo hoy, está muy bueno.*
5. *¿ Está aquí el panadero ?*
6. *El panadero no está aquí, pero el carnicero está aquí.*
7. *¿ Es V. el amigo de Carlos ?*
8. *No, señor, soy el amigo de Enrique.*
9. *¿ Quiere V. un pedazo de pan con queso ?*
10. *Quiero pan, pero sin queso.*
11. *¿ Quiere V. el dinero ?*
12. *Todavía no.*
13. *¿ Donde está Juan ?*
14. *No está aquí, está abajo.*
15. *¿ No está la casa del general en la calle de Madrid ?*
16. *El general no tiene casa aquí.*
17. *¿ Quiere V. esto ó aquello ?*
18. *Quiero esto, pero no aquello.*
19. *¿ Tienen pan los muchachos ?*
20. *Tienen pan, pero no tienen carne.*
21. *¿ No tiene V. oro ?*
22. *No tengo oro, pero tengo plata.*
23. *¿ Porqué no está V. en el jardín con los muchachos ?*
24. *Porque no quiero.*
25. *¿ Es rico el médico ?*
26. *No es rico, pero tiene una casa en Nueva York.*
27. *¿ Porqué no tiene V. luz en el cuarto ?*
28. *Porque no tengo aceite para mi lámpara.*
29. *¿ Compra V. vino ó cerveza ?*
30. *No compro ni vino ni cerveza ; no quiero nada.*
31. *Nunca sabe V. la lección.*
32. *¿ Tiene alguno mi libro ?*
33. *Nadie tiene el libro.*

## Exercise 14.

1. *Have you a silk umbrella ?*
2. *I have two umbrellas, but not of silk.*
3. *Are you a physician ?*
4. *No, sir, I am a merchant.*
5. *Have you not a store in Broadway ?*
6. *No, sir, my store is not in Broadway.*
7. *Are you not ready ?*
8. *No, sir, not yet.*
9. *The Frenchman and the Englishman are not friends.*
10. *Have the soldiers any guns ?*
11. *They have no guns, but they have sabers.*
12. *The wine is not good ; do you know why ?*
13. *I don't know*

why. 14. Have you a theater in the city? 15. We have no theater yet. 16. Who is in the garden? 17. Nobody is in the garden. 18. Have you anything for my brother? 19. I have nothing to-day. 20. Has John any friends? 21. He has neither friends nor money. 22. Do you know the lesson to-day? 23. Nobody knows the lesson. 24. Why not? 25. Because we are sick. 26. Are the boys in the room? 27. The boys are not in the room, but the girls are there. 28. What do you sell to Henry? 29. I don't sell anything to anybody. 30. The trees of the garden are not green. 31. Is Charles with any one in the room? 32. No, sir, with no one.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

- 1.** In negative sentences, **no** is placed before the verb:

Yo no tengo,	<i>I have not.</i>
¿No quiere él?	<i>Does he not wish?</i>
¿No es V.?	<i>Are you not?</i>
Él no quiere,	<i>He does not wish.</i>

- 2.** The Spaniards use a double negative to render the negation stronger:

No quiero nada,	<i>I wish for nothing; I don't wish anything.</i>
No tengo ninguno,	<i>I have none.</i>
No le hablo nunca,	<i>I never speak to him.</i>

OBSERVATION.—The adverb **no** is, however, omitted when we place the other negative at the beginning of the sentence:

Nada quiero. Ninguno tengo. Nunca le hablo.

- 3.** **Jamas** and **nunca** have the same meaning in the negative, and are generally placed at the beginning of the sentence, without the adverb **no**:

**Jamas** vi tal cosa, or **nunca** vi tal cosa, *I never saw such a thing.*

OBSERVATION.—**Jamas** seems, however, preferable in the Present Tense, and **nunca** in the Past Tense. It would, therefore, be more correct to say: **Nunca tuvo amigos**, *he never had any friends*; but **jamas tiene dinero**, *he never has any money.*

- 4.** **Jamas** and **nunca**, or **nunca** and **jamas**, are often connected to give more expression to the sentence:

Nunca jamas lo diré,	<i>I shall never tell it.</i>
No le olvidaré por nunca jamas,	<i>I shall never forget him.</i>

**5. Jamas** is often connected with **por siempre**, or **para siempre**, *for ever*; and means quite the opposite of **nunca**:  
**Por** or **Para siempre** jámas me acordaré de él, *I shall remember him forever.*

NOTE.—**Jamas**, when not accompanied by **no**, and not at the beginning of the sentence, means *ever*:

¿ Ha visto V. jamas tal cosa ?      *Have you ever seen such a thing ?*

**6.** The negative **ni** may precede the adverbs **jamas**, **nunca**, and even the other negatives, as **nada**, **nadie**, etc. :

No conozco su casa, ni nunca iré,      *I don't know his house, nor shall I ever go.*

Ni nunca le ví, ni le veré,      *I never saw him, nor will I see him.*

Eso no es verdad, ni nadie lo dirá,      *It is not true, nor will any one say so.*

Ni yo, ni ninguno de mis amigos irémos allá,      *Neither I nor any of my friends will go there.*

**7.** Two negatives may come after the verb :

No quiero tampoco nada,      *I don't wish anything either.*

Él no quiere jamas nada,      *He never wishes for anything.*

**8.** Although **no** is used to form the negative, it is used sometimes to give more strength to the affirmative :

Mejor es el trabajo que no la ociosidad,      *Labor is preferable to idleness.*

OBSERVATION.—In sentences like the above, **no** might be omitted without altering the sense, and should in fact be omitted, if its addition should give rise to any doubtful meaning.

**9. Ninguno** (of which the feminine is **ninguna**, and the plural **ningunos**, *masc.*, **ningunas**, *fem.*) drops the last letter before a masculine noun in the singular :

No tengo ningun libro,      *I have no book.*

The same word is used for the English **no** (meaning *not any*) before a noun :

Ningun hombre, *no man.*      Ninguna mujer, *no woman.*

Ningunos hombres, *no men.*      Ningunas mujeres, *no women.*

When standing alone it means *none, no one, etc.*

OBSERVATION.—*Have you no book?* may be rendered in Spanish by : ; **No tiene V. un libro ?** or by : ; **No tiene V. ningun libro ?** The same

rule holds good for the plural : *Have you no books?* **¿No tiene V. libros?**  
**¿No tiene V. ningunos libros?**

**10. No**, connected with a pronoun, an adverb, and even with other parts of speech, is generally placed last : .

Yo no, <i>not I.</i>	Así no, <i>not so.</i>
Eso no, <i>not so.</i>	Todavía no, <i>not yet.</i>
Hoy no, <i>not to-day.</i>	

**11. Alguno** (of which the feminine is **alguna**, and the plural **algunos**, *masc.*, **algunas**, *fem.*), meaning *some*, *any*, *some one*, *any one*, *somebody*, *anybody*, drops the last letter (like **ninguno**) before a masculine noun in the singular, and may either come in the sentence or be omitted :

Tiene V. algun dinero? or }      *Have you any money?*  
¿Tiene V. dinero? }

OBSERVATION.—The student should be careful never to translate **not anything** by *no algo*, nor **not anybody** by *no alguno*, — a mistake which is very common among beginners. **Nada, nadie, or ninguno** must be used in these cases.

## Leccion VIII.

## **Lesson VIII.**

## ADJECTIVES. FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

### Ejemplos.

El muchacho es bueno.  
La muchacha es buena.  
El caballo es hermoso.  
La casa es hermosa.  
El hijo es feo.  
La hija es bonita.

El caballero es Frances.  
La señora es Inglesa.

Antonio es holgazán.  
Cristina es holgazana.  
José es trabajador.  
Juana es trabajadora.

### Examples.

The boy is good.  
The girl is good.  
The horse is fine.  
The house is fine.  
The son is ugly.  
The daughter is pretty.

The gentleman is French.  
The lady is English.

Anthony is lazy.  
Christina is lazy.  
Joseph is industrious.  
Jane is industrious.

El padre es grave.	The father is grave.
La madre es alegre.	The mother is lively.
El azúcar es dulce.	The sugar is sweet.
La yerba es verde.	The grass is green.
El trabajo es fácil.	The work is easy.
La flor es azul.	The flower is blue.
Fernando es jóven.	Ferdinand is young.
Julia es cortes.	Julia is polite.

**Agreement of Adjectives.**

¿ Es Guillermo bueno ó malo ?	Is William good or bad ?
¿ Es Isabel buena ó mala ?	Is Isabel good or bad ?
El tio y el padre son viejos.	The uncle and the father are old.
La tia y la madre son viejas.	The aunt and the mother are old.
El tio y la tia son ricos.	The uncle and aunt are rich.

**Adjectives used Substantively.**

El pobre.	The poor man.
El pobre viejo.	The poor old man.
La pobre vieja.	The poor old woman.
Un ciego. — Una ciega.	A blind man. — A blind woman.
El sabio es prudente.	The wise man is prudent.
El grande. — La grande.	The large one(masc.).—The large one(fem.).

**Vocabulario.**

El café, the coffee.
El conde, the count.
El criado, the servant, m.
El primo, the cousin, m.
El rey, the king.
El té, the tea.
El trabajo, the work.
El traje, the dress
La condesa, the countess.
La criada, the servant-girl.
La isla, the island.
La legumbre, the vegetable.

**Vocabulary.**

La mujer, the woman, wife.	Fácil, easy.
La prima, the cousin, f.	Feliz, happy.
La reina, the queen.	Feo, ugly, homely.
La torre, the tower.	Fiel, faithful.
Agradable, agreeable.	Infeliz, unhappy.
Alegre, lively.	Orgulloso, proud.
Aleman, German.	Sabio, wise.
Alto, high.	Sordo, deaf.
Bonito, pretty.	Tímido, timid.
Ciego, blind.	Valiente, brave.
Difícil, difficult.	Viejo, old.
Enfermo, sick, ill.	Tonto, stupid.

**Exercise 15.**

1. El hijo de Juan es muy tonto. 2. Las dos hijas del panadero son muy bonitas. 3. El padre del comerciante es todavía muy jóven.

4. Los soldados del príncipe son muy valientes. 5. Mi lección es muy difícil. 6. El primo y la prima son feos. 7. La mujer (*wife*) de Pedro es sorda. 8. El pobre viejo está malo. 9. ¿Qué pedazo quiere V.? — Quiero el grande. 10. Las dos señoras son alemanas. 11. Los caballos de mi tío son negros. 12. La torre es muy alta. 13. El conde es orgulloso, pero la condesa es muy amable. 14. El hermano de Luisa es muy feliz. 15. Las dos muchachas son hermanas. 16. ¿Cuántos criados tiene V.? 17. Tengo dos criados y tres criadas. 18. Mi hermana tiene un hermoso traje de seda. 19. El rey de la isla es viejo, pero la reina es joven. 20. El general tiene una hermosa casa en el campo. 21. ¿Es bueno el café? 22. El café es bueno, pero el té es malo. 23. ¿Qué vende la mujer? 24. Vende buenas manzanas. 25. ¿Por qué está V. triste? 26. Porque mi padre está enfermo. 27. La ciudad es pequeña, pero muy agradable. 28. El perro es fiel. 29. ¿Están V. V. contentas, señoras? 30. Estamos muy contentas ahora. 31. Las cerezas no son dulces.

### Exercise 16.

1. Are the horses good?
2. They are good, but small.
3. Have you (any) flowers in the two gardens?
4. We have flowers in the little one, and vegetables in the large one.
5. Why are you so sad, madam?
6. Because the children are sick.
7. The French women are lively and amiable.
8. The houses of New York are high.
9. The English women are handsome.
10. The general's sister is happy, but his (*su*) brother is unhappy.
11. The father, mother, and children are sick.
12. The houses of the city are large.
13. Are the two ladies American?
14. No, sir, they are German.
15. Is the woman blind?
16. She is deaf.
17. Is the baker's daughter pretty?
18. She is very homely, but very amiable.
19. My work is easy, but my brother's work is very difficult.
20. Louisa and Mary are cousins.
21. Mary is very lively, but Louisa is very timid.
22. Charles's father is wise and prudent.
23. Henry's brother is very rich, but he is not proud.
24. Julia and Mary are the good friends of my sister.
25. Have you (any) wine in the house?
26. We have no wine, but we have very good beer.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** Adjectives agree in Spanish, as in almost all other languages, in gender and number with the noun which they qualify.

Adjectives ending in **o** form their feminine by changing **o** into **a**, as :

Bueno (*m.*), buena (*f.*), *good*; Malo (*m.*), mala (*f.*), *bad*;

Alto (*m.*), alta (*f.*), *high*; etc.

The same rule applies to nouns having a feminine :

Un panadero, *a baker*; una panadera, *a (female) baker*, or *a baker's wife*.

Un criado, *a (male) servant*; una criada, *a (female) servant*.

Un tío, *an uncle*; una tía, *an aunt*.

Mi primo, *my (male) cousin*; mi prima, *my (female) cousin*.

Mi hermano, *my brother*; mi hermana, *my sister*.

Un viudo, *a widower*; una viuda, *a widow*.

Un cocinero, *a (male) cook*; una cocinera, *a (female) cook*.

**OBSERVATIONS.** — Augmentatives and Diminutives ending in **ete** or **ote** also change the last letter into **a** for the feminine :

Regordete (*m.*), regordeta (*f.*), *small and stout*;

Altote (*m.*), altota (*f.*), *very tall*; etc.

**2.** Adjectives ending in **n** add an **a** for the feminine :

Holgazán, *m.*, *idle*; holgazana, *f.*      Harón, *m.*, *lazy*; harona, *f.*

**EXCEPTIONS.** — **Ruin**, *contemptible*; **común**, *common*; and all Adjectives ending in **en**, as **joven**, *young*; remain unchanged.

**3.** Adjectives referring to the nationality and ending with a consonant add **a** for the feminine :

<b>Frances</b> , <i>m.</i> ,	<i>French</i> ;	<i>francesa</i> , <i>f.</i>
------------------------------	-----------------	-----------------------------

<b>Ingles</b> , <i>m.</i> ,	<i>English</i> ;	<i>inglesa</i> , <i>f.</i>
-----------------------------	------------------	----------------------------

<b>Aleman</b> , <i>m.</i> ,	<i>German</i> ;	<i>alemana</i> , <i>f.</i>
-----------------------------	-----------------	----------------------------

<b>Irlandes</b> , <i>m.</i> ,	<i>Irish</i> ;	<i>irlandesa</i> , <i>f.</i>
-------------------------------	----------------	------------------------------

<b>Español</b> , <i>m.</i> ,	<i>Spanish</i> ;	<i>española</i> , <i>f.</i>
------------------------------	------------------	-----------------------------

**NOTE.** — Among the Adjectives of this last class, some are found that terminate in **a**, and do not undergo any change in the feminine, as **persa**, *Persian*; **moscovita**, *Moscovite*; etc.

**4.** Adjectives ending in **or** also add **a** for the feminine :

**Trabajador**, m., *industrious, diligent*;      **trabajadora**, f.

**Traidor**, m., *treacherous*;      **traidora**, f.

**Mayor**, *greater*; **menor**, *smaller*; and a few others, like **anterior**, **anterior**; etc., form an exception to this rule.

NOTE.—Most of the Adjectives ending in **or** are often used substantively :

Un trabajador (*m.*), una trabajadora (*f.*), *a worker*;

Un traidor, *a traitor*; una traidora, *a traitress*.

**5.** Those Adjectives which end in the masculine with any other letter do not change in the feminine :

Un hombre cortes, *a polite man*; una mujer cortes, *a polite woman*.

Un hombre grave, *a grave man*; una materia grave, *a grave matter*.

El trabajo es fácil, *the work is easy*; la cosa es fácil, *the thing is easy*.

**6.** When an Adjective relates to two or more nouns in the singular, it must be put in the plural :

El padre y el hijo son buenos,      *The father and son are good*.

An Adjective qualifying two or more nouns of different genders is put in the masculine plural :

El padre y la madre son ricos,      *The father and mother are rich*.

OBSERVATION.—When, however, the Adjective stands near a feminine noun in the plural it must agree with the feminine noun, but such constructions must be avoided as much as possible, and it is preferable to qualify each noun by an Adjective having a corresponding meaning, or select an Adjective having but one termination for both genders :

Los caudales y la hacienda eran grandes,      *The capital and the property were large*.

El general tiene un valor maravilloso y una constancia portentosa,      *The general has a wonderful bravery and persistence (is wonderfully brave and persistent)*.

**7.** Adjectives are often used substantively either in the singular or plural :

El bueno y el malo,      *The good and the bad one*.

Los ricos y los pobres,      *The rich and the poor*.

## Leccion IX.

## Lesson IX.

## PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

## Ejemplos.

## Examples.

## Adjectives preceding the Noun.

Mateo es un buen muchacho.  
 Carolina es una hermosa muchacha.  
 ¡Qué escelente vino!  
 ¿Dónde está la jóven Agata?  
 Tengo un bonito libro.  
 El pulpero tiene dulce miel.  
 Mi amigo tiene un gran caballo.  
 Domingo es mi grande amigo.

Matthew is a good boy.  
 Caroline is a handsome girl.  
 What an excellent wine!  
 Where is young Agatha?  
 I have a pretty book.  
 The grocer has sweet honey.  
 My friend has a famous horse, *m.*  
 Dominic is my great (good) friend.

## Adjectives following the Noun.

Tenemos un caballo blanco.  
 Tengo un libro frances.  
 Aprendo la lengua española.  
 Tengo una mesa redonda.  
 El juez es un hombre justo.  
 Vivo en la calle nueva.  
 Pedro es un hombre viejo.  
 Octavio es un muchacho feo.  
 El comerciante es un hombre muy rico.

We have a white horse.  
 I have a French book.  
 I learn the Spanish language.  
 I have a round table.  
 The judge is a just man.  
 I live in the new street.  
 Peter is an old man.  
 Octavius is a homely boy.  
 The merchant is a very rich man.

## Vocabulario.

**El animal**, *the animal*.  
**El buque**, *the ship, the vessel*.  
**El capitán**, *the captain*.  
**El discípulo**, *the pupil*.  
**El oficial**, *the officer*.  
**El paño**, *the cloth*.  
**El puerto**, *the port*.  
**El río**, *the river*.  
**El sastre**, *the tailor*.  
**El tomo**, *the volume*.  
**La escuela**, *the school*.  
**La historia**, *the history*.  
**La rosa**, *the rose*.  
**La vaca**, *the cow*.  
**Azul**, *blue*.

## Vocabulary.

**Blanco**, *white*.  
**Buenos días**, *good morning, good day*.  
**Colorado**, *red*.  
**Dichoso**, *happy*.  
**Era**, *was*.  
**Esclente**, *excellent*.  
**Español**, *Spanish, Spaniard*.  
**Inglaterra**, *England*.  
**Inteligente**, *intelligent*.  
**Mismo**, *same*.  
**Obediente**, *obedient*.  
**Primero**, *first*.  
**Ruso**, *Russian*.  
**Si**, *if*.  
**Util**, *useful*.

**Exercise 17.**

1. ¿ Tienen ustedes una vaca ? 2. Sí, tenemos una vaca negra y blanca. 3. El perro es un animal fiel y útil. 4. Don Juan es un hombre muy amable. 5. Los dos niños están enfermos, la pobre madre está muy triste. 6. La señora con el traje negro es la hermana del oficial inglés. 7. ¿ Quiere V. pan blanco ó pan negro ? 8. No quiero pan. 9. El hijo del general es un jóven inteligente. 10. ¿ Sabe V. si el comerciante tiene paño azul ? 11. El no tiene paño azul, pero tiene escelente paño negro. 12. ¿ Tiene V. el primer tomo de la Historia de Inglaterra ? 13. Tengo los dos primeros tomos. 14. El hermano de María es muy rico, tiene dos casas grandes y hermosas en la calle nueva. 15. ¿ Dónde está el buque ruso ? 16. Está en el puerto nuevo. 17. ¿ Buenos días, señora, donde está la criada ? 18. Está en el cuarto grande. 19. ¿ Quién es el primer discípulo de la escuela ? 20. Yo no sé quién es el primero. 21. El sastre tiene un hijo ciego. 22. El capitán es un buen soldado. 23. El padre de Enrique es dichoso, porque tiene un hijo obediente. 24. Napoleón era un gran general. 25. ¿ Dónde está el Río Colorado ? 26. Yo no sé.

**Exercise 18.**

1. The English drink (*bebén*) beer, good wine, and excellent tea.  
 2. We have good friends in the city. 3. Mary's mother is already an old woman. 4. The general is a prudent soldier. 5. The two English captains have large ships. 6. We have white roses in the garden. 7. The children are sick because they eat (*comen*) green apples. 8. Louisa's mother is an unhappy woman. 9. The butcher has good meat to-day. 10. Have you French or English money ? 11. We have neither French nor English money, we have American gold. 12. The lesson of to-day is a difficult lesson. 13. Paris is a large city. 14. The count is a proud man, but the countess is an amiable lady. 15. The island of Cuba is a fine island. 16. Do you sell French wines ? 17. I sell French and Spanish wines. 18. My uncle has a fine estate in Cuba. 19. The sons and daughters of the merchant are small. 20. Who is the tall gentleman in the garden ? 21. The gentleman with the white hat is my uncle. 22. Are you the brother of the Russian captain ? 23. No, sir, I am the cousin of the German captain. 24. Has the captain a new ship ? 25. No, sir, he has the same old ship.-

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** Adjectives in Spanish, as in French, are either placed before the noun which they qualify, or after it ; but not in such a way as to leave their position to the discretion of the speaker or writer. There are many cases, in fact, where the adjective could not be placed before the noun. It is not always possible to give a satisfactory reason why certain adjectives should sometimes precede, and at other times follow the noun ; but, generally, they appear to be more emphatic when placed before the noun. The Spaniards consult taste, elegance, and harmony in their collocation, whilst perfection in this regard can only be acquired by the reading of good authors.

The following rules may, however, be followed in most cases.

**2.** Adjectives generally placed *before* the noun are :

1. The numeral Adjectives when accompanied by the article :

El primer tomo, *the first volume.*      La tercera casa, *the third house.*

2. Adjectives expressing a quality pertaining to the very nature of the noun which they qualify :

Un poderoso emperador,      *A powerful emperor.*

Un rico banquero,      *A rich banker.*

3. Adjectives when taken figuratively :

Un delicioso viaje,      *A delightful journey.*

4. Adjectives used in exclamatory sentences :

¡ Admirable accion !      *Admirable action !*

5. Adjectives used emphatically :

Gran valor ha sido el de Pedro,      *Peter's valor has been great.*

6. Adjectives expressing a special and essential property :

Dulce miel, *sweet honey.*      Amarga adelfa, *bitter oleander.*

NOTE. — Should we say **miel dulce, adelfa amarga**, it might imply that there exist honey and oleander of a different taste.

OBSERVATION.—Those Adjectives which are placed *before* the noun may generally be placed after it without any incorrectness, as :

Un buen hombre, or un hombre bueno, *a good man.*

Una casa hermosa, or una hermosa casa, *a fine house*; etc.

There are cases, however, when the Adjectives have different meanings according to their place *before* or *after* the noun :

Una cierta cosa, *A certain thing.*

Una cosa cierta, *A sure thing.*

Un pobre hombre, *A poor man* (poor in wits).

Un hombre pobre, *A poor man* (poor in money).

**3.** In most other cases Adjectives are placed *after* the noun. They are more specially so :

1. When the Adjective denotes *color*, *nationality*, *shape*, and *taste*:

Un caballo blanco, *a white horse.*      Un libro inglés, *an English book.*

Una mesa redonda, *a round table.*      Vino agrio, *sour wine.*

2. When the Adjective has the form of the Past Participle of a verb :

Una ventana cerrada, *A closed window.*

Una puerta abierta, *An open door.*

3. When the Adjective may be used substantively:

Un hombre justo, } *A just man.*      Un hombre malvado, } *A wicked man.*  
Un justo,    Un malvado,

4. When the Adjective does not express a special or essential property pertaining to the noun :

Una calle ancha, *A broad street.*

Un hombre feo, *An ugly man.*

Una casa vieja, *An old house.*

4. When two or more Adjectives qualify the same noun, it is preferable to place them *after* the noun :

Es un hombre sabio, justo y poderoso, *He is a wise, just, and powerful man.*

5. The Spaniards use the same word to designate *Englishman* and *English*, *Frenchman* and *French*, *Spaniard* and *Spanish*, etc.;

but they write the word with a capital letter when used substantively, and with a small letter in other cases :

Un Español, *a Spaniard*; un libro español, *a Spanish book*.  
Un Ingles, *an Englishman*; un buque inglés, *an English ship*.

**6.** The Spaniards use instead of *Mr.* and *Mrs.*, **Don**, *m.*, and **Doña**, *f.*, before Christian names, and **el Señor**, *m.*, **la Señora**, *f.*, before family names :

Don Juan, <i>Mr. John</i> .	El Señor Hernandez, <i>Mr. Hernandez</i> .
Doña Maria, <i>Mrs. Mary</i> .	La Señora Smith, <i>Mrs. Smith</i> .
El Sr. D <sup>r</sup> . Carlos Marty, <i>Mr. Charles Marty</i> .	

REMARKS ON CERTAIN ADJECTIVES.—1. **Alguno**, *any one, anybody, some one, somebody*; **bueno**, *good*; **malo**, *bad, ill*; **ninguno**, *none, no one, nobody*; **postrero**, *last*; **primero**, *first*; **tercerº**,<sup>1</sup> *third*; **uno**, *a, an, one*; drop the **o** before a masculine noun in the singular :

Buen amo, <i>good master</i> .	El primer hombre, <i>the first man</i> .
Ningun libro, <i>no book</i> .	Un hábil médico, <i>a skillful physician</i> ; etc.

But if they come *after* the noun, they preserve the **o** :

Un hombre malo, <i>a bad man</i> .	Libro tercero; <i>third book</i> ; etc.
------------------------------------	---

The **o** is also preserved whenever the noun referring to the Adjective is not expressed :

Es bueno,	<i>He is good.</i>
- El primero de todos,	<i>The first of all.</i>
Uno de estos señores,	<i>One of these gentlemen</i> ; etc.

2. **Santo**, *saint*, drops the last syllable before proper names of saints :

San Pedro, <i>St. Peter</i> ;	San Juan, <i>St. John</i> ; etc.
-------------------------------	----------------------------------

OBSERVATION.—The names **Domingo**, *Dominic*; **Tomas**, *Thomas*; **Tomé**, *Torribio*, are excepted from this rule ; we say, therefore,

Santo Domingo, <i>St. Dominic</i> ;	Santo Tomas, <i>St. Thomas</i> .
-------------------------------------	----------------------------------

However, when speaking of *the island of St. Thomas*, we say, **la isla de san Tomas**, without any special reason for this deviation.

3. **Grande** drops the last syllable before a masculine noun beginning

---

<sup>1</sup> **Tercero**, *third*, may preserve the **o** in all cases, and we may say : **el tercer dia**, or **el tercero dia**, *the third day*.

with a consonant, whenever it means *great in merit or qualities, celebrated or famous*:

Una gran mujer,	<i>A distinguished woman.</i>
Un gran poeta,	<i>A great poet.</i>
Un gran caballo,	<i>An excellent or famous horse.</i>

NOTE.—If the noun begins with a vowel or an **h**, *grande* or *gran* may be used indiscriminately.

**Grande** preserves the last syllable if it only expresses *extent or dimension*, and is then placed preferably *after* the noun:

Una casa grande, <i>a large house.</i>	Un campo grande, <i>a large field.</i>
El teatro grande de Burdós es un gran teatro,	<i>The large theatre in Bordeaux is a splendid theatre.</i>

---

## Leccion X.

### DIMINUTIVE AND AUGMENTATIVE NOUNS.

#### Ejemplos.

- Juanito tiene un perrito.  
¡Qué bonita casita !  
¿Dónde está mi hermanita ?  
Está con la mujercita.  
El caballito de mi hermanito es un bonito animalito.  
Dos lámparitas ardian en el cuartito.  
Hay pececitos en el río.  
El pobrecito está malo.  
El hombrecillo quiere dinero.  
Yo no quiero ese perrillo.  
Mi mesa es muy chiquita.  
Tenemos un jardincito en el campo.  
El señorito y la señorita están aquí.  
Enrique es un muchachón y su padre un hombronazo.  
La hermana de Pedro es una mujeronita.

## Lesson X.

#### Examples.

- Johnny has a little dog.  
What a pretty little house !  
Where is my little sister ?  
She is with the little woman.  
My little brother's little horse is a pretty little animal.  
Two small lamps were burning in the little room.  
There are little fishes in the river.  
The poor little fellow is sick.  
The miserable little man wants money.  
I don't wish that ugly little dog.  
My table is very small.  
We have a little garden in the country.  
The young gentleman and the young lady are here.  
Henry is a big fat boy and his father a big strong man.  
Peter's sister is a big stout woman.

**Vocabulario.**

- El autor,** *the author.*  
**El bastonazo,** *the blow (with a stick).*  
**El gusto,** *the pleasure.*  
**El ladron,** *the thief.*  
**El pájaro,** *the bird.*  
**El patio,** *the yard.*  
**El pícaro,** *the rogue.*  
**El pueblo,** *the town, village.*  
**El ricachon,** *the very rich man.*  
**El talento,** *the talent.*  
**Los contornos,** *the suburbs.*  
**La boca,** *the mouth.*  
**La callejuela,** *the lane.*  
**La cara,** *the face.*  
**La cruz,** *the cross.*

**Vocabulary.**

- La especulacion,** *the speculation.*  
**La flor,** *the flower.*  
**La legua,** *the league.*  
**La mano,** *the hand.*  
**La pelea,** *the fight.*  
**La pieza,** *the piece.*  
**La puñalada,** *the stab (with a poniard).*  
**Aquí,** *here.*  
**Arriba,** *up stairs.*  
**Chiquito,** *little.*  
**Ignorante,** *ignorant.*  
**Solo,** *alone.*  
**Su,** *his, her.*  
**Todo,** *all.*  
**Vive,** *lives.*

**Exercise 19.**

1. La hermanita de Carlos está mala.
2. ¿ Que tiene el muchachito ?
3. El no tiene nada.
4. El comerciante tiene una casita de campo en los contornos de la ciudad.
5. ¿ Donde está Juanito ?
6. Está en el jardín con su amiguito.
7. ¿ Donde estan las dos señoritas ?
8. Estan en el cuartito arriba.
9. ¿ Estaba V. (*were you*) solo en el cuarto ?
10. Si, señor, yo estaba (*was*) solito.
11. ¿ Quien es el hombrecito ?
12. Es el hermano de Luisita.
13. Maria tiene una crucecita de oro.
14. Los árboles del jardín son todavía chiquititos.
15. El amigo de Enrique es un picaron.
16. Y Enrique es un ladronzuelo.
17. El perro recibió (*received*) dos bastonazos.
18. Mi amigo recibió dos puñaladas en la pelea.
19. El general es un hombrachon.
20. Los dos jovencitos son primos.
21. Tenemos tres pajaritos en el jardín.
22. ¿ Quiere V. un pedazito de carne ?
23. Si, señor, con mucho gusto.
24. Pedro vive en una callejuela de la ciudad.
25. ¿ Porqué no tiene el ricachon una casa grande ?
26. Porque tiene todo su dinero en grandes especulaciones.
27. La hermana del panadero es una mujercilla muy fea.
28. Los pollitos estan en el patio.

**Exercise 20.**

1. The little boy and the little girl are sick.
2. The little tailor is very ignorant.
3. The brothers Ramirez have two small houses in the city.
4. Who is in the little garden ?
5. Louisa and my little

friend. 6. The merchant's sons have two small horses. 7. The little child has a pretty little face. 8. There are (*hay*) many birds on (*en*) the small island. 9. With whom were you in Paris? 10. With my little brother. 11. Charles has an ugly little dog. 12. The general's brother is a very rich man. 13. Little John and little Louisa are in the country now (*desde*) two days. 14. Here is a pretty little book for you. 15. What a pretty little flower! 16. Is Henry an author? 17. Yes, but a miserable author without talent. 18. Mary has a pretty little mouth and pretty little hands. 19. Julia is a pretty young lady. 20. The baker is a big stout man, but his sister is a very small woman. 21. My aunt has a very, very small dog. 22. The banker's children are yet very small. 23. Where do you live now? 24. In a very pretty little town not far from here. 25. Charles received (*recibió*) a short letter from his friend. 26. The captain of the small vessel is an ugly little man. 27. Have you a table in your room? 28. Yes, sir, I have a very small table.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

**1.** The Spanish language abounds in *Diminutives* and *Augmentatives*.

**2.** The *Diminutives* serve to decrease or soften the signification of the word from which they are derived.

Those most in use end in **ico**, **illo**, **cillo**, **ito**, **cito**, **uelo**, **ejo**, and **zuelo**, for the masculine, as : **hombrecico**, **hombrecillo**, **hombrecito**, **hombrezuelo**, *little man*; and in **ica**, **illa**, **cilla**, **ita**, **cita**, **zuela**, **eta**, **eja**, for the feminine, as : **mujercilla**, **mujer-cita**, **mujercica**, **mujerzuela**, *little woman*; etc.

**1.** Diminutives ending in **zuelo** always denote *contempt* or *irony*.

**2.** Diminutives ending in **cillo** and **illo** often express *contempt*, *pity*, or *ugliness*; while those in **ito** generally express *affection*, *gentleness*, or *beauty*:

Mujercilla,	<i>Contemptible little woman.</i>
Pobrecillo,	<i>Poor little fellow.</i>
Hijito mio,	<i>My dear little son.</i>
Pobrecito,	<i>Poor good little fellow.</i>

NOTE.—Some Spanish words have the termination of the diminutive, without being diminutive, as :

Acerico, *needle-cushion.* Anzuelo, *fish-hook, etc.*

3. The Diminutives **ito**, **ita**, may be used with different parts of speech to give a special expression to the words :

Vengo solito, *I come quite alone.*

4. Diminutives in **ete**, **ejo**, etc., are comparatively little used.

3. The *Augmentatives* serve to increase the signification of the words from which they are derived. They end in **on**, **achon**, **azo**, **onazo**, or **ote** for the masculine ; and in **ona**, **aza**, **onaza**, or **ota** for the feminine, as :

Hombron, hombrachon, hombronazo (from *hombre*, man), *big, strong man.*  
Grandon, grandote, grandazo, grandonazo (from *grande*, large), *very large.*  
Mujerona, mujeraza, mujeronaza (from *mujer*, woman), *large, strong woman.*

1. There are many words, however, ending in **azo**, which express an *action, motion, or result*, and are, therefore, not Augmentatives :

Fusil, *rifle, gun;* fusilazo, *a shot from a rifle.*

Pistola, *pistol;* pistoletazo, *a shot from a pistol.*

Cañon, *gun;* cañonazo, *a shot from a gun.*

2. Words which express a *blow struck with a blunt instrument* or *object* also end in **azo**, as **bastonazo** or **garrotazo**, *blow with a stick;* while those expressing a *wound made by a sharp instrument or weapon* end in **ada**, as :

Puñalada, *stab with a dagger;* lanzada, *a wound from a lance;* etc.

EXCEPTIONS.—**Hacha**, *ax;* **machete**, *cutlass;* and **sable**, *saber;* form, however, **hachazo**, **machetazo**, and **sablazo.** **Lanzazo**, from *lanza*, *lance,* is also used, etc.

4. FORMATION OF DIMINUTIVES AND AUGMENTATIVES.—1. Words ending in **o** or **a** drop the last letter and add **ito**, **ita**; **ico**, **ica**; **illo**, **illa**; according to their gender :

Herman-**ito**, herman-**ico**, herman-**illo**, *little brother;* from **hermano**, *brother.*  
Cas-**ita**, cas-**ica**, cas-**illa**, *little house;* from **casa**, *house.*

NOTE.—Words ending in **go**, besides dropping the **o**, insert a **u** after the **g** to preserve the hard sound of this letter :

Un amigo, *a friend*; un amiguito, *a little friend*.

Those ending in **co** change the **c** into **qu**, also to preserve the hard sound of the **c** :

Un barco, *a ship*; un barquito, *a little ship*.

A few words ending in **o** and **a**, after dropping the last letter, add, however, the termination **ecico**, **ecillo**, etc. :

Un huevo, *an egg*; un huevecillo, *a small egg*.

Una mano, *a hand*; una manecita, *a small hand*.

## 2. Monosyllables ending with a consonant form their Diminutive by adding **ecito**, **ecico**, **ecillo**, or **ezuelo**:

Una flor, *a flower*; una florecita, *a little flower*.

Una cruz, *a cross*; una crucecita, *a little cross*.

Un pez, *a fish*; un pececito, *a little fish*.

Un rey, *a king*; un reyezuelo, *a king (with a small kingdom)*.

NOTE.—Observe that **cruz** and **pez** change the **z** into **c**.

## 3. Words of two or more syllables ending with a consonant form their Diminutive by adding **ito**, **ico**, **illo**, **ejo**:

Un papel, *a paper*; un papelito, *a small paper*.

Un reloj, *a watch*; un relojito, *a small watch*.

## 4. Words of two syllables ending with an **e**, and those of several syllables ending with an **n** or a **z**, add **cito**, **cico**, **cillo**, or **zuelo**:

Un sastre, *a tailor*; un sastrecillo, *a little tailor*.

Una nube, *a cloud*; una nubecilla, *a little cloud*.

Un capitán, *a captain*; un capitancillo, *a little captain*.

Un autor, *an author*; un autorzuelo, *an insignificant author*.

Una mujer, *a woman*; una mujercita, *a little woman*.

EXCEPTIONS.—**Juanito**, from **Juan**, *John*; **volcanejo**, from **volcan**, *volcano*; and all words ending in **in**, form an exception to this rule, the latter adding **ito**, etc. Thus :

Jardin, *garden*; ruin, *worthless*.

Rocin, *jade*; serafin, *seraph*.

form in the Diminutive **jardinito**, **rocinito**, **ruinito**, and **serafinito**. **Jardincito** is, however, often used.

5. Diminutives may be yet decreased in the following way :

From **chico**, *small* : chiquillo or chiquito, chiquitillo, chiquitito, chiquuelo, chiquitilluelo, chiquitillito, chiquirritin, chiquirritito, chiquirritillo, chiquirrituelo, etc.

The English would say in such cases, *very, very small*.

Even Augmentatives may be decreased in the same way :

Picaron, *big rogue* ; picaronzillo or picaronzuelo, *little rogue* ; etc.

6. Many Diminutives as well as Augmentatives drop or preserve the letter **i** in the diphthong **ie** :

Un ciego, *a blind man* ; un cieguecillo or ceguecillo, *a little blind man*.

Un diente, *a tooth* ; un dientecillo or dentecillo, *a small tooth*.

Una piedra, *a stone* ; una piedrezauela or pedrezauela, *a small stone*.

7. Other words change the diphthong **ue** into **o** or remain unchanged :

Un buey, *an ox* ; un bueyecillo or buyecillo, *a small ox*.

Un hueso, *a bone* ; un huesecillo or osecillo, *a small bone*.

8. There are words in Spanish with Diminutive and Augmentative terminations, which may have been used formerly as such, but which at present have a determined signification :

Maton, *bravo, cut-throat*.

Islilla, *side*.

Cegato, *short-sighted*.

Peluquin, *wig*.

Espadin, *sword of the state* ; etc., etc.

9. Augmentatives are formed by adding the terminations given in Rule 2 to the word, when the same ends with a consonant :

Leon, *lion* ; leonazo, *big lion* ; etc.

When the words end, however, with a vowel, the latter is dropped before adding the given termination :

Gigante, *giant* ; gigantazo, *large giant*.

Libro, *book* ; librote, *large book*.

**GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.** — The words **pequeño**, *small*, and **grande**, *large*, may be used at all times with the noun, but in many cases they would not answer to the genius of the Spanish language, which would require the Diminutive or Augmentative. This is specially the case with the Diminutives.

The pronunciation of Diminutives or Augmentatives is generally different from that of the word from which they are derived, and the written accent of the primitive word is left out in the derived word, as :

Árbol, *tree*; arbolito, *small tree*.  
Pájaro, *bird*; pajarito, *small bird*; etc.

## 5. Verb tener, *to have*.

The verb **tener** is often rendered in English by *to be something the matter*:

*¿ Que tiene V. ?      What is the matter with you ?  
Yo no tengo nada.      Nothing is the matter with me.*

## Lección XL.

## Lesson XL.

## ADJECTIVES, COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE RELATIVE

### *Adjectives compared regularly:*

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Hermoso, m. <i>{hand-</i>	mas hermoso, <i>{hand-</i>	el mas hermoso, <i>{the hand-</i>
Hermosa, f. <i>{some;</i>	mas hermosa, <i>{somer;</i>	la mas hermosa, <i>{somes.</i>
Prudente, m. <i>{prudent;</i>	mas prudente, <i>{more</i>	el mas prudente, <i>{the most</i>
Prudente, f. <i>{prudent;</i>	mas prudente, <i>{prudent;</i>	la mas prudente, <i>{prudent.</i>
Rico, m. <i>{rich;</i>	mas rico, <i>{richer;</i>	el mas rico, <i>{the</i>
Rica, f. <i>{rich;</i>	mas rica, <i>{richer;</i>	la mas rica, <i>{richest.</i>
Útiles, pl. <i>useful;</i>	mas útiles, <i>more useful;</i>	los mas útiles, m. <i>{the most</i>
		las mas útiles, f. <i>{useful.</i>
Fácil, n. <i>easy;</i>	mas fácil, <i>easier;</i>	lo mas fácil, <i>the easiest thing.</i>

### *Adjectives compared irregularly:*

Bueno, <i>good</i> ;	mejor, <i>better</i> ;	óptimo, <i>best</i> .
Malo, <i>bad</i> ;	peor, <i>worse</i> ;	pésimo, <i>worst</i> .
Grande, <i>great, large</i> ;	mayor, <i>greater, larger</i> ;	máximo, <i>greatest, largest</i> .
Pequeño, <i>small</i> ;	menor, <i>less, smaller</i> ;	mínimo, <i>smallest</i> .
Bajo, <i>low</i> ;	inferior, <i>lower</i> ;	ínfimo, <i>lowest</i> .
Alto, <i>high</i> ;	superior, <i>higher</i> ;	supremo, <i>highest</i> .

*Adverbs:*

Bien, <i>well</i> ;	mejor, <i>better</i> ;	lo mejor, <i>the best</i> .
Mal, <i>bad</i> , <i>badly</i> ;	peor, <i>worse</i> ;	lo peor, <i>the worst</i> .
Poco, <i>little</i> ;	ménos, <i>less</i> ;	lo ménos, <i>the least</i> .
Mucho, <i>much</i> ;	mas, <i>more</i> ;	lo mas, <i>the most</i> .

*Comparative of Inferiority:*

Duro, m.	} <i>hard</i> ;	ménos duro,	} <i>less hard</i> ;	el ménos duro,	} <i>the least hard</i> .
Dura, f.		ménos dura,		la ménos dura,	
Fuertes, pl.	<i>strong</i> ;	ménos fuertes,	<i>less strong</i> ;	los ménos fuertes, m.	} <i>the least</i>
				las ménos fuertes, f.	} <i>strong</i> .
Bien, <i>well</i> ;		ménos bien,	<i>less well</i> ;	lo ménos bien,	<i>the least well</i> .
		ménos ... que ...,		less or fewer ... than ...	

No tanto, <i>m....como...</i>	} <i>not so much</i>	no tantos, <i>m....como...</i>	} <i>not so many</i>
No tanta, <i>f....como...</i>	} <i>...as...</i>	no tantas, <i>f....como...</i>	} <i>...as...</i>
		no tan...como...,	<i>not so...as...</i>

*Comparative of Equality:*

Tanto, <i>m....como...</i>	} <i>as much...as...</i>	tantos, <i>m....como...</i>	} <i>as many...as...</i>
Tanta, <i>f....como...</i>	} <i>as much...as...</i>	tántas, <i>f....como...</i>	} <i>as many...as...</i>
		tan...como..., <i>as...as...</i>	

Cuanto mas.....	tanto mas...	} <i>the more...the more...</i>
Cuantos mas.....	tantos mas...	
Cuanta mas.....	tanta mas...	
Cuantas mas.....	tantas mas...	
Cuanto ménos.....	tanto ménos...	<i>the less...the less...</i>
Cuanto mas.....	tanto ménos...	<i>the more...the less...</i>
Cuanto ménos.....	tanto mas...	<i>the less...the more...</i>

**Ejemplos.**

- Carlos es rico, Juan es mas rico ; pero Enrique es el mas rico de los tres hermanos.
- Luisa es mas joven que Maria.
- Paris es mas grande que Nueva York.
- Juan habla bien, pero su hermano habla mejor.
- Soy mas viejo que V.
- Julia es la ménos bonita de las hermanas.

**Examples.**

- Charles is rich, John is richer ; but Henry is the richest of the three brothers.
- Louisa is younger than Mary.
- Paris is larger than New York.
- John speaks well, but his brother speaks better.
- I am older than you.
- Julia is the less pretty of the sisters.

Tenemos méños dinero que él.  
 No tengo tanto tiempo como V.  
 Ellas no tienen tantas amigas como  
 nosotras.  
 Yo no hablo tan bien como V.  
 El médico no es tan viejo como el  
 abogado.  
 Soy tan grande como V.  
 Tengo tantas plumas como lápices.  
 Cuanto mas virtuosos son los hombres,  
 tanto mas felices son.  
 Cuanto mas sale, tanto méños estu-  
 dia.  
 Cuantos mas amigos tenga V. tanto  
 mas poderoso será.

We have less money than he.  
 I have not as much time as you.  
 They have not so many friends  
 as we.  
 I do not speak as well as you.  
 The physician is not so old as  
 the lawyer.  
 I am as tall as you.  
 I have as many pens as pencils.  
 The more virtuous men are, the  
 happier they are.  
 The more he goes out the less he  
 learns.  
 The more friends you have the  
 more powerful you will be.

### Vocabulario.

**El amo,** *the master.*  
**El banquero,** *the banker.*  
**El mérito,** *the merit.*  
**El regimiento,** *the regiment.*  
**La clase,** *the class.*  
**La suerte,** *the luck.*  
**La escuela,** *the school.*  
**La fruta,** *the fruit.*  
**La parte,** *the part.*

**Atento,** *attentive.*  
**Déme V.,** *give me.*  
**Dulce,** *sweet.*  
**Eduardo,** *Edward.*  
**Estudioso,** *studious.*  
**Felipe,** *Philip.*  
**Fresco,** *cool.*  
**Frio,** *cold.*  
**Fuerte,** *strong.*

### Vocabulary.

**Gana,** *earns.*  
**Gasta,** *spends.*  
**Habla,** *speaks.*  
**Otro,** *other.*  
**Pasado,** *past, last.*  
**Soberbio,** *haughty.*  
**Temprano,** *early.*  
**Tonto,** *foolish.*  
**Todo,** *all.*

### Exercize 21.

1. Carlos es mas rico y Felipe mas pobre que Juan.
2. El hijo es mas jóven que la hija.
3. El amo no tiene tantos amigos como el criado.
4. El hermano es tan hábil como la hermana, y la madre no méños que el padre.
5. Él tiene mas suerte que mérito.
6. El príncipe no es tan soberbio como el conde.
7. El comerciante no tiene tanto dinero como el banquero, pero tiene mas amigos que aquel (*the latter*).
8. Mi hermano es mas estudioso y mas atento que yo.
9. ¿ Tiene V. un buen cuarto ?
10. Tengo el cuarto mas frio en la casa.
11. Tenemos la casa mas grande de la ciudad.
12. Maria es mas amable que Luisa.
13. Julia es méños atenta que mi hermana.
14. Mi amigo tiene la casa mas hermosa de la calle.
15. Déme V. algo mejor.
16. No tengo nada mejor.
17. Eduardo es mas peque-

ño que su hermano, pero es mas fuerte que él. 18. María es la mejor amiga de mi hermana. 19. Carlos y Enrique son los mas grandes, pero los niéños atentos de la clase. 20. Cuanto ménos dinero gana, tanto mas gasta. 21. ¿ Es la hija tan grande como el padre ? 22. Es méno grande que el padre, pero es mas grande que la madre. 23. La hija no es tan amable como la madre. 24. Las manzanas no son méno dulces que las peras. 25. El hermano de Felipe es el hombre mas rico de la ciudad. 26. ¿ Habla V. español tan bien como su hermano ? 27. Él habla mejor que yo.

### Exercise 22.

1. The more money he earns the less he spends.
2. Charles is a bad boy, but Henry is the worst boy in the school.
3. The son is as rich as the father ; he has four houses in the best part of the city.
4. Is Edward attentive ?
5. He is more attentive than the other boys.
6. Are you well now ?
7. I am better in the country than in the city.
8. My mother is not so old as my aunt.
9. Philip is the youngest officer of the regiment.
10. He is not less brave than the old officers.
11. I have as many books as my brother.
12. The small room is cooler than the large one.
13. The green apples are not so sweet as the others.
14. We have not so much fruit this (*este*) year as last year.
15. Henry, Peter, and John are three good boys, but John is the best of all.
16. The dog is the most faithful of all animals.
17. Is your daughter young ?
18. She is younger than my son.
19. Have you any flowers in the garden ?
20. We have the most beautiful flowers in the city.
21. The new theater is much larger than the old theater.
22. The French baker has the best bread here.
23. Will you have a piece of bread ?
24. Give me the smallest piece.
25. We are less rich than the English, but we are as happy as they.
26. Do you go out earlier than I ?
27. Yes, much earlier.
28. Here is the largest house in the city.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

1. The Comparative is usually formed in Spanish by means of adverbs, and not, as in many cases in English, by a change of termination :

V. es mas rico que yo,      *You are richer than I.*

**2.** The Comparative of Superiority is formed by placing **mas, more**, before the Positive, and **que, than**, after it :

Es mas hábil que su hermano,      *He is more skillful than his brother.*  
 Él tiene mas libros que yo,      *He has more books than I.*

**3.** The Comparative of Inferiority is formed by placing **ménos, less, fewer**, before the Positive, and **que, than**, after it :

Es ménos prudente que V.,      *He is less prudent than you.*  
 Tengo ménos libros que V.,      *I have fewer books than you.*

**1.** If the comparison refers, however, to a verb, **de lo que** may take the place of **que** alone :

Él tiene ménos dinero de lo que V. cree,      *He has less money than you think.*

**2.** If the Comparative of Inferiority is expressed by **no...tanto** (or **tanta, tantos, tantas**), or by **no...tan**, then the second part of the comparative is rendered by **como** :

El no tiene tanto dinero como V.,      *He has not so much money as you.*  
 Ellos no tienen tanta plata como nosotros,      *They have not as much silver as we.*  
 Él no es tan joven como yo,      *He is not so young as I am.*

**4.** The Comparative of Equality is expressed by **tanto** (or **tanta, tantos, tantas**, according to the gender and number of the noun) and **como, as**; or by **tan...como** with an Adjective or an adverb :

El hijo es tan docto como el padre,      *The son is as learned as the father.*  
 Él obra con tanta prudencia como valor,      *He acts with as much prudence as courage.*

**1. Not less than** is always translated by **no...ménos que...** :

Yo no trabajo ménos que V.,      *I do not work less than you.*

**2. In regard to verbs, as much as** is rendered either by **tanto como** or by **tanto cuanto** :

Pago tanto como or tanto cuanto vale,      *I pay as much as it is worth.*

OBSERVATION. — From the above examples it will be seen that **ménos** is always invariable, whilst **tanto** and **cuanto** agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer.

**Cuanto**, the same as **tanto**, drops the last syllable before an adjective or adverb and becomes **cuan**.

**5.** When several nouns or adjectives follow each other, it is sufficient to use the words **mas**, **ménos**, **tan**, or **tanto** before the first Adjective only :

Enrique es mas joven, tímido y crédulo que su hermano,      *Henry is younger, more timid, and more credulous than his brother.*

NOTE.— It would not be a mistake, however, to repeat the adverb before every Adjective in order to give more expression to the sentence.

**6.** The Superlative Relative which generally ends in English in **est** is rendered in Spanish by the adverbs **mas** or **ménos** joined to the positive and accompanied by the definite article, a possessive adjective, or a personal pronoun :

El mas hermoso libro or {	<i>The handsomest book.</i>
El libro mas hermoso,	
El muchacho ménos obediente,	<i>The least obedient boy.</i>
Su mas interesante obra,	<i>His most interesting work.</i>

OBSERVATION.— The Superlative Relative of those adjectives which are placed *before* the noun may come in the Superlative *before* or after the noun :

El mas bonito muchacho or {	<i>The prettiest boy.</i>
El muchacho mas bonito,	

But in the case of those adjectives which are placed *after* the noun, the Superlative must also come *last* :

El clima mas frio,      *The coldest climate.*

**7.** When the Superlative Relative is an adverb modifying the verb, it is expressed by the adverbs **mas** or **ménos** without the definite article :

¿ Que estrella luce mas ?	<i>Which star shines the most ?</i>
Yo creo que Venus luce mas,	<i>I think Venus shines the most.</i>

OBSERVATION.— These Superlative Relatives do not properly belong to the Spanish language, although they are always considered as Comparatives, and they require a cultivated ear to be used correctly.

**8.** The Comparative of the adjectives **bueno**, *good*; **malo**, *bad*; **grande**, *large*; **pequeño**, *little, small*; **bajo**, *low*; **alto**, *high*; which is irregular, may also be formed regularly by means of the adverb **mas**, *more* :

Bueno, <i>good</i> ;	mas bueno, <i>better</i> .
Grande, <i>large</i> ;	mas grande, <i>larger</i> .

OBSERVATION. — When speaking, however, of the differences of ages of two persons, **mayor** and **menor** must be used :

La hija mayor, *the eldest daughter*; el hijo menor, *the youngest son*.

**Inferior** and **menor** are never used when speaking of physical size, that is, of the volume or size of the objects.

**9. Cuanto mas...tanto..., the more...the...; cuanto menos...tanto..., the less...the...**, used adjectively, must agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer :

Cuantas mas reflexiones hace, tan-      *The more he reflects (he makes reflec-*  
tas mas faltas comete,                            *tions) the more mistakes he makes.*

NOTE. — Instead of **cuanto mas...**, **mientras mas** may be used.

## Leccion XII.

## Lesson XII.

### SUPERLATIVE ABSOLUTE. ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

#### Formation of the Superlative Absolute.

Pequeño, <i>small</i> ;	pequeñísimo, <i>o m., a, f. or</i> { <i>very small, smallest.</i>
	muy pequeño, <i>m., a, f.,</i> { <i>very small, smallest.</i>
Prudente, <i>prudent</i> ;	prudentísimo, <i>very prudent.</i>
Feliz, <i>happy</i> ;	felicísimo, <i>very happy.</i>
Cortes, <i>polite</i> ;	cortesísimo, <i>very polite.</i>

#### *Adjectives ending in co and go:*

Rico, <i>rich</i> ;	riquísmo, <i>very rich.</i>
Vago, <i>vague</i> ;	vagúisimo, <i>very vague.</i>

#### *Adjectives ending in ble:*

Amable, <i>amiable</i> ;	amabilísimo, <i>or muy amable, very amiable.</i>
Afable, <i>affable</i> ;	afabilísimo, <i>or muy afable, very affable.</i>

#### *Adjectives ending in iente:*

Ardiente, <i>ardent</i> :	ardentísimo, <i>very ardent.</i>
Ferviente, <i>fervent</i> ;	ferventísimo, <i>very fervent.</i>
Luciente, <i>shining</i> ;	lucentísimo, <i>very shining.</i>
Valiente, <i>brave</i> ;	valentísimo, <i>very brave.</i>

#### *Adjectives ending in io:*

Limpio, <i>clean</i> ;	limpísimo, <i>very clean.</i>
Sucio, <i>dirty</i> ;	sucísimo, <i>very dirty.</i>

**Irregular Superlatives.**

Acre, <i>bitter</i> ;	acérrimo, <i>very bitter</i> .
Amigo, <i>friendly</i> ;	amicísimo, <i>very friendly</i> .
Áspero, <i>raw</i> ;	asperísimo or aspérrimo, <i>very raw</i> .
Bueno, <i>good</i> ;	bonísimo, <i>very good</i> .
Fiel, <i>faithful</i> ;	fidelísimo, <i>very faithful</i> .
Fuerte, <i>strong</i> ;	fortísimo, <i>very strong</i> .
Antiguo, <i>ancient</i> ;	antiquísimo, <i>very ancient</i> .
Benéfico, <i>benevolent</i> ;	beneficentísimo, <i>very benevolent</i> .
Venéfico, <i>poisonous</i> ;	veneficentísimo, <i>very poisonous</i> .
Célebre, <i>celebrated</i> ;	celeberrimo, <i>very celebrated</i> .
Integro, <i>upright</i> ;	integerrimo, <i>very upright</i> .
Libre, <i>free</i> ;	libérmino, <i>very free</i> .
Magnífico, <i>magnificent</i> ;	magnificentísimo, <i>very magnificent</i> .
Misero, <i>miserable</i> ;	misérmino, <i>very miserable</i> .
Nuevo, <i>new</i> ;	novísimo, <i>very new</i> .
Pobre, <i>poor</i> ;	paupérmino, <i>very poor</i> .
Sagrado, <i>sacred</i> ;	sacratísimo, <i>very sacred</i> .
Salubre, <i>healthy</i> ;	salubrino, <i>very healthy</i> .
Sabio, <i>wise</i> ;	sapientísimo, <i>very wise</i> .

**Adverbs.**

Dulcemente, <i>sweetly</i> ;	duleísimamente, <i>very or most sweetly</i> .
Sabiamente, <i>wisely</i> ;	muy sabiamente, <i>very wisely</i> .
Amablemente, <i>amiably</i> ;	amabilísimamente, <i>most amiably</i> .

**Ejemplos.**

Pedro es rico, pero Juan es riquísimo.  
 Paris es una ciudad muy hermosa.  
 El comerciante es honradísimo.  
 La madre de María es viejísima.  
 La torre es altísima.  
 El maestro es sapientísimo.  
 El caballero es cortesísimo.  
 El general es prudentísimo.  
 La señora es hermosísima.  
 Es segurísimo.  
 El camino es larguísimo.  
 El clima es friísimo.  
 Luisa es amabilísima.  
 Mi hermana dibuja hermosísimamente.  
 Él obra prudentísimamente.

**Examples.**

Peter is rich, but John is very rich.  
 Paris is a very handsome city.  
 The merchant is very honest.  
 Mary's mother is very old.  
 The tower is very high.  
 The teacher is very wise.  
 The gentleman is very polite.  
 The general is very prudent.  
 The lady is very handsome.  
 It is very sure.  
 The road is very long.  
 The climate is very cold.  
 Louisa is very amiable.  
 My sister draws most beautifully.  
 He acts very prudently.

**Vocabulario.**

**El amor,** *the love.*  
**El camino,** *the road.*  
**El clima,** *the climate.*  
**El comportamiento,** *the behavior.*  
**El leon,** *the lion.*  
**El maestro,** *the teacher.*  
**El pozo,** *the well.*  
**La accion,** *the action.*  
**La aldea,** *the village.*  
**La comedia,** *the comedy.*  
**La hormiga,** *the ant.*  
**La iglesia,** *the church.*  
**La lluvia,** *the rain.*  
**Afable,** *affable.*  
**Agrio,** *sour.*  
**Benefico,** *benevolent.*  
**Comun,** *ordinary, low.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Contento,** *satisfied.*  
**Femenil,** *effeminate.*  
**Filial,** *filial.*  
**Gloriosamente,** *gloriously.*  
**Honrado,** *honest.*  
**Inteligente,** *intelligent.*  
**Interesante,** *interesting.*  
**Largo,** *long.*  
**Léjos,** *far.*  
**Paternal,** *paternal.*  
**Pio,** *pious.*  
**Profundo,** *deep.*  
**Sabiamente,** *wisely.*  
**Salubre,** *healthy.*  
**Sucio,** *dirty.*  
**Valiente,** *brave.*

**Exercise 23.**

1. Los dos hermanos del general son riquísimos, pero el general es muy pobre.
2. La torre de la iglesia es altísima.
3. Luisa y María son amabilísimas.
4. Los caminos están malísimos desde la lluvia.
5. El oficial es un valentísimo soldado.
6. El clima de la isla es saluberrímo.
7. El hombrecito tiene una casa grandísima.
8. La hermana de Juan es hermosísima.
9. Las comedias de Moratin son muy hermosas.
10. Sócrates era sapientísimo.
11. Las primas de Enrique son muy piadas.
12. Las calles de la ciudad son larguísimas.
13. El panadero tiene una hija muy bonita.
14. Las hormigas son pequeñísimas.
15. Juan es muy femenil.
16. El maestro habla muy sabiamente.
17. Su (su) amor es muy filial.
18. El príncipe es muy benéfico.
19. El vino del comerciante no es bueno ; está muy agrio.
20. Los habitantes de la aldea son muy industriosos y muy afables.
21. El padre y la madre de Pedro son viejísimos.
22. Las dos señoras son muy jóvenes.
23. El soldado murió (*died*) muy gloriosamente.
24. Su comportamiento es muy común.
25. El monumento es antiquísimo (*very ancient*).

**Exercise 24.**

1. The merchant is a very honest man.
2. My father is very benevolent.
3. My brother's friends are very poor.
4. His action is

very paternal. 5. His love is very filial. 6. The banker's house is very large. 7. New York is a very rich city. 8. The physician has very good sons. 9. The climate of the island is very cold. 10. The lion is very strong. 11. Henry's sister is very amiable, but his cousin (*fem.*) is more affable. 12. The apples are very sweet. 13. The rooms in (*de*) the house are very small. 14. The river is very deep. 15. The trees in the (*del*) garden are very green. 16. The two boys are very sick. 17. We have now a very good servant. 18. The water in the well is very cold. 19. Mary's brothers are very intelligent. 20. I am very happy to-day. 21. The two Frenchmen are very far from here. 22. The soldiers of the general are very brave. 23. The streets are now very dirty. 24. My book is very interesting.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The Superlative Absolute is either formed by placing the adverb **muy**, *very*, before the Positive, or by adding to the same the termination **ísimo** (**isima**, **isimos**, **isimas**, according to the gender and number of the noun to which the adjective refers) if it ends with a consonant.

If the Positive ends with a vowel, however, this last letter is dropped and the same terminations added :

Grande, *large* ;      *muy grande*, or *grandísimo*, *very large*.  
Cortes, *polite* ;      *muy cortes*, or *cortesísimo*, *very polite*.

**2.** Adjectives ending in **co** and **go** form their Superlative in **quisimo** and **guisimo** to preserve the hard sound of **c** and **g**, which they have in the Positive :

Rico, *rich* ;      *riquísmo*, *very rich*.  
Vago, *vague* ;      *vaguísimo*, *very vague*.

**3.** Adjectives ending in **ble** change this last syllable into **bilísimo** :

Amable, *amiable* ;      *amabilísimo*, *very amiable*.  
Afable, *affable* ;      *afabilísimo*, *very affable*.

**4.** Adjectives ending in **iente** drop the **i** in the Superlative, and change the termination **iente** into **entísimo** :

Ardiente, *ardent* ;      *ardentísimo*, *very ardent*.  
Valiente, *brave* ;      *valentísimo*, *very brave*.

**5.** Adjectives ending in **io** drop these two letters to avoid the repetition of the **i**, and add **ísimo**:

Limpio, *clean*; limpísimo, *very clean*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The Adjectives **frio**, *cold*, and **pío**, *pious*, make, however, **friísimo** and **piísimo** in the Superlative.

**6.** The Superlative Absolute of Adverbs ending in **mente** is also formed by placing the adverb **muy**, *very*, before them, or by changing the termination **emente** or **amente** into **isimamente**:

Dulcemente, *sweetly*; dulcísimamente, *very or most sweetly*.

Amablemente, *amiably*; amabilísimamente, *very or most amiably*.

**7.** It must be observed that the Superlative formed with the termination **ísimo** is stronger than that formed with the adverb **muy**, *very*. **Riquísimo** expresses, therefore, a higher degree than **muy rico**, *very rich*. Elegance requires also the termination **ísimo** instead of the adverb **muy** when the Superlative is preceded by the indefinite article **un**, **uno**, **una**. Therefore, **es un valentísimo soldado**, *he is a very brave soldier*, is preferable to **es un muy valiente soldado**.

**8.** Certain adjectives and adverbs do not admit of the termination of the Superlative. This is more especially the case with those ending with **l**, **i**, **n**, and a few with **r**, as:

Paternal, *paternal*; maternal, *maternal*; filial, *filial*; femenil, *effeminate*; igual, *equal*; varonil, *manly*; turquí, *dark blue*; ruin, *low*; comun, *ordinary*.

In case of doubt the student will, therefore, adopt preferably the adverb **muy**.

**9.** Some adjectives form their Superlative most irregularly, as is seen by the list given above.

## Leccion XIII.

## Lesson XIII.

## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

**Singular.**

Masculine. Feminine.

<b>Mi,</b>		<b>mis ;</b>		<b>my.</b>
<b>Tu,</b>		<b>tus ;</b>		<b>thy.</b>
<b>Su,</b>		<b>sus ;</b>		<b>his, her, its.</b>
<b>Nuestro, nuestra,</b>		<b>nuestros, nuestras ;</b>		<b>our.</b>
<b>Vuestro, vuestra, su,</b>		<b>vuestros, vuestras, sus ;</b>		<b>your.</b>
<b>Su,</b>		<b>sus ;</b>		<b>their.</b>
<b>Mio, mia,</b>		<b>mios, mias ;</b>		<b>my.</b>
<b>Tuyo, tuya,</b>		<b>tuyos, tuyas ;</b>		<b>thy.</b>
<b>Suyo, suya,</b>		<b>suyos, suyas ;</b>		<b>his, her, its.</b>
<b>Nuestro, nuestra,</b>		<b>nuestros, nuestras ;</b>		<b>our.</b>
<b>Vuestro, vuestra,</b>		<b>vuestros, vuestras ;</b>		<b>your.</b>
<b>Suyo, suya,</b>		<b>suyos, suyas ;</b>		<b>their.</b>

**Ejemplos.**

Mi padre es bueno.	
Mi madre es buena.	
Tu hermano es pequeño.	
Tu hermana es pequeña.	
Su hermano es grande.	
Su hermana es grande.	
Nuestro tío es bueno.	
Nuestra tía es buena.	
Su amigo es jóven.	
Su amigo de V. es jóven.	}
El amigo de V. es jóven.	}
Su casa es grande.	
Su casa de ellos es grande.	}
Mis amigos son felices.	
Sus hermanos son ricos.	
Sus libros están aquí.	
Sus libros de V. estan aquí.	}
Los libros de V. estan aquí.	}

**Examples.**

My father is good.	
My mother is good.	
Thy brother is small.	
Thy sister is small.	
His or her brother is tall	
His or her sister is tall.	
Our uncle is good.	
Our aunt is good.	
Your friend is young.	
Their house is large.	
My friends are happy.	
His (her or their) brothers are rich.	
Your books are here.	

Mi hermano y mi hermana son jó-  
venes. {

Su tío, su tía y sus primos están  
malos.

Aquí está uno de mis amigos.

El perro está con su amo.

El árbol pierde sus hojas.

Deme V. *la* mano.

Él tiene su sombrero en *la* mano.

El soldado ha perdido *el* brazo.

My brother and sister are young.

His (*or her*) uncle, aunt, and cou-  
ins are sick.

Here is one of my friends.

The dog is with its master.

The tree loses its leaves.

Give me *your* hand.

He has his hat in *his* hand.

The soldier has lost *his* arm.

### **Su, his, her, your, their.**

Su libro *or* el libro de él.

His book.

Su libro *or* el libro de ella.

Her book.

Su (*or el*) libro de V., *sing.* {

Your book.

Su (*or el*) libro de V. V., *pl.* {

Their book.

Su (*or el*) libro de ellos, *masc.* {

His books.

Su (*or el*) libro de ellas, *sem.* {

etc. etc.

etc.

Adios, padre mio.

Good by, father.

Si, madre mia.

Yes, mother.

No, hijo mio.

No, my son.

Son amigos nuestros.

They are our friends.

Son enemigos suyos.

They are his enemies.

Un amigo mio.

A friend of mine.

Un criado nuestro.

A servant of ours.

Un amigo suyo.

A friend of his.

### **Vocabulario.**

**El bastón,** the cane.

**La madrina,** the godmother.

**El bollo,** the cake.

**La pizarra,** the slate.

**El condiscípulo,** the fellow-scholar.

**La propiedad,** the property.

**El discípulo,** the scholar.

**La rienda,** the bridle.

**El ejemplo,** the example.

**La silla,** the saddle.

**El marido,** the husband.

**Al contrario,** on the contrary.

**El padrino,** the godfather.

**Caliente,** warm.

**El papel,** the paper.

**En casa,** at home.

**El privilegio,** the privilege.

**Mas,** more.

**La familia,** the family.

**Sagrado,** sacred.

**La leche,** the milk.

**Siguen,** follow.

**La libertad,** the liberty.

**Tambien,** too, also.

### **Vocabulary.**

**La madrina,** the godmother.

**La pizarra,** the slate.

**La propiedad,** the property.

**La rienda,** the bridle.

**La silla,** the saddle.

**Al contrario,** on the contrary.

**Caliente,** warm.

**En casa,** at home.

**Mas,** more.

**Sagrado,** sacred.

**Siguen,** follow.

**Tambien,** too, also.

**Exercise 25.**

1. Mi hermano y mi hermana estan en casa.
2. Mis padres (*parents*) estan en el jardin.
3. Nuestras casas son hermosas.
4. ¿ Quien tiene mi papel, mi pluma y mis lápices ?
5. No tenemos ni el papel, ni la pluma ni los lápices de V.
6. La mujer de nuestro médico es la hermana de mi banquero.
7. ¿ Tienen los discípulos sus libros ?
8. Tienen sus libros y sus pizarras.
9. El marido de mi prima está en Paris.
10. ¿ Buenos dias, tia, donde estan mis primos ?
11. Estan en el jardin.
12. ¿ Donde estas, hijo mio ?
13. Estoy aquí en el cuarto.
14. Mi amigo es pobre, pero un hermano suyo es muy rico.
15. Nuestro tio quiere comprar la casa de mi amigo.
16. ¿ Donde está su padre de V. ahora ?
17. Yo no sé donde está.
18. Los sombreros de V. V. son muy pequeños.
19. Nuestro cuarto está caliente.
20. Las casas de ellos son muy grandes.
21. ¿ Es V. mi amigo ?
22. Si, señor, soy el amigo de V. y de toda su familia.
23. Los primos de Juan son los condiscípulos de mi hermano.
24. ¿ Quien quiere un pedazo de mi bollo ?
25. Yo, déme V. un pedazito.
26. ¿ Qué tiene V. en la mano ?
27. Tengo un bastoncito.
28. Los hijos siguen el ejemplo de su padre.
29. Nuestra libertad, nuestra propiedad y nuestros privilegios son sagrados.
30. Adios, amigo mio.

**Exercise 26.**

1. Where is your cousin (*f*) ?
2. She is with her husband.
3. Where is your slate ?
4. My slate is on the table.
5. Who is your godfather ?
6. Mr. Harris is my godfather, and his sister is my godmother.
7. Who is in your father's room ?
8. A friend of his.
9. Give me your hand, my friend.
10. Is Henry the friend of your brothers ?
11. He is their friend.
12. Is your physician tall or little ?
13. Our physician is very tall.
14. Who is up stairs in our room ?
15. Nobody is in your room, but some one is in your brother's room.
16. With whom are your children ?
17. They are with their mother.
18. Is your father at home ?
19. He is in his store (*tienda*).
20. Are the little boys with their aunt ?
21. They are with their uncle and aunt.
22. My sister's friend (*f*) is very amiable, and her brothers too.
23. Our physician is already an old man.
24. Will you have more milk in your coffee ?
25. On the contrary, give me more coffee.
26. Who is in the garden ?
27. My father and mother.
28. Have you the saddle of my horse ?
29. I have its bridle, but not its saddle.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** Possessive Adjectives do not agree in gender and number with the antecedent or possessor, as in English, but with the object possessed. Every Possessive Adjective must, therefore, agree in gender and number with the noun to which it refers.

Mi libro, *my book.*    Nuestra mesa, *our table.*    Mis amigos, *my friends.*

**2.** The Possessive Adjective must be repeated with every noun, unless it refers to the same person or object :

Mi padre, mi madre, y mi hermana	<i>My father, mother, and sister are</i>
estan malos,	<i>sick.</i>
Señor mio y amigo,	<i>Sir and friend.</i>

**3.** The Possessive Adjective **vuestro**, *masc. sing.*, **vuestra**, *fem. sing.*, **vuestros**, *masc. pl.*, **vuestras**, *fem. pl.*, *your*, is only used in the elevated style, or when addressing the divinity, the saints, or persons in elevated situation :

Príncipe, imploro **vuestro** amparo,    *Prince, I implore your protection.*

In place of **vuestro** the Spaniards use in the usual style the Possessive Adjective **su**, which also means *his, her, their.* **Vuestro** may, in fact, be compared with the personal pronoun **vosotros**, instead of which we use **usted**, *sing.*, and **ustedes**, *pl.*, with the verb in the third person singular or plural. In the same way, instead of **vuestro**, the Spaniards use the Possessive Adjective in the third person singular or plural.

**Su sombrero**, *your hat*, is therefore used instead of **vuestro sombrero**; but as it might also be translated by *his hat, her hat, their hat*, the expression **de V.** is added after the noun, and we would therefore have to say **su sombrero de V.** This addition of **de V.**, or **de V. V.** may, however, be left out when the sense of the sentence sufficiently indicates to what person **su** refers :

*¿ Tiene V. su sombrero ?    Have you your hat ?*

REMARK.—The omission of **de usted** when addressing respectable persons is, however, considered vulgar and impolite.

4. Instead of **su** or **sus**, **el**, **la**, **los**, or **las** may be used with **de usted**, **de ustedes**:

El libro de V., <i>your book.</i>	La mesa de V., <i>your table.</i>
Los libros de V., <i>your books.</i>	Las mesas de V., <i>your tables.</i>

5. In order to avoid the ambiguity which might arise from the use of **su** and **sus**, the definite article is used with **de él**, **de ella**, **de ellos**, **de ellas**:

El libro de él, <i>his book.</i>	La casa de ellos, <i>their (m.) house.</i>
El libro de ella, <i>her book.</i>	La casa de ellas, <i>their (f.) house.</i>

6. The Possessive **its** must be rendered by **su** or **sus** according to the number of the following noun:

Mi padre tiene un hermoso caballo,	<i>My father has a pretty horse, its</i>
su color es negro,	<i>color is black.</i>
El árbol pierde sus hojas,	<i>The tree loses its leaves.</i>

7. The definite article is substituted in Spanish for the Possessive Adjective whenever the sense of the sentence sufficiently indicates who the possessor is. This is more especially the case, when parts of the body are mentioned:

Tengo algo en <i>el ojo</i> ,	<i>I have something in my eye.</i>
Que tiene V. en <i>la mano</i> ,	<i>What have you (got) in your hand.</i>

8. Whenever addressing a relative or friend, the Spaniards use the noun alone, as in English, or with the Possessive after the same:

Buenos días, <i>padre</i> ( <i>or padre mio</i> ),	<i>Good morning, father.</i>
Hijo ( <i>or hijo mio</i> ), <i>ven aquí</i> ,	<i>Son, come here.</i>

9. The Possessive Adjectives **mi**, **tu**, **su**, etc., when coming *after* the noun are replaced by **mio**, **tuyo**, **suyo**, *masc. sing.*; **mios**, **tuyos**, **suyos**, *masc. pl.*; **mia**, **tuya**, **suya**, *fem. sing.*; **mias**, **tuyas**, **suyas**, *fem. pl.*:

¡Padre mio! <i>my father!</i>	Madre mia, <i>my mother</i> ; etc.
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

These Adjectives are placed after the noun:

1. In the vocative: **hijos mios!** *my sons!* If, however, an adjective or a participle precedes the noun, both forms may be used:

Mi querido padre <i>or</i> querido <i>padre mio</i> ,	<i>My dear father.</i>
---	------------------------

## 2. When an article precedes the noun :

El caballo tuyo es mayor que el mio, *Thy (your) horse is larger than mine.*  
 Un criado mio or uno de mis criados, *A servant of mine.*

## 3. When an adverb precedes the noun :

Tan amigos nuestros se mostraron, *They showed themselves so much our friends.*

---

## Leccion XIV.

## Lesson XIV.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

## Singular.

## Plural.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.
El mio,	la mia,	los mios,	las mias,
El tuyo,	la tuya,	los tuyos,	las tuyas,
El suyo,	la suya,	los suyos,	las suyas,
El nuestro,	la nuestra,	los nuestros,	las nuestras,
El vuestro,	la vuestra,	los vuestros,	las vuestras,
El suyo,	la suya,	los suyos,	las suyas,
El suyo,	la suya,	los suyos,	las suyas,
El de él,	la de él,	los de él,	las de él,
El de ella,	la de ella,	los de ella,	las de ella,
El de nosotros,	la de nosotros,	los de nosotros,	las de nosotros,
El de usted,	la de usted,	los de usted,	las de usted, <sup>1</sup>
El de ustedes,	la de ustedes,	los de ustedes,	las de ustedes, <sup>2</sup>
El de ellos,	la de ellos,	los de ellos,	las de ellos, <sup>3</sup>
El de ellas,	la de ellas,	los de ellas,	las de ellas, <sup>4</sup>

## Declension.

## Masculine Singular.

## Feminine Singular.

El mio,	<i>mine</i> ;	la mia,	<i>mine</i> .
Del mio,	<i>of mine</i> ;	de la mia,	<i>of mine</i> .
Al mio,	<i>to mine</i> ;	á la mia,	<i>to mine</i> .

<sup>1</sup> Singular.<sup>2</sup> Plural.<sup>3</sup> Masculine.<sup>4</sup> Feminine.

*Masculine Plural.*

**Los** *mios*, *mine* ;  
**De** *los mios*, *of mine* ;  
**Á** *los mios*, *to mine* ;  
 ETC., etc.,

*Feminine Plural.*

**las** *mias*, *mine*.  
**de** *las mias*, *of mine*.  
**á** *las mias*, *to mine*.  
 ETC., etc.

**Ejemplos.**

Mi padre y el tuyo son amigos.  
 Tu hermano y el mio están aquí.  
 Tengo el libro de V. y el mio.  
 Mi lápiz y el de V. son de oro.  
 Su amigo de V. y el nuestro son altos.  
 Su caballo de V. y el de ellos son negros.  
 Mi casa y la suya (la de él) son nuevas.

Su pluma (la pluma de él) y la nuestra son de acero.

Mis libros y los suyos son hermosos.  
 Nuestros amigos y los de V. están en Francia.

Nuestras sillas y las de ellos son de caoba.

¿ Tiene él mi lápiz ? — Tiene el suyo.

¿ Tiene ella mi libro ? — Tiene el suyo.

¿ Tiene V. mi pluma ? — Tengo la mia.

¿ Tiene ella su aguja ? — Tiene la suya.

Hablo de mi padre y del suyo (del de V.).

Escribo á mi madre y á la de V.  
 Él habla de mis hermanos y de los suyos.

Escribimos á nuestros amigos y á los de ellos.

Quiero lo mio.

Cada uno quiere lo suyo.

**Examples.**

My father and thine are friends.  
 Thy brother and mine are here.  
 I have your book and mine.  
 My pencil and yours are of gold.  
 Your friend and ours are tall.  
 Your horse and theirs are black.

My house and his are new.

His pen and ours are of steel.

My books and his are handsome.  
 Our friends and yours are in France.

Our chairs and theirs are of mahogany.

Has he my pencil ? — He has his own.

Has she my book ? — She has her own.

Have you my pen ? — I have mine.

Has she her needle ? — She has her own.

I speak of my father and of yours.

I write to my mother and to yours.  
 He speaks of my brothers and of his.

We write to our friends and to theirs.

I wish for what is mine.

Every one wishes for what is his.

**Vocabulario.**

- El baile,** *the ball.*  
**El cocinero,** *the cook.*  
**El guante,** *the glove.*  
**El maestro,** *the teacher.*  
**El profesor,** *the professor.*  
**La escritura,** *the writing.*  
**La familia,** *the family.*  
**Alguna parte,** *somewhere, anywhere.*  
**Á lo méños,** *at least.*  
**Alto,** *tall.*  
**Como,** *how.*

**Vocabulary.**

- i Conoce V.?** *Do you know? are you acquainted with.*  
**Conozco,** *I know, I am acquainted with.*  
**i De quien?** *whose?*  
**i Escribe V.?** *do you write?*  
**Escribo,** *I write.*  
**i Habla V.?** *do you speak?*  
**Hablo,** *I speak.*  
**Magnifico,** *splendid.*  
**Otra cosa,** *something else.*  
**Qué,** *which.*

**Exercise 27.**

1. *¿ Tiene V. mi libro ?*
2. *No, señor, no tengo el de V.*
3. *¿ Como son los caballos ?*
4. *El mio es negro, y el de él es blanco.*
5. *Los hermanos de V. son altos, y los mios son pequeños.*
6. *Los Ingleses ricos tienen cocineros franceses, los de ellos no son tan buenos.*
7. *La familia de su madre de V. es rica, pero la familia de la mia es pobre.*
8. *¿ Conoce V. los jardines de los Ingleses ?*
9. *Conozco sus jardines y sus casas.*
10. *Nuestros jardines son hermosos, pero los de ellos son magníficos.*
11. *¿ Habla V. de mi casa ?*
12. *No hablo de la suya, hablo de la mia.*
13. *¿ Quiere V. un pedazo de bollo ?*
14. *Si, déme V. un pedazo del suyo.*
15. *¿ Para quien son las manzanas, para su hermano de V. ó para el mio ?*
16. *Las manzanas son para el mio, tengo otra cosa para el de V.*
17. *¿ Escribe V. á mis amigos ?*
18. *Escribo á los mios, á los de V., y á los de él.*
19. *¿ Quien tiene nuestros libros ?*
20. *El profesor tiene los de V. y los nuestros.*
21. *La hermana de V. es jóven, y la mia tambien.*
22. *La madre de V., y la de él, estan en el jardin.*
23. *¿ Tiene V. mi lápiz ?*
24. *No, señor, tengo el mio, el de V. está sobre la mesa.*
25. *Don Carlos Marty es mi maestro de escritura, quien es el de V. ?*
26. *Es tambien el mio.*
27. *Enrique es el amigo de V., pero no es el mio.*
28. *¿ De quien es la casa ?*
29. *La casa pequena es mia, y la grande es de mi hermana.*
30. *La casa es pequena, pero á lo méños es mia.*

**Exercise 28.**

1. *Who has my piece of cake ?*
2. *I have mine, but not yours.*
3. *Where are your gloves ?*
4. *Mine are here ; where are yours ?*

5. Mine are somewhere in the room. 6. Do you wish the large or the small hat? 7. I wish mine. 8. Have I your hat? 9. No, you have your own. 10. You have no inkstand, will you have mine? 11. No, thank you, I don't wish yours. 12. Is your house large? 13. Our house is very large. 14. My book is French, yours is English, and his is German. 15. Do you speak of our friends? 16. I speak of yours and of mine. 17. Who is in our room? 18. Your brother is in yours, and my sister is in mine. 19. Mr. Smith's children (*hijos*) are taller than ours. 20. My brother's house is large, but mine is larger. 21. The large book is mine, and the small one is his. 22. Which pens are the best, yours or mine? 23. Mine are the best. 24. My sister and yours are at (*en*) the ball. 25. Is the slate yours? 26. The slate is mine, but the pencil is not mine. 27. Do you write to your father? 28. I write to mine and to yours. 29. Have you two tables in your room? 30. I have one table in my room, but my brother has three tables in his. 31. Are the tables his? 32. Two are his, and one is mine. 33. All the books are ours.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The Possessive Pronouns, like the Possessive Adjectives, agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not, as in English, with the possessor:

Mi hermano y el suyo,	<i>My brother and his (or hers).</i>
Mi madre y la suya,	<i>My mother and his (or hers).</i>
Mis libros y los suyos,	<i>My books and his (or hers).</i>
Nuestras amigas y las suyas,	<i>My lady friends and his (or hers).</i>

**2.** More expression can be given to these pronouns by adding to them the words **mismo**, masc., **misma**, fem., *very same*; and **propio**, masc., **propia**, fem., *own*:

El mio mismo,	<i>My own.</i>
La suya misma,	<i>His (her or your) own.</i>
El suyo propio,	<i>His (her or your) own.</i>

**3.** Instead of *el vuestro*, *la vuestra*, *los vuestros*, *las vuestras*, the Spaniards use **el suyo**, *m. s.*, **la suya**, *f. s.*, which really mean

*his or hers*, when the meaning of the sentence is sufficiently clear :

Hablo de mi padre y del suyo,      *I speak of my father and of yours.*  
 Quiero mi pluma y la suya,      *I want my pen and yours.*

**4.** When, however, the sentence is not sufficiently clear, **el (la, los, las, lo) de V.** is used for *yours* :

Mi libro y el de V.,      *My book and yours, sing.*  
 Mi casa y la de V.V.,      *My house and yours, pl.*

**5.** In the same way if we wish to indicate clearly the difference between *his, hers, or theirs*, we use **el de él, el de ella, el de ellos, and el de ellas**, instead of *el suyo, la suya, etc.*:

Aquí está mi casa y allá está la de      *Here is my house and there is theirs.*  
 ellos,

La mesa es de él,      *The table is his.*

**6.** The definite article may also be used with the preposition **de** before **nosotros, etc.**, instead of *el nuestro, la nuestra, etc.*:

Los libros de ellos y los de nosotros,      *Their books and ours.*

**7.** The Possessive Pronouns are also used with the neuter article **lo**, and mean *the property of, what belongs to, etc.*:

Lo tuyo y lo mio,      *{ Thine and mine (tuum et meum).*  
*Thy property and mine.*  
*What belongs to thee and to me.*

**8.** The verb **ser, to be**, with or without the adjective **mío, m., mia, f. ; tuyo, m., tuy, f. ; suyo, m., suya, f. ; and nuestro, m., nuestra, f.**, is frequently used to express possession. When used without the adjective, it is accompanied by the preposition **de** :

El libro es mio,      *The book is mine.*  
 La casa es suya,      *The house is his (hers or yours).*  
 El caballo es nuestro,      *The horse is ours.*  
 El libro es de mi hermano,      *The book is my brother's.*

**9.** **Conoce V.?** (from *conocer*), and **sabe V.?** (from *saber*) both mean *do you know?* but **conocer** means rather *to know by the*

senses, while **saber** means more properly *to know by the mind, to be versed in*. **Conocer**, besides, is applied to persons and things, while **saber** is said only of things, and may precede another verb :

Yo conozco al hombre, <sup>1</sup>	<i>I know the man.</i>
¿ Conoce V. mi casa ?	<i>Do you know my house ?</i>
¿ Sabe V. su lección ?	<i>Do you know your lesson ?</i>
¿ Sabe V. leer ?	<i>Do you know how to read ?</i>
Conozco or sé el inglés,	<i>I know the English language.</i>

## Leccion XV.

## Lesson XV.

### DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

#### Singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.
Este,	esta, <i>this ;</i>
Ese,	esa, <i>that ;</i>
Aquel,	aquella, <i>that ;</i>

#### Ejemplos.

Este hombre es rico.
Esta mujer es joven.
Ese libro y esa pluma son míos.
Aquel soldado es valiente.
Aquella mujer es pobre.
Estos hombres son ricos.
Estas mujeres son jóvenes.
Aquellos muchachos son jóvenes.

#### Plural.

Masculine.	Feminine.
estos,	estas, <i>these.</i>
esos,	esas, <i>those.</i>
aquellos,	aquellas, <i>those.</i>

#### Examples.

This man is rich.
This woman is young.
That book and that pen are mine.
That soldier is brave.
That woman is poor.
These men are rich.
These women are young.
Those boys are young.

### Adverbs and Adjectives of Quantity.

Cuanto, m., cuanta, f., <i>how much.</i>
Poco, m., poca, f., <i>little.</i>
Tanto, m., tanta, f., <i>so much.</i>
Mucho, m., mucha, f., <i>much.</i>
Demasiado, m., demasiada, f., <i>too much, too.</i>
Unos cuantos, algunos, <i>some.</i>
Bastante, s., bastantes, pl., <i>enough.</i>

Cuantos, m., cuantas, f., <i>how many.</i>
Pocos, m., pocas, f., <i>few.</i>
Tantos, m., tantas, f., <i>so many.</i>
Muchos, m., muchas, f., <i>many.</i>
Demasiados, m., demasiadas, f., <i>too many, too.</i>
Unos pocos, <i>a few.</i>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 106, R. 3.

**Vocabulario.****Vocabulary.**

<i>El baul, the trunk.</i>	<i>La experiencia, the experience.</i>	<i>Aquí, there.</i>
<i>El clavel, the pink.</i>	<i>La fiesta, the holy day.</i>	<i>Londres, London.</i>
<i>El país, the country.</i>	<i>La ropa, the clothes.</i>	<i>¿Va V.? are you going?</i>
<i>La carta, the letter.</i>	<i>A casa, to the house.</i>	<i>Voy, I am going.</i>

**Exercise 29.**

1. ¿Quién es esta señora? 2. Esta señora es mi madre, y este caballero es mi padre. 3. ¿A dónde va V. esta mañana? 4. Voy a casa de mi primo. 5. ¿Quiere V. esta rosa ó aquél clavel? 6. No quiero ninguna flor. 7. Este muchachito es mi hermano, y esta muchachita es mi hermana. 8. El general es el padre de estos muchachos. 9. ¿Son bonitas aquellas señoritas? 10. Son jóvenes, pero no son muy bonitas. 11. ¿Habla frances aquél hombre? 12. Habla inglés, pero no habla frances. 13. Ese Ingles es el amigo de aquél Frances. 14. Aquel oficial es hermano de esta señora. 15. El capitán de este buque es joven, pero tiene mucha experiencia. 16. ¿Es pobre esta mujer? 17. Esta mujer es pobre, pero aquella mujer es rica. 18. ¿Son franceses esos muchachos? 19. Son alemanes. 20. ¿Qué tiene V. en aquellos baules? 21. Tengo todos mis libros en el pequeño baul, y mi ropa en el grande. 22. ¿Son para V. estas cartas? 23. No, señor, son para mi padre. 24. ¿Quién vive en esa casa? 25. El padre de esos muchachos vive ahí. 26. Este hombre es el padre de aquellos muchachos, y esta mujer es la madre de aquellas muchachas. 27. Esta señora es de Paris, y su prima de Londres.

**Exercise 30.**

1. Is the book yours? 2. This book is mine, but that book is my brother's. 3. Who is that little boy? 4. He is (*the*) son of that lady. 5. This gentleman and that lady are French. 6. Are you the brother of these ladies? 7. I am their cousin. 8. Give me a piece of that cake. 9. That cake is not mine. 10. This book and pencil are for your brother. 11. This house is higher than that church. 12. Where are you going this afternoon? 13. I don't know yet. 14. These flowers are most beautiful. 15. Are these two gentlemen brothers? 16. They are not brothers, they are friends. 17. Do you know that country? 18. I know all these countries. 19. Is this gentleman the husband of that lady? 20. No, he is her brother.

21. This house is too small for us. 22. How many children has that man ? 23. He has three or four. 24. Have you money enough (enough money) ? 25. I have not much, but I have enough. 26. Have you much money ? 27. I have very little. 28. You speak too much.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** *Este, m., esta, f.*, designate the person or object nearer to the speaker ; *ese, m., esa, f.*, the person or object nearer to the person spoken to ; while *aquel, m., aquella, f.*, designate the person or object equally distant from the speaker and the person who is addressed :

Este hombre. — Ese libro. — Aquel *This man.* — *That book.* — *That pencil.*

Esta mujer. — Esa pluma. — Aquella *This woman.* — *That pen.* — *That thing.*

The same rule is applicable to the plural of these Demonstrative Adjectives :

Estos hombres. — Esos libros. — Aquellos *These men.* — *Those books.* — *Those pencils.*

Estas mujeres. — Esas plumas. — Aquellas *These women.* — *These pens.* — *Those things.*

**2.** Although the Demonstrative Adjectives precede the nouns, they are placed sometimes after them to express contempt, anger, or irony :

Al pícaro ese le haré yo castigar, *I will have this rogue punished.*

**3.** The Demonstrative Adjective must be repeated before every noun :

Este hombre, esta mujer y este muchacho *This man, woman, and child*  
están malos, *are sick.*

**4.** **Donde**, *where*, is preceded by the preposition **á** when the verb expresses motion, and by **en** when it expresses position or situation. **A donde** and **en donde** correspond in fact to the English *whither* and *wherein* :

*i A donde va V. ? Where are you going to ?*  
*i En donde está V. ? Where are you ?*

**Leccion XVI.****Lesson XVI.****DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.****Singular.**

Masculine.

**Este,** *this one, the latter ;***Ese,** *that one ;***Aquel,** *that one, the former ;***Feminine.****Esta,** *this one, the latter ;***Esa,** *that one ;***Aquella,** *that one, the former ;***Plural.**

Masculine.

**estos,** *these, the latter.***esos,** *those.***aquellos,** *those, the former.***Feminine.****estas,** *these, the latter.***esas,** *those.***aquellas,** *those, the former.***Neuter.****Esto,** *this, this thing.***Eso,** *that, that thing.***Aquello,** *that, that thing.***El, la, los, las, lo, as Pronouns.**

El de, — la de,

*That of.*

Los de, — las de,

*Those of.*

El or la de hierro,

*The iron one (that of iron).*

Los or las de oro,

*The gold ones (those of gold).*

El or la que yo tengo,

*The one I have (that which I have).*

Los or las que yo tengo,

*Those I have (those which I have).***El que, la que, los que, las que, lo que.**

El que está aquí,

*The one who is here (he who is here).*

La que está allí,

*The one who is there (she who is there).*

Los que dicen eso,

*Those who say that (they who say that).*

Las que hablan,

*Those (fem.) who speak (they (fem.) who speak).*

Lo que yo tengo,

*What I have (that which I have).*Es bueno, *it is good.**Son buenos, they are good.*Es muy hermoso, *it is very pretty.**Son muy hermosos, they are very pretty.*Es mi libro, *it is my book.**Son mios, they are mine.*Qué es ? *what is it ?**Está listo ? is it ready ?*

**Ejemplos.**

- Mi lápiz y el de mi hermano.  
 Mis lápices y los de mi hermano.  
 Mi pluma y la de mi hermana.  
 Mis plumas y las de mi hermana.  
 Mis libros y los de mi amigo.  
 Mis casas y las de mi hermano.  
 Este es grande, aquel es pequeño,  
*m. sing.*  
 Esta es grande, aquella es pequeña,  
*f. sing.*  
 Estos son buenos, aquellos son malos,  
*m. pl.*  
 Estas son buenas, aquellas son malas,  
*f. pl.*  
 Esto es mio, aquello es suyo.

**Examples.**

- My pencil and my brother's (that of my brother).  
 My pencils and my brother's (those of my brother).  
 My pen and my sister's (that of my sister.)  
 My pens and my sister's (those of my sister).  
 My books and my friend's (those of my friend).  
 My houses and my brother's (those of my brother).

- This one is large, that one is small.  
 This one is large, that one is small.  
 These are good, those are bad.  
 These are good, those are bad.  
 This (thing) is mine, that (thing) is his.  
 What (which) book will you have ? — This one or that one.  
 What (which) pen will you have ? — This one or that one.  
 What (which) books will you have ? — These or those.  
 What (which) pens will you have ? — These or those.  
 What will you have ? — That.  
 What knife do you sell ? — The iron one.  
 What houses do you buy ? — The wooden ones.  
 This is good, that is bad.  
 Give me that.  
 What I have is good.
- ¿Qué libro quiere V. ? — Este ó aquél.  
 ¿Qué pluma quiere V. ? — Esta ó aquella.  
 ¿Qué libros quiere V. ? — Estos ó aquellos.  
 ¿Qué plumas quiere V. ? — Estas ó aquellas.  
 ¿Qué quiere V. ? — Eso.  
 ¿Qué cuchillo vende V. ? — El de hierro.  
 ¿Qué casas compra V. ? — Las de madera.  
 Esto es bueno, aquello es malo.  
 Déme V. eso.  
 Lo que tengo es bueno.

*i* Qué es eso ?  
*i* Quien es ? — Soy yo.  
*i* Quien habla ? — Es ella.  
 Él es Ingles.  
 Ellas son Francesas.  
 Su hermano es sastre.

What is that ?  
 Who is it ? — It is I.  
 Who speaks ? — It is she.  
 He is English.  
 They (*fem.*) are French.  
 His brother is a tailor.

You have money, have you not ?  
 He is sick, is he not ?  
 You speak English, do you not ?  
 You wish to buy the house, do you not ?  
 You can come, can you not ?  
 You went out, did you not ?

### Vocabulario.

**El baul,** *the trunk.*  
**El papel,** *the paper.*  
**El paquete,** *the package.*  
**El pulpero,** *the grocer.*  
**El vaso,** *the glass.*  
**La plata,** *the silver.*  
**Las tijeras,** *the scissors.*  
**Ayer,** *yesterday.*

### Vocabulary.

**De este modo,** *in this way.*  
**Demasiado,** *too, too much, too many.*  
**Dice,** *says.*  
**Hace V.?** *do you do ?*  
**Julio,** *Julius.*  
**Limpio,** *clean.*  
**Por supuesto,** *of course.*

### Exercise 31.

1. Tiene V. mis tijeras ?
2. Tengo las de su hermana.
3. *i* Quiere V. este pedazo de pan ó aquel ?
4. Déme V. ese.
5. *i* Donde estan mis libros ?
6. Los de V. estan en mi cuarto, pero los de su hermano estan aquí.
7. *i* Quiere V. el reloj de oro ó el de plata ?
8. Quiero el de oro, por supuesto.
9. Carlos y Eduardo ya tienen sus baules, el de Carlos es muy grande, pero el de Eduardo es demasiado pequeño.
10. Déme V. otra pluma, la que tengo es muy mala.
11. Él que dice eso, es un hombre malo.
12. *i* Tiene V. la pluma de Enrique ?
13. Tengo la de Julio.
14. Aquí está el libro de mi hermano y el mio ; este es mas bonito que aquel.
15. Las manzanas de hoy son mejores que las de ayer.
16. *i* Quiere V. este vaso ó aquel ?
17. Déme V. el que V. tiene ; el que esta allí no está limpio.
18. *i* Sabe V. lo que tengo ?
19. Yo sé muy bien lo que V. tiene.
20. *i* Qué quiere V. aquí ?
21. Yo quiero lo que es mio.
22. *i* Qué es eso ?
23. Es

un pedazo de papel. 24. Estos dos hombres son hermanos, él que tiene el sombrero negro habla frances. 25. ¿ Quien está á la puerta ? 26. Es un muchacho con un paquete. 27. ¿ Es un paquete grande ? 28. No, es un paquete muy pequeño. 29. ¿ Es aquello para ustedes ? 30. No, es para mi hermano.

### Exercise 32.

1. I have two pencils ; this one is for you and that one for your sister.
2. These gentlemen are French, and those are English ; the latter are rich, but the former are poor.
3. Are the apples good ?
4. Those of our grocer are very good.
5. Is this package for you ?
6. No ; not this one, but that one.
7. What pen will you have ?
8. Give me the gold one.
9. My house is small, but my brother's is much smaller.
10. Give me that.
11. I want this, but not that.
12. Is this well ?
13. This is well, but that is not so well.
14. Are those gentlemen English ?
15. They are French.
16. Who is at the door ? is it Edward ?
17. No, sir, it is Henry.
18. What is that !
19. It is a little box.
20. For whom is that ?
21. It is for your brother.
22. Is it good ?
23. It is not good.
24. How do you do that ?
25. In this way ; it is very easy.
26. Do you speak English or French ?
27. I speak English, but not French.
28. Who is the man at the door ?
29. It is not a man, it is a woman.
30. Will you have this or that ?
31. I don't wish anything.
32. Who is it ?
33. It is I.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

**1.** In the foregoing lesson the difference between **este**, **ese**, and **aquel** has been sufficiently explained. The same rule (L. 15, R. 1) is applicable to the neuter **esto**, **eso**, and **aquello**, that is to say, that **esto** refers to the object nearer to the speaker ; **eso** to the object nearer to the person spoken to, and **aquello** the object equally distant from the speaker and the person who is addressed :

Esto es bueno, eso es malo ;      *This (thing) is good, that one is bad ; but pero aquello es peor,*      *that one there is worse.*

**2.** When there are two objects in the sentence to which ref-

erence is to be made, **aquel** is used for the first one mentioned, and **este** for the last mentioned.

The same rule is applicable to the feminine, the plural, and the neuter :

Cárlos era grande, Federico ambicioso ; este (*Federico*) valiente, aquel (*Cárlos*) poderoso,

*Charles was great, Frederic ambitious; the latter brave, the former powerful.*

**3. Esto** is also used when referring to something which the speaker has already mentioned ; and **eso** when referring to something mentioned by the person who is addressed :

Esto que yo digo, es cierto,      *What I say is certain.*  
Eso que V. dice, no es verdad,      *What you say is not true.*

**4. When a fourth object is referred to, the adjective **otro**, *other*, is added to the adjective, or to the pronoun :**

Aquel otro libro,      *That other book.*  
Aquel otro,      *That other one.*

**5. The word **mismo** is often added to the Demonstrative Pronouns to call attention more especially to them :**

Este mismo,      *This very or same one.*  
Aquel mismo,      *That very or same one.*

**6. That of** is rendered by *el de* or *la de*, and **those of** by *los de* or *las de* according to the gender of the noun referred to. The English formation of the possessive does not exist in Spanish :

Mi libro y el de mi amigo,	<i>My book and my friend's.</i>
Nuestra casa y la de nuestros amigos,	<i>Our house and our friends'.</i>
Mis amigos y los de V.	<i>My friends and yours.</i>
Sus libros de V. y los de Juan,	<i>Your books and John's.</i>

**7. That which, the one which, are rendered by *el que* or *la que*, and those which by *los que* or *las que*.**

**Quien**, *who*, may be used instead of *que* at the beginning of a sentence when speaking of a person :

Él que or él quien habla mal de su prójimo, no será admitido en mi casa,	<i>He who (whoever) speaks ill of his neighbor shall not be admitted in my house.</i>
--	---

**8.** The article and the Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun should never be separated in Spanish, and when this separation takes place in English a different construction must be adopted :

Yerran los que dicen eso,      *Those are mistaken who say that.*

**9.** **Ello** is often used for *eso*, and corresponds also to the Pronoun **it**:

Hablamos de ello,      *We speak of it.*

**10.** The Pronoun **it** and its corresponding **they** for the plural, when the subjects of a sentence, are generally suppressed in Spanish :

Es bueno, <i>it is good;</i>	Son buenos, <i>they are good.</i>
Está aquí, <i>it is here;</i>	Están allá, <i>they are there.</i>

---

## Leccion XVII.

## Lesson XVII.

### AUXILIARY VERB HABER, *to have.*

Yo he,	<i>I have.</i>
Tí has,	<i>thou hast.</i>
Él ha,	<i>he has.</i>
Ella ha,	<i>she has.</i>
Nosotros hemos,	<i>we have.</i>
Vosotros habeis,	<i>you have.</i>
V. ha, .......	
V. V. han, ...	
Ellos ( <i>m.</i> ) han,	<i>they have.</i>
Ellas ( <i>f.</i> ) han,	<i>they have.</i>

### Regular Verbs.

#### *Verbs of the 1st Conjugation, ending in ar:*

Hablar, hablado,	<i>to speak, spoken.</i>
Cortar, cortado,	<i>to cut, cut.</i>
Tomar, tomado,	<i>to take, taken.</i>
Comprar, comprado,	<i>to buy, bought.</i>

#### *Verbs of the 2d Conjugation, ending in er:*

Comer, comido,	<i>to eat, eaten.</i>
Beber, bebido,	<i>to drink, drank.</i>
Vender, vendido,	<i>to sell, sold.</i>
Temer, temido,	<i>to fear, feared.</i>

*Verbs of the 3d Conjugation, ending in ir:*

Recibir, recibido,	<i>to receive, received.</i>
Subir, subido,	<i>to ascend, to go up; ascended, gone up.</i>
Partir, partido,	<i>to divide, divided.</i>

**Ejemplos.**

- ¿ A quien ha hablado V. ?  
 He hablado á este hombre.  
 Mi hermano ha vendido su casa.  
 Los muchachos han comido el pan.  
 ¿ Han recibido V. V. dinero ?  
 Hemos recibido un poco.  
 ¿ Donde ha estado V. ?  
 He estado en la casa.  
 ¿ Quien ha tomado mi sombrero ?  
 Nadie ha tomado su sombrero.  
 Hemos sido muy felices.  
 ¿ Quien ha salido ?  
 Nadie ha salido.  
 No he comprado nada.  
 He dado un pedazo de pan al pobre.

**Examples.**

- To whom have you spoken ?  
 I have spoken to this man.  
 My brother has sold his house.  
 The boys have eaten the bread.  
 Have you received any money ?  
 We have received a little.  
 Where have you been ?  
 I have been in the house.  
 Who has taken my hat ?  
 Nobody has taken your hat.  
 We have been very happy.  
 Who has gone out ?  
 Nobody has gone out.  
 I have not bought anything.  
 I have given a piece of bread to the  
 poor man.

**Vocabulario.**

- El cajon**, *the drawer.*  
**El campo**, *the country.*<sup>1</sup>  
**El pais**, *the country.*<sup>1</sup>  
**El pañuelo**, *the handkerchief.*  
**El peso**, *the dollar.*  
**El tiempo**, *the time.*  
**La cosa**, *the thing.*  
**Las mercancías**, *the goods.*  
**La sopa**, *the soup.*  
**Aprender**, *to learn.*  
**Castigar**, *to punish.*  
**Dar**, *to give.*  
**Desobediente**, *disobedient.*

**Vocabulary.**

- Estar**, *to be.*  
**Europa**, *Europe.*  
**Hallar**, *to find.*  
**Malo**, *unwell.*  
**Otro**, *another.*  
**Perder**, *to lose.*  
**Porque**, *because.*  
**Salir**, *to go out.*  
**Ser**, *to be.*  
**Tener**, *to have.*  
**Todo el mundo**, *every body.*  
**Varios**, *as, several.*  
**Vivir**, *to live.*

<sup>1</sup> **Campo** refers to the country contrasted with the city, while **pais** means a tract of land inhabited by a nation.

**Exercise 33.**

1. Los muchachos han comido todas las manzanas del jardin.
2. ¿ Ha dado V. el café al caballero ? 3. No, señora, pero he dado el té á la señora.
4. ¿ Ha comprado V. una mesa ? 5. Si, señor, he comprado una mesa de caoba.
6. ¿ En donde ha hallado V. esto ?
7. En nuestro jardin.
8. ¿ Quien ha tomado dinero de mi cajon ?
9. Su hermano de V. ha tomado dinero y papeles.
10. Qué sopa han tenido V. V. ?
11. Hemos tenido una sopa muy buena.
12. ¿ Qué han comprado V. V. hoy ?
13. Hemos comprado muchísimas cosas.
14. ¿ Qué ha perdido su hermana de V. ?
15. Ha perdido su pañuelo.
16. ¿ Han comprado V. V. manzanas ?
17. No, señor, hemos comprado peras.
18. ¿ Ha recibido V. algo de su padre ?
19. He recibido varias cosas.
20. ¿ Ha estado V. malo ?
21. Si, señor, he estado bastante malo.
22. ¿ Quien ha estado en la casa ?
23. Nadie ha estado en la casa, pero alguno ha estado en el jardin.
24. ¿ Porqué no ha comprado V. la casa del médico, V. que es tan rico ?
25. Nunca he sido rico.
26. ¿ Ha aprendido V. su lección ?
27. Todavía no, no he tenido tiempo.
28. ¿ De quien ha hablado V. ?
29. He hablado de mis buenos amigos.
30. Mi hermano ha vendido su caballo, pero ha comprado otro mas grande.

**Exercise 34.**

1. The soldier has given an apple to the child.
2. My sister has received two letters from Paris.
3. The children have been in the garden with their little friends.
4. Have the boys eaten the cheese ?
5. They have eaten the bread.
6. Has the general bought a house ?
7. He has bought a house in our street.
8. Have you had any money ?
9. I have had two dollars.
10. Where have you been, John ?
11. I have been in the country.
12. Have you bought your silk dress in that large store ?
13. I have bought no dress.
14. Who has been sick at your house ?
15. Every body has been sick.
16. Charles has been disobedient and he has been punished.
17. The merchant has received many goods from Europe.
18. Have you found anything in the drawer ?
19. I have not found anything in it (*en él*).
20. Why has not your brother gone out ?
21. Because he has not been well.
22. Have you bought anything for the children ?
23. Yes, I have bought something useful for them (*ellos*).
24. Have you lived in that country ?
25. No, sir, I have never been

in that country. 26. Have you eaten enough, my friend ? 27. Yes, sir, I have eaten and drank enough. 28. Has your father gone out ? 29. He has not gone out yet. 30. The soldiers have received less bread than meat.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** The verb *to have* is rendered in Spanish by two different verbs, **tener** and **haber**.

**Tener**, of which we have already spoken (L. IV., P. 35), is used as an active verb to indicate a material or immaterial possession, and generally means *to possess, to hold*, as :

Yo tengo dinero, *I have money.*

El tiene tiempo, *he has time.*

El tiene un bastón, *he has a stick.*

Tenemos pan, *we have bread.*

**Haber** is used as an auxiliary verb preceding the past participle as :

He recibido dinero, *I have received money.*

Hemos comido pan, *We have eaten bread.*

**Haber** cannot be separated from the principal verb as is the case in English in interrogative sentences. Thus : *Have you given ?* must be rendered by **¿ha dado V. ?** and *has he come ?* by **¿ha venido él ?**

**2.** **Haber** was formerly used as an active verb, and had then the following Imperative :

He tu, *thou shalt have ;*

hayamos, *we shall have.*

Haya él, *he shall have ;*

habed, *you shall have.*

hayan, *they shall have.*

It may be used even now in sentences with the Infinitive :

Aprovecharé cuantos medios yo puedo  
haber,

*I will use all the means I may  
have.*

Él empleó cuanta influencia pudo ha-  
ber,

*He used all the influence he could  
command (have).*

**3.** The verb **tener** may be used sometimes as auxiliary, and the sense of the sentence would be but slightly altered. In this

case the participle would have to agree in gender and number with the noun :

Tengo escritas las cartas,	<i>I have the letters (all) written.</i>
Tenemos el dinero contado,	<i>We have the money counted.</i>

This way of expressing one's self ought, however, to be avoided by all those not perfectly familiar with the language, as it might lead to mistakes in style.

#### 4. All verbs in Spanish end in **ar**, **er**, or **ir**.

Verbs ending in **ar** belong to the 1st Conjugation, as :

Amar, *to love*;    dar, *to give*;    hablar, *to speak*.

Verbs ending in **er** belong to the 2d Conjugation, as :

Comer, *to eat*;    beber, *to drink*;    correr, *to run*;    tener, *to have*.

Verbs ending in **ir** belong to the 3d Conjugation, as :

Recibir, *to receive*;    huir, *to flee*;    dividir, *to divide*;    salir, *to go out*.

5. All regular verbs of the 1st Conjugation end in the Past Participle in **ado**, and those of the 2d and 3d Conjugation in **ido**. The same may be said of nearly all the irregular verbs in the three Conjugations : *amar, amado*; *coger, cogido*; *atribuir, atribuido*; etc.

## Leccion XVIII.

VERB **HABER**, *to have* (continued).

### Irregular Participles.

<b>Abrir</b> , <i>to open</i> ;	<b>abierto</b> , <i>opened</i> .
<b>Cubrir</b> , <i>to cover</i> ;	<b>cubierto</b> , <i>covered</i> .
<b>Dicir</b> , <i>to say, to tell</i> ;	<b>dicho</b> , <i>said, told</i> .
<b>Escribir</b> , <i>to write</i> ;	<b>escrito</b> , <i>written</i> .
<b>Hacer</b> , <i>to make, to do</i> ;	<b>hecho</b> , <i>made, done</i> .
<b>Morir</b> , <i>to die</i> ;	<b>muerto</b> , <i>died</i> .
<b>Poner</b> , <i>to put</i> ;	<b>puesto</b> , <i>put</i> .
<b>Ver</b> , <i>to see</i> ;	<b>visto</b> , <i>seen</i> .
<b>Volver</b> , <i>to return</i> ;	<b>vuelto</b> , <i>returned</i> .

## Lesson XVIII.

**Haber de and tener que:**

<i>i Que he de hacer ?</i>	{	<i>What am I to do ?</i>
<i>i Que tengo que hacer ?</i>		
<i>V. ha de estudiar,</i>	{	<i>You must study.</i>
<i>V. tiene que estudiar,</i>		
<i>i Que hemos de decir ?</i>	{	<i>What are we to say ?</i>
<i>i Que tenemos que decir,</i>		
<i>V. V. han de decir la verdad,</i>	{	<i>You must tell the truth.</i>
<i>V. V. tienen que decir la verdad,</i>		

**Preposition á and Active Verbs :**

<i>i Á quién ha visto V. ?</i>	<i>Whom have you seen ?</i>
<i>He visto á su padre de V.</i>	<i>I have seen your father.</i>
<i>Amo á mis amigos,</i>	<i>I love my friends.</i>
<i>Juan ha perdido á su padre,</i>	<i>John has lost his father.</i>
<i>El médico cura al enfermo,</i>	<i>The physician cures the patient.</i>

**Pero and sino :**

No tengo oro, pero tengo plata,	<i>I have not gold, but I have silver.</i>
No tengo oro, sino plata,	<i>I have not gold, but silver.</i>
Él es jóven, pero es muy prudente,	<i>He is young, but he is very prudent.</i>
No tenemos hermanos, sino hermanas,	<i>We have no brothers, but sisters.</i>
No hablo inglés, sino español,	<i>I don't speak English, but Spanish.</i>
Él no habla inglés, pero habla es pañol,	<i>He does not speak English, but he speaks Spanish.</i>

**O and ú, or ; Y and é, and :**

Él ó yo,	<i>He or I.</i>
Uno ú otro ( <i>before o</i> ),	<i>One or the other.</i>
Tio y sobrino,	<i>Uncle and nephew.</i>
Verano é invierno, { <i>before i</i>	<i>Summer and winter.</i>
Padre é hijo, { <i>or hi.</i>	<i>Father and son.</i>

**Vocabulario.**

*El criado, the servant.  
El dueño, the owner.  
El maestro, the teacher.  
El rincón, the corner.  
El teatro, the theater.  
El viaje, the journey.  
La batalla, the battle.  
La carta, the letter.  
La mañana, the morning.*

*La nieve, the snow.  
La tierra, the earth.  
La ventana, the window.  
Alguien, alguno, some-  
body, anybody.  
Así, thus.  
Con, with.  
Desde, since.  
Dos, two.*

**Vocabulary.**

*Enfermo, ill, sick.  
Escribir, 3. to write.  
España, f. Spain.  
Europa, f. Europe.  
Francia, f. France.  
Italia, f. Italy.  
Sino, but.  
Tres, three.  
Viajar, 1. to travel.*

**Exercise 35.**

1. ¿ Quien ha abierto la ventana ? 2. Creo que es el criado. 3. ¿ A quien ha visto V. en el teatro ? 4. He visto á todos mis amigos.
5. ¿ Quien ha dicho eso ? 6. El panadero ha dicho eso á mi hermano.
7. ¿ Como ha hecho V. eso ! 8. Así. 9. ¿ Ha escrito V. á su padre ? 10. No, señor, no he escrito todavía á nadie. 11. ¿ Ha vuelto su familia del campo ? 12. Toda la familia ha vuelto á la ciudad desde tres dias.
13. ¿ Quien ha muerto en esa casa ? 14. Nadie ha muerto, pero todo el mundo está enfermo. 15. ¿ Donde ha puesto V. mi baston ? 16. Está en el rincon. 17. ¿ Á quien ha hablado V. en aquella casa ? 18. He hablado al dueño de la casa. 19. ¿ Ha conocido V. á mi padre ? 20. He conocido á su padre y á su madre de V. en Francia.
21. ¿ Han comprado V. V. buenas manzanas ? 22. Las manzanas que hemos comprado no son muy buenas.
23. ¿ Ha visto V. á mi hermana ? 24. No he visto á nadie.
25. ¿ Que tiene V. que hacer ? 26. Tengo muchísimo que hacer.
27. ¿ Tiene V. oro ó papel ? 28. No tengo oro, pero tengo papel.
29. Este caballero no habla sino inglés.

**Exercise 36.**

1. Have you seen anybody in the garden ? 2. I have seen Mr. Rojas and his son. 3. Why have you said that ? 4. I have not said anything, I have not spoken. 5. Is the door open ? 6. The door and the window are closed. 7. Have you written to your father ? 8. I have written to my father, mother, and sisters. 9. Who has put my cane in the other room ? 10. I don't know, no one has been here since this morning. 11. Has your friend returned from Europe ? 12. He has not returned yet. 13. Is this gentleman your brother ? 14. He is not my brother, but my cousin. 15. Where must you go this afternoon ? 16. I have to go out with my father. 17. The general has died in the battle. 18. Where have the children been this morning ? 19. They have been in the house. 20. With what have you written that ? 21. I have written all that with a pencil. 22. Do you know what the teacher has said ? 23. I know very well what he has said. 24. Is your uncle rich ? 25. He has been rich, but he is poor now. 26. Have the children written their letters ? 27. They have written two or three letters. 28. Do you know this gentleman ? 29. I know his brother.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The Past Participle agrees in gender and number with its subject when accompanied by the verb **estar**, *to be*.

It remains invariable when used with the auxiliary **haber**, *to have*.

He comido. — Hemos comido,  
Ellos (*or* ellas) han comido,  
La carta está escrita,  
Las cartas estan escritas,  
Los caminos estan cubiertos de nieve,

*I have eaten. — We have eaten.*  
*They have eaten.*  
*The letter is written.*  
*The letters are written.*  
*The roads are covered with snow.*

**2.** The verb **haber** is also used to express obligation, and is then followed by the preposition **de** and the Infinitive of the principal verb. The verb **tener** followed by **que** is used in the same way, and both verbs correspond then to the English verb **must**. The active verb **deber** has also the same meaning :

He de ir á la ciudad,  
Tengo que ir á la ciudad, }  
Debo ir á la ciudad,

*I must go to the city.*

**3.** The object of an active verb requires the preposition **á** before it when this object is a person, a rational being, or a thing personified :

Veo <i>á</i> un hombre,	<i>I see a man.</i>
Vemos <i>al</i> hombre,	<i>We see the man.</i>
Conocemos <i>á</i> estos caballeros,	<i>We know these gentlemen.</i>
<i>¿A</i> quien conoce V. ?	<i>Whom do you know ?</i>

**4.** The preposition **á**, which is not translated in English, must, however, be left out in Spanish after an active verb and a person, if by the addition of this preposition the sentence should not be clearly expressed :

Envio el hijo al padre (not : envio <i>al</i> hijo al padre),	<i>I send the son to the father.</i>
Han robado <i>un</i> niño,	<i>They have stolen a child.</i>
Han robado <i>á</i> un niño	<i>would mean</i>
Quiero <i>un</i> criado,	" "
Quiero <i>á</i> un criado,	" "

<i>I send the son to the father.</i>
<i>They have stolen a child.</i>
<i>They have robbed a child.</i>
<i>I want a servant.</i>
<i>I love a servant.</i>

**5.** **Pero** and **sino** are both rendered by *but*. **Pero** is used when a verb is expressed in the second part of the sentence, while **sino** is used when the first part of the sentence is negative and no verb is expressed in the second part.

**Sino** has also the meaning of *except*, and is used with the negative :

Hablo frances, pero no hablo ingles,      *I speak French, but I do not speak English.*

No hablo frances sino ingles,      *I don't speak French, but English.*  
El no habla sino aleman,      *He speaks nothing but (except) German.*

**6.** **Solamente**, *only, but*, may be used instead of *sino* in the affirmative :

No tengo oro, tengo solamente papel,      *I have no gold, I have only paper.*

---

## Lección XIX.

## Lesson XIX.

### THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE, OR GERUND.

#### 1st Conjugation :

Amar ; amando,	<i>to love ; loving.</i>
Hablar ; hablando,	<i>to speak ; speaking.</i>
Comprar ; comprando,	<i>to buy ; buying.</i>
Tomar ; tomando,	<i>to take ; taking.</i>

#### 2d Conjugation :

Comer ; comiendo,	<i>to eat, to dine ; eating, dining.</i>
Beber ; bebiendo,	<i>to drink ; drinking.</i>
Hacer ; haciendo,	<i>to do, to make ; doing, making.</i>
Perder ; perdiendo,	<i>to lose ; losing.</i>

#### 3d Conjugation :

Recibir ; recibiendo,	<i>to receive ; receiving.</i>
Salir ; saliendo,	<i>to go out ; going out.</i>
Partir ; partiendo,	<i>to divide ; dividing.</i>
Subir ; subiendo,	<i>to ascend, to go out ; ascending, going out.</i>

*Verbs in eer and uir :*

- Leer ; leyendo,      *to read ; reading.*  
 Instruir ; instruyendo,      *to instruct ; instructing.*

**Irregular Verbs.**

- Decir ; diciendo,      *to say, to tell ; saying, telling.*  
 Dormir ; durmiendo,      *to sleep ; sleeping.*  
 Morir ; muriendo,      *to die ; dying.*  
 Pedir ; pidiendo,      *to ask for ; asking for.*  
 Poder ; pudiendo,      *to be able, can ; being able.*  
 Sentir ; sintiendo,      *to feel, to hear ; feeling, hearing.*

**Ejemplos.**

- ¡ De qué está V. hablando ?  
 Estoy hablando del tiempo.  
 Los muchachos estan jugando.  
 ¡ Qué está V. haciendo ?  
 Estoy escribiendo una carta.  
 ¡ Qué estan diciendo estos hombres ?  
 No estan hablando.  
 Mi madre está durmiendo.  
 Los niños vienen llorando.  
 He estado leyendo todo el dia.  
 Aprendo estudiando y leyendo.  
 ¡ Qué estan V. V. leyendo ?  
 Estamos leyendo un libro frances.

**Examples.**

- Of what are you speaking ?  
 I am speaking of the weather.  
 The boys are playing.  
 What are you doing ?  
 I am writing a letter.  
 What are these men saying ?  
 They are not speaking.  
 My mother is sleeping.  
 The children are coming crying.  
 I have been reading the whole day.  
 I learn by studying and reading.  
 What are you reading ?  
 We are reading a French book.

**Vocabulario.**

- El albañil, *the mason.*  
 El barco, *the vessel.*  
 El capitán, *the captain.*  
 El gusto, *the pleasure.*  
 El vaso, *the glass.*  
 La fonda, *the hotel.*  
 La tarde, *the afternoon.*  
 La noche, *the night.*  
 Abierto, *opened.*  
 Alemania, *f. Germany.*  
 Almorzar, *1. to breakfast.*  
 Bebo, *I drink.*

- Cantar, *1. to sing.*  
 Concluir, *3. to finish.*  
 Conocer, *2. to know.*  
 Correr, *2. to run.*  
 Estudiar, *1. to study.*  
 Hasta, *until.*  
 Importante, *important.*  
 Jugar, *1. to play.*  
 Llegar, *1. to arrive.*  
 Llorar, *1. to cry, to weep.*  
 Mandar, *1. to send.*

**Vocabulary.**

- Muchas gracias, *I (or we) thank you.*  
 Nosotros, *us.*  
 Pasar, *1. to pass.*  
 Por, *through, by.*  
 Prestar, *1. to lend.*  
 Tarde, *late.*  
 Tomar, *1. to take.*  
 Va, *goes.*  
 Venir, *3. to come.*  
 Ya, *already.*

**Exercise 37.**

1. ¿Qué estan haciendo los muchachos en el cuarto? 2. Estan jugando con sus amiguitos. 3. ¿Quien está cantando en la calle? 4. Una pobre mujer está cantando. 5. Mi hermano está leyendo, y mi hermana está escribiendo. 6. ¿Ha hablado V. al capitán? 7. Yo no he hablado á nadie, he estado en mi cuarto hasta ahora. 8. ¿A quien ha prestado V. dinero? 9. He prestado dinero á su hermano de V. 10. ¿Sabe V. si el general está en casa? 11. Está en su cuarto, pero está durmiendo. 12. El muchacho va corriendo por las calles. 13. ¿De que está V. hablando? 14. Estoy hablando de una cosa muy importante. 15. ¿Quiere V. comer hoy con nosotros? 16. Con mucho gusto. 17. ¿En qué país ha vivido V.? 18. He vivido dos años en Francia, y tres años en Alemania. 19. ¿Cuantas cartas han escrito V. V.? 20. Hemos escrito dos ó tres. 21. ¿Quiere V. tomar un vaso de vino? 22. Muchas gracias, yo no bebo vino. 23. ¿Qué ha dicho el médico? 24. No sé lo que ha dicho, porque ha hablado con mi hermano. 25. ¿Porqué está llorando ese muchacho? 26. El llora por nada. 27. He estado escribiendo desde esta mañana, y todavía no he concluido mis cartas. 28. ¿Dónde ha pasado V. la noche? 29. He pasado la noche en la fonda, no conociendo á nadie aquí. 30. ¿Porqué no ha venido V. á mi casa? 31. Porque no sabia (*I did not know*) donde V. vivia (*lived*).

**Exercise 38.**

1. Where are the children? 2. They are playing in the garden. 3. Have they studied their lessons? 4. They have been studying all the morning. 5. With whom were you (*estaba V.*) speaking in the garden? 6. I was speaking with a French gentleman. 7. Were you sleeping this afternoon? 8. No, I was writing in my room. 9. Who is crying in the other room? 10. The little boy is crying. 11. What is your brother doing now? 12. I don't know where he is now. 13. Where are you going to? 14. I am going home. 15. Why have you eaten my bread? 16. Because I had (*habia*) not eaten anything since this morning. 17. Has your father gone out? 18. No, sir, he is in the house; he is breakfasting. 19. The masons are building a splendid house in our street. 20. What was (*estaba*) that man saying? 21. He was speaking of the weather. 22. Why are you running? 23. Because it is already late. 24. Have you sent the money

to the tailor? 25. Not yet, I have not received my money. 26. This poor boy has lost his father and mother. 27. Do you know if the vessel has arrived? 28. Yes, sir, it has arrived; I have spoken to the captain. 29. Who has been in my room this morning? 30. Your brothers and sisters have been here and have opened your room. 31. What is that man asking for? 32. He is asking for money.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The Present Participle (Gerund) ends in Spanish in **ando**, for the 1st conjugation; and in **iendo** for the 2d and 3d conjugations. These terminations are added to the Present of the Infinitive after suppressing the terminations **ar**, **er**, and **ir**.

This is the case in regular verbs and also in most of the irregular verbs: the termination never changes, but the radical part of a few irregular verbs undergoes a slight change:

Hablar, hablando ;	<i>to speak, speaking.</i>
Comer, comiendo ;	<i>to eat, eating.</i>
Escribir, escribiendo ;	<i>to write, writing.</i>
Pedir, pidiendo ;	<i>to ask for, asking for.</i>
Dormir, durmiendo ;	<i>to sleep, sleeping.</i>

**2.** Verbs ending in **eer** and **uir** change the **i** into **y**:

Leer, leyendo ;	<i>to read, reading.</i>
Instruir, instruyendo ;	<i>to instruct, instructing.</i>

**3.** The Present Participle used with the verb **estar**, *to be*, corresponds to the progressive form in English, and expresses the action of the verb as continuing and unfinished:

Estoy leyendo,	<i>I am reading.</i>
¿ Que está V. haciendo ?	<i>What are you doing?</i>
Está lloviendo,	<i>It is raining.</i>
Él estaba escribiendo,	<i>He was writing.</i>
He estado leyendo todo el dia,	<i>I have been reading the whole day.</i>

**4.** The verb **estar** is not used with the Present Participle of the verbs **ser**, *to be*; **ir**, *to go*; **venir**, *to come*. Thus we would not say: **estoy yendo**, *I am going*; but **voy**, *I go*; nor **esta viniendo**, *he is coming*, but **viene**, *he comes*; etc.

**5.** When other verbs are used as auxiliaries of the Present Participle, they sufficiently explain themselves :

El niño sigue durmiendo,	<i>The child continues sleeping.</i>
El viene corriendo,	<i>He comes running.</i>

**6.** The Present Participle indicates a certain continuation of the action :

Andan entrando y saliendo,	<i>They continue coming in and going out.</i>
----------------------------	---

**7.** The Present Participle is also used to express the way in which a thing happens :

La tos se cura sudando,	<i>Coughing is cured by perspiring.</i>
Se aprende estudiando,	<i>One learns by studying.</i>

**8.** It is also used with the preposition **en**, *in*; and refers then to the action of the other verb :

En acabando irá,	<i>When he has finished he will go.</i>
------------------	---

**OBSERVATION.** — The preposition may, however, be left out in most cases, without altering the sense of the sentence.

**9.** The Present Participle of the verb **estar** often precedes that of another verb :

Estando comiendo, recibió la carta,	<i>Whilst he was dining he received the letter.</i>
-------------------------------------	---

**10.** The Present Participle is used very frequently in Spanish for the sake of brevity and euphony, and in cases where the English use adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions, as : **when**, **as**, **while**, **whilst**, **since**, **if**, **by**, etc. :

Habla durmiendo,	<i>He talks while he sleeps.</i>
Se aprende leyendo,	<i>One learns by reading.</i>
Siendo así, no quiero ir,	<i>Since it is so, I shall not go.</i>
Dandole yo licencia, saldrá,	<i>If I give him permission, he will go out.</i>
Viendo que su hermano no venia, se fué.	<i>When he saw that his brother was not coming, he went away.</i>

**Leccion XX.****Lesson XX.****CARDINAL NUMBERS.**

The Cardinal Numbers are :

<i>Uno, m., una, f.</i>	<i>One.</i>
<i>Dos,</i>	<i>Two.</i>
<i>Tres,</i>	<i>Three.</i>
<i>Cuatro,</i>	<i>Four.</i>
<i>Cinco,</i>	<i>Five.</i>
<i>Seis,</i>	<i>Six.</i>
<i>Siete,</i>	<i>Seven.</i>
<i>Ocho,</i>	<i>Eight.</i>
<i>Nueve,</i>	<i>Nine.</i>
<i>Diez,</i>	<i>Ten.</i>
<i>Once,</i>	<i>Eleven.</i>
<i>Doce,</i>	<i>Twelve.</i>
<i>Trece,</i>	<i>Thirteen.</i>
<i>Catorce,</i>	<i>Fourteen.</i>
<i>Quince,</i>	<i>Fifteen.</i>
<i>Diez y seis,<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Sixteen.</i>
<i>Diez y siete,</i>	<i>Seventeen.</i>
<i>Diez y ocho,</i>	<i>Eighteen.</i>
<i>Diez y nueve,</i>	<i>Nineteen.</i>
<i>Veinte,</i>	<i>Twenty.</i>
<i>Veinte y uno,</i>	<i>Twenty-one.</i>
<i>Veinte y dos,</i>	<i>Twenty-two.</i>
<i>Veinte y tres,</i>	<i>Twenty-three.</i>
<i>Veinte y cuatro,</i>	<i>Twenty-four.</i>
<i>Veinte y cinco,</i>	<i>Twenty-five.</i>
<i>Veinte y seis,</i>	<i>Twenty-six.</i>
<i>Veinte y siete,</i>	<i>Twenty-seven.</i>
<i>Veinte y ocho,</i>	<i>Twenty-eight.</i>
<i>Veinte y nueve,</i>	<i>Twenty-nine.</i>
<i>Treinta,</i>	<i>Thirty.</i>
<i>Treinta y uno,</i>	<i>Thirty-one.</i>
<i>Cuarenta,</i>	<i>Forty.</i>
<i>Cincuenta,</i>	<i>Fifty.</i>

<sup>1</sup> These numbers are also written in one word, as : **Dieziseis, veintiuno, treintaiuno**, etc.

Sesenta,	<i>Sixty.</i>
Setenta,	<i>Seventy.</i>
Ochenta,	<i>Eighty.</i>
Noventa,	<i>Ninety.</i>
Ciento, <sup>1</sup>	<i>One hundred.</i>
Ciento y uno,	<i>One hundred and one.</i>
Ciento y diez,	<i>One hundred and ten.</i>
Doscientos (-as, f.),	<i>Two hundred.</i>
Trescientos (-as, f.),	<i>Three hundred.</i>
Cuatrocientos (-as, f.),	<i>Four hundred.</i>
Quinientos (-as, f.),	<i>Five hundred.</i>
Seiscientos (-as, f.),	<i>Six hundred.</i>
Setecientos (-as, f.),	<i>Seven hundred.</i>
Ochocientos (-as, f.),	<i>Eight hundred.</i>
Novecientos (-as, f.)	<i>Nine hundred.</i>
Mil,	<i>One thousand.</i>
Mil y ciento,	<i>One thousand one hundred.</i>
Mil y doscientos (-as, f.)	<i>One thousand two hundred.</i>
Dos mil,	<i>Two thousand.</i>
Cien <sup>1</sup> mil,	<i>One hundred thousand.</i>
Doscientos (-as, f.) mil,	<i>Two hundred thousand.</i>
Un millon,	<i>One million.</i>
Dos millones,	<i>Two millions.</i>
Zero (cero),	<i>Zero or cipher.</i>

**Días de la semana.****Days of the week.**

Domingo,	<i>Sunday.</i>	El domingo,	<i>On Sunday.</i>
Lunes,	<i>Monday.</i>	Los lunes,	<i>On Mondays.</i>
Martes,	<i>Tuesday.</i>	El martes por la mañana,	<i>Tuesday morning.</i>
Miércoles,	<i>Wednesday.</i>	El miércoles por la noche,	<i>Wednesday evening.</i>
Jueves,	<i>Thursday.</i>	El jueves próximo, {	<i>Next Thursday.</i>
Viernes,	<i>Friday.</i>	El jueves que viene, {	
Sábado,	<i>Saturday.</i>	El sábado pasado,	<i>Last Saturday.</i>

**Divisiones del dia.****Divisions of the day.**

La mañana,	<i>The morning.</i>
El dia.	<i>The day.</i>
La tarde,	<i>The afternoon.</i>

<sup>1</sup> **Ciento** drops the syllable *to* before another word. **Cien hombres**, *One hundred men.*

La noche,	<i>The evening, the night.</i>
Mañana por la mañana,	<i>To-morrow morning.</i>
Mañana por la noche,	<i>To-morrow evening.</i>
De dia,	<i>In day-time.</i>
De noche,	<i>In the evening, at night.</i>
Buenos dias,	<i>Good morning, good day.</i>
Buenas tardes,	<i>Good afternoon.</i>
Buenas noches,	<i>Good evening, good night.</i>

**Vocabulario.**

**El año**, *the year.*  
**El banco**, *the bank.*  
**El bocoy**, *the hogshead.*  
**El correo**, *the post-office.*  
**El dia**, *the day.*  
**El hotel**, *the hotel.*  
**El mes**, *the month.*  
**El minuto**, *the minute.*  
**El saco**, *the bag.*  
**La biblioteca**, *the library.*  
**La caballeria**, *the cavalry.*  
**La caballeriza**, *the stable.*  
**La carne de vaca**, *the beef.*  
**La estacion**, *the season.*  
**La hora**, *the hour.*  
**La libra**, *the pound.*  
**La persona**, *the person.*  
**La semana**, *the week.*

**Vocabulary.**

**La tripulacion**, *the crew.*  
**Anoche**, *last night.*  
**Como**, *about, how.*  
**Contar**, *to count.*  
**Contiene**, *contains.*  
**Convidar**, *to invite.*  
**Cuando**, *when.*  
**En casa**, *at home.*  
**Lo siento**, *I am sorry for it.*  
**Mas**, *more.*  
**Matar**, *to kill.*  
**¿ Puede V. ?** *can you ?*  
**Puedo**, *I can.*  
**Necesar**, *to need.*  
**Nosotros**, *us.*  
**Público**, *public.*  
**Solamente**, *only.*  
**Unos pocos**, *a few.*

**Exercise 39.**

1. He comprado doscientos bocoyes de azúcar y trescientos sacos de café.
2. ¿ Que han comprado V. V. hoy ?
3. Hemos comprado diez pollos y cincuenta libras de carne de vaca.
4. ¿ Cuanto dinero ha recibido V. ?
5. He recibido cuatrocientos y noventa y nueve pesos.
6. ¿ Y porqué no quinientos ?
7. Porque hemos pagado un peso en el correo.
8. Un mes tiene veinte y ocho, veinte y nueve, treinta, ó treinta y un dias.
9. El dia tiene veinte y cuatro horas ; la hora tiene sesenta minutos.
10. Un año tiene trescientos sesenta y cinco, ó trescientos sesenta y seis dias.
11. ¿ Cuando va V. á casa de su hermano ?
12. Voy los miércoles.
13. El general tenia (*had*) cincuenta mil hombres de infantería y diez mil hombres de caballería.
14. Esta

aldea no tiene sino dos calles. 15. El príncipe tiene mas de cincuenta caballos en sus caballerizas. 16. ¿Cuando está V. en casa ? 17. Estoy en casa todos los dias por la noche. 18. Hemos matado mas de veinte pájaros en el jardin. 19. Una semana tiene siete dias, ciento y sesenta y ocho horas, y diez mil y ochenta minutos. 20. Un año tiene cincuenta y dos semanas, doce meses, y cuatro estaciones. 21. ¿Ha contado V. todo el dinero ? 22. He contado tres mil pesos en oro, y dos mil pesos en papel. 23. ¿A cuantas personas ha convidado V. para el domingo ? 24. No he convidado todavía á nadie ? 25. ¿Ha perdido soldados el general ? 26. Ha perdido dos mil de sus mejores soldados. 27. ¿Cuanto dinero quiere V. ? 28. Déme V. doscientos y cincuenta pesos. 29. ¿Es bastante ? 30. Es bastante con los ochenta pesos que yo tengo.

### Exercise 40.

1. Our city has now twenty thousand inhabitants ; in 1860, it had (*tenia*) only a few houses, and about five hundred inhabitants.
2. The vessel has a crew of twenty-two men.
3. Charles's father is one of the richest men in (*de*) our town ; he has at least two millions of dollars.
4. Have you bought apples or pears ?
5. I bought a hundred apples, but no pears.
6. Washington was born (*nació*) in 1732, and died (*murió*) in 1799.
7. Where are you going on Monday next ?
8. I don't know yet.
9. I go to school on Mondays, Tuesdays, Wednesdays, Thursdays, and Fridays ; on Saturdays I go to the country, and on Sundays to church.
10. Do you work in day-time or in the evening ?
11. I always work in the evening.
12. Can you come to-morrow morning ?
13. No, but I can come to-morrow evening.
14. Have you any money for us ?
15. I have twenty-five dollars for you, and fifty dollars for your brother.
16. It is not enough ; I need twelve dollars more.
17. I am sorry for it, but I have not one dollar more.
18. Mr. Felix Ronda has more than twenty houses in the city.
19. This hotel has more than two hundred rooms.
20. We have a hotel in our city which (*que*) contains three hundred.
21. How many dollars do you need to (*para*) buy that horse ?
22. I need one hundred and twenty dollars, having already one hundred and eighty dollars in the bank.
23. My father has given five hundred pounds of meat to the poor.
24. There are (*hay*) more than twenty thousand volumes in our Public Library.
25. There were (*habia*) at least four thousand persons at (*en*) the theater last night.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** *Uno, one, a, an*, has for feminine **una**. Both add **s** in the plural when used substantively :

Los unos y los otros, *m.*,  
Las unas y las otras, *f.*, { *The ones and the others.*

**2.** From **dos**, *two*, up to **ciento**, *hundred*, the numbers are plural and common to both genders ; but from **doscientos**, *two hundred*, to **novecientos**, *nine hundred*, the termination **os** is changed into **as** for the feminine :

Tres hombres y cuatro mujeres,	<i>Three women and four men.</i>
Doscientos hombres y trescientas	<i>Two hundred men and three hundred</i>
mujeres,	<i>women.</i>

**3.** The conjunction **y**, *and*, is placed only before the last number :

Doscientos noventa *y* ocho, *Two hundred and ninety-eight.*

**4.** **Ciento** drops the last syllable before a noun. [In the same way **uno** drops also the **o** before a noun.]

Cien hombres y cien mujeres,	<i>One hundred men and one hundred women.</i>
Veinte y un muchachos,	<i>Twenty-one boys.</i>

**5.** Although **mil**, *one thousand*, has neither gender nor number, it may be used in certain cases in the plural, as in English, and is then a noun :

Este hombre ha gastado muchos miles, *This man has spent many thousands.*

**6.** The preposition **á** is left out after an active verb when the object of the sentence is preceded by a cardinal number :

He visto veinte hombres (*not á veinte hombres*), *I have seen twenty men.*

**7.** *More than, less than*, are rendered in Spanish by **mas de**, and **ménos de** before a cardinal number :

Mas de cien pesos,	<i>More than a hundred dollars.</i>
Ménos de tres dias,	<i>Less than three days.</i>

**8.** *Eleven hundred, twelve hundred, thirteen hundred*, etc., cannot be expressed as in English, but must be translated :

Mil y ciento,	<i>One thousand one hundred.</i>
Mil y doscientos,	<i>One thousand two hundred.</i>
Mil y trescientos,	<i>One thousand three hundred.</i>

## Leccion XXI.

## Lesson XXI.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Primero or primo,	<i>First.</i>
Segundo,	<i>Second.</i>
Tercero or tercio,	<i>Third.</i>
Cuarto,	<i>Fourth.</i>
Quinto,	<i>Fifth.</i>
Sesto,	<i>Sixth.</i>
Séptimo,	<i>Seventh.</i>
Octavo,	<i>Eighth.</i>
Nono or noveno,	<i>Ninth.</i>
Décimo,	<i>Tenth.</i>
Undécimo,	<i>Eleventh.</i>
Duodécimo,	<i>Twelfth.</i>
Décimo tercio, <sup>1</sup>	<i>Thirteenth.</i>
Décimo cuarto,	<i>Fourteenth.</i>
Décimo quinto,	<i>Fifteenth.</i>
Décimo sexto,	<i>Sixteenth.</i>
Décimo séptimo,	<i>Seventeenth.</i>
Décimo octavo,	<i>Eighteenth.</i>
Décimo nono,	<i>Nineteenth.</i>
Vigésimo,	<i>Twentieth.</i>
Vigésimo primo,	<i>Twenty-first.</i>
Vigésimo segundo,	<i>Twenty-second.</i>
Vigésimo tercio, etc.	<i>Twenty-third.</i>
Trigésimo,	<i>Thirtieth.</i>
Cuadragésimo,	<i>Fortieth.</i>
Quinceagésimo,	<i>Fiftieth.</i>
Sexagésimo,	<i>Sixtieth.</i>
Septuagésimo,	<i>Seventieth.</i>
Octagésimo,	<i>Eightieth.</i>
Nonagésimo,	<i>Ninetieth.</i>
Centésimo,	<i>Hundredth.</i>
Centésimo primo,	<i>Hundred and first.</i>
Centésimo undécimo,	<i>Hundred and eleventh.</i>
Ducentésimo,	<i>Two hundredth.</i>

<sup>1</sup> These numbers are also written in one word, as *décimotercio*, *décimocuarto*, etc.

Trecentésimo,	<i>Three hundredth.</i>
Cuadragentésimo,	<i>Four hundredth.</i>
Quingentésimo,	<i>Five hundredth.</i>
Sescentésimo,	<i>Six hundredth.</i>
Septengentésimo,	<i>Seven hundredth.</i>
Octogentésimo,	<i>Eight hundredth.</i>
Nonagentésimo,	<i>Nine hundredth.</i>
Milésimo,	<i>Thousandth.</i>
Dumilésimo,	<i>Two thousandth.</i>
Diezmilésimo,	<i>Ten thousandth.</i>
Millonésimo,	<i>Millionth.</i>

**Números fraccionarios.****Fractional numbers.**

La mitad,	<i>The half.</i>	Un undécimo or onzavo,	<i>One eleventh.</i>
Un medio,	<i>One half.</i>	Un dozavo,	<i>One twelfth.</i>
Un tercio,	<i>One third.</i>	Un trezavo,	<i>One thirteenth.</i>
Dos tercios,	<i>Two thirds.</i>	Un catorzavo,	<i>One fourteenth.</i>
Un cuarto,	<i>One fourth.</i>	Un quinzavo,	<i>One fifteenth.</i>
Tres cuartos,	<i>Three fourths.</i>	Un diez y seisavo,	<i>One sixteenth.</i>
Un quinto,	<i>One fifth.</i>	Un diez y sietavo,	<i>One seventeenth.</i>
Un sexto or } Un seisavo,	<i>One sixth.</i>	etc.      etc.	<i>etc.</i>
Un séptimo,	<i>One seventh.</i>	Un veintavo,	<i>One twentieth.</i>
Un octavo,	<i>One eighth.</i>	Un treintavo,	<i>One thirtieth.</i>
Un noveno,	<i>One ninth.</i>	Un centavo,	<i>One hundredth.</i>
Un décimo,	<i>One tenth.</i>	Un milavo,	<i>One thousandth.</i>

**Collective Numbers.**

Un par,	<i>A pair.</i>	Una quincena,	<i>Fifteen.</i>
Una docena,	<i>A dozen.</i>	Una sesentena,	<i>Sixty.</i>

**Multiplicative Numbers.**

Simple,	<i>Single.</i>	Séstuple or sestuplo,	<i>Sextuple.</i>
Doble,	<i>Double.</i>	Séptuple or septuplo,	<i>Septuple.</i>
Triple,	<i>Treble.</i>	Óctuple or octuplo,	<i>Octuple.</i>
Cuádruple or cuadruplo,	<i>Quadruple.</i>	Décuple or decuplo,	<i>Decuple.</i>
Quíntuple or quintuplo,	<i>Quintuple.</i>	Céntuple or centuplo,	<i>Centuple.</i>

Una vez, *once.*Esta vez, *this time.*Dos veces, *twice.*Aquella vez, *that time.*Tres veces, *three times.*Todas las veces, *every time.*

Varias veces, *several times.*  
 Algunas veces, *sometimes.*  
 La primera vez, *the first time.*  
 La última vez, *the last time.*

Cada vez, *each time.*  
 Muchas veces, *many times.*  
 Otra vez, *another time.*  
 La próxima vez, *next time.*

**Meses del año.**

Enero,	<i>January.</i>
Febrero,	<i>February.</i>
Marzo,	<i>March.</i>
Abril,	<i>April.</i>
Mayo,	<i>May.</i>
Junio,	<i>June.</i>

**Months of the year.**

Julio,	<i>July.</i>
Agosto,	<i>August.</i>
Setiembre,	<i>September.</i>
Octubre,	<i>October.</i>
Noviembre,	<i>November.</i>
Diciembre,	<i>December.</i>

**Las estaciones.**

La primavera, *the spring.*  
 El verano or el estío, *the summer.*

**The Seasons.**

El otoño, *the autumn, the fall.*  
 El invierno, *the winter.*

**Ejemplos.**

¿ Que dia del mes tenemos ?	{
¿ Que dia es hoy ?	
¿ A cuantos estamos ?	
Hoy es el primero.	
Mañana es el cinco.	
Estamos á dos de Febrero.	
Nací el quince de Mayo.	
El vapor sale el diez de este mes.	
¿ Que tomo tiene V. ?	
Tengo el primer tomo.	
Enrique es el quinto en la clase.	

**Examples.**

What day of the month is it ?

To-day is the first.  
 To-morrow is the fifth.  
 It is the second of February,  
 I was born on the fifteenth of May.  
 The steamer leaves on the tenth of  
 this month.  
 Which volume have you ?  
 I have the first volume.  
 Henry is the fifth in the class.

**Vocabulario.**

El almuerzo, <i>the breakfast.</i>
El capítulo, <i>the chapter.</i>
El cuaderno, <i>the copy-book.</i>
El emperador, <i>the emperor.</i>
El huevo, <i>the egg.</i>
El ingenio, <i>the genius.</i>
El jamon, <i>the ham.</i>
El pavo, <i>the turkey.</i>
El periódico, <i>the newspaper.</i>

**Vocabulary.**

El vapor, <i>the steamer.</i>	Despues de, <i>after.</i>
La onza, <i>the ounce.</i>	Leer, <i>to read.</i>
La parte, <i>the part.</i>	Pedro, <i>Peter.</i>
Así, <i>therefore.</i>	Pertenece, <i>belongs.</i>
Cada, <i>each.</i>	Raro, <i>rare.</i>
Comer, <i>to eat.</i>	Rusia, <i>Russia.</i>
Corto, <i>short.</i>	Sale, <i>leaves.</i>
Cuando, <i>when.</i>	Siempre, <i>always.</i>
Dar, <i>to give.</i>	Viene, <i>comes.</i>

**Exercise 41.**

1. Febrero es el segundo mes del año.
2. Enrique y Eduardo son los dos primeros discípulos de la clase.
3. ¿Cuando ha escrito V. á su padre?
4. He escrito la primera vez el tres de Enero de mil ochocientos sesenta y cinco, y la segunda vez en el mes de Mayo del mismo año.
5. ¿Ha dado V. libros á los muchachos de la primera clase?
6. He dado libros y cuadernos á los de la segunda clase.
7. El mes de Julio tiene tantos días como el mes de Agosto.
8. ¿Cuando ha recibido V. sus cartas?
9. He recibido una el dos de Abril, y la otra el cinco de Setiembre.
10. Hemos tenido mucha lluvia el treinta de Octubre.
11. ¿Que pan han comprado V. V.?
12. Hemos comprado cinco libras y media de pan frances.
13. Cada soldado ha recibido media libra de carne.
14. Estarémos (*we shall be*) en nuestra casa nueva el primero de Mayo próximo.
15. El muchachito ha dado la mitad de su almuerzo al pobre.
16. He comprado una docena de pollos, y mi hermano ha comprado media docena de pavos.
17. ¿Á cuantos estamos?
18. Estamos á once ó doce.
19. Carlos Quinto fué (*was*) un gran emperador.
20. ¿Cantas veces ha sido V. el primero en su clase?
21. He sido dos veces el primero; tres veces, el segundo; y cuatro veces, el tercero.
22. ¿No ha sido V. nunca el último?
23. No, señor, mi primo es siempre el último.
24. ¿Que mes viene despues del mes de Abril?
25. El mes de Mayo, por supuesto.
26. ¿Es frio el invierno en este pais?
27. El invierno es frio, pero corto.

**Exercise 42.**

1. Have you read the newspaper of the first of December?
2. No, but I read that of the thirtieth of November.
3. My brother will be (*estará*) here in July or (in) August.
4. What day of the month is it?
5. It is the thirteenth.
6. One half and one third are (*hacen*) five sixths.
7. This poor woman is sick for the third time this month.
8. The Seventh Regiment is a fine regiment.
9. How many chapters have you read?
10. I have read the first two (two first).
11. December is the last month of the year.
12. That child is in his sixth year.
13. Have you been sick here?
14. I have been very sick the first month, but I am very well now.
15. A half ounce is the thirty-second part of a pound; therefore, eight ounces are the half, and four ounces the fourth part of a pound.
16. One third of the money belongs to the father; one sixth, to the children; and one

- half, to the mother. 17. I have bought a dozen hams and sixty eggs.  
 18. Peter the First, emperor of Russia had (*tenia*) a rare genius.  
 19. When does the steamer leave? 20. It leaves on the twenty-third  
 of this month. 21. How many times have you been in Paris? 22. I  
 have been once in Paris, and twice in London. 23. Has your father  
 bought another horse? 24. He bought three horses. 25. When are  
 you going to the country? 26. I go in the month of June. 27. Give  
 me the half of your bread. 28. I cannot, I have eaten all the bread.  
 29. Where is your house? 30. My house is the seventh house after  
 the church.

**Grámatica.****Grammar.**

- 1.** Ordinal numbers are considered as adjectives, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer:

Este muchacho es el primero,	<i>This boy is the first.</i>
Estas muchachas son las primeras,	<i>These girls are the first.</i>
La quinta avenida,	<i>The fifth avenue.</i>

- 2. Primero, first, and postrero, last, drop the o in the singular when they precede the noun:**

El primer hombre,	<i>The first man.</i>
El postrero discípulo,	<i>The last scholar.</i>

OBSERVATION.—**Tercero, third,** either drops or retains the o:

- El tercer dia or el tercero dia, *The third day.*

- 3. Primo and tercio** are used instead of *primero* and *tercero*, after another ordinal number:

Vigésimo primo, <i>twenty-first.</i>	Trigésimo tercio, <i>thirty-third.</i>
--------------------------------------	--

But we say:

El primero de los oficiales,	<i>The first among the officers.</i>
------------------------------	--------------------------------------

- 4. Ordinal Numbers** are used in Spanish as in English after the names of sovereigns, but *without* the article:

Fernando segundo,	<i>Ferdinand the Second.</i>
Felipe cuarto,	<i>Philip the Fourth.</i>

OBSERVATION.—The Spaniards generally use, as being shorter, the Cardinal Numbers after the names of sovereigns when their order of succession exceeds ten. Thus, they prefer to say:

Luis Catorce, <i>Louis the Fourteenth.</i>	Carlos Doce, <i>Charles the Twelfth.</i>
--	--

**5.** After the number *eleven* the Cardinal or Ordinal Numbers may be used with equal propriety to indicate the divisions of a book or other works :

Capítulo quince <i>or</i> décimo quinto,	<i>Fifteenth chapter.</i>
Página veinte <i>or</i> vigésima,	<i>Twentieth page.</i>

**6.** In Spanish the Cardinal Numbers are used by abbreviation before the names of months. **Primero**, *first*, forms, however, an exception, and must be used instead of *uno* :

El <i>primero</i> de Enero,	<i>The first of January.</i>
El <i>cinco ó seis</i> de Mayo,	<i>The fifth or sixth of May.</i>

**7.** **Mitad** is synonymous with **medio**, *half*; but **medio** is an adjective, while **mitad** is a noun.

**Medio** and the other fractions take the feminine form when speaking of **libra**, *pound*, **vara**, *yard*, etc., even if these nouns are not expressed :

Media libra de azúcar,	<i>A half pound of sugar.</i>
Una cuarta de arroz,	<i>A quarter pound of rice.</i>
Media vara de paño,	<i>Half a yard of cloth.</i>
Tres cuartas de muselina,	<i>Three fourths of a yard of muslin.</i>

**8.** The endings **o**, **a** in multiplicative numbers, as *duplo*, *dupla*, **double**; *triplo*, *tripla*, **treble**; although often used, are not considered as correct as those given above.

## Lección XXII.

## Lesson XXII.

### LO, LE, LA, LOS, LAS, AS PRONOUNS IN SIMPLE TENSES.

Yo lo ( <i>or</i> la) tengo,	<i>I have it.</i>
Tu lo ( <i>or</i> la) tienes,	<i>thou hast it.</i>
Él lo ( <i>or</i> la) tiene,	<i>he has it.</i>
Ella lo ( <i>or</i> la) tiene,	<i>she has it.</i>
Nosotros lo ( <i>or</i> la) tenemos,	<i>we have it.</i>
Vosotros lo ( <i>or</i> la) teneis,	<i>you have it.</i>
Ellos lo ( <i>or</i> la) tienen,	<i>they (masc.) have it.</i>
Ellas lo ( <i>or</i> la) tienen,	<i>they (fem.) have it.</i>

Yo no lo (*or la*) tengo,  
 Tu no lo (*or la*) tienes,  
 Él no lo (*or la*) tiene,  
 Ella no lo (*or la*) tiene,  
 Nosotros no lo (*or la*) tenemos,  
 Vosotros no lo (*or la*) teneis,  
 Ellos no lo (*or la*) tienen,  
 Ellas no lo (*or la*) tienen,

*I have it not.*  
*thou hast it not.*  
*he has it not.*  
*she has it not.*  
*we have it not.*  
*you have it not.*  
*they (masc.) have it not.*  
*they (fem.) have it not.*

*i Lo (*or la*) tengo yo ?*  
 etc.

*have I it ?*  
 etc.

*i No lo (*or la*) tengo yo ?*  
 etc.

*have I it not ?*  
 etc.

Yo los (*or las*) tengo,  
 Tu los (*or las*) tienes,  
 Él los (*or las*) tiene,  
 Ella los (*or las*) tiene,  
 Nosotros los (*or las*) tenemos,  
 Vosotros los (*or las*) teneis,  
 Ellos los (*or las*) tienen,  
 Ellas los (*or las*) tienen,

*I have them.*  
*thou hast them.*  
*he has them.*  
*she has them.*  
*we have them.*  
*you have them.*  
*they (masc.) have them.*  
*they (fem.) have them.*

Yo no los (*or las*) tengo,  
 Tu no los (*or las*) tienes,  
 Él no los (*or las*) tiene,  
 Ella no los (*or las*) tiene,  
 Nosotros no los (*or las*) tenemos,  
 Vosotros no los (*or las*) teneis,  
 Ellos no los (*or las*) tienen,  
 Ellas no los (*or las*) tienen,

*I have them not.*  
*thou hast them not.*  
*he has them not.*  
*she has them not.*  
*we have them not.*  
*you have them not.*  
*they (masc.) have them not.*  
*they (fem.) have them not.*

*i Los (*or las*) tengo yo ?*  
 etc.

*have I them ?*  
 etc.

*i No los (*or las*) tengo yo ?*  
 etc.

*have I them not ?*  
 etc.

### **Lo, le, la, los, las, as Pronouns in Compound Tenses.**

Yo lo (*or la*) he tenido,  
 etc.

*I have had it ?*  
 etc.

<i>i Lo (or la) he tenido yo ?</i>	<i>have I had it ?</i>
etc.	etc.
<i>Yo no lo (or la) he tenido,</i>	<i>I have not had it.</i>
etc.	etc.
<i>i No lo (or la) he tenido yo ?</i>	<i>have I not had it ?</i>
etc.	etc.
<i>Yo los (or las) he tenido,</i>	<i>I have had them.</i>
etc.	etc.
<i>Yo no los (or las) he tenido,</i>	<i>I have not had them.</i>
etc.	etc.
<i>i Los (or las) he tenido yo ?</i>	<i>have I had them ?</i>
etc.	etc.
<i>i No los (or las) he tenido yo ?</i>	<i>have I not had them ?</i>
etc.	etc.

**Lo, le, la, los, las, joined with the Infinitive and the Gerund.**

Tenerlo, tenerla,	<i>to have it.</i>
Tenerlos, tenerlas,	<i>to have them.</i>
Teniéndolo, teniéndola,	<i>having it.</i>
Teniéndolos, teniéndolas,	<i>having them.</i>

**Lo, le, la, los, las, placed after the Verb.**

Tengolo, tengola,	<i>I have it.</i>
Tengolos, tengolas,	<i>I have them.</i>

**Ejemplos.**

- i Quien tiene mi libro ?*  
 Yo lo tengo.  
*i Ha visto V. mi lápiz ?*  
 Lo he visto.  
*i Tiene V. mis plumas ?*  
 Las tengo.  
*i Ha tenido V. mis plumas ?*  
 Las he tenido.  
*i Vende V. su casa ?*  
 La vendo.  
*i Quien ha tomado mis papeles ?*

**Examples.**

- Who has my book ?  
 I have it.  
 Have you seen my pencil ?  
 I have seen it.  
 Have you my pens ?  
 I have them.  
 Have you had my pens ?  
 I have had them.  
 Do you sell your house ?  
 I sell it.  
 Who has taken my papers ?

Nadie los ha tomado.	Nobody has taken them.
¿ Lo tiene su amigo de V. ?	Has your friend it ?
Él no lo tiene.	He has it not.
¿ Los tienen sus amigos ?	Have your friends them ?
Ellos no los tienen.	They have them not.
¿ Lo tiene la señora ?	Has the lady it ?
Ella no lo tiene.	She has it not ?
¿ Los tienen las señoritas ?	Have the young ladies them ?
Ellas no los tienen.	They have them not.
¿ Quien los tiene ?	Who has them ?
Nadie los tiene.	Nobody has them.
¿ A quién lo da V. ?	To whom do you give it ?
Lo doy a mi amigo.	I give it to my friend.
¿ Lo sabe V. ?	Do you know it ?
Lo sé.	I know it.
Tómelo V.	Take it.
No lo tome V.	Do not take it.

**Lo, Declinable and Undeclinable.**

¿ Está V. mala, señora ?	Are you sick, madam ?
Lo estoy.	I am (so).
¿ Es V. la enferma ?	Are you the patient ( <i>fem.</i> ) ?
La soy.	I am (she).
¿ Están V. V. satisfechos ?	Are you pleased ?
Lo estamos.	We are (so).
¿ Son V. V. los hijos del Señor Pablo ?	Are you the sons of Mr. Paul ?
Los somos.	We are (they).
¿ Son V. V. las hijas de María ?	Are you the daughters of Mary ?
Las somos.	We are (they).

**Vocabulario.**

**El armario,** *the closet.*  
**El botón,** *the button.*  
**El zapato,** *the shoe.*  
**El zapatero,** *the shoemaker.*  
**La bodega,** *the cellar.*  
**La cama,** *the bed.*  
**La cocina,** *the kitchen.*  
**La gallina,** *the fowl, the chicken.*  
**La lavandera,** *the washerwoman.*  
**La mañana,** *the morning.*  
**La sábana,** *the sheet.*  
**Aún,** *even.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Ausente,** *absent.*  
**Bien,** *well.*  
**Donde,** *where*  
**Demasiado,** *too, too much.*  
**Necesitar,** *to need.*  
**No...mas,** *no...more.*  
**Tampoco,** *not either, neither.*  
**Tarde,** *late.*  
**Traer,** *to bring.*  
**¿ Ve V. ?** *do you see ?*  
**Veo,** *I see.*  
**¿ Vende V. ?** *do you sell ?*

**Exercise 43.**

1. ¿ Carlos, tiene V. mis botones de oro ? 2. Yo no los tengo ; su hermano de V. los tiene. 3. ¿ Porqué los ha tomado él ? 4. Yo no lo sé. 5. ¿ Eduardo, sabe V. su leccion ? 6. Yo no la sé muy bien. 7. ¿ Ha visto V. el caballo de mi tio ? 8. ¿ Qué caballo ? 9. Su caballo blanco. 10. Lo he visto esta mañana. 11. ¿ Tiene su hermano todavía su casa ? 12. No la tiene mas ; la ha vendido. 13. ¿ Ha tenido V. mi libro ? 14. No lo he tenido ; V. lo ha tenido V. mismo. 15. ¿ Tiene su hermana de V. mis cuadernos ? 16. Si, ella los tiene en su cuarto. 17. ¿ Donde tienen V. V. sus gallinas ? 18. Las tenemos en el patio. 19. ¿ No las tienen V. V. en el jardin ? 20. No, no las tenemos allí desde que tenemos flores y legumbres. 21. ¿ Quien tiene sus zapatos de V. ? 22. El zapatero los tiene. 23. ¿ Tiene él tambien los mios ? 24. Él no los tiene. 25. ¿ Quien los tiene ? 26. Yo no sé quien los tiene. 27. Nadie los tiene, están en el cuartito. 28. ¿ Tiene V. mis plumas ? 29. Las he tenido, pero no las tengo mas. 30. ¿ Las tiene su hermano ? 31. No las tiene tampoco. 32. ¿ Ha visto V. á Carlos ? 33. Le he visto en el jardin. 34. ¿ Ha traído la lavandera la ropa ? 35. Todavía no. 36. ¿ Porqué no la ha traído ? 37. Porque la ha recibido demasiado tarde. 38. ¿ Está V. malo ? 39. Lo estoy siempre. 40. ¿ Estan V. V. malos ? 41. Lo estamos.

**Exercise 44.**

1. Has the cook the vegetables ? 2. She has them. 3. Has she (got) them in the kitchen ? 4. No, sir, she has them in the closet. 5. Where have you your wine ? 6. We have it in the cellar. 7. The sheets are on the bed. 8. Yes, madam, I know it. 9. Have you my knife ? 10. I have it not. 11. Has your brother it ? 12. Yes, sir, he has it. 13. Do you sell your house ? 14. I do not sell it. 15. Where is the little boy ? 16. He is in the garden. 17. Do you see my hat ? 18. I don't see it. 19. Are you sick ? 20. I am (so). 21. Have you had my book ? 22. I have had it this morning, but I do not have it now. 23. Have you found your copy-book ? 24. I have found it in your room. 25. Do you wish it ? 26. I don't wish it. 27. Where have you bought this sugar ? 28. I have bought it at (*en*) your store. 29. Have you seen my father ? 30. I have seen him this morning. 31. Have you the money to-day ? 32. No, sir, I have it not. 33. Do you see those men ? 34. Yes, sir, I see them. 35. Is

your sister absent ? 36. She is not (*so*), she is in my mother's room. 37. Why have you taken my books ? 38. I have not taken them ; I have not even seen them. 39. If you want my book, take it. 40. I don't want it. 41. Do you need this piece of paper ? 42. Yes, I need it ; do not take it.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** *Lo, le, masc., la, fem.*, meaning *it, him, her, or so*, and *los, masc., las, fem.*, meaning *them, they*, are generally placed before the verb, except in the *Imperative* affirmative, the *Infinitive*, and the *Present Participle*, or *Gerund*.

In these three cases the pronouns are placed after the verb, and joined to it so as to form one word :

Yo lo tengo,	<i>I have it.</i>
El lo dice,	<i>He says so.</i>
Los compramos,	<i>We buy them.</i>
¿ Quién los quiere ?	<i>Who wants them.</i>
Yo no los quiero,	<i>I don't wish them.</i>
Yo le vendo mi caballo,	<i>I sell him (or her) my horse.</i>
Ella lo sabe,	<i>She knows it.</i>
¿ Está él malo ?	<i>Is he sick ?</i>
Lo está,	<i>He is.</i>
 Tomélo V.	 <i>Take it.</i>
No lo tome V.	<i>Do not take it.</i>
Vendala V.	<i>Sell it (fem.).</i>
Traigalos V.,	<i>Bring them.</i>
Délas V.,	<i>Give them (fem.).</i>
No las dé V.,	<i>Do not give them.</i>
Sabiéndolo, lo haré,	<i>Knowing it, I will do it.</i>
Vendiéndolo, tendré dinero,	<i>By selling it, I will have money.</i>
No quiero verlo,	<i>I do not wish to see it.</i>
No puedo hacerlo,	<i>I cannot do it.</i>
Sé decirlo,	<i>I know how to say it.</i>

**2.** The same pronouns may also be placed *after* the verb, forming one word with it. But, in this case, the personal pronoun must be left out.

This way of expressing one's self, although rarely used in

conversation, is considered elegant in writing, and is, therefore, often used by good writers :

Tengolo,	<i>I have it.</i>
Diólo á su hermano,	<i>He gave it to his brother.</i>
Vendiólas ayer,	<i>He sold them (fem.) yesterday.</i>
Comprólos todos,	<i>He bought them all.</i>
Víle ayer,	<i>I saw him yesterday.</i>

3. These pronouns, when used with Compound Tenses, are placed before the auxiliary :

Yo lo he tenido,	<i>I have had it.</i>
Los hemos visto,	<i>We have seen them.</i>
Él lo ha comprado,	<i>He has bought it.</i>

4. In sentences containing an Infinitive besides the principal verb, the same pronouns may be placed either after the Infinitive or before the principal verb. The first form is, however, the one mostly used :

Yo quiero comprarlo or Yo lo quiero comprar,	<i>I wish to buy it.</i>
Él ha querido venderlo or Él lo ha querido vender,	
	<i>He has wished to sell it.</i>

5. **Lo** remains invariable when it can be translated by *so*, either expressed or understood :

¿ Es V. viuda ? — Lo soy,	<i>Are you a widow ? — I am (so).</i>
¿ Estan V.V. enfermos ? — Lo estamos,	<i>Are you sick ? — We are (so).</i>
¿ Podemos entrar ? — V.V. lo pueden,	<i>May we come in ? — You may (do so).</i>

But **lo** takes the gender and number of the noun which it represents, when the noun is used in a determinate sense, i. e. when accompanied by the article, or a possessive or demonstrative adjective :

¿ Es V. la viuda ? — La soy,	<i>Are you the widow ? — I am (she).</i>
¿ Son V.V. los hijos de Manuel ? — Los somos,	<i>Are you the sons of Manuel ? — We are (they).</i>

#### 6. *Observations on lo, le, and la.*

Opinions are divided about the rendering of the pronoun *it*, when referring to a masculine noun.

Some grammarians do not admit that **lo** should be used when referring to a noun, and are in favor of **le**. According to them we should say :

*¿ Tiene V. el libro ? — Si, yo le tengo, Have you the book ? — Yes, I have it.*

**Lo** should be used only when referring to the complement of a verb, as :

*¿ Sabe V. que su hermano está aquí ? Do you know that your brother is here ? — Yes, I know it.*

This opinion is opposed by others, who consider **le** as the dative case, either masculine or feminine, and, therefore, use **lo** for *it* or *him*.

*Yo lo veo, I see it (or him).*

*Yo le vendo mi caballo, I sell him (or her) my horse.*

We have adopted the last rule, which appears to us to have most followers, but would add, that in presence of conflicting opinions, we consider that either **le** or **lo** may be used with equal propriety.

According to the rule laid down by us, **los**, **las** must be used in the accusative case for *them*; and **les** in the dative case for *to them*. We find, however, **la** and **las** used in the dative feminine instead of **le** and **les** by classic authors, but the *Academia Española* does not approve of this.

## Leccion XXIII.

## Lesson XXIII.

### RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

#### Relative.

**Que**, *who, whom, which, that, what.*

**Quien**, sing., **quienes**, pl., *who, whom, whoever, whomsoever, he who.*

**El cual** or **cual**, *who, which, that which, which ones.*

**Cuyo**, m. s., **cuya**, f. s., **cuyos**, m. pl., **cuyas**, f. pl., *whose, of which.*

#### Cual declined.

##### Singular.

Masculine. Feminine.      Masculine.      Feminine.

**El cual**, **la cual**, **los cuales**, **las cuales**, *who, whom, which, which one, which ones.*

**Del cual**, **de la cual**, **de los cuales**, **de las cuales**, *of whom, from whom, whose, of which one, of which ones.*

**Al cual**, **á la cual**, **á los cuales**, **á las cuales**, *to whom, to which, to which one, to which ones.*

**Interrogative.****Quién?** *who?***Que?** *what? which?***Cuál?** *which? which one?***Cuyo?** *whose?***Ejemplos.**

El caballero que vive aquí, es Frances.

El hombre á quien hablo es pobre.

¿ De quien habla V. ?

El libro que él tiene, es mio.

¿ Qué quiere V. ?

¿ Que bonito es !

Pedro es el que lo ha dicho.

He encontrado á Pedro, el cual me dió una carta.

Este es el hombre al cual V. debe dinero.

Yo sé cual es la causa de esto.

¿ Cual de los dos habla mejor ?

El hombre, cuyo hijo está aquí.

La casa, cuyas ventanas vemos.

¿ Á cual de mis amigos ha dado V. el libro ?

¿ De quién (or cuyo) es este perro ?

¿ De quién (or cuyas) son estas tijeras ?

¿ Quién es esa mujer ?

¿ Quiénes son aquellos hombres ?

**Examples.**

The gentleman who lives here is a Frenchman.

The man to whom I speak is poor.  
Of whom do you speak ?

The book which he has is mine.

What do you wish ?

How pretty it is !

Peter is the one who said it.

I met Peter, who gave me a letter.

This is the man to whom you owe money.

I know what is the cause of this.

Which of the two speaks better ?

The man whose son is here.

The house of which we see the windows.

To which of my friends have you given the book ?

Whose dog is this ?

Whose scissors are these ?

Who is that woman ?

Who are these men ?

**Vocabulario.****El padrino,** *the godfather.***El puente,** *the bridge.***La fruta,** *the fruit.***La prima,** *the cousin (f.).***La tia,** *the aunt.***La vida,** *the life.***Aquí,** *here.***Bien,** *good.***Canta,** *sings.***Contento,** *pleased.***Cortado,** *cut.***Dado,** *given.***Debe,** *owes.***Deseamos,** *we wish.***Dicho,** *said.***Dormir,** 3. *to sleep.***Enseña,** *teaches.***Gana,** *earns.***Hablan,** *they speak.***Hecho,** *done.***Inteligente,** *intelligent.***Loco,** *insane.***Llora,** *weeps.***Muerto,** *died.***Vocabulary.****Murió,** *died.***Necesito,** *I need.***Pagar,** 1. *to pay.***Parecen,** *seem.***Probablemente,** *probably.***Puesto,** *put.***Rie,** *laughs.***Sabe,** *knows.***Tan,** *so.***Trabaja,** *works.***Viajar,** 1. *to travel.***Visto,** *seen.*

**Exercise 45.**

1. Juan es un hombre que sabe mucho. 2. Es una cosa de que hablan mucho. 3. Mi hermano, mi tia y mis primas que han venido ayer, estan en mi casa. 4. He visto al muchacho que V. enseña. 5. Él es quien ha dicho esto. 6. He estado en el campo, lo que me ha hecho mucho bien. 7. Me ha pagado, con lo que estoy contento. 8. He visto á Pedro, el cual me ha dicho muchas cosas. 9. Estos hombres parecen locos : cual (*one*) llora, cual canta y cual rie. 10. Estas frutas son tales cuales (*such as*) las deseamos. 11. Él es á quien V. debe la vida. 12. El hombre, cuya mujer ha muerto, está muy triste. 13. Él que no trabaja, no gana dinero. 14. He estado en la casa en la cual he visto á su padre de V. 15. Veo la casa cuyas ventanas son tan grandes. 16. El comerciante cuya familia está aquí, es muy rico. 17. ¡Á cuál de mis amigos ha dado V. el libro ? 18. No lo he dado á ninguno. 19. La casa que tiene mi padre es muy grande. 20. Aquí está el cuarto en el cual murió. 21. ¡Con qué ha hecho V. esto ? 22. Con un lápiz. 23. ¡Tiene V. lo que V. necesita ? 24. Si, señor, tengo todo lo que necesito. 25. La casa que V. tiene, es mas pequeña que la que yo tengo.

**Exercise 46.**

1. The gentleman to whom you have written has not received your letter. 2. Is it you who have written this letter ? 3. It is I. 4. Here is the knife with which I have cut the bread. 5. I have found an umbrella, it is probably the one you have lost. 6. Here is the book of which you have spoken. 7. The bridge on which we are is the largest in the city. 8. The trunk in which I have put my clothes is not large enough (enough large) for me. 9. How intelligent that child is (is that child) ! 10. The house which you have is not as good as the house which your brother has. 11. The gentleman whose sister you have seen is a friend of my father. 12. Have you all that you want ? 13. No, I want many things yet. 14. The month in which we are is the coldest of the year. 15. The boy for (*para*) whom I have bought this book is sick. 16. Have you seen the trunk with which I have been travelling ? 17. No, where is it ? 18. It is in the room in which I slept. 19. The gentleman of whom I received this book is my godfather. 20. Whose apples are these ? 21. They are mine. 22. Which horse have you bought ? 23. I bought the one

you saw yesterday. 24. Here are all the books which we have. 25. Your brother is in the room. 26. In which one? 27. In the large one. 28. Of what are you speaking?—29. I am speaking of many things. 30. We are speaking of my aunt.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1. Que**, as a subject or nominative, is used for persons as well as for things, and may refer to several nouns of different number and gender:

Es un hombre que sabe mucho,

*He is a man who knows much.*

Es una cosa de que hablan mucho,

*It is a thing of which they speak a great deal.*

Su hermano, sus tías y sus hermanas  
que han venido ayer, se van hoy,

*His brother, his aunts, and his sisters who came yesterday, are going away to-day.*

**2. Que**, relating to an accusative, does not require the preposition *á*; even when referring to a person:

He visto el niño que V. enseña (*not* á que V. enseña),

*I have seen the child that you teach.*

**3. The relative que** is accompanied by the article **el, la, los, las, lo**, according to gender and number.

*a.* To avoid ambiguity when the Relative is separated from the noun:

Pidió la libertad de su hijo, la que  
consiguió,

*He begged for the liberty of his son, and obtained it (lit. which he obtained).*

*b.* When the Relative **que** serves to complete the action of the verb:

Pedro es él que lo ha dicho,

*Peter is the one who said so.*

*c.* When the Relative **que** refers to a whole sentence:

He estado en el campo, lo que me ha  
hecho mucho bien,

*I have been in the country, which has done me much good.*

*d.* When the Relative is accompanied by a preposition:

Me ha pagado, con lo que estoy  
contento,

*He has paid me, and I am pleased with it (lit. with which I am pleased).*

**4. Que** is never suppressed like its corresponding English pronoun, but must be repeated before every verb that follows it :

La casa que tenemos,	<i>The house (which) we have.</i>
El libro que él tiene,	<i>The book (which) he has.</i>
El caballo que yo vendí y que volví á comprar,	<i>The horse which I have sold and bought again.</i>

OBSERVATION. — **Que** may precede the person or object to which it relates :

La cancion que cantaba Maria,	<i>The song which Mary sang.</i>
La herida que tenia el soldado,	<i>The wound which the soldier had.</i>

**5. Quien, quienes**, for both genders, relate only to persons :

El es á quien debo la vida,	<i>It is to him I owe my life.</i>
-----------------------------	------------------------------------

OBSERVATION. — When the Relative Pronoun follows immediately the noun to which it relates, it is preferable to use **que**, even when referring to persons. It would be better, therefore, to say :

Este es el hombre *que* me dió el libro,  
instead of

Quien me dió el libro,	<i>This is the man who gave me the book.</i>
------------------------	--

We could say with as much propriety :

Este es el hombre á quien or á que V. debe la vida,	<i>This is the man to whom you owe your life.</i>
--	---

because the preposition stands between the noun and the Relative Pronoun.

**6. The relatives el cual, la cual, lo cual, los cuales, las cuales** have but one termination for the different genders, and relate as well to persons as to things. In the accusative they take the preposition **á** when they relate to persons :

He encontrado á Pedro con su mujer, el cual me ha contado muchas co- sas.	<i>I met Peter with his wife, and he (who) told me many things.</i>
---	---

Este es el hombre al cual V. debe entregar la carta,	<i>This is the man to whom you must deliver the letter.</i>
---	---

**7.** The article is omitted :

- a. When the relative is separated from the noun by a verb and completes the action of another verb :

La prision le habia abierto los ojos,  
y conoció cual era la verdadera  
causa de su desgracia. — PADRE  
DE ISLA.

*The prison had opened his eyes, and  
he knew which was the real cause  
of his misfortunes.*

b. When the pronoun may be used as partitive :

Estos hombres parecen locos : cual  
llora, cual canta, y cual rie,

*These men appear to be insane : one  
weeps, another sings, and still an-  
other laughs.*

Es difícil decir cual de los dos canta  
mejor,

*It is difficult to say which of the two  
sings best.*

- c. **Cual** is also used instead of the comparative, with **tal**, both words agreeing in number with the noun :

Estas frutas son *tales* las deseamos, or }     *These fruits are just as we wish*  
Estas frutas son *cuales* las deseamos, }     *them.*

**8. Cuyo** takes the gender and number of the noun which it precedes :

La amiga cuyo hermano está enfermo,  
El hombre cuya mujer ha muerto,  
El príncipe cuyos caballos hemos  
visto,  
Ciceron, de cuyo grande orador he  
leido las obras,

*The friend whose brother is sick.  
The man whose wife has died.  
The prince whose horses we have  
seen.  
Cicero, the great orator, whose  
works I have read.*

**9. Que** and **cual** may in many cases be used with equal propriety when accompanied by prepositions :

He estado en la casa en que (or en  
la cual) murió,  
Este es el cuchillo con que (or con  
el cual) mató la gallina,

*I have been in the house in which  
(where) he died.  
This is the knife with which he  
killed the hen.*

**10. Donde** is used also in Spanish, when the relative *which* may be replaced in English by the adverb *where* :

He estado en el pueblo en donde era  
la feria,

*I have been in the village where the  
fair was.*

**11.** The Relative Pronouns **que**, **cual**, **quien**, **cuyo** are also used as Interrogative Pronouns (**qué**, **cuál**, **quién**, taking then an accent), and mean :

Qué, *which, what.*

Cuál, *which, which one.*

Quién, *who, whom.*

Cuyo, *whose.*

*Examples.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ¡ A cuál de mis amigos ha dado V.<br>el libro ? | <i>To which of my friends have you<br/>given the book ?</i> |
| ¡ Qué profesion tiene V. ?                      | <i>What is your profession ?</i>                            |
| ¡ Cuál es su mérito ?                           | <i>What (which) is his merit ?</i>                          |
| ¡ Cuáles son sus amigos ?                       | <i>Which are his friends ?</i>                              |
| ¡ Qué hay en la mesa ?                          | <i>What is there on the table ?</i>                         |
| ¡ De quién habla V. ?                           | <i>Of whom do you speak ?</i>                               |
| ¡ Quién es aquél ?                              | <i>Who is that ?</i>  |
| ¡ Quiénes son aquellos hombres ?                | <i>Who are those men ?</i>                                  |
| ¡ Quién es esa mujer ?                          | <i>Who is that woman ?</i>                                  |
| ¡ A quién escribes esa carta ?                  | <i>To whom do you write that letter ?</i>                   |

OBSERVATION. — The expressions :

¡ Cuyo es este perro ?

*Whose dog is this ?*

¡ Cuyas son estas tijeras ?

*Whose are these scissors ?*

although of frequent use, are hardly correct, and it is preferable to use **de quién**, etc., as **¡ de quién es este perro ? ¡ de quién son estas tijeras ?** etc.

**12.** **Que** is also used as an exclamation corresponding to the English **how**:

¡ Que bonito es eso !      *How pretty that is !*

¡ Que feliz es V. !      *How happy you are !*

**13.** **Qué de** may also be used for **cuanto**, **cuanta**, **cuantos**, **cuantas**, *how much ! how many :*

¡ Qué de cosas or cuantas cosas podria decir !      *How many things I could say !*

**Leccion XXIV.****Lesson XXIV.**

ERBOS AUXILIARES,      AUXILIARY VERBS.

**Haber,** *to have.*

MODO INFINITIVO,      *INFINITIVE MOOD.*

Haber,                    *to have.*

Haber habido,            *to have had.*

**Gerundio,** *gerund.*

Habiendo,                *having.*

Habiendo habido,        *having had.*

**Participio pasivo,** *past participle.*

Habido,                    *had.*

TIEMPOS SIMPLES, *Simple Tenses.*

MODO INDICATIVO,      *INDICATIVE MOOD.*

**Presente,** *present.*

Yo he,                    *I have.*

Tú has,                  *thou hast.*

Él ha,                    *he has.*

Ella ha,                *she has.*

Nosotros hemos,        *we have.*

Vosotros habeis,        *you have.*

Ellos han,                *they (masc.) have.*

Ellas han.                *they (fem.) have.*

**Imperfecto,** *imperfect.*

Habia,                    *I had (I was having, I used to have).*

Habias,                  *thou hadst.*

Habia,                    *he had or she had.*

Habiamos,                *we had.*

Habiais,                *you had.*

Habian,                *they had.*

**Preterito perfecto definido, preterite.**

Hube,	<i>I had (did have).</i>
Hubiste,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
Hubo,	<i>he had.</i>
Hubimos,	<i>we had.</i>
Hubísteis,	<i>you had.</i>
Hubiéron,	<i>they had.</i>

**Futuro, future.**

Habré,	<i>I shall or will have.</i>
Habrás,	<i>thou shalt or wilt have.</i>
Habrá,	<i>he shall or will have.</i>
Habrémos,	<i>we shall or will have.</i>
Habréis,	<i>you shall or will have.</i>
Habrán,	<i>they shall or will have.</i>

**MODO SUBJUNTIVO, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Presente, present.**

Haya,	<i>I may have.</i>
Hayas,	<i>thou mayest have.</i>
Haya,	<i>he may have.</i>
Hayamos,	<i>we may have.</i>
Hayais,	<i>you may have.</i>
Hayan,	<i>they may have.</i>

**Imperfecto, imperfect.**

Hubiera, habria, hubiese ;	<i>I (might, could, would or) should have.</i>
Hubieras, habrias, hubieses ;	<i>thou shouldst have.</i>
Hubiera, habria, hubiese ;	<i>he should have.</i>
Hubiéramos, habriámos, hubiésemos ;	<i>we should have.</i>
Hubiérais, habriáis, hubiéseis ;	<i>you should have.</i>
Hubieran, habriau, hubiesen ;	<i>they should have.</i>

**Futuro, future.**

(Cuando or Si) Hubiere,	<i>(when or if) I shall or will have.</i>
Hubieres,	<i>thou shalt or wilt have.</i>
Hubiere,	<i>he shall or will have.</i>
Hubiéremos,	<i>we shall or will have.</i>
Hubiéreis,	<i>you shall or will have.</i>
Hubieren,	<i>they shall or will have.</i>

TIEMPOS COMPUESTOS, *Compound Tenses.*MODO INDICATIVO, *INDICATIVE MOOD.*Perfecto, *perfect.*

He habido,	<i>I have had.</i>
Has habido,	<i>thou hast had.</i>
Ha habido,	<i>he has had.</i>
Hemos habido,	<i>we have had.</i>
Habeis habido,	<i>you have had.</i>
Han habido,	<i>they have had.</i>

Pluscuamperfecto, *pluperfect.*

Habia habido,	<i>I had had.</i>
Habias habido,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
Habia habido,	<i>he had had.</i>
Habiamos habido,	<i>we had had.</i>
Habiais habido,	<i>you had had.</i>
Habian habido,	<i>they had had.</i>

Preterito anterior, *past anterior.*

Hube habido,	<i>I had had.</i>
Hubiste habido,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
Hubo habido,	<i>he had had.</i>
Hubimos habido,	<i>we had had.</i>
Hubisteis habido,	<i>you had had.</i>
Hubiéron habido,	<i>they had had.</i>

Futuro anterior, *future anterior.*

Habré habido,	<i>I shall or will have had.</i>
Habrás habido,	<i>thou shalt or wilt have had.</i>
Habrá habido,	<i>he shall or will have had.</i>
Habrémos habido,	<i>we shall or will have had.</i>
Habréis habido,	<i>you shall or will have had.</i>
Habrán habido,	<i>they shall or will have had.</i>

MODO SUBJUNTIVO. *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*Perfecto, *perfect.*

Haya habido,	<i>I may have had.</i>
Hayas habido,	<i>thou mayest have had.</i>
Haya habido,	<i>he may have had.</i>
Hayamos habido,	<i>we may have had.</i>
Hayais habido,	<i>you may have had.</i>
Hayan habido,	<i>they may have had.</i>

**Pluscuamperfecto, pluperfect.**

Hubiera, habria or hubiese habido,	<i>I might, could, should or would have had.</i>
Hubieras, habrias or hubieses habido,	<i>thou mightest, couldst, shouldst or wouldst have had.</i>
Hubiera, habria or hubiese habido,	<i>he might, could, should or would have had.</i>
Hubiéramos, habríamos or hubiésemos habido,	<i>we might, could, should or would have had.</i>
Hubiérais, habríais or hubiéseis habido,	<i>you might, could, should or would have had.</i>
Hubíeran, habrian or hubiesen habido,	<i>they might, could, should or would have had.</i>

**Futuro, future.**

(Si) Hubiere habido,	(if) <i>I shall or will have had.</i>
Hubieres habido,	<i>thou shalt or wilt have had.</i>
Hubiere habido,	<i>he shall or will have had.</i>
Hubiéremos habido,	<i>we shall or will have had.</i>
Hubiéreis habido,	<i>you shall or will have had.</i>
Hubieren habido,	<i>they shall or will have had.</i>

**Tener, to have.****MODO INFINTIVO,      *INFINITIVE MOOD.***

Tener,	<i>to have.</i>
Haber tenido,	<i>to have had.</i>

**Gerundio, gerund.**

Teniendo,	<i>having.</i>
Habiendo tenido,	<i>having had.</i>

**Participio pasivo, past participle.**

Tenido,	<i>had.</i>
---------	-------------

**TIEMPOS SIMPLES, *Simple Tenses.*****MODO INDICATIVO,      *INDICATIVE MOOD.*****Presente, present.**

Tengo,	<i>I have.</i>	Tenemos,	<i>we have.</i>
Tienes,	<i>thou hast.</i>	Teneis,	<i>you have.</i>
Tiene,	<i>he has.</i>	Tienen,	<i>they have.</i>

**Imperfecto, imperfect.**

Tenia,	<i>I had (I was having, I used to have).</i>
Tenias,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
Tenia,	<i>he had.</i>
Teniamos,	<i>we had.</i>
Teniais,	<i>you had.</i>
Tenian,	<i>they had.</i>

**Preterito perfecto definido, preterite.**

Tuve,	<i>I had (did have).</i>
Tuviste,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
Tuvo,	<i>he had.</i>
Tuvimos,	<i>we had.</i>
Tuvisteis,	<i>you had.</i>
Tuvieron,	<i>they had.</i>

**Futuro, future.**

Tendré,	<i>I shall or will have.</i>
Tendrás,	<i>thou shalt or wilt have.</i>
Tendrá,	<i>he shall or will have.</i>
Tendrémos,	<i>we shall or will have.</i>
Tendréis,	<i>you shall or will have.</i>
Tendrán,	<i>they shall or will have.</i>

**Imperativo, Imperative.**

Ten tú,	<i>have (have thou).</i>
Tenga él,	<i>let him have.</i>
Tenga V.,	<i>have (have you, sing.).</i>
Tengamos,	<i>let us have.</i>
Tened,	<i>have (have you).</i>
Tengan,	<i>let them have.</i>
Tengan V. V.,	<i>have (have you, pl.).</i>

**MODO SUBJUNTIVO, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Presente, present.**

Tenga,	<i>I may have.</i>
Tengas,	<i>thou mayest have.</i>
Tenga,	<i>he may have.</i>
Tengamos,	<i>we may have.</i>
Tengais,	<i>you may have.</i>
Tengan,	<i>they may have.</i>

**Imperfecto, imperfect.**

Tuviera, tendria, tuviese ;	<i>I (might, could, would or) should have.</i>
Tuvieras, tendrias, tuvieses ;	<i>thou shouldst have.</i>
Tuviera, tendria, tuviese ;	<i>he should have.</i>
Tuviéramos, tendríamos, tuviésemos ;	<i>we should have.</i>
Tuviérais, tendríais, tuviéseis ;	<i>you should have.</i>
Tuvieran, tendrian, tuviesen ;	<i>they should have.</i>

**Futuro, future.**

(*Cuando* or *Si*) Tuviere, (when or if) *I shall or will have.*

Tuvieres,	<i>thou shalt or wilt have.</i>
Tuvière,	<i>he shall or will have.</i>
Tuviéremos,	<i>we shall or will have.</i>
Tuviéreis,	<i>you shall or will have.</i>
Tuvieren,	<i>they shall or will have.</i>

**TIEMPOS COMPUESTOS, Compound Tenses.****MODO INDICATIVO, INDICATIVE MOOD.****Perfecto, perfect.**

He tenido,	<i>I have had.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Pluscuamperfecto, pluperfect.**

Habia tenido,	<i>I had had.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Preterito anterior, past anterior.**

Hube tenido,	<i>I had had.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Futuro anterior, future anterior.**

Habré tenido,	<i>I shall or will have had.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**MODO SUBJUNTIVO, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Perfecto, perfect.**

Haya tenido,	<i>I may have had.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Pluscuamperfecto, pluperfect.**

Hubiera, habria or hubiese tenido,      *I might, could, should or would have had.*  
 etc.    etc.    etc.

**Futuro, future.**

(Si) Hubiere tenido,      (if) *I shall or will have had.*  
 etc.    etc,    etc.

**Vocabulario.**

**El buey,** *the ox.*  
**El valor,** *the courage.*  
**La esperanza,** *the hope.*  
**La fortuna,** *the fortune.*  
**La hacienda,** *the estate.*  
**La noche,** *the night.*  
**La paciencia,** *the patience.*  
**La suerte,** *the fate.*

**La vez,** *the time.*  
**Acabar,** 1. *to finish.*  
**Almorzar,** 1. *to breakfast.*  
**Bastante,** *enough.*  
**Dejar,** 1. *to leave.*  
**Escrito,** *written.*  
**Eso,** *that.*  
**Guardar,** 1. *to keep.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Hacer,** 2. *to make, to do.*  
**Heredar,** 1. *to inherit.*  
**Llegar,** 1. *to arrive.*  
**Mismo,** *same.*  
**Oir,** 3. *to hear.*  
**Tener,** 2. *to hold, to have.*  
**Todavia,** *yet.*  
**Visto,** *seen.*

**Exercise 47.**

1. Tengo un hermano en Paris. 2. ¿ Han recibido V. V. cartas hoy ?
3. Si, señor, hemos recibido una carta de nuestro padre. 4. ¿ Ha visto V. al Presidente ? 5. Le he visto varias veces. 6. ¿ Cuando tendrá V. dinero ? 7. Tendré cien pesos mañana. 8. ¿ Qué tenía su hermano en su cuarto ? 9. No tenía nada. 10. Tenga V. paciencia, amigo mio. 11. ¿ Quién tendrá el valor de (*to*) hacer eso ? 12. Todos tendremos ese valor. 13. ¿ Tenian los muchachos sus libros esta mañana ? 14. No los tenian. 15. ¿ Cuando habrá acabado V. ? 16. Habré acabado en una hora. 17. ¿ Tenian V. V. amigos en aquella ciudad ? 18. Teniamos varios. 19. ¿ Quién ha heredado de la fortuna del general ? 20. El general no ha dejado ninguna. 21. ¿ Tendrán V. V. libros franceses el mes que viene (*next month*) ? 22. Ya tenemos muchos libros franceses é ingleses. 23. ¿ Porqué no había escrito V. á su padre ? 24. Porque yo había escrito á mi hermano. 25. ¿ Habia V. hablado á este hombre ? 26. Yo le había hablado dos ó tres veces. 27. ¿ Ha almorcado todo el mundo ? 28. El caballero aleman no ha almorcado todavía. 29. ¿ Con qué dinero ha comprado V. esto ? 30. Con ninguno, no lo he pagado todavía. 31. ¿ Tendria V. el valor de salir solo ? 32. No, yo no tendría ese valor. 33. ¿ Tiene V. las llaves de la casa ? 34. Las tendré esta tarde. 35. ¿ Ha visto

V, al señor Palacio ? 36. Le he visto en su almacén. 37. El padre de Carlos ha perdido toda su fortuna. 38. Si V. no es prudente, V. tendrá la misma suerte. 39. ¿ Ha hallado V. algo ? 40. He hallado una llave de reloj. 41. Es mia.

### Exercise 48.

1. Why have you not spoken to the gentleman ? 2. I have not seen him.
3. Shall you have finished your work this evening ? 4. I shall have finished it in two hours.
5. Had (*imperf.*) you many horses when you were (*estaba*) in the country ? 6. I had four, and my brother had five.
7. Have patience, my friend, you will have the money to-morrow.
8. Have you money enough for the voyage ?
9. I have not much, but I have enough.
10. Had you lost all hope ?
11. I had lost all my money ; and, with my money, all hope.
12. The mother has given good advice to her daughter.
13. We had bought many oxen for our estate.
14. How long have you been in that country ?
15. I have been there five years.
16. Have you written all your letters ?
17. No, sir, I have not had time.
18. Has your brother written his ?
19. He has not written them either.
20. Have the children gone to (*a la*) school ?
21. No, madam, they are breakfasting.
22. Has your father sold his houses ?
23. He has sold the large one, and he has kept the small one.
24. Do you know if the gentleman has gone out ?
25. He had gone out when I was up stairs.
26. What did you hold (*tenia*) in your hand ?
27. I held (*tenia*) the key of the garden.
28. Have you spoken to your father about (*de*) that ?
29. Not yet, my father is not in (*en la*) town.
30. I have heard that the vessel has arrived.

### Lección XXV.

### Lesson XXV.

#### IDIOMATIC USES OF *TENER.*

Tener calor,	<i>to be warm.</i>
Tener frío,	<i>to be cold.</i>
Tener hambre,	<i>to be hungry.</i>
Tener sed,	<i>to be thirsty.</i>
Tener sueño,	<i>to be asleep.</i>
Tener vergüenza,	<i>to be ashamed.</i>

Tener miedo,	<i>to be afraid.</i>
Tener gana,	<i>to have a mind.</i>
Tener razon,	<i>to be right.</i>
No tener razon,	
Estar errado,	
Hacer mal,	
Tener algo,	<i>to be something the matter.</i>
No tener nada,	<i>to be nothing the matter.</i>
Tener diez años,	<i>to be ten years old.</i>
Tener los ojos negros,	<i>to have black eyes.</i>
Tener diez pies de largo,	<i>to be ten feet long.</i>
Tener diez pies de ancho,	<i>to be ten feet wide.</i>
Tener diez pies de profundo,	<i>to be ten feet deep.</i>
Tener cien pies de alto,	<i>to be a hundred feet high.</i>
Tener las manos frias,	<i>to have cold hands.</i>
Tener algo que hacer,	<i>to have something to do.</i>
Tener los ojos malos,	<i>to have sore eyes.</i>
Tener el dedo malo,	<i>to have a sore finger.</i>

**Ejemplos.**

¿ Tiene V. calor ?  
 No tengo calor, tengo frio.  
 ¿ Quién tiene hambre ?  
 Tenemos hambre y sed.  
 ¿ Tenia V. vergüenza ?  
 Si, señor, yo tenia vergüenza.  
 Teniamos sueño.  
 Tendrémos frio en el cuarto.  
 El clima de aquel pais es muy frio.

El cuarto *está* frio.  
 ¿ No tiene V. vergüenza ?  
 Tengo vergüenza de hablar.  
 ¿ Quién tiene sueño ?  
 Todos tenemos sueño.  
 ¿ De quién tiene V. miedo ?  
 Tengo miedo de este hombre.  
 ¿ Tiene V. gana de salir ?  
 No tengo gana.  
 ¿ Quién tiene razon ?  
 Yo tengo razon y V. está errado.

**Examples.**

Are you warm ?  
 I am not warm, I am cold.  
 Who is hungry ?  
 We are hungry and thirsty.  
 Were you ashamed ?  
 Yes, sir, I was ashamed.  
 We were sleepy.  
 We will be cold in the room.  
 The climate of that country is very cold.  
 The room is cold.  
 Are you not ashamed ?  
 I am ashamed to speak.  
 Who is sleepy ?  
 We are all sleepy.  
 Of whom are you afraid ?  
 I am afraid of this man.  
 Have you a mind to go out ?  
 I have no mind (to go out).  
 Who is right ?  
 I am right and you are wrong.

<i>i Tengo yo razon de comprar esta casa ?</i>	Am I right in buying that house ?
<i>V. hace mal de comprarlala.</i>	You are wrong in buying it.
<i>i Qué tiene V., amigo mio ?</i>	What is the matter with you, my friend ?
<i>Nada tengo.</i>	Nothing is the matter with me.
<i>i Qué tiene él ?</i>	What is the matter with him ?
<i>Él no tiene nada.</i>	Nothing is the matter with him.
<i>i Qué edad tiene V. ?</i>	How old are you ?
<i>i Cuantos años tiene V. ?</i>	I am twenty.
<i>Tengo veinte años.</i>	How old was he ?
<i>i Qué edad tenia él ?</i>	He was fifty.
<i>Tenia cincuenta años.</i>	My brother will be eighteen tomorrow.
<i>i Mi hermano tendrá mañana diez y ocho años.</i>	This lady has blue eyes.
<i>Esta señora tiene los ojos azules.</i>	The table is six feet long.
<i>La mesa tiene seis pies de largo.</i>	Are your hands cold ?
<i>i Tiene V. las manos frias ?</i>	My hands and feet are cold.
<i>Tengo las manos y los pies frios.</i>	What have you to do ?
<i>i Que tiene V. que hacer ?</i>	I have two letters to write.
<i>Tengo que escribir dos cartas.</i>	

**Vocabulario.**

**El bosque,** *the wood.*  
**El comedor,** *the dining-room.*  
**El dolor de cabeza,** *the headache.*  
**El gusto,** *the pleasure.*  
**El ojo,** *the eye.*  
**El pelo,** *the hair.*  
**El pié,** *the foot.*  
**La cerveza,** *the beer.*  
**La conducta,** *the conduct.*  
**La edad,** *the age.*  
**La noche,** *the night.*  
**Así,** *so.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Azul,** *blue.*  
**Bailar,** 1. *to dance.*  
**Bailo,** *I dance.*  
**Bajar,** 1. *to come down.*  
**Buenas noches,** *good night.*  
**Conmigo,** *with me.*  
**Decir,** 3. *to tell, to say.*  
**Llorar,** 1. *to cry, to weep.*  
**Rubio,** *fair, blond.*  
**Trabajar,** 1. *to work.*  
**Venir,** 3. *to come.*  
**Ya no,** *no longer.*

**Exercise 49.**

1. Teniamos frío en nuestro cuarto y hemos bajado aquí. 2. *i Tiene V. miedo del perro ?* 3. No, señor, no tengo miedo de él (*him*). 4. *i Tiene hambre el muchacho ?* 5. No tiene hambre ; tiene sueño. 6. Siempre tiene hambre. 7. El tiempo está frío hoy. 8. *i De quien*

tiene V. miedo ? 9. No tengo miedo de nadie. 10. ¿ Quién tiene razon, su hermana ó V. ? 11. Es ella que está errada. 12. ¿ No tiene V. vergüenza de bailar á (*at*) su edad ? 13. Yo no bailo desde mucho tiempo. 14. ¿ Tiene V. gana de ir al teatro esta noche ? 15. Sí, si V. quiere venir conmigo. 16. Con mucho gusto. 17. ¿ Tiene V. hambre todavía ? 18. Yo no tengo hambre, pero tengo todavía sed ; tiene V. vino en la casa ? 19. No tengo vino, pero tengo cerveza. 20. ¿ Los muchachos estan en el bosque, no tienen ellos miedo ? 21. Estan con los criados de su padre. 22. ¿ Que tienes, Julia ? 23. Tengo dolor de cabeza. 24. Esta casa tiene sesenta piés de alto ; no es así ? 25. Tiene á lo ménos ochenta piés. 26. ¿ Qué edad tiene ese muchacho ? 27. Tendrá seis años en un mes. 28. ¿ Tiene V. las manos frias ? 29. No tengo las manos frias, pero tengo los piés frios. 30. Emilio tiene los ojos negros y el pelo rubio. 31. ¿ Tiene V. algo que hacer ? 32. Tengo que acabar mis cartas. 33. ¿ Porqué ha llorado V.? 34. No he llorado, tengo los ojos malos. 35. Y yo tambien.

### Exercise 50.

1. Who is wrong ? 2. Nobody is wrong. 3. Have you a mind to go to the ball ? 4. Yes, I have a mind to go. 5. Have you time to (*de*) write a letter for (*para*) my brother ? 6. I have no time now, but I shall have time this evening. 7. Is not your brother ashamed of his conduct ? 8. He is ashamed of nothing. 9. You have no money, and you have not the courage to (*de*) work. 10. You are wrong to say that, I have worked five days this week. 11. I have a mind to write to my father. 12. I have already written to mine. 13. What is the matter with you to-day ? 14. Nothing is the matter with me. 15. What has your brother to do ? 16. He has a great deal (*muchísimo*) to do. 17. How old is he now ? 18. He is twenty-five. 19. Is anything the matter with your sister ? 20. She has the headache. 21. Is Clara pretty ? 22. She is very pretty, she has blue eyes and black hair. 23. How old were you at (*en*) that time ? 24. I was five years old. 25. Are your feet cold ? 26. My feet are always cold. 27. Is your dining-room very large ? 28. It is thirty feet long and twenty feet wide. 29. What is the matter with that child ? 30. I don't know what (*lo que*) is the matter with him. 31. Of what were you afraid ? 32. We were not afraid, but the ladies were afraid. 33. Good night, I am going (*me voy*) home, I have never been so (*tanto*) sleepy.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

1. The verb **tener**, *to have*, is used in Spanish instead of the verb *to be*, with the words **calor**, *warm*, *warmth*, *heat*, **frio**, *cold*, **hambre**, *hunger*, **sed**, *thirst*, **sueño**, *sleep*, **vergüenza**, *shame*, **miedo**, *fear*, **razon**, *right*, etc., used substantively, so that in order to express : **I am warm**, **he is thirsty**, **we are ashamed**, etc., the Spaniards say : *I have heat*, *he has thirst*, *we have shame*, etc. It follows, therefore, that the verb **to be** has to be rendered in Spanish by the corresponding tenses of the verb **tener**, *to have* :

Tengo hambre,	<i>I am hungry.</i>
Tenia or tuve hambre,	<i>I was hungry.</i>
Tendré hambre,	<i>I shall be hungry.</i>
Tendria hambre,	<i>I would be hungry.</i>
Que yo tenga hambre,	<i>That I may be hungry.</i>
Que yo tuviese hambre,	<i>That I might be hungry.</i>
He tenido hambre, etc.,	<i>I have been hungry, etc.</i>

OBSERVATION. — a. The verbs **ser** or **estar**, *to be*, are, however, used in Spanish with the word **frio**, *cold*, when the English verb is not used in the sense of *to feel*, *to experience*. Thus, we should not say : **el hielo tiene frio**, but **el hielo es frio**, *ice is cold*; nor **el dia tiene frio**, but **el dia está frio**, *the day is cold*.

Instead of *calor*, the Spaniards use in the same cases the adjectives **caliente**, *cálido*, etc. **La sopa está caliente** (and not **la sopa tiene calor**), *the soup is warm*.

b. The adjectives **hambriento**, *hungry*, *famished*, **sediento**, *thirsty*, *dry*, **vergonzoso**, *ashamed*, *bashful*, **miedoso**, *timid*, *timorous*, *afraid*, are used as in English with the verb **to be**, **estar** or **ser** :

Estamos hambrientos,	<i>We are famished.</i>
Él es miedoso,	<i>He is afraid.</i>

2. Tener **vergüenza**, tener **miedo**, tener **razon**, tener **gana**, etc., require the preposition **de** to follow them when coming before a verb :

Tengo gana de escribir,	<i>I have a mind to write.</i>
Tenemos miedo de salir,	<i>We are afraid to go out.</i>
V. tiene razon de hacer eso,	<i>You are right to do that.</i>

OBSERVATION.—The Spaniards have no equivalent for **to be wrong**, and are therefore obliged to use :

No tener razon,	<i>Not to be right.</i>
Estar errado,	<i>To be mistaken.</i>
Hacer mal,	<i>To do wrong.</i>

3. The verb **tener** is used idiomatically in Spanish with the words **algo**, *something, anything*, and **nada**, *nothing, not anything*; and, when thus connected, it has often the meaning of *to be something the matter with, to ail* :

¡ Que tiene V. ?	<i>What is the matter with you ?</i>
Tengo algo,	<i>Something is the matter with me.</i>
¡ Tiene él algo ?	{ <i>Is anything the matter with him ?</i>
Él no tiene nada,	<i>Does anything ail him ?</i> <i>Nothing is the matter with him.</i>

4. The verb **tener** is also used in Spanish to express the age ; and, in inquiring about the age of a person, they say :

¡ Qué edad tiene... ?	<i>What age has... ?</i>
¡ Cuantos años tiene... ?	<i>How many years has... ?</i>

The word **años**, *years*, must not be left out either in the question or in the answer, unless expressed in the first part of the sentence :

¡ Cuantos años tiene V. ?	<i>How old are you ?</i>
Tengo veinte años y mi hermano diez y ocho,	<i>I am twenty and my brother eighteen.</i>

OBSERVATION.—**Tener mas edad, ser de mas edad** is used for *older*, when comparing the age of persons who are not really old :

Este niño tiene mas edad que aquel,      *This child is older than that one.*

5. **Tener algo malo** means *to have a pain, a sore, or ache somewhere*, and is used in Spanish with the definite article :

Tengo el ojo malo,	<i>I have a sore eye.</i>
Tenemos los pies malos,	<i>We have sore feet.</i>
Él tiene la rodilla mala,	<i>He has a sore knee.</i>

6. The definite article is also used before verbs expressing moral or physical properties :

Tiene los ojos azules,	<i>He has blue eyes.</i>
Tienen los pies grandes,	<i>They have large feet.</i>

OBSERVATION. — The same article is used in the *singular*, when speaking of several persons, if the property spoken of is single in each person :

Él tiene la nariz larga,      *He has a long nose.*  
 Ellos tienen la nariz larga,      *They have long noses.*

7. In speaking of the dimensions or size of objects, the Spanish use the verb **tener**, *to have* :

Este arbol tiene cien piés de alto,      *This tree is a hundred feet high.*  
 La calle tiene cincuenta piés de ancho,      *The street is fifty feet wide.*

8. The verb **tener** is used before an Infinitive with the conjunction **que** when obligation or necessity is expressed :

Tengo que escribir cartas,      *I have letters to write.*  
 Tenemos que salir,      *We have to go out.*

## Leccion XXVI.

## Lesson XXVI.

VERBOS AUXILIARES.    AUXILIARY VERBS.

**Ser**, *to be.*

MODO INFINITIVO,    *INFINITIVE MOOD.*

Ser,	<i>to be.</i>
Haber sido,	<i>to have been.</i>

**Gerundio**, *gerund.*

Siendo,	<i>being.</i>
Habiendo sido,	<i>having been.</i>

**Participio pasivo**, *past participle.*

Sido,	<i>been.</i>
-------	--------------

TIEMPOS SIMPLES, *Simple Tenses.*

**Presente**, *present.*

Soy,	<i>I am.</i>
Eres,	<i>thou art.</i>
Es,	<i>he (or she) is.</i>
Somos,	<i>we are.</i>
Sois,	<i>you are.</i>
Son,	<i>they are.</i>

**Imperfecto, imperfect.**

Era,	<i>I was (I used to be).</i>
Eras,	<i>thou wast.</i>
Era,	<i>he was.</i>
Éramos,	<i>we were.</i>
Érais,	<i>you were.</i>
Eran,	<i>they were.</i>

**Preterito perfecto definido, preterite.**

Fuí,	<i>I was.</i>
Fuiste,	<i>thou wast.</i>
Fué,	<i>he was.</i>
Fuimos,	<i>we were.</i>
Fuisteis,	<i>you were.</i>
Fuérón,	<i>they were.</i>

**Futuro, future.**

Seré,	<i>I shall or will be.</i>
Serás,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be.</i>
Será,	<i>he shall or will be.</i>
Serémos,	<i>we shall or will be.</i>
Seréis,	<i>you shall or will be.</i>
Serán,	<i>they shall or will be.</i>

**Imperativo, imperative.**

Sé tú,	<i>be (be thou).</i>
Sea él or ella,	<i>let him (or her) be.</i>
No seas tu,	<i>be thou not.</i>
Sea V.,	<i>be (be you, sing.).</i>
Séamos,	<i>let us be.</i>
Sed,	<i>be (be you).</i>
No seais,	<i>be ye not.</i>
Sean V. V.,	<i>be (be you, pl.).</i>
Sean ellos,	<i>let them be.</i>

**MODO SUBJUNTIVO, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Presente, present.**

Sea,	<i>I may be.</i>
Seas,	<i>thou mayest be.</i>
Sea,	<i>he may be.</i>
Seamos,	<i>we may be.</i>
Seais,	<i>you may be.</i>
Sean,	<i>they may be.</i>

**Imperfecto, imperfect.**

Fuera, seria, fuese ;	<i>I (might, could, would or) should be.</i>
Fueras, serias, fueses	<i>thou shouldst be.</i>
Fuera, seria, fuese ;	<i>he should be.</i>
Fueramos, seriamos, fuesemos ;	<i>we should be.</i>
Fuerais, seriais, fueseis ;	<i>you should be.</i>
Fueran, serian, fuesen ;	<i>they should be.</i>

**Futuro, future.**

( <i>Cuando</i> or <i>Si</i> ) Fuere,	<i>(when or if) I shall or will be.</i>
Fueres,	<i>thou shalt or will be.</i>
Fuere,	<i>he shall or will be.</i>
Fuéremos,	<i>we shall or will be.</i>
Fuéreis,	<i>you shall or will be.</i>
Fueren,	<i>they shall or will be.</i>

**TIEMPOS COMPUESTOS, Compound Tenses.****MODO INDICATIVO, INDICATIVE MOOD.****Perfect, perfect.**

He sido,	<i>I have been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Pluscuamperfecto, pluperfect.**

Habia sido,	<i>I had been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Preterito anterior, past anterior.**

Hube sido,	<i>I had been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Futuro anterior, future anterior.**

Habré sido,	<i>I shall or will have been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**MODO SUBJUNTIVO, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Perfecto, perfect.**

Haya sido,	<i>I may have been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Pluscuamperfecto, pluperfect.**

Hubiera, habria or hubiese sido,      *I might, could, would or should have been.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Futuro, future.**

(Si) Hubiere sido,      (if) *I shall or will have been.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Estar, to be.****MODO INFINITIVO, INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Estar,                                        *to be.*  
 Haber estado,                                *to have been.*

**Gerundio, gerund.**

Estando,                                     *being.*  
 Habiendo estado,                            *having been.*

**Participio pasivo, past participle.**

Estado,                                        *been.*

**TIEMPOS SIMPLES, Simple Tenses.****MODO INDICATIVO, INDICATIVE MOOD.****Presente, present.**

Yo estoy,	<i>I am.</i>
Tu estás,	<i>thou art.</i>
Él or ella está,	<i>he or she is.</i>
Nosotros estámos,	<i>we are.</i>
Vosotros estáis,	<i>you are.</i>
Ellos or ellas están,	<i>they are.</i>

**Imperfecto, imperfect.**

Estaba,	<i>I was (I used to be).</i>
Estabas,	<i>thou wast.</i>
Estaba,	<i>he or she was.</i>
Estábamos,	<i>we were.</i>
Estábais,	<i>you were.</i>
Estaban,	<i>they were.</i>

**Preterito perfecto definido, *preterite.***

Estuve,	<i>I was.</i>
Estuviste,	<i>thou wast.</i>
Estuvo,	<i>he was.</i>
Estuvimos.	<i>we were.</i>
Estuvisteis,	<i>you were.</i>
Estuvieron,	<i>they were.</i>

**Futuro, *future.***

Estaré,	<i>I shall or will be.</i>
Estarás,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be.</i>
Estará,	<i>he shall or will be.</i>
Estarémos,	<i>we shall or will be.</i>
Estaréis,	<i>you shall or will be.</i>
Estarán,	<i>they shall or will be.</i>

**Imperativo, *imperative.***

Está tú,	<i>be (be thou).</i>
No estes,	<i>be (thou) not.</i>
Esté él or ella,	<i>let him or her be.</i>
Esté V.,	<i>be (be you).</i>
Estemos,	<i>let us be.</i>
Estad,	<i>be (be you).</i>
No esteis,	<i>be (you) not.</i>
Esten V. V.,	<i>be (be you, pl.).</i>
Esten ellos,	<i>let them be. •</i>

**MODO SUBJUNTIVO,      *SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*****Presente, *present.***

Esté,	<i>I may be.</i>
Estes,	<i>thou mayest be.</i>
Esté,	<i>he may be.</i>
Estemos,	<i>we may be.</i>
Estéis,	<i>you may be.</i>
Esten,	<i>they may be.</i>

**Imperfecto, *imperfect.***

Estuviera, estaria, estuviese ;	<i>I (might, could, would or) should be.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Futuro, future.**

( <i>Cuando</i> or <i>Si</i> ) Estuviere,	(when or if) <i>I shall or will be.</i>
Estuvieres,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be.</i>
Estuviere,	<i>he shall or will be.</i>
Estuviéremos,	<i>we shall or will be.</i>
Estuviéreis,	<i>you shall or will be.</i>
Estuvieren,	<i>they shall or will be.</i>

**TIEMPOS COMPUESTOS, Compound Tenses.****MODO INDICATIVO, INDICATIVE MOOD.****Perfecto, perfect.**

He estado,	<i>I have been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Pluscuamperfecto, pluperfect.**

Habia estado,	<i>I had been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Preterito anterior, past anterior.**

Hube estado,	<i>I had been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Futuro anterior, future anterior.**

Habré estado,	<i>I shall or will have been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**MODO SUBJUNTIVO, SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Perfecto, perfect.**

Haya estado,	<i>I may have been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Pluscuamperfecto, pluperfect.**

Hubiera, habria or hubiese estado,	<i>I (might, could, should or) would have been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Futuro, future.**

( <i>Si</i> ) Hubiere estado,	(if) <i>I shall or will have been.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

## Vocabulario.

**El carpintero**, *the carpenter.*  
**El enfermo**, *the patient.*  
**El parque**, *the park.*  
**El precio**, *the price.*  
**La batalla**, *the battle.*  
**Amado**, *loved.*  
**Carolina**, *Caroline.*  
**Comprado**, *bought.*  
**Conocido**, *known.*  
**Creo**, *I believe.*  
**Demolido**, *pulled down.*  
**Excepto**, *except.*

## Vocabulary.

**Francia**, f. *France.*  
**Hasta**, *till, until, as far.*  
**Herido**, *wounded.*  
**Impaciente**, *impatient.*  
**Ir**, 3. *to go.*  
**Mucho tiempo**, *long time.*  
**Pero**, *but.*  
**Pocos**, *few.*  
**Posible**, *possible.*  
**Pues**, *for, as.*  
**Tarde**, *late.*  
**Vendido**, *sold.*

## Exercise 51.

1. ¿ Está su padre en casa ? 2. No está ahora, pero estará esta noche. 3. ¿ Donde estaba V. esta mañana ? 4. Estuve en mi cuarto todo el tiempo. 5. ¿ Quién estaba con V. ? 6. Mis dos hermanos estaban conmigo. 7. Esta manzana no es tan buena como las otras. 8. Si V. está aquí mañana temprano, tendrá V. dinero. 9. ¿ Cuando estará V. en casa ? 10. Estaré temprano esta noche. 11. Seamos amigos. 12. ¿ No es V. el amigo de ese hombre ? 13. Yo era su amigo, pero ya no lo soy. 14. ¿ Estaría V. contento si su hermana estuviese (*were*) aquí ? 15. Estaría lo mas contento. 16. V. será siempre el mismo, amigo mio ; V. es demasiado impaciente. 17. Lo sé. 18. ¿ Donde estaba V. cuando V. era joven ? 19. Estuve en Francia hasta la edad de veinte años. 20. ¿ Ha estado V. hoy en la calle ? 21. He estado en la casa todo el dia. 22. ¿ Quién estará en su casa esta noche ? 23. No sé todavía. 24. ¿ Estará ahí la señorita Luisa ? 25. Si, señor, y la señorita Carolina tambien. 26. ¿ Es bonita la señorita Carolina ? 27. Ha sido muy bonita, pero ya no es joven. 28. ¿ Quiere V. ser mi amigo ? 29. Seré su amigo, si V. es el mio. 30. ¿ Qué edad tenia V. cuando estaba en Inglaterra ? 31. Yo tenia doce años, y mi hermano quince. 32. ¿ Es V. pobre ? 33. No soy ni rico ni pobre. 34. Estos dos hombres éran muy buenos amigos, pero ahora son enemigos. 35. ¿ Estará aquí el carpintero mañana ? 36. Estará, pero tarde. 37. ¿ Es hábil este médico ? 38. Lo es. 39. ¿ Está V. mala, señora ? 40. Lo estoy un poco. 41. Este autor todavía no es conocido ; pero lo será un dia, pues tiene mucho talento.

**Exercise 52.**

1. Are you sick, my little friend ? 2. I am not, but my brother is.
3. Is this hat yours or your brother's ? 4. It is neither his nor mine.
5. Are the horses sold ? 6. All the horses are sold except one. 7. Is Charles's mother old ? 8. She is, but she is pretty yet. 9. Are you the lady of the house ? 10. I am not, I am her sister. 11. Are those gentlemen friends ? 12. They are, for a long while. 13. Is your letter written ? 14. It will be written very soon. 15. Do you know if the patient is better ? 16. He was (*imperf.*) much better this morning. 17. Good morning, sir ; is your brother at home ? 18. I believe that he is. 19. When will you be ready to (*para*) go with me ? 20. I will be ready in a few minutes. 21. This child is loved by (*de*) every body. 22. These books have been bought in Paris. 23. When will you be the first in your class ? 24. I am always the first. 25. Where were (*imperf.*) you this morning ? 26. I was in the park with my two sisters. 27. Is the park far from here ? 28. It is not very far. 29. Are those gentlemen friends ? 30. They were (*imperf.*) friends, but I don't know if they are now. 31. The general was (*pret.*) wounded in the battle. 32. Three houses have been pulled down in our street. 33. How is that possible ? 34. It is very possible. 35. The boys were (*imperf.*) playing in the yard when I was (*pret.*) at their house. 36. The goods have been sold at a very good price.

OBSERVATION. — All the rules on the verbs ***ser*** and ***estar***, *to be*, having been given in Lesson V., we refer the student to the same, and would recommend a review of the important rules therein contained.

---

**Lección XXVII.****HABER AND SER USED AS IMPERSONAL VERBS.****Haber, there to be.**

Hay,	<i>there is, there are, it is.</i>
Habia, {	
Hubo, {	<i>there was, there were.</i>
Habrá,	<i>there shall or will be.</i>
Hubiera, habria or hubiese,	<i>there should or would be.</i>

**Lesson XXVII.**

Ha habido,	<i>there has been, there have been.</i>
Habia habido,	<i>there had been.</i>
Habrá habido,	<i>there shall or will have been.</i>
Hubiera, habria or hubiese habido,	<i>there should or would have been.</i>
¿ Hay ?	<i>is there ? are there ? is it ?</i>
¿ Habia ? }	<i>was there ? were there ?</i>
¿ Hubo ? }	
¿ Ha habido ?	<i>has (or have) there been ?</i>
No hay,	<i>there is not, there are not.</i>
No habia, }	
No hubo, }	<i>there was not, there were not.</i>
No ha habido,	<i>there has (or have) not been.</i>
No habia habido,	<i>there had not been.</i>
¿ Que hay ?	<i>what is the matter ? what is there ?</i>
¿ Que hay de nuevo ?	<i>what is the news ?</i>

**Ejemplos.**

Hay una carta para V.  
 ¿ Hay pan en la casa ?  
 No hay.  
 ¿ Habia mucho pescado en la plaza,  
 Habia mucho.  
 Hay diez mil.  
 ¿ Habrá un baile mañana ?  
 Ha habido uno ayer.

**Examples.**

There is a letter for you.  
 Is there any bread in the house ?  
 There is none.  
 Was there much fish in the market ?  
 There was much.  
 There are ten thousand.  
 Will there be a ball to-morrow ?  
 There has been one yesterday.

**Haber translated by AGO :**

Mi hermano llegó hay tres dias,  
 Hay tres dias que mi hermano llegó, } My brother arrived three days ago.  
 Murió hay mucho tiempo, He died a long time ago.

**Haber expressing an ACTION, or a STATE WHICH STILL CONTINUES :**

Hay dos años que está malo,  
 Hay mucho tiempo que estoy aquí,  
 ¿ Cuanto (tiempo) hay que V. está  
 aquí ?

He has been sick these two years.  
 I have been here a long while.  
 How long have you been here ?

**Haber used to express MEASURE OF DISTANCES :**

¿ Cuanto hay de Paris á Londres ?  
 No hay lejos,  
 Hay cinco minutos de aquí á la  
 iglesia.

How far is it from Paris to London ?  
 It is not far.  
 It is five minutes' walk from here to  
 the church.

**Ser used IMPERSONALLY :**

Es verdad que es pobre,	<i>It is true that he is poor.</i>
Es inútil decir eso,	<i>It is useless to say that.</i>
Será tiempo de ir allá,	<i>It will be time to go there.</i>

**Hay and allí está compared :**

Hay un hombre á la puerta,	<i>There is a man at the door.</i>
Allí está el hombre que vende pan,	<i>There is the man (pointing out) who sells bread.</i>

**Todos, every:**

Todos los días, <i>every day.</i>	Todo el dia, <i>the whole day.</i>
Todos los meses, <i>every month.</i>	Todo el mes, <i>the whole month.</i>
Todas las mañanas, <i>every morning.</i>	Toda la mañana, <i>the whole morning.</i>
Todas las tardes, <i>every afternoon.</i>	Toda la tarde, <i>the whole afternoon.</i>
Todas las noches, <i>every evening.</i>	Toda la noche, <i>the whole night.</i>
Todas las semanas, <i>every week.</i>	Toda la semana, <i>the whole week.</i>
Todos los años, <i>every year.</i>	Todo el año, <i>the whole year.</i>
Todos los lunes, <i>every Monday.</i>	Todo el mundo, <i>every body.</i>

**Vocabulario.**

<b>El Aleman,</b> <i>the German.</i>
<b>El baile,</b> <i>the ball.</i>
<b>El conocido,</b> <i>the acquaintance.</i>
<b>El extranjero,</b> <i>the foreigner.</i>
<b>El ferro carril,</b> <i>the railroad.</i>
<b>El incendio,</b> <i>the conflagration.</i>
<b>El parque,</b> <i>the park.</i>
<b>El periódico,</b> <i>the newspaper.</i>
<b>El peso,</b> <i>the dollar.</i>
<b>La gente,</b> <i>the people.</i>
<b>La milla,</b> <i>the mile.</i>
<b>La persona,</b> <i>the person.</i>

**Vocabulary.**

<b>La semana que viene,</b> <i>next week.</i>
<b>La vez,</b> <i>the time.</i>
<b>Cerca de,</b> <i>nearly.</i>
<b>Esperar,</b> 1. <i>to wait.</i>
<b>Hecho,</b> <i>done.</i>
<b>Inútil,</b> <i>useless.</i>
<b>Muerto,</b> <i>died.</i>
<b>Tambien,</b> <i>also, too.</i>
<b>Todo,</b> <i>all, every thing.</i>
<b>Quiere,</b> <i>wishes.</i>
<b>Último,</b> <i>last.</i>
<b>Ver,</b> 2. <i>to see.</i>

**Exercise 53.**

1. ¡Hay cartas para mí (*me*) hoy ? 2. Hay una para V., y dos para su hermano. 3. ¡Había mucha gente en el baile ? 4. Había mas que la última vez. 5. ¡Cuanto hay de aquí á la ciudad ? 6. Hay muy lejos, pero ahora tenemos un ferro carril. 7. ¡Cuanto tiempo hay que ha muerto el general ? 8. Habrá un año mañana. 9. ¡Quién

estaba en el baile? 10. Habia muchos de nuestros conocidos. 11. Es inútil decir eso, todo el mundo lo sabe. 12. ¿ Hay mucho tiempo que V. está aquí esperando? 13. Hay á lo ménos dos horas. 14. ¿ Que ha hecho V. todo el tiempo? 15. He leido los periódicos. 16. ¿ Que ha habido en Boston? 17. Ha habido un incendio muy grande. 18. ¿ Cuantos centavos hay en un peso? 19. V. sabe muy bien que hay cien (centavos). 20. ¿ Que hay de nuevo en la ciudad? 21. No hay nada de particular. 22. ¿ Cuanto hay de Berlin á Viena? 23. Hay cerca de cien millas. 24. ¿ Cuanto tiempo hay que él está en América? 25. No sé cuanto tiempo hay.

### Exercise 54.

1. Is there any one up stairs?
2. There is nobody up stairs, but there is somebody down stairs.
3. How long have you been here?
4. I have been here these three hours.
5. Do you know if there were (*imperf.*) any letters for me (*mí*)?
6. There were none this morning.
7. Is there anybody at the door?
8. There is nobody.
9. There are some very pretty birds in the park.
10. Was there anything for you?
11. There was nothing for me (*mí*), all was for my brother.
12. Were there many people at the theater?
13. There were more than two thousand persons.
14. Are there many foreigners in that country?
15. Yes, there are many Germans, Spaniards, and Frenchmen.
16. Has your brother arrived?
17. He arrived (*llegó*) three days ago.
18. There are many persons (*muchos*) who think (*piensan*) that I am rich, but I am not.
19. What is the matter, my friend?
20. I don't know what the matter is.
21. If you are a good boy, there will be something for you too.
22. Is there anything to be done (*que hacer*)?
23. There is nothing to be done.
24. There will be a great ball at (*en*) the theater next week.
25. There is one every week.
26. What is the news to-day?
27. I don't know (of) anything.
28. There is a man at the door who wishes to see you.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** The verbs **haber** and **ser** become sometimes impersonal verbs, and are then only used in the third person singular, even when referring to a plural :

Hay un hombre á la puerta,

*There is a man at the door.*

Hay dos hombres abajo,

*There are two men down stairs.*

Habia alguno arriba,

*There was somebody up stairs.*

Habia mucha gente en el teatro,

*There were many people at the theater.*

**2.** **Haber** forms a great variety of idiomatical expressions, and can be translated by *there to be*, *ago*, *since*, *this*, or *these*, etc.

Hemos comprado esta casa *hay* (*or hace*) dos años,

*We bought this house two years ago.*

*Hay* (*or hace*) mucho tiempo que no he visto á su hermano,

*I have not seen your brother for (since) a long while.*

*Hay* cinco años que murió,

*He died five years ago.*

*¿Cuanto hay de aquí á la ciudad,*

*How far is it from here to the city?*

**OBSERVATION.** — The verb **hacer**, when referring to time, may be used instead of **haber**.

**REMARK.** — Observe the difference between the following sentences :

*¿Cuanto tiempo hay* (*or hace*) *que V. está en Nueva York ?*

*How long have you been in New York ?*

*¿Cuanto tiempo ha estado V. en Nueva York ?*

*How long were you in New York (formerly) ?*

In the first sentence, the residence in New York still continues ; while in the second, a residence at a former period is alluded to.

**3.** **Haber** governs the Infinitive with **que**, and not with a preposition.

Hoy hay mucho que hacer,

*There is much to do to-day.*

Mañana habrá mucho que hacer,

*There will be much to do to-morrow.*

**Lección XXVIII.****Lesson XXVIII.**

THE TIME OF THE DAY, ETC.

**Ejemplos.**

- ¿ Que hora es ?  
 Es la una.  
 Son las dos.  
 Son las tres.  
 Son las doce. }  
 Las doce son. }  
 Es la una y media.  
 Son las dos y cuarto.  
 Son las tres menos cuarto.  
 Son las doce del dia.  
 Es mediodia.  
 Son las doce de la noche.  
 Es medianoche.  
 Las cuatro *de* la mañana.  
 Las tres de la tarde.  
 Las siete de la noche.  
 ¿ A que hora ?  
 A la una.  
 A las dos menos cuarto.  
 A las dos menos veinte.  
 Son mas de las cinco.  
 Son menos de las seis.  
 Son las siete en punto.  
 Ya son las diez.  
 No son todavía las once.  
 No es mas que la una y media.  
 Van a dar las tres.  
 Son cerca de las cuatro.  
 Son las siete dadas.  
 Las once estan dando.  
 Han dado las tres.  
 Faltan algunos minutos.  
 Eran las tres.  
 Serán las cuatro.

**Examples.**

- What time is it ? What o'clock is it ?  
 It is one o'clock.  
 It is two o'clock.  
 It is three o'clock.  
 It is twelve o'clock.  
 It is half past one.  
 It is a quarter past two.  
 It is a quarter to three.  
 It is twelve o'clock in the day.  
 It is noon (mid-day).  
 It is twelve o'clock in the night.  
 It is midnight.  
 Four o'clock *in* the morning.  
 Three o'clock in the afternoon.  
 Seven o'clock in the evening.  
 At what o'clock ?  
 At one o'clock.  
 At a quarter to two.  
 At twenty minutes to two.  
 It is more than five o'clock.  
 It is less than six o'clock.  
 It is precisely seven o'clock.  
 It is already ten o'clock.  
 It is not yet eleven o'clock.  
 It is only half past one.  
 It is going to strike three o'clock.  
 It is nearly four o'clock.  
 It is past seven o'clock.  
 It is striking eleven o'clock.  
 It has struck three o'clock.  
 It wants a few minutes.  
 It was three o'clock.  
 It will be four o'clock.

**Divisions of Time.**

Un año,	<i>a year.</i>
Un mes,	<i>a month.</i>
Una semana,	<i>a week.</i>
Una hora,	<i>an hour.</i>
Una media hora,	<i>half an hour.</i>
Un cuarto de hora,	<i>a quarter of an hour.</i>
Tres cuartos de hora,	<i>three quarters of an hour.</i>
Una hora y media,	<i>an hour and a half.</i>
Un siglo,	<i>a century.</i>
Un minuto,	<i>a minute.</i>
Quince días,	<i>a fortnight.</i>
Un segundo,	<i>a second.</i>
Un rato <i>or</i> un momento,	<i>a moment.</i>
Un instante,	<i>an instant.</i>
Una hora y cuarto,	<i>an hour and a quarter.</i>
El año que viene (próximo),	<i>next year.</i>
El año pasado,	<i>last year.</i>
La semana que viene,	<i>next week.</i>
La semana pasada,	<i>last week.</i>

**Divisions of the Day.**

El dia,	<i>the day.</i>
El amanecer,	<i>the dawn, break of day.</i>
La mañana,	<i>the morning.</i>
El mediodia,	<i>mid-day.</i>
La tarde,	<i>the afternoon.</i>
La noche,	<i>the evening, the night.</i>
Un dia de trabajo,	<i>a work-day.</i>
La víspera,	<i>the eve.</i>
El salir del sol,	<i>sunrise.</i>
El ponerse del sol,	<i>sunset.</i>
El anochecer,	<i>nightfall.</i>
Medianocche,	<i>midnight.</i>
Un dia de fiesta,	<i>a holiday.</i>
Una jornada,	<i>a day's work.</i>

**Holidays.**

El dia de año nuevo,	<i>New Year's Day.</i>
El dia de reyes,	<i>Twelfth Day.</i>
El mártes de carnestolendas,	<i>Shrove Tuesday.</i>

El miércoles de ceniza,	<i>Ash-Wednesday.</i>
El domingo de ramos,	<i>Palm Sunday.</i>
Pascua de resurrección,	<i>Easter.</i>
Día de todos los santos,	<i>All Saints' Day.</i>
El día de San Miguel,	<i>Michaelmas.</i>
Navidad,	<i>Christmas.</i>
La nochebuena,	<i>Christmas eve.</i>
La cuaresma,	<i>Lent.</i>
La semana santa,	<i>Holy week.</i>
Viernes santo,	<i>Good Friday.</i>
Pentecostés,	<i>Whitsuntide.</i>
Las vacaciones or las fiestas,	<i>vacations, the holidays.</i>

**Vocabulario.**

El concierto, *the concert.*  
 El fin, *the end.*  
 Á menudo, *often.*  
 Antes de, *before.*  
 Cansado, *tired.*  
 Cerca, *near.*

Cerrado, *closed.*  
 ¡Come V.! *do you dine?*  
 Comemos, *we dine.*  
 Conmigo, *with me.*  
 Encontrará, *will find.*  
 Entre, *between.*

**Vocabulary.**

Jamas, *ever.*  
 Llega, *arrives.*  
 ¡Sale V.! *do you go out?*  
 Trabajar, 1. *to work.*  
 Volver, 2. *to return.*  
 Vuelva V., *return.*

**Exercise 55.**

1. ¡Que hora es ahora? 2. Es temprano todavía. 3. ¡Son ya las siete? 4. Todavía no, no son mas que las seis y media. 5. ¡Á qué hora estará V. en casa esta noche? 6. Estaré entre las siete y las ocho. 7. ¡Está lejos de aquí la casa de su tío? 8. Está cerquita. 9. ¡Cuanto tiempo hay que V. está aquí? 10. Á lo menos tres cuartos de hora. 11. ¡Á que hora sale V. de la escuela? 12. Á las doce en punto. 13. ¡Estarán V. V. aquí temprano? 14. Estarémos aquí á las siete. 15. ¡Puede V. volver en media hora? 16. No, señor, no puedo volver. 17. Eran las nueve cuando yo estaba en el almacén. 18. ¡Cuantas vacaciones tendrán V. V. al fin del año? 19. Tendrémos tres meses. 20. ¡Á qué hora llega la gente? 21. Todo el mundo estará aquí antes de las ocho. 22. Si V. no está aquí á medianoche, encontrará la puerta cerrada. 23. Estaré aquí á las once. 24. ¡Cuantas semanas hay todavía ántes de la semana santa? 25. Hay todavía tres semanas. 26. Vuelva V. á la una y media ó á las dos. 27. ¡Va V. á la iglesia todos los domingos? 28. Voy dos veces. 29. ¡Cuantas horas hay en un dia? 30. Hay veinte y cuatro.

## Exercise 56.

1. What time is it by (*por*) your watch ?
2. It is only ten o'clock by mine.
3. Were (*imperf.*) you here last year ?
4. No, I was in the country.
5. How many minutes are there in one hour ?
6. There are sixty.
7. Will you be here at seven o'clock ?
8. No, not at seven, but at half past seven.
9. When will you be ready ?
10. In half an hour.
11. At what time are you going to the concert ?
12. At half past eight : will you be there ?
13. I shall be there at a quarter past nine.
14. We have worked until three o'clock in the morning, and we are very tired.
15. Have you ever seen the rising of the sun ?
16. Very often when I was in the country.
17. What a beautiful sunset !
18. Is your father in town ?
19. He is still in the country.
20. We have no vacation on (*el*) New Year's day.
21. Why not ?
22. We never have any on that day.
23. Will you go out with me ?
24. At what time ?
25. At a quarter to four.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

1. To indicate the hour or the time, the Spaniards do not use the words *o'clock*. They use the article **la** before **una** (*one o'clock*) and **las** before the other hours :

La una,      *one o'clock*;      Las dos,      *two o'clock*; etc.

The word **hora**, *hour*, being understood, and being feminine, the adjective *half* is translated by **media**, feminine of **medio**.

2. After the full hour, instead of the equivalent of the word *past*, the Spaniards use the conjunction **y**, *and* :

Son las tres y cuarto,      *It is a quarter past three.*

The word **ménos**, *less*, is used on the other hand, when the hour is not yet completed :

La una ménos cuarto,      *A quarter to one.*

3. The preposition **on**, which in English is placed before days of the week, days of the month, and a few holidays, is rendered in Spanish by the Definite Article :

El dia de año nuevo,      *On New Year's day.*

El domingo,      *On Sunday.*

Los lunes,      *On Mondays.*

**Leccion XXIX.****Lesson XXIX.****USE OF THE ARTICLE.**

The Definite Article is used in Spanish :

**1. Before masculine and feminine *geographical names* :**

La Francia es mas grande que la Italia,

La Inglaterra tiene posesiones en India,

El Canada está al Norte de los Estados Unidos de America,

La Irlanda es una isla,

Los Alpes y los Pirineos son muy altos,

El Vesuvio es un volcan,

El Danubio es un rio grande,

*France is larger than Italy.*

*England has possessions in India.*

*Canada is north of the United States of America.*

*Ireland is an island.*

*The Alps and the Pyrenees are very high.*

*Vesuvius is a volcano.*

*The Danube is a large river.*

**2. Before names of *days* and *seasons* :**

El domingo es un dia de descanso,

*Sunday is a day of rest.*

El sábado es el último dia de la semana,

*Saturday is the last day of the week.*

El invierno es muy frio en este pais,

*Winter is very cold in this country.*

**3. Before *abstract nouns* :**

La juventud es imprudente,

*Youth is imprudent.*

La virtud es amable,

*Virtue is amiable.*

La esperanza sostiene al hombre,

*Hope sustains man.*

**4. Before names of *metals*, *colors*, *substances*, *elements*, *dignities*, *systems of doctrines*, *arts*, and *sciences* :**

El oro y el plomo son metales,

*Gold and lead are metals.*

El blanco y el negro son colores,

*White and black are colors.*

El fuego y el agua son elementos.

*Fire and water are elements.*

La geografía es la descripción de la tierra,

*Geography is the description of the earth.*

El azúcar es dulce,

*Sugar is sweet.*

La música y la dansa son hermanas,

*Music and dancing are sisters.*

El catolicismo y el protestantismo,

*Catholicism and Protestantism.*

5. Before *Adjectives*, or other parts of speech, used *substantively*:

Los ricos y los pobres,	<i>The rich and the poor.</i>
El comer y el beber,	<i>Eating and drinking.</i>
El sí y el no,	<i>Yes and no.</i>
El pro y el contra,	<i>Pro and con.</i>
El bien y el mal,	<i>Good and evil.</i>

6. Before *nouns* representing a whole species of *objects*, and before every noun taken in a general sense:

El hombre es mortal,	<i>Man is mortal.</i>
La vida es corta,	<i>Life is short.</i>
El tiempo es precioso,	<i>Time is precious.</i>
Los perros son fieles,	<i>Dogs are faithful.</i>
Los sombreros redondos son de moda,	<i>Round hats are in fashion.</i>
Las flores son el adorno de la naturaleza,	<i>Flowers are the ornament of nature.</i>

7. Before *titles* prefixed to names:

El emperador Don Pedro,	<i>Emperor Don Pedro.</i>
El rey Luis Catorce.	<i>King Louis the Fourteenth.</i>
El príncipe Poniatowski,	<i>Prince Poniatowski.</i>
El presidente Lincoln,	<i>President Lincoln.</i>
El general Washington,	<i>General Washington.</i>
El señor May,	<i>Mr. May.</i>

8. Before *proper names* preceded by adjectives:

El pequeño Juan,	<i>Little John.</i>
La vieja María,	<i>Old Mary.</i>

9. Before nouns specifying *quantity* or *measure*:

Tres pesos la libra,	<i>Three dollars a pound.</i>
Un peso la vara,	<i>One dollar a yard.</i>

10. Before the four *Cardinal Points*:

El Norte,	<i>North.</i>
El Sur, sud or mediodia,	<i>South.</i>
El Este or Oriente,	<i>East.</i>
El Oeste, Poniente or Occidente,	<i>West.</i>

**Countries.**

Europa,	<i>Europe.</i>	Alemania,	<i>Germany.</i>
Asia,	<i>Asia.</i>	Holanda,	<i>Holland.</i>
Africa,	<i>Africa.</i>	Prusia,	<i>Prussia.</i>
América,	<i>America.</i>	Bélgica,	<i>Belgium.</i>
Australia,	<i>Australia.</i>	Sajonia,	<i>Saxony.</i>
España,	<i>Spain.</i>	Ungría,	<i>Hungary.</i>
Francia,	<i>France.</i>	Austria,	<i>Austria.</i>
Inglaterra,	<i>England.</i>	Italia,	<i>Italy.</i>
Turquía,	<i>Turkey.</i>	Suecia,	<i>Sweden.</i>
Grecia,	<i>Greece.</i>	Suiza,	<i>Switzerland.</i>

**Cities.**

Madrid,	<i>Madrid.</i>	Lisboa,	<i>Lisbon.</i>
Paris,	<i>Paris.</i>	Estocolmo,	<i>Stockholm.</i>
Londres,	<i>London.</i>	Bruselas,	<i>Brussels.</i>

**National Names.**

Español,	<i>Spaniard.</i>	Ruso,	<i>Russian.</i>
Frances,	<i>Frenchman.</i>	Austriaco,	<i>Austrian.</i>
Inglés,	<i>Englishman.</i>	Suizo,	<i>Swiss.</i>
Holandes,	<i>Dutch.</i>	Turco,	<i>Turk.</i>
Aleman,	<i>German.</i>	Greco,	<i>Greek.</i>
Prusiano,	<i>Prussian.</i>	Sueco,	<i>Swede.</i>

**Vocabulario.**

El coronel, *the colonel.*  
 El dibujo, *the drawing.*  
 El hierro, *the iron.*  
 El invierno, *the winter.*  
 El tigre, *the tiger.*  
 La caridad, *the charity.*  
 La danza, *the dancing.*  
 La docena, *the dozen.*  
 La fé, *the faith.*  
 La música, *the music.*  
 La novela, *the novel.*  
 La ocasión, *the occasion.*  
 La paz, *the peace.*  
 La pintura, *the painting.*  
 La primavera, *the spring.*  
 La tierra, *the earth.*  
 La verdad, *the truth.*

La virtud, *the virtue.*  
 Admitido, *admitted.*  
 Aprender, 2. *to learn.*  
 Aprendido, *learned.*  
 Bajo, *under.*  
 Conocido, *known.*  
 Consultado, *consulted.*  
 Cuanto, *how much.*  
 Durado, *lasted.*  
 En casa, *at (the house of).*  
 Estudiado, *studied.*  
 Estudiamos, *we study.*  
 ¿Estudian V. V.? *do you study?*  
 Eterno, *eternal.*  
 Feliz, *happy.*  
 Interesante, *interesting.*

**Vocabulary.**

Ir, 3. *to go.*  
 ¿Le gusta á V.? *do you like?*  
 Me gusta, *I like, I am fond of.*  
 Leido, *read.*  
 Peligroso, *dangerous.*  
 ¿Piensa V.? *do you intend?*  
 Pobre, *poor.*  
 Próximo, *next.*  
 Servido, *served.*  
 Teologal, *theological.*  
 Trasparente, *transparent.*

**Exercise 57.**

1. ¿ Ha conocido V. al general Piedras ? 2. He conocido á su hijo, el doctor Piedras. 3. ¿ Cuantas veces ha visto V. al presidente Grant ?
4. ¿ Le he visto varias veces en Washington ? 5. Este soldado ha servido con el coronel Martin. 6. ¿ Qué ha aprendido V. en esta escuela ? 7. He aprendido la geografia y la historia. 8. El pobre Carlos ha muerto en Cuba. 9. La verdad es eterna. 10. La fortuna es inconstante. 11. Los inviernos son muy frios en este pais.
12. ¿ Quiere V. un pedazo de jamon ? 13. No, gracias, no me gusta el jamon. 14. ¿ Que color le gusta á V. ? 15. Me gusta el azul. 16. ¿ Ha escrito V. al Doctor Nelson ? 17. He escrito al profesor Ventura. 18. ¿ Es este jóven, hijo del abogado Arroyo ? 19. El Señor Arroyo no tiene hijo. 20. ¿ Qué estudian V. V. ? 21. Estudiamos el frances y el inglés. 22. ¿ Por cuanto ha vendido V. su vino ? 23. He vendido todo á cuatro pesos la docena. 24. Lóndres es la capital de Inglaterra. 25. Este muchacho tiene los ojos negros, y su hermana los tiene azules. 26. El comer demasiado es peligroso. 27. El emperador Napoleon Primero murió (*died*) á la edad de cincuenta y dos años. 28. Los ricos no son siempre mas felices que los pobres. 29. ¿ Ha leido V. muchas novelas en inglés ? 30. Si, señor, las novelas inglesas son muy interesantes.

**Exercise 58.**

1. Glass is transparent. 2. Faith, hope, and charity are the three theological virtues. 3. Peace has never lasted long on the earth.
4. We were (*imperf.*) yesterday at Captain Martin's. 5. Were your brothers there ? 6. Yes, they were there too. 7. Under what generals have you served ? 8. I served (*serví*) under Generals Grant and Sherman. 9. When do you intend to go to Italy ? 10. This winter or next spring. 11. Iron is more useful than gold. 12. Poor little Charles is sick. 13. Will you have some beef ? 14. No, I don't like beef. 15. Have you seen any tigers in that country ? 16. No, never, there are none. 17. Have you studied history ? 18. I have studied history and geography. 19. Where is your sister now ? 20. She is in France. 21. Have you ever been in Europe ? 22. Yes, I have been in the South of Europe. 23. We have consulted Doctor Hener on (*en*) this occasion. 24. Dogs are not admitted in the park. 25. Will you have some apples, my little friend ? 26. Yes, sir ; have you any ?

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** The Definite Article may also be used before a whole sentence, when the latter serves as the subject of another sentence :

Mucho me alegra el que venga V., *I am very glad that you come.*

**2.** When several nouns follow each other, the Article is placed before every one of them, to give more expression to each one, and when they are of different genders :

Cuando la justicia, la fidelidad, el honor, la compasion, la vergüenza, y todos los sentimientos que pueden mover un corazon generoso, etc. JOVELLANOS.

*When justice, fidelity, honor, compassion, modesty, and all feelings which can move a generous heart, etc.*

**3.** It may occur that the article is separated from its noun by several other words, as in these sentences :

La nunca bastante ponderada virtud, *The never sufficiently praised virtue.*  
El sobrado paseo, etc. *Excessive walking, etc.*

**4.** The Definite Article may either be placed before the names of countries, or the latter may be used without the article. The Article must not be omitted, however, if, when speaking of a country, we designate its government or people :

La Inglaterra ha mandado tropas á India. *England has sent troops to India.*

OBSERVATION. — Countries out of Europe, and in fact remote countries, preserve the Definite Article even when accompanied by prepositions.

**5.** The Definite Article is placed before *titles* or other designations preceding proper names :

El Exmo (excelentísimo) señor duque de... *His Excellency the duke of...*

If the word **su** precedes the honorific designation, the Article is placed before the title :

Su Excelencia, el duque de... *His Excellency the duke of...*

**6.** The Definite Article is likewise placed before the names of a few Italian poets and painters :

El Taso, *Tasso.* El Ariosto, *Ariosto.* El Corregio, *Correggio.*

7. In describing the characteristic features of persons or things, the Definite Article is also used :

Carlos tiene los ojos negros,	<i>Charles has black eyes.</i>
Luis tiene la nariz grande,	<i>Lewis has a large nose.</i>

8. A few cities also take the Definite Article :

La Habana, <i>Havana.</i>	La Coruña, <i>Corunna.</i>	El Ferol, <i>Ferol.</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------

### *Exceptions.*

The Definite Article (and in some cases, the Indefinite Article) is omitted.

1. When the name of the country figures as the place of origin, or is preceded by a preposition :

He recibido una carta de Francia,	<i>I have received a letter from France.</i>
Mi hermano está en Alemania,	<i>My brother is in Germany.</i>
La reina de Inglaterra es viuda,	<i>The queen of England is a widow.</i>
Este vino es de España,	<i>This wine is from Spain.</i>

2. Before *names of countries* the capital of which has the same name as the country itself :

Nápoles, <i>Naples.</i>	Méjico, <i>Mexico.</i>
-------------------------	------------------------

3. Before a few locutions, as :

Voy á casa — á misa — á palacio, etc.	<i>I am going home — to mass — to the palace, etc.</i>
Voy á casa de mi amigo,	<i>I am going to my friend's house.</i>

4. With a substantive in apposition with a preceding substantive :

Juan, hermano de Enrique,	<i>John, the brother of Henry.</i>
Paris, capital de Francia,	<i>Paris, the capital of France.</i>
Alejandro, emperador de Rusia,	<i>Alexander, the emperor of Russia.</i>
Hablamos de Pedro, hombre de gran talento,	<i>We speak of Peter, a man of great talent.</i>

5. Before *titles of books, headings of chapters, etc :*

Vida de Cervantes,	<i>The Life of Cervantes.</i>
Historia de Roma,	<i>A History of Rome.</i>
Capítulo tercero,	<i>Third Chapter.</i>

**Lección XXX.****Lesson XXX.**

PERSONAL PRONOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS, AND WITH VERBS.

**With Prepositions.**

<b>Mi,</b>	<i>me.</i>	<b>Nosotros,</b> m., <b>nosotras,</b> f., <i>us.</i>
<b>Ti,</b>	<i>thee.</i>	<b>Vosotros,</b> m., <b>vosotras,</b> f., <b>V.</b> sing., <b>V. V.</b> pl., <i>you.</i>
<b>Él,</b>	<i>him.</i>	<b>Ellos;</b> m. } <i>them.</i>
<b>Ella,</b>	<i>her.</i>	<b>Ellas,</b> f. }
<b>Ello,</b>	<i>it.</i>	
<b>Si,</b>	<i>one's self, himself, herself, themselves, itself.</i>	

**With Verbs.**

<b>Me,</b> <i>me, to me.</i>	<b>Nos,</b> <i>us, to us.</i>
<b>Te,</b> <i>thee, to thee.</i>	<b>Os, á V., á V. V.,</b> <i>you, to you.</i>
<b>Le,</b> <i>him, her, to him, to her.</i>	<b>Les,</b> <i>them, to them.</i>
<b>Lo, la, le,</b> <i>it, him, her.</i>	<b>Los, las,</b> <i>them.</i>
<b>Se,</b> <i>one's self, himself, herself, themselves, itself, each other.</i>	

**Ejemplos.**

Esta carta es para mí.  
 Yo hablo de él y de ella.  
 Juan va con nosotros.  
 Tengo algo para ellos.  
 Yo hablo de ello.  
 Cada uno para sí.  
 Pienso en él.

Él me ama y yo le amo.  
 Yo la veo, pero ella no me ve.  
 ¿ Que le da V.? — Nada.

¿ Que les da V. ?  
 Yo les doy dinero.  
 Yo no quiero verle.  
 Él quiere vernos. }  
 Él nos quiere ver. }  
 Viendolos allí, les hablé.  
 ¿ Quiere V. comprarlo ?

**Examples.**

This letter is for me.  
 I speak of him and of her.  
 John goes with us.  
 I have something for them.  
 I speak of it.  
 Every one for himself.  
 I think of him.

He loves me and I love him.  
 I see her, but she does not see me.

What do you give him (*or her*)? —  
 Nothing.

What do you give them ?  
 I give them money.  
 I do not wish to see him.  
 He wishes to see us.  
 Seeing them there, I spoke to them.  
 Will you buy it ?

Yo no quiero comprarlo.  
Démelo.  
Los ha visto V. ?  
No los he visto.  
Él no me ha hablado.  
Ellos no pueden verse.  
Yo le veo á V.

I will not buy it.  
Give it to me.  
Have you seen them ?  
I have not seen them.  
He has not spoken to me.  
They cannot see each other.  
I see you.

Conmigo,      *with me.*  
Contigo,      *with thee.*  
Consigo,      *with one's self (himself, herself, itself, or themselves).*

**Vocabulario.**

<b>El sombrerero,</b> <i>the hatter.</i>	Dice, <i>says.</i>
<b>El tio,</b> <i>the uncle.</i>	Dicho, <i>said.</i>
<b>Los vestidos,</b> <i>the clothes.</i>	Doy, <i>I give.</i>
<b>Aquí tiene V.,</b> <i>here is.</i>	Enviado, <i>sent.</i>
<b>Comido,</b> <i>eaten.</i>	Enviar, 1. <i>to send.</i>
<b>Cortar,</b> 1. <i>to cut.</i>	¿Habla V.? sing. } <i>do you</i>
<b>Dado,</b> <i>given.</i>	¿Hablan V.V.? pl. } <i>speak?</i>
<b>Debo,</b> <i>I owe.</i>	Hallado, <i>found.</i>

**Vocabulary.**

Irse, 3. <i>to go away.</i>
¿Necesita V.? <i>do you need?</i>
Pide, <i>asks for.</i>
Prestar, 1. <i>to lend.</i>
Salir, 3. <i>to go out.</i>
Sin, <i>without.</i>
Sin embargo, <i>however.</i>
Visto, <i>seen.</i>

**Exercise 59.**

1. ¿ Quién tiene dinero para mí ? 2. Tengo dinero para V., pero no para su hermano. 3. ¿ Para quien es eso ? 4. Para V., si V. quiere.
5. ¿ Va V. al parque con los muchachos (*children*) ? 6. Voy, pero sin ellos. 7. ¿ Va V. al teatro con su hermana ? 8. Voy con ella. 9. ¿ Es el libro para mí ó para mi hermano ? 10. No es ni para V. ni para él. 11. ¿ De quien habla V. ? 12. De él y de ella. 13. ¿ Con quien hablan V. V. ? 14. Con ellas. 15. ¿ Quién era rey de Francia en 1700 ? 16. Era (*it was*) Luis Catorce, hijo de Luis Trece. 17. ¿ Que le da V. á este hombre ? 18. Le doy algo bueno. 19. ¿ Conoce V. á esta señora ? 20. La conozco muy bien. 21. ¿ Los ve V. ? 22. Los veo, pero no les hablo. 23. ¿ Me ha visto V. ? 24. No he visto á V., pero he visto á su padre. 25. ¿ Cuando ha escrito V. á su tio ? 26. Le he escrito esta mañana. 27. ¿ Quién le da á V. dinero ? 28. Carlos nos da un peso. 29. ¿ Ha hallado V. sus libros ? 30. Los he hallado en el cuarto de Pedro. 31. ¿ Que quiere V. enviar á su amigo ? 32. Quiero enviarle el dinero que me pide. 33. ¿ Ha dicho V. algo á este hombre ? 34. Le he dicho de (*to*) irse.

**Exercise 60.**

1. What does that man tell you ? 2. He tells me that he wishes to speak to you. 3. Has the tailor sent me my clothes ? 4. He has not sent them yet. 5. Have you seen Mrs. Norris ? 6. I saw (have seen) her this morning. 7. Can you lend me twenty dollars ? 8. I lent (have lent) you ten dollars yesterday ; why do you want twenty dollars now ? 9. I owe money to my hatter, and I wish to pay him. 10. I have no money to-day. 11. Will you cut me some bread ? 12. Yes, if you will lend me your knife. 13. To whom have you written ? 14. I have written to him and to her. 15. Give me something for this poor man. 16. I have given him something already. 17. I have never seen my uncle ; I have written several times to him, however. 18. To whom will you give this beautiful book ? 19. To him. 20. Have you nothing for her ? 21. Yes, I have something for her too. 22. How do you know that ? 23. I know it, because he has said so. 24. Have you eaten all the apples ? 25. Charles has eaten them. 26. Do you know that gentleman ? 27. I don't know him very well. 28. Do you speak German ? 29. I speak it a little, but my brother speaks it better than I. 30. Will you go out with me ? 31. I cannot go out now, I have something to (*que*) do. 32. Where has your brother bought his handkerchiefs ? 33. He has bought them in Paris. 34. Have you learned your lesson ? 35. I have learned it, but I don't know it very well.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The Personal Pronouns, as has been shown, have a double form in the dative and accusative.

They are called by Spanish grammarians **pronombres indirectos**, and **pronombres inclíticos**. The latter are used without prepositions, as :

Me ama,      *he loves me,*      La veo,      *I see her,*

while the former are also accompanied by prepositions :

A mí,      *to me.*      Para tí,      *for thee.*

**2.** The direct form is used in connection with the verb, that is, when the verb governs its object without a preposition :

Le amo,      *I love him.*

The indirect form is used when the pronoun serves as the complement of the verb :

Pienso en él,	<i>I think of him.</i>
La carta es para mí,	<i>The letter is for me.</i>

Or when the pronoun stands alone :

<i>i</i> Á quien lo ha dicho V. ?	<i>To whom have you said it?</i>
Á él, á ella,	<i>To him, to her.</i>

**3.** The pronouns **me, nos; te, os; le, les, la, las, lo, los**, when connected with an Infinitive, the Imperative affirmative, the Gerund, and the **participio absoluto** (that is, a Participle without auxiliary), are placed after the verb, and in such a way that the verb and pronoun form but one word :

Vino ayer á verme — á socorrerte —	<i>He came yesterday to see me — to help thee — to bathe himself — to scold us — to punish you — to speak to them, etc.</i>
á bañarse — á reñirnos — á castigaros — á hablarles, etc.,	

**4.** In sentences containing the Infinitive, the **pronombres inclíticos** may either be placed before the first verb or after the Infinitive :

El me quiere ver <i>or</i> quiere verme,	<i>He wishes to see me.</i>
--	-----------------------------

If the sentence commences with the verb, the pronoun may also be joined to this verb :

Queríame ver,	<i>He wished to see me.</i>
---------------	-----------------------------

We would not say, however, *queríame pasear*, but **quería pasearme**, *I wished to take a walk*; because the subject is the same for both verbs.

**5.** The same pronouns ought, according to the rule, to precede the verb in all other cases, and the Spaniards generally say :

Le hablo,	<i>I speak to him.</i>
La he visto,	<i>I have seen her.</i>
Le estimo,	<i>I esteem him.</i>

It is, however, correct to place the pronouns after the verb when the sentence, or one of the sentences, commences with the verb :

Sucedióme una cosa inesperada,

*An unexpected thing happened to me.*

La agricultura siguió la triste suerte de las ciencias ; **hizose** ignorante, oscurecióse y perdió toda su gloria.  
— RÓJAS.

*Agriculture followed the sad fate of the sciences ; it became ignorant, it grew obscure and lost all its glory.*

OBSERVATION. — The **pronombres inclíticos** ought not, however, to be placed after the verbs, when the latter are in the future tense, this construction being against the euphony of the language. We should not say, therefore, *daréle, cogeráme*, but : **le daré, I will give him ; me cogerá, he will catch me.**

**6.** The **pronombres inclíticos** are placed before the auxiliary in compound tenses :

Le he visto, *I have seen him.*

Lo hemos comprado, *We have bought it.*

OBSERVATION. — Even in the last case, the pronoun may be placed after the auxiliary : **hete visto ayer**, for **te he visto ayer**, *I have seen you (thee) yesterday.*

**7.** The pronoun **le** generally accompanies the pronoun in the third person, and consequently **V.** and **V. V.** (See p. 35.)

Yo le doy á V. (*rather than Yo doy á V.*), *I give you.*

Yo le doy á su hermano, *I give (to) your brother.*

**8.** When the pronoun **nos** is joined with the first person plural of a verb, the latter drops the **s** : **Unímonos**, *we unite*, instead of *unimosnos*.

OBSERVATION. — Practice alone and the reading of classical authors will enable the student in this case, as in many others in Spanish, to determine whether he must strictly adhere to the rule, or if the genius of the language will allow of a deviation from the same.

**9.** The Indirect *pronouns* may be added to the **pronombres inclíticos** to give more expression to the sentence :

Á mi me vió, *he saw me.*

It is more especially the case :

- When the verb governs more than one object :

Le amo á él, á su hermano, y á su *I love him, his brother, and his sister.*  
hermana,

- When the Dative or Accusative are emphasized by the word *self* or *selves* :

Te ví á tí mismo, *I saw thee.*

- When the object precedes the verb :

Los mas bellos edificios, los he visto *I have seen the finest buildings in  
en Italia.*

A los Franceses les han costado *The wars of the French have cost  
mucho sangre sus guerras,* *them much blood.*

- When *mi*, *ti*, *si*, are governed by the preposition *con*, *with*, they form **conmigo**, *with me*; **contigo**, *with thee*; **consigo**, *with himself, herself, itself, them*; and admit no change for either gender or number.

- The preposition must be repeated before every pronoun :

Este dinero es para tí, para él y para *This money is for you (thee), for  
ella,* *him and for her.*

- The Genitive case takes the place of the nominative in exclamations :

¡ Desdichado de mí ! *I unfortunate creature !*

## Leccion XXXI.

### THE RESPECTIVE PLACES OF PRONOUNS.

**Me lo** (*le or la*), *it to me.*

**Te lo**, *it to thee.*

**Se lo**, *it to him or her.*

**Nos lo**, *it to us.*

**Os lo**, } *it to you.*

**Se lo** (*á V.*), } *it to*

**Se lo** (*á ellos or ellas*), *it to  
them.*

## Lesson XXXI.

### THE RESPECTIVE PLACES OF PRONOUNS.

**Me los** (*las*), *them to me.*

**Te los**, *them to thee.*

**Se los**, *them to him or her.*

**Nos los**, *them to us.*

**Os los**, } *them to you.*

**Se los** (*á V.*), } *them to you.*

**Se los** (*á ellos or ellas*), *them  
to them.*

**Ejemplos.**

Él me lo da.  
 Ella nos lo ha dicho.  
 ¿ Quién se lo da á V. ?  
 Ellos me lo dan,  
 ¿ Quiere V. darmelos ? }  
 ¿ Me los quiere V. dar ? }  
 Quiero prestarselos á V. }  
 Se los quiero prestar á V. }  
 Yo se los doy á V.  
 Yo se lo doy á ellos.

**Examples.**

He gives it to me.  
 She has said it to us.  
 Who gives it to you ?  
 They give it to me.  
 Will you give them to me ?  
 I will lend them to you.  
 I give them to you.  
 I give it to them.

**Imperative affirmative.**

Démelos V.  
 Déselo V.  
 Préstemelos V.  
 Présteselo V.  
 Cómanselos V. V.

Give them to me.  
 Give it to him.  
 Lend them to me.  
 Lend it to him.  
 Eat them.

**Imperative negative.**

No me lo dé V.  
 No nos lo dé V.  
 No me los mande V.  
 No se los mande V.

Do not give it to me.  
 Do not give it to us.  
 Do not send them to me.  
 Do not send them to him.

**Vocabulario.**

**El correo,** *the mail.*  
**El cortaplumas,** *the pen-knife.*  
**El crimen,** *the crime.*  
**El jardinero,** *the gardener.*  
**La muñeca,** *the doll.*  
**¿ Ama V. ?** *do you love ?*  
**Amo,** *I love.*  
**Desea,** *wishes.*  
**Dé V.,** *give.*

**Devolver,** 2. *to return.*  
**Dice,** *says, tells.*  
**Diga V.,** *say, tell.*  
**Doy,** *I give.*  
**Guillermo,** *William.*  
**Hablado,** *spoken.*  
**Hay,** *there is.*  
**Llegado,** *arrived.*  
**Mandar,** 1. *to send.*  
**Mande V.,** *send.*  
**Matar,** 1. *to kill.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Mismo,** *same.*  
**Necesita,** *needs.*  
**Perdido,** *lost.*  
**Quieren,** *wish.*  
**Recibido,** *received.*  
**Robar,** 1. *to steal, to rob.*  
**Traido,** *brought.*  
**Traiga V.,** *bring.*  
**Ve,** *sees.*  
**Vende,** *sells.*

**Exercise 61.**

1. ¿ Quiere V. enviar esta carta á su hermano ? 2. Yo quiero enviar-sela. 3. ¿ Cuando puede V. enviarsela ? 4. Se la puedo enviar mañana

por la mañana. 5. ¿Cuando puede V. escribir á su tio? 6. Puedo escribirle ahora, si V. lo quiere. 7. A quién quiere V. dar este libro? 8. Quiero darselo á mi hermanita. 9. ¿Quién le ha dado esto á V.? 10. Guillermo me lo ha dado. 11. ¿Como sabe V. que Juan está aquí? 12. Mi hermano me lo ha dicho. 13. Si V. tiene mi libro, démelo. 14. Yo se lo he dado á su hermano. 15. Los muchachos quieren sus libros, déselos V. 16. Se los he dado ya. 17. Hay un libro en mi cuarto, traígamelos V. 18. ¿Este jóven necesita un cortaplumas; tiene V. uno? 19. El mio está sobre la mesa; V. puede prestarselo. 20. Este dinero es para tí, para él y para ella. 21. Robar á un hombre y matarle son dos crímenes. 22. A quien ama V.? 23. Le amo á él, á su hermano y á su hermana. 24. ¿Puede V. decirme quién es el que ha hecho esto? 25. No puedo decírselo á V.; porque yo mismo no lo sé. 26. No le dé V. nada á ese hombre, ya ha estado aquí esta mañana. 27. No es el mismo. 28. Si V. tiene cartas para mí, mándemelas V. á mi casa. 29. No puedo mandárselas, porque no tengo nadie con quien mandarlas. 30. La señora Castro quiere saber si V. puede darle su dinero hoy. 31. No puedo darselo hoy, porque todavía no lo he recibido. 32. Hay aquí un hombre que desea verle á V. 33. No tengo tiempo ahora, tengo que escribirle á mi hermana. 34. ¿Sabe V. si ha llegado el correo? 35. Ha llegado esta mañana.

### Exercise 62.

1. Who can give me money for that?
2. Your brother can give you some, I have none.
3. Who gave (has given) that doll to Mary?
4. Her mother has given it to her.
5. Can you lend me some money?
6. I can lend you five dollars; when can you return them to me?
7. I don't know yet when I shall be able (*podré*) to return them.
8. If you cannot tell me, I cannot lend you anything.
9. What will you send to your brother?
10. I will send him two letters which I have received for him.
11. Bring me the book which is on the little table.
12. What has that man said to you?
13. He has not said anything to me; he has spoken to my cousin, *masc.*
14. Have you told (to) your friend that his father was (*imperf.*) here?
15. I have not seen him yet.
16. Can the gardener send us some flowers?
17. He can send you some roses if you wish (it).
18. If you see your sister tell her that I have received some French books.
19. She knows it already.
20. You do not need your knife now, lend it to me.

21. I don't wish to lend it to you. 22. Can I see Mr. Bravo? 23. You cannot see him now. 24. Does our baker sell you any bread? 25. He does not sell us any. 26. Do you know if the tailor has sent my coat? 27. He has not sent it yet. 28. What have you brought us to-day? 29. I have not brought anything for you, but I have something for the children. 30. Why don't you tell (to) your uncle that you have lost your money? 31. I am afraid to tell it to him. 32. My friend has given me this pencil, and I give it to you.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** When a verb governs two personal pronouns, the Dative must precede the Accusative whenever the latter is a pronoun of the third person :

Él me lo da, *he gives it to me.*      Dámelo, *give it to me.*

**2.** If the **pronombres inclíticos** are in the first and second person, the Accusative must precede the Dative :

Rendeteme, *Surrender to me.*

**3.** The pronoun **se** precedes all the other pronouns, whether these are placed before or after the verb :

Se me escapó,	<i>He escaped from me.</i>
Desélo V.,	<i>Give it to him.</i>

**4.** When both pronouns are in the *Third Person*, the pronoun in the Dative case, whether singular or plural, is changed into **se**, and we say therefore :

Se lo, *it to him or her.*      Se los, *it to them.*

To all these pronouns we may add the indirect pronouns to give more expression or precision to the sentence :

Se lo diré á el — á ella — á ellos — á ellas,	<i>I will tell it to him — to her — to them, masc. — to them, fem.</i>
--	--

## Lección XXXII.

## Lesson XXXII.

## REGULAR VERBS.

## Present Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

1st Conjugation.	2d Conjugation.	3d Conjugation.
Habl-ar, <i>to speak.</i>	Com-er, <i>to eat.</i>	Recib-ir, <i>to receive.</i>
Habl-ando, <i>speaking.</i>	Com-iendo, <i>eating.</i>	Recib-iendo, <i>receiving.</i>
Habl-ado, <i>spoken.</i>	Com-ido, <i>eaten.</i>	Recib-ido, <i>received.</i>

## Terminations of the Present Indicative.

Habl-o,	<i>I speak.</i>	Com-o,	<i>I eat.</i>	Recib-o,	<i>I receive.</i>
Habl-as,	<i>thou speakest.</i>	Com-es,	<i>thou eatest.</i>	Recib-es,	<i>thou receivest.</i>
Habl-a,	<i>he speaks.</i>	Com-e,	<i>he eats.</i>	Recib-e,	<i>he receives.</i>
Habl-amos,	<i>we speak.</i>	Com-emos,	<i>we eat.</i>	Recib-imos,	<i>we receive.</i>
Habl-ais,	<i>you speak.</i>	Com-eis,	<i>you eat.</i>	Recib-is,	<i>you receive.</i>
Habl-an,	<i>they speak.</i>	Com-en,	<i>they eat.</i>	Recib-en,	<i>they receive.</i>

## Vocabulario.

El agua, f. *the water.*  
 El almacén, *the store.*  
 El baile, *the ball.*  
 El gusto, *the pleasure.*  
 El paño, *the cloth.*  
 Las tijeras, *the scissors.*  
 Griego, *Greek.*  
 Latin, *Latin.*  
 Pues, *as.*

Aprender, 2.<sup>1</sup> *to learn.*  
 Bailar, 1. *to dance.*  
 Cantar, 1. *to sing.*  
 Comprender, 2. *to understand.*  
 Deber, 2. *to owe.*  
 Estudiar, 1. *to study.*  
 Gastar, 1. *to spend.*

## Vocabulary.

Mandar, 1. *to send.*  
 Pagar, 1. *to pay.*  
 Recibir, 3. *to receive.*  
 Residir, 3. *to reside.*  
 Tocar, 1. *to play on.*  
 Vender, 2. *to sell.*  
 Viajar, 1. *to travel.*  
 Vivir, 3. *to live.*

## Exercise 63.

1. ¿ Quién ha tomado mi libro ? 2. Yo no sé quien lo ha tomado.  
 3. A qué hora comen V. V. ? 4. Comemos á las seis y media los

<sup>1</sup> The number put after each Spanish verb given in this vocabulary, or in the following vocabularies, indicates the conjugation to which that verb belongs.

días de la semana ; pero los domingos, comemos á las dos. 5. ¿ Dónde está su hermano ahora ? 6. Está viajando en Europa. 7. Necesito zapatos ; donde compra V. los suyos ? 8. Compro mis zapatos en Broadway. 9. ¿ Quién vive en aquella casa ? 10. El señor Robinson vive allí con su familia. 11. ¿ Toca V. el piano ? 12. No toco ningun instrumento, pero canto un poco. 13. ¿ Cantan tambien sus hermanas ? 14. Ellas cantan muy bien. 15. ¿ Con qué cortan V. V. este paño ? 16. Lo cortamos con las tijeras grandes. 17. ¿ Cuando recibé V. su dinero ? 18. Lo recibo todos los meses, y así pago lo que debo. 19. ¿ Quiere V. beber algo ? 20. No, gracias, he bebido ya. 21. ¿ Cuan-do llega su padre ? 22. No sé, él no ha escrito. 23. ¿ Va V. al baile esta noche ? 24. No, señor, yo nunca bailo. 25. ¿ Quiere V. comprar libros franceses, nuestro amigo ha recibido muchísimos. 26. No puedo comprar ninguno ahora, he gastado todo mi dinero el mes pasado. 27. ¿ Habla V. frances ? 28. Hablo un poco ; pero mi hermano lo habla muy bien, pues ha residido mucho tiempo en Paris. 29. ¿ Y donde vive ahora ? 30. Él está en Alemania, donde está estudiando el aleman. 31. ¿ En donde ha aprendido V. el italiano ? 32. Yo no hablo italiano, lo comprendo un poco. 33. ¿ Quiere V. venderme su caballo negro ? 34. Ya lo he vendido, pero todavía no he recibido el dinero.

#### Exercise 44.

1. Who lives now in your old house ? 2. Nobody lives there now.
3. Does your brother speak Spanish ? 4. We all speak (speak all) Spanish in the family.
5. What do you study in your school ? 6. I study Latin and Greek.
7. Do you know if your friend has received any money ? 8. Yes, he receives his money every Monday.
9. At what time does your father dine ? 10. He dines at six o'clock.
11. Have you bought anything for us ? 12. Yes, I have bought apples and pears for you.
13. What are you eating ? 14. I am eating bread and cheese.
15. And what are you drinking ? 16. I am drinking water, I never drink wine or beer.
17. Does your sister sing ? 18. She sings and dances very well.
19. Will you cut me a piece of bread ? 20. With much pleasure ; give me your knife.
21. Here it is, but I don't know if it cuts well.
22. Have you spent all your money ? 23. Not yet, I have spent only five dollars.
24. Will you buy a handsome little dog ? 25. I don't spend my money in dogs.
26. Do you learn French ? 27. We learn French and Italian.
28. Do

you speak Italian well ? 29. We don't speak it, but we understand it. 30. What do they sell in that store ? 31. They sell sugar, coffee and tea. 32. Do you receive your wine from France ? 33. We receive some from France and some from Germany.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The Present of the Indicative expresses in Spanish, as well as in the other languages, whatever exists, happens or is done : **Yo soy**, *I am*; **tu escribes**, *thou writest*; **llueve**, *it rains*; etc.

**2.** The Present of the Indicative is also very frequently used *instead of the Future Tense* to express a proximate futurity :

Mi amigo viene al instante,      *My friend will come in a moment.*  
Partimos mañana.                  *We will leave to-morrow.*

**3.** The same tense is sometimes used instead of the *Past Tense*, especially in a narrative, to give it more animation, and to place it vividly, as it were, before the reader :

Oye el general que el enemigo ha echado el puente, y al punto da la señal de la pelea, se arma, sube á caballo y sale al frente de sus tropas á encontrar los Franceses.  
QUINTANA.

*The general heard (hears) that the enemy had (has) built the bridge, and he immediately gave (gives) orders for the battle, armed (arms) himself, mounted (mounts) his horse, and sallied (sallies) forth to meet the French.*

**4.** The radical part or the root of the verb is obtained by dropping the two last letters which form the terminations proper to the conjugation to which the verb belongs, namely : **ar**, for the first conjugation ; **er**, for the second conjugation ; and, **ir** for the third conjugation.

To the stem are added to form the *Present of the Indicative* of the Regular Verbs, and of many Irregular Verbs, the following terminations :

For the 1st Conjugation :	<b>o</b> ,	<b>as</b> ,	<b>a</b> ,	<b>amos</b> ,	<b>ais</b> ,	<b>an</b> .
For the 2d Conjugation :	<b>o</b> ,	<b>es</b> ,	<b>e</b> ,	<b>emos</b> ,	<b>eis</b> ,	<b>en</b>
For the 3d Conjugation :	<b>o</b> ,	<b>es</b> ,	<b>e</b> ,	<b>imos</b> ,	<b>is</b> ,	<b>en</b> .

## **5. Observation on the Present of the Indicative of certain Regular Verbs.**

a. In those verbs ending in the Present Infinitive in **cer** and **cir**, the **c** is replaced by a **z** before **o** and **a** to preserve the soft sound:

**Vencer,** *to conquer.*      **Venzo,** *I conquer; instead of vengo.*

**Resarcir**, *to compensate.*      **Resarza**, *he compensates;* instead of *resarca*.

**b.** Verbs ending in the Present Infinitive in **ger**, change *g* into *j* before **o** and **a** for the same reason as above:

**Coger,** *to take.*      **Cojo,** *I take ; instead of cogo.*

c. Verbs ending in the Present Infinitive in **quir**, change **qu** into **c** before **o** and **a**:

**Delinquir**, *to offend.*      **Delinco**, *I offend;* instead of *delinquo.*

**d.** Finally, those verbs ending in the Present Infinitive in **uir** change the **i** into **y** before **a, e, o**:

**Atribuir**, *to attribute.*      **Atribuyo**, *I attribute ; instead of atribuio.*

**Atribuye**, he attributes : instead of *atribuie*.

**Constituir.** *to constitute.*      **Constituyo,** *I constitute*: instead of *constituo*.

**Destruir.** *to destroy.*      **Destruyo.** *I destroy : instead of destruyo.*

**Distribuir.** *To distribute.* **Distribuyo.** *I distribute; instead of distributing.*

Huir *to flee*: instead of *huic*.

*Tran, to file. Mayo, I file, instead of have.  
etc etc*

etc. etc.

## Leccion XXXIII.

## Lesson XXXIII.

## IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE 1st CONJUGATION

## **Present Tense of the Indicative Mood.**

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>1. Calentar</b> , <i>to warm.</i> | <b>2. Empezar</b> , <i>to begin.</i> |
| Caliento, <i>I warm.</i>             | Empiezo, <i>I begin.</i>             |
| Calientas, <i>thou warmest.</i>      | Empiezas, <i>thou beginnest.</i>     |
| Calienta, <i>he warms.</i>           | Empieza, <i>he begins.</i>           |
| Calentamos, <i>we warm.</i>          | Empezamos, <i>we begin.</i>          |
| Calentais, <i>you warm.</i>          | Empezais, <i>you begin.</i>          |
| Calientan, <i>they warm.</i>         | Empiezan, <i>they begin.</i>         |

*Principal Irregular Verbs of the 1st conjugation which take an i before the e, and are conjugated like calentar and empezar.*

Apretar, *to squeeze.*  
 Arrendar, *to hire.*  
 Asentar, *to place.*  
 Atravesar, *to cross.*  
 Cegar, *to blind.*  
 Cerrar, *to shut.*  
 Comenzar, *to commence.*  
 Concertar, *to agree.*  
 Confesar, *to confess.*  
 Despertar, *to awake.*  
 Desterrar, *to banish.*  
 Empedrar, *to pave.*  
 Encerrar, *to look up.*  
 Encomendar, *to recommend.*  
 Enmendar, *to correct.*  
 Enterrar, *to bury.*  
 Escarmentar, *to take warning.*

**3. Almorzar, to breakfast.**

Almuerzo, *I breakfast.*  
 Almuerzas, *thou breakfastest.*  
 Almuerza, *he breakfasts.*  
 Almorzamos, *we breakfast.*  
 Almorzais, *you breakfast.*  
 Almuerzan, *they breakfast.*

*Principal Irregular Verbs of the 1st conjugation which change the o into ue, and are conjugated like almorzar and contar.*

Acordar, *to remind.*  
 Amolar, *to grind.*  
 Apostar, *to bet.*  
 Aprobar, *to approve.*  
 Avergonzar, *to shame.*  
 Consolar, *to console.*  
 Desollar, *to skin.*  
 Encontrar, *to meet.*  
 Forzar, *to force.*  
 Hollar, *to tread.*  
 Mostrar, *to show.*  
 Poblar, *to people.*

Fregar, *to rub.*  
 Gobernar, *to govern.*  
 Helar, *to freeze.*  
 Herrar, *to shoe.*  
 Mentar, *to mention.*  
 Negar, *to deny.*  
 Nevar, *to snow.*  
 Pensar, *to think.*  
 Quebrar, *to break.*  
 Recomendar, *to recommend.*  
 Reventar, *to burst.*  
 Segar, *to cut down.*  
 Sembrar, *to sow.*  
 Sentar, *to set.*  
 Temblar, *to tremble.*  
 Tentar, *to tempt.*  
 Tropezar, *to stumble.*

**4. Contar, to count.**

Cuento, *I count.*  
 Cuentas, *thou countest.*  
 Cuenta, *he counts.*  
 Contamos, *we count.*  
 Contais, *you count.*  
 Cuentan, *they count.*

✓ Probar, *to prove.*  
 Renovar, *to renew.*  
 Rodar, *to roll.*  
 Soldar, *to solder.*  
 Soltar, *to let loose.*  
 Sonar, *to sound.*  
 Soñar, *to dream.*  
 Tostar, *to toast.*  
 Trocar, *to barter.*  
 Tronar, *to thunder.*  
 Volar, *to fly.*  
 Volcar, *to overturn.*

**5. Dar, to give.**Doy, *I give.*Das, *thou givest.*Da, *he gives.*Damos, *we give.*Dais, *you give.*Dan, *they give.***6. Jugar, to play.**Juego, *I play.*Juegas, *thou playest.*Juega, *he plays.*Jugamos, *we play.*Jugais, *you play.*Juegan, *they play.***Vocabulario.****El aire,** *the air.***El estado,** *the state.***El labrador,** *the farmer.***El trabajo,** *the work.***La cocinera,** *the cook.***La funcion,** *the ceremony.***La ignorancia,** *the ignorance.***Despues,** *afterwards.***Imposible,** *impossible.***Temprano,** *early.***Añadir,** 3. *to add.***Apostar,** 1. *to bet.***Aprobar,** 1. *to approve.***Calentar,** 1. *to warm.***Cerrar,** 1. *to shut.***Confesar,** 1. *to confess.***Consolar,** 1. *to console.***Vocabulary.****Creer,** 2. *to believe.***Encerrar,** 1. *to lock up.***Encontrar,** 1. *to meet.***Enterrar,** 1. *to bury.***Helar,** 1. *to freeze.***Ir,** 3. *to go.***Mostrar,** 1. *to show.***Pasar,** 1. *to pass.***Pensar,** 1. *to think.***Poblar,** 1. *to people.***Probar,** 1. *to prove.***Recomendar,** 1. *to recommend.***Sembrar,** 1. *to sow.***Soñar,** 1. *to dream.***Temblar,** 1. *to tremble.***Volar,** 1. *to fly.***Exercise 65.**

1. ¿Qué piensa V. de eso ? 2. No sé qué pensar. 3. A qué hora almuerzan V. V. ? 4. Almorzamos á las siete de la mañana.
5. ¿Dónde están los muchachos ? 6. Están jugando en el jardín.
7. ¿Cuanto dinero da V. á este hombre ? 8. Yo le doy cien pesos.
9. A qué hora empieza la funcion ? 10. Creo que empieza muy temprano.
11. ¿Porqué tiembla ese muchacho ? 12. Porque tiene miedo.
13. El príncipe gobierna sus estados con moderacion y justicia.
14. ¿Cuanto quiere V. apostar que puedo hacer eso ? 15. Yo nunca apuesto dinero.
16. ¿Como pasan V. V. el tiempo ? 17. Almorzamos temprano, despues estudiamos ; á la una salimos ; á las seis comemos, y jugamos hasta las diez.
18. Confieso que no sé nada de eso.
19. ¿Como piensan V. V. hacer eso ? 20. Pensamos hacerlo así.

21. Los pájaros pueblan los aires. 22. Apuesto que V. no encuentra la casa de mi hermano y que yo encuentro la de su hermano de V. 23. Yo no apruebo lo que V. ha hecho. 24. Esos hombres muestran mucha ignorancia. 25. Esta mujer encierra todo el dinero que tiene. 26. ¿ Tiene V. algo que añadir ? 27. Sí, señor, le recomiendo á V. de no salir de la casa. 28. ¿ Ha cerrado V. las puertas ? 29. La criada las cierra todas las noches. 30. Está helando.

### Exercise 66.

1. I meet your brother every day in our street.
2. Where does your brother breakfast ?
3. He never breakfasts (breakfasts never) with us.
4. What do you give to the children ?
5. I give them apples and cakes.
6. Why do you not commence your work now ?
7. I cannot commence now ; I have some letters to write.
8. The general has been buried this morning.
9. Do you think that your brother will be here to-night ?
10. I don't think so.
11. I recommend you not to (*de no*) go to the house of that lady.
12. Do you approve the conduct of your brother ?
13. I do not approve of it ; it is impossible to approve it.
14. Do you dream sometimes ?
15. I never dream.
16. What does this prove ?
17. It does not prove anything.
18. You show your ignorance when you speak so.
19. The birds fly in the air.
20. Who warms my coffee ?
21. The cook warms it.
22. He bets that I cannot do this, and I bet that I can.
23. We give all our money to that poor man.
24. That poor woman cannot console herself (*se*).
25. Will you play with me ?
26. I never play when I have to study.
27. The farmers sow their fields in this season.
28. Why do you tremble ?
29. I do not tremble, you tremble yourself.
30. It was freezing.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

1. There are in Spanish several kinds of irregularities in the verbs of the three conjugations ; but as these variations are limited in most cases to certain moods, tenses, and persons, and almost always occur in the same places, they constitute a certain *regularity* in their *irregularity*, and this constant repetition of similar irregularities facilitates the task of the student.

It has been shown by the conjugation given above that the irregularity in the Present Indicative occurs in the 1st, 2d, and 3d person singular, and the 3d person plural. It will be shown hereafter when conjugating other tenses that the irregularities of the verbs of the 1st conjugation will be the same throughout the whole conjugation, excepting four verbs which will be mentioned in their appropriate time and place.

**2.** Verbs like **calentar** and **empezar** insert an **i** before the **e** in the 1st, 2d, and 3d persons singular, and also in the 3d person plural of the Indicative, while verbs like **almorzar** and **contar** replace the **o** by **ue** in the same persons.

**Jugar** and **dar** stand alone, no other verbs being conjugated like them, unless we except **estar**, *to be*, which has in the Present Indicative the same terminations as **dar**.

**3.** The Present Participle and the Past Participle of the irregular verbs of the 1st conjugation are formed regularly :

Calent-ar, <i>to warm</i> ;	calent-ando, <i>warming</i> ;	calent-ado, <i>warmed</i> .
Empez-ar, <i>to begin</i> ;	empez-ando, <i>beginning</i> ;	empez-ado, <i>begun</i> .
Almorz-ar, <i>to breakfast</i> ;	almorz-ando, <i>breakfasting</i> ;	almorz-ado, <i>breakfasted</i> .
Cont-ar, <i>to count</i> ;	cont-ando, <i>counting</i> ;	cont-ado, <i>counted</i> .
D-ar, <i>to give</i> ;	d-ando, <i>giving</i> ;	d-ado, <i>given</i> .
Jug-ar, <i>to play</i> ;	jug-ando, <i>playing</i> ;	jug-ado, <i>played</i> .
etc.	etc.	etc.

**4.** The verb **errar**, *to err*, may be added to the list of the irregular verbs already given.

This verb takes a **y** before itself in the same Tenses and Persons where **calentar**, *to warm*, inserts an **i**:

Yerro,	I err.	err ar, <i>to err.</i>
Yerras,	thou errest.	
Yerra,	he errs.	err ando, <i>erring.</i>
Erramos,	we err.	
Errais,	you err.	err ado, <i>erred.</i>
Yerran,	they err.	

**Lección XXXIV.**

## IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE 2d CONJUGATION.

**1. Conocer,** *to know.***Conocer,** *to be acquainted with.**Conozco, I know.**Conoces, thou knowest.**Conoce, he knows.**Conocemos, we know.**Conoceis, you know.**Conocen, they know.***2. Nacer,** *to be born.**Nazco, I am born.**Naces, thou art born.**Nace, he is born.**Nacemos, we are born.**Naceis, you are born.**Nacen, they are born.***3. Perder,** *to lose.**Pierdo, I lose.**Pierdes, thou losest.**Pierde, he loses.**Perdemos, we lose.**Perdeis, you lose.**Pierden, they lose.***4. Encender,** *to light.**Enciendo, I light.**Enciendes, thou lightest.**Enciende, he lights.**Encendemos, we light.**Encendeis, you light.**Encienden, they light.***5. Hacer,** *to make, to do;*    **haciendo,** *making, doing;*    **hecho,** *made, done.***6. Caer,** *to fall;*                **cayendo,** *falling;*                **caido,** *fallen.**Hago, I make or do.**Caigo, I fall.**Haces, thou makest or doest.**Caes, thou fallest.**Hace, he makes or does.**Cae, he falls.**Hacemos, we make or do.**Caemos, we fall.**Haceis, you make or do.**Caeis, you fall.**Hacen, they make or do.**Caen, they fall.***7. Poner,** *to put;**poniendo,* *putting:*    **puesto,** *put.***8. Querer,** *to wish, to be willing;**queriendo,* *wishing:*    **querido,** *wished.**Pongo, I put.**Quiero, I wish, I am willing.**Pones, thou puttest.**Quieres, thou wishest, etc.**Pone, he puts.**Quiere, he wishes, etc.**Ponemos, we put.**Queremos, we wish, etc.**Poneis, you put.**Quereis, you wish, etc.**Ponen, they put.**Quieren, they wish, etc.*

<b>9. Saber,</b> to know, to know how to ;	<b>sabiendo,</b> knowing ;	<b>sabido,</b> known.
<b>10. Poder,</b> to be able ;	<b>pudiendo,</b> being able ;	<b>podido,</b> been able.
Sé, I know.	Puedo, I am able, I can.	
Sabes, thou knowest.	Puedes, thou art able, etc.	
Sabe, he knows.	Puede, he is able, etc.	
Sabemos, we know.	Podemos, we are able, etc.	
Sabeis, you know.	Podeis, you are able, etc.	
Saben, they know.	Pueden, they are able, etc.	
<b>11. Cocer,</b> to boil ;	<b>cociendo,</b> boiling ;	<b>cocido,</b> boiled.
<b>12. Traer,</b> to bring ;	<b>trayendo,</b> bringing ;	<b>traido,</b> brought.
Cuezo, I boil.	Traigo, I bring.	
Cueces, thou boilest.	Traes, thou bringest.	
Cueze, he boils.	Trae, he brings.	
Cocemos, we boil.	Traemos, we bring.	
Cocéis, you boil.	Traéis, you bring.	
Cuecen, they boil.	Traen, they bring.	
<b>13. Caber,</b> to be contained ;	<b>cabiendo,</b> being contained ;	<b>cabido,</b> been contained.
<b>14. Valer,</b> to be worth ;	<b>valiendo,</b> being worth ;	<b>valido,</b> been worth.
Quepo, I am contained.	Valgo, I am worth.	
Cabes, thou art contained.	Vales, thou art worth.	
Cabe, he is contained.	Vale, he is worth.	
Cabemos, we are contained.	Valemos, we are worth.	
Cabeis, you are contained.	Valeis, you are worth.	
Caben, they are contained.	Valen, they are worth.	
<b>15. Ver,</b> to see ;	<b>viendo,</b> seeing ;	<b>visto,</b> seen.
<b>16. Absolver,</b> to absolve ;	<b>absolviendo,</b> absolving ;	<b>absuelto,</b> absolved.
Veo, I see.	Absuelvo, I absolve.	
Ves, thou seest.	Absuelves, thou absolvest.	
Ve, he sees.	Absuelve, he absolves.	
Vemos, we see.	Absolvemos, we absolve.	
Veis, you see.	Absolveis, you absolve.	
Ven, they see.	Absuelven, they absolve.	
<b>17. Volver,</b> to return ;	<b>volviendo,</b> returning ;	<b>vuelto,</b> returned.
<b>18. Morder,</b> to bite ;	<b>mordiendo,</b> biting ;	<b>mordido,</b> bitten.
Vuelvo, I return.	Muerdo, I bite.	
Vuelves, thou returnest.	Muerdes, thou bitest.	
Vuelve, he returns.	Muerde, he bites.	
Volvemos, we return.	Mordemos, we bite.	
Volveis, you return.	Mordeis, you bite.	
Vuelven, they return.	Muerden, they bite.	

**19. Oler, to smell;****Huelo, I smell.****Hueles, thou smeltest.****Huele, he smells.****oliendo, smelling; olido, smelt.****Olemos, we smell.****Oleis, you smell.****Huelen, they smell.****Vocabulario.**

- El baul, the trunk.**  
**El diente, the tooth.**  
**El gas, the gas.**  
**El negocio, the business.**  
**El olor, the smell.**  
**El pueblo, the town.**  
**El saco, the bag.**  
**La estrella, the star.**  
**La luna, the moon.**  
**La nuez, the nut.**  
**La ropa, the clothes.**  
**La tarde, the afternoon.**  
**Algunas veces, sometimes.**  
**Á lo menos, at least.**  
**Desde, since.**  
**Durante, during.**

**Vocabulary.**

- Generalmente, generally.**  
**Mañana, to-morrow.**  
**Pasado mañana, the day after to-morrow.**  
**Ventajoso, profitable.**  
**Devolver, 2. to return, give back.**  
**Disponer, 2. to dispose.**  
**Encender, 2. to light.**  
**Llover, 2. to rain.**  
**Morder, 2. to bite.**  
**Perder, 2. to lose.**  
**Proponer, 2. to propose.**  
**Traer, 2. to bring.**  
**Valer, 2. to be worth.**  
**Ver, 2. to see.**

**Exercise 67.**

1. ¿ Sabe V. si el perro muerde ? 2. No puede morder, es demasiado viejo, y no tiene dientes. 3. ¿ Cuanto puede valer este reloj ?
4. Si es de oro, vale á lo menos cien pesos. 5. ¿ Ve V. á menudo á la señora Martí ? 6. La veo todas las semanas. 7. ¿ Como hace V. esto ?
8. Lo hago así. 9. ¿ Pueden V. V. hacer esto tan bien como nosotros ?
10. Podemos hacerlo mejor. 11. ¿ Qué quieren V. V. ? 12. Queremos dinero para ir al teatro.
13. V. sabe muy bien que el teatro está cerrado. 14. ¿ Qué pone V. en el baul ? 15. Pongo mi ropa en el baul grande, y mis libros en el pequeño. 16. ¿ Cuando piensa V. volver del campo ? 17. Vuelvo mañana ó pasado mañana. 18. ¿ Conoce V. á este caballero ? 19. Le conozco desde muchos años.
20. ; Que mal olor hay en este cuarto ! 21. Yo no huelo nada.
22. ¿ Ha perdido V. algo ? 23. Nunca pierdo nada. 24. ¿ Qué me propone V. ? 25. Le propongo algo de muy ventajoso para V.
26. ¿ Sabe V. lo que quieren estos muchachos ? 27. Yo no sé lo que quieren. 28. ¿ Qué trae V. en aquel saco ? 29. Traigo manzanas y

nueces. 30. Durante la noche vemos la luna y las estrellas. 31. ¿Qué hacen V. V. los domingos por la tarde? 32. Salimos generalmente. 33. ¿A quién conocen V. V. en el pueblo? 34. Conocemos a casi todo el mundo. 35. Mi amigo no sale todavía.

### Exercise 68.

1. Will you do this for me?
2. I don't know how to do it, I have never learned.
3. Does the dog bite?
4. He barks, but he never bites.
5. Is that book worth anything?
6. It is not worth anything.
7. Whom do you know here?
8. I do not know anybody.
9. Can you do what I do?
10. I cannot do it.
11. At what time do you light the gas?
12. I light it at six o'clock.
13. Why do you not return the money to that man?
14. Because I have no money now.
15. Does it rain?
16. It rains a little.
17. Our brothers return to-morrow from the city.
18. Can your brother go with me?
19. He cannot go now, but I can go with you if you wish.
20. Where do you put your books?
21. I put them in the small room.
22. What do you wish here?
23. I wish to see your father, where is he?
24. I don't know where he is.
25. Can you bring me my books to-morrow?
26. I bring them now in my bag.
27. Do you see Mr. Brown very often?
28. I see him every Thursday.
29. Do you know this lady?
30. Yes, I see her sometimes at her house.
31. Of how much money can you dispose for this business?
32. I can dispose of three hundred dollars, but not of one cent more.
33. Edward will not come with us, because it rains.
34. Do you know that I wish to be obeyed?
35. I don't obey any one here.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

1. Verbs ending in **acer**, **ecer**, and **ocer** like **nacer**, *to be born*, **empobrecer**, *to grow poor*, **conocer**, *to know*, insert a **z** before the **c** in the 1st person singular of the Present of the Indicative:

Nazco, *I am born*; empobrezco, *I grow poor*; conozco, *I know*.

2. The verbs **mecer**, *to stir, to rock* (which is a regular verb), and **hacer**, *to make, to do*, and its compounds, as **deshacer**, *to*

**undo, rehacer, to do over, contrahacer, to imitate, etc.**, form an exception to the above rule :

Mezo, *I stir*; hago, *I make, I do*.

**3. Perder, to lose**, and the following verbs insert an **i** before the **e** in the three persons singular and also in the 3d person plural of the Present of the Indicative, as is the case in some verbs of the 1st conjugation :

Ascender, *to ascend*.  
Atender, *to mind*.  
Condescender, *to condescend*.  
Contender, *to contend*.  
Defender, *to defend*.  
Desatender, *to disregard*.  
Descender, *to descend*.  
Encender, *to light*.

Entender, *to understand*.  
Estender, *to spread*.  
Hender, *to split*.  
Reverter, *to overflow*.  
Tender, *to stretch*.  
Trascender, *to transcend*.  
Verter, *to spill*.

**4. The following verbs have the same irregularity as poner, to put :**

Anteponer, *to place before*.  
Componer, *to repair*.  
Deponer, *to depose*.  
Descomponer, *to discompose*.  
Disponer, *to dispose*.  
Esponer, *to expose*.  
Imponer, *to impose*.  
Indisponer, *to indispose*.

Oponer, *to oppose*.\*  
Posponer, *to postpone*.  
Proponer, *to propose*.  
Reponer, *to replace*.  
Sobreponer, *to place over*.  
Suponer, *to suppose*.  
Trasponer, *to transpose*.

**5. Cocer, to boil, and escocer, to smart**, differ from the verbs given above ending in *acer, ecer, and ocer*; and instead of inserting a *z* before the *c* like *conocer*, they change the *o* of the radical part into **ue** like **morder, to bite**, and replace the *c* by a **z**:

Cuezo, *I boil*. Escuezo, *I smart*.

**6. Caber** corresponds also to the English verb *to contain, to hold*; but in order to use *cabер* in the sense of these verbs, the English accusative must become the Spanish nominative, while the preposition **en** must also be used :

En este teatro cabe mas gente que en aquel, This theater contains more people than that one.

**7.** The following verbs are conjugated like **traer**, *to bring*:

Abstraer, <i>to abstract.</i>	Distraer, <i>to distract.</i>	Substraer, <span style="float: right;">} <i>to subtract.</i></span>
Atraer, <i>to attract.</i>	Estraer, <i>to extract.</i>	Sustraer,
Contraer, <i>to contract.</i>	Retraer, <i>to retract.</i>	
Detraer, <i>to detract.</i>	Retrotraer, <i>to refer to former times.</i>	

**8.** **Equivaler**, *to be equal to*, is conjugated like **valer**, *to be worth*.

**9.** **Volver**, *to return*, and the following verbs, change the *o* of the radical into *ue* in the three persons singular, and also in the 3d person plural of the Present of the Indicative, like **almorzar**, *to breakfast*, of the 1st conjugation:

Condoler, <i>to condole.</i>	Doler, <i>to ache.</i>	Oler, <i>to smell.</i>
Conmover, <i>to affect.</i>	Envolver, <i>to involve.</i>	Remorder, <i>to sting.</i>
Demoler, <i>to demolish.</i>	Llover, <i>to rain.</i>	Resolver, <i>to resolve.</i>
Desenvolver, <i>to unfold.</i>	Moler, <i>to grind.</i>	Revolver, <i>to revolve.</i>
Devolver, <i>to give back.</i>	Morder, <i>to bite.</i>	Soler, <i>to be wont.</i>
Disolver, <i>to dissolve.</i>	Mover, <i>to move.</i>	Torcer, <i>to twist.</i>

**10.** The following verbs are conjugated like **tener**, *to have*, which is also an irregular verb:

Contener, <i>to contain.</i>	Mantener, <i>to maintain.</i>	Sostener, <i>to sustain.</i>
Detener, <i>to detain.</i>	Obtener, <i>to obtain.</i>	
Entretener, <i>to entertain.</i>	Retener, <i>to retain.</i>	

## Leccion XXXV.

## Lesson XXXV.

### IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE 3d CONJUGATION.

#### Present of the Indicative.

<b>1.</b> <b>Conducir</b> , <i>to conduct</i> ; <b>conduciendo</b> , <i>conducting</i> ; <b>conducido</b> , <i>conducted</i> .	
<b>2.</b> <b>Lucir</b> , <i>to shine</i> ; <b>luciendo</b> , <i>shining</i> ; <b>lucido</b> , <i>shined</i> .	
Conduzco, <i>I conduct.</i>	Luzco, <i>I shine.</i>
Conduces, <i>thou conductest.</i>	Luces, <i>thou shinest.</i>
Conduce, <i>he conducts.</i>	Luce, <i>he shines.</i>
Conducimos, <i>we conduct.</i>	Lucimos, <i>we shine.</i>
Conducis, <i>you conduct.</i>	Lucis, <i>you shine.</i>
Conducen, <i>they conduct.</i>	Lucen, <i>they shine.</i>

<b>3. Sentir, to feel ;</b>	<b>sintiendo, feeling :</b>	<b>sentido, felt.</b>
<b>4. Divertir, to amuse ;</b>	<b>divertiendo, amusing :</b>	<b>divertido, amused.</b>
Siento, <i>I feel.</i>		Divierto, <i>I amuse.</i>
Sientes, <i>thou feelest.</i>		Diviertes, <i>thou amusest.</i>
Siente, <i>he feels.</i>		Divierte, <i>he amuses.</i>
Sentimos, <i>we feel.</i>		Divertimos, <i>we amuse.</i>
Sentis, <i>you feel.</i>		Divertis, <i>you amuse.</i>
Sienten, <i>they feel.</i>		Divierten, <i>they amuse.</i>
<b>5. Dormir, to sleep ;</b>	<b>durmiento, sleeping :</b>	<b>dormido, slept.</b>
<b>6. Morir, to die ;</b>	<b>muriendo, dying :</b>	<b>muerto, dead.</b>
Duermo, <i>I sleep.</i>		Muero, <i>I die.</i>
Duermes, <i>thou sleepest.</i>		Mueres, <i>thou diest.</i>
Duerme, <i>he sleeps.</i>		Muere, <i>he dies.</i>
Dormimos, <i>we sleep.</i>		Morimos, <i>we die.</i>
Dormis, <i>you sleep.</i>		Moris, <i>you die.</i>
Duermen, <i>they sleep.</i>		Mueren, <i>they die.</i>
<b>7. Pedir, to ask for ;</b>	<b>pidiendo, asking for :</b>	<b>pedido, asked for.</b>
<b>8. Medir, to measure ;</b>	<b>midiendo, measuring :</b>	<b>medido, measured.</b>
Pido, <i>I ask for.</i>		Mido, <i>I measure.</i>
Pides, <i>thou askest for.</i>		Mides, <i>thou measurest.</i>
Pide, <i>he asks for.</i>		Mide, <i>he measures.</i>
Pedimos, <i>we ask for.</i>		Medimos, <i>we measure.</i>
Pedis, <i>you ask for.</i>		Medis, <i>you measure.</i>
Piden, <i>they ask for.</i>		Miden, <i>they measure.</i>
<b>9. Venir, to come ;</b>	<b>viniendo, coming :</b>	<b>venido, come.</b>
<b>10. Decir, to say, to tell ;</b>	<b>diciendo, saying :</b>	<b>dicho, said.</b>
Vengo, <i>I come.</i>		Digo, <i>I say.</i>
Vienes, <i>thou comest.</i>		Dices, <i>thou sayest.</i>
Viene, <i>he comes.</i>		Dice, <i>he says.</i>
Venimos, <i>we come.</i>		Decimos, <i>we say.</i>
Vénis, <i>you come.</i>		Decis, <i>you say.</i>
Vienen, <i>they come.</i>		Dicen, <i>they say.</i>
<b>11. Salir, to go out ;</b>	<b>saliendo, going out :</b>	<b>salido, gone out.</b>
<b>12. Ir, to go ;</b>	<b>yendo, going :</b>	<b>ido, gone.</b>
Salgo, <i>I go out.</i>		Voy, <i>I go.</i>
Sales, <i>thou goest out.</i>		Vas, <i>thou goest.</i>
Sale, <i>he goes out.</i>		Va, <i>he goes.</i>
Salimos, <i>we go out.</i>		Vamos, <i>we go.</i>
Salis, <i>you go out.</i>		Vais, <i>you go.</i>
Salen, <i>they go out.</i>		Van, <i>they go.</i>

13. *Oir, to hear;**Oigo, I hear.**Oyes, thou hearest.**Oye, he hears.**oyendo, hearing;**uido, heard.**Oimos, we hear.**Ois, you hear.**Oyen, they hear.*

## Vocabulario.

*El canto, the singing.**El cuento, the tale.**El estudiante, the student.**La aventura, the adventure.**Indiferente, indifferent.**Por cierto, certainly.**Telémaco, Telemachus.**Aborrecer, 2. to hate.**Bendecir, 3. to bless.**Cantar, 1. to sing.**Complacer, 2. to please.**Conducir, 3. to conduct, to take.**Desde que, since.**Divertir, 3. to amuse.*

## Vocabulary.

*Dormir, 3. to sleep.**Esperar, 1. to wait, to hope.**Ganar, 1. to earn.**Ir, 3. to go.**Mantener, 2. to support.**Medir, 3. to measure.**Morir, 3. to die.**Oir, 3. to hear.**Pedir, 3. to ask for.**Podrir, 3. to rot.**Provenir, 3. to come from (to originate).**Repetir, 3. to repeat.**Traducir, 3. to translate.*

## Exercise 69.

1. ¿ Á qué hora sale V. todos los dias ? 2. Salgo generalmente á las diez ó á las diez y media. 3. ¿ Qué dice este hombre ? 4. No sé lo que dice, habla aleman. 5. ¿ Qué libro traducen V. V. del frances al español ? 6. Traducimos las aventuras de Telémaco. 7. ¿ Va V. al concierto esta noche ? 8. No, señor, voy al teatro. 9. ¿ Dónde está Juan ? 10. Todavia está durmiendo. 11. ¿ Oye V. lo que digo ? 12. Oigo muy bien, pero no puedo hacer lo que V. quiere, porque tengo que salir ahora mismo (*this very minute*). 13. ¿ Á dónde van estos muchachos ? 14. Van á la escuela. 15. ¿ Quiere V. ir por pan ? 16. Si, señor, quiero ir. 17. Los estudiantes van cantando por las calles. 18. Todas las manzanas que V. ha comprado, estan podridas. 19. ¿ Como puede V. decir tal cosa ? 20. Lo digo porque lo sé. 21. ¿ Á dónde conduce V. á este muchacho ? 22. Le conduzco á casa de su tio. 23. ¿ Cuanto pide V. por este caballo ? 24. No pido sino lo que vale. 25. El viejo Andres nos divierte todas las noches con sus cuentos. 26. Dice el médico que mueren muchos niños en este mes. 27. ¿ Duerme V. ? 28. No, señor, no duermo, oigo todo lo que V. dice. 29. ¿ Ha medido V. el paño ? 30. Voy á medirlo ahora.

31. ¿ Porqué aborrece V. á este hombre ? 32. Yo no le aborrezco, él me es indiferente. 33. ¿ Porqué no me obedece V.? 34. Yo le obedezco á V., y hago todo lo que puedo para complacerle á V. 35. Este pobre hombre no puede mantener á su familia con lo que gana. 36. Yo mantengo á mis hermanitas desde que mi padre ha muerto.

### Exercise 70.

1. How do you sleep now? 2. I sleep much better, thank you.
3. What does your mother tell your brother? 4. She tells him that he cannot go out without a hat.
5. Do you hear the music from here? 6. We hear the music and the singing from our room.
7. What do you wish to-day? 8. I have come to (*á*) see if you need anything?
9. Yes; I need coffee, sugar and tea.
10. Do you (*pl.*) go to (the) church every Sunday?
11. We go twice on (*los*) Sundays, and also sometimes in the week.
12. Do you go out to-day?
13. I never go out when it rains.
14. Why don't you measure the cloth?
15. I have measured it already.
16. Who takes your little sister to school?
17. I take her sometimes, but she generally goes (goes generally) alone.
18. Why don't you ask that man for your money?
19. He says that he has no money now, and that I must wait till next month.
20. Will you go for some bread for me?
21. I cannot go now; will you wait a few minutes.
22. Certainly, you may go in a half hour if you wish.
23. Are the children still sleeping?
24. Yes, they are all sleeping yet.
25. Why don't you tell (to) your tailor that you cannot pay him now?
26. Who says that I cannot pay him? I can, but I will not, because he owes money to my brother and will not pay him.
27. Can you translate this?
28. I don't translate very well yet.
29. Will you repeat what he has said.
30. Why don't you repeat it yourself?
31. I don't understand German.
32. Where does it come from?
33. It comes from the old house.
34. The father blesses his children.
35. I am going this evening to the city, but I don't know yet if my friends can go with me.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

1. Verbs ending in **ucir**, like **conducir**, *to conduct, to take;* **lucir**, *to shine*, etc., have in the Present of the Indicative the same irregularity as the verbs of the 2d conjugation ending in

**acer, ocer, and ecer**, that is, they insert a **z** before the **c** in the first person singular of said tense :

Conduzco, *I conduct.*

Luzco, *I shine.*

**2.** The following verbs conjugated like **sentir**, *to feel*, and **divertir**, *to amuse*, have in the Present of the Indicative the same irregularities as the verb **empezar**, *to begin*, of the 1st conjugation, that is, they insert an **i** before the **e** in the 1st, 2d, and 3d persons singular, and in the 3d person plural of said tense :

Adherir, *to adhere.*

Deferir, *to defer.*

Ingerir, *to interfere.*

Adquirir, *to acquire.*

Desmentir, *to belie.*

Mentir, *to lie.*

Advertir, *to notice.*

Diferir, *to differ.*

Pervertir, *to pervert.*

Arrepentirse (reflex.) *to repent.*

Digerir, *to digest.*

Preferir, *to prefer.*

Asentir, *to consent.*

Disentir, *to dissent.*

Presentir, *to foresee.*

Conferir, *to confer.*

Herir, *to wound.*

Proferir, *to utter.*

Consentir, *to consent.*

Hervir, *to boil.*

Referir, *to refer.*

Convertir, *to convert.*

Inferir, *to infer.*

Requerir, *to notify.*

OBSERVATION. — The same verbs change the **e** into an **i** in the Present Participle, as : *sintiendo, feeling*; *advirtiendo, noticing*; etc.

**3.** **Dormir**, *to sleep*, and **morir**, *to die*, change the **o** of the radical part into **ue** in the same cases as the verb **almorzar** of the 1st conjugation.

The **o** is also changed into a **u** in the Present Participle :

Durmiento, *sleeping.*

Muriendo, *dying.*

**4.** **Pedir**, *to ask for*, and **medir**, *to measure*, and the following verbs change the **e** into **i** in the 1st, 2d, and 3d persons singular, the 3d person plural, and the Present Participle :

Ceñir, *to gird.*

Elegir, *to elect.*

Regir, *to rule.*

Colegir, *to collect.*

Embestir, *to attack.*

Reir, *to laugh.*

Competir, *to compete.*

Envestir, *to invest.*

Rendir, *to surrender.*

Concebir, *to conceive.*

Espedir, *to forward.*

Reñir, *to fight, to scold.*

Conseguir, *to obtain.*

Freir, *to fry.*

Repetir, *to repeat.*

Constreñir, *to force.*

Gemir, *to groan.*

Seguir, *to follow.*

Corregir, *to correct.*

Impedir, *to prevent.*

Servir, *to serve.*

Derretir, *to melt.*

Investir, *to invest.*

Sonreír, *to smile.*

Deservir, *to harm.*

Perseguir, *to pursue.*

Teñir, *to dye.*

Despedir, *to dismiss.*

Proseguir, *to continue.*

Vestir, *to dress.*

Destañir, *to discolor.*

**5.** The following verbs are conjugated like **venir**, *to come*, of which they are compounds :

Avenir, <i>to happen.</i>	Prevenir, <i>to arrange beforehand.</i>
Contravenir, <i>to transgress.</i>	Provenir, <i>to originate.</i>
Convenir, <i>to agree.</i>	Revenir, <i>to return.</i>
Desavenir, <i>to disagree.</i>	Sobrevenir, <i>to come between.</i>
Intervenir, <i>to interfere.</i>	

OBSERVATION. — **Venir por** means *to come for, to fetch.*

**6.** **Predecir**, *to foretell*, **contradecir**, *to contradict*, **desdecir**, *to retract*, and **bendecir**, *to bless*, have in the Present of the Indicative the same irregularities as **decir**, *to say, to tell*:

Predigo, *I foretell.*      Contradigo, *I contradict.*

**7.** Although the meaning of **ir** is *to go*, this verb accompanied by an adverb corresponds also to the verb **andar**, *to walk*:

Voy despacio, *I walk slowly.*      Voy deprisa, *I walk quickly.*

OBSERVATION. — When accompanied by the preposition **por** the verb **ir** is used instead of **buscar**, *to fetch*:

Voy por pan, *I go for bread, I fetch bread.*

**8.** The verb **asir**, *to seize*, makes **asgo** in the 1st person singular of the Present of the Indicative, but this verb is hardly ever used, except metaphorically.

**9.** The verb **podrir**, *to rot*, of which the Present of the Indicative is :

Pudro, <i>I rot.</i>	Podrimos, <i>we rot.</i>
Pudres, <i>thou rottest.</i>	Podris, <i>you rot.</i>
Pudre, <i>he rots.</i>	Pudren, <i>they rot.</i>

and the Present Participle **pudriendo**, *rotting*, is hardly ever used except in the Infinitive and the Past Participle **podrido**, *rotten*. The regular verb **pudrir** has taken its place in all other cases.

**Leccion XXXVI.****Lesson XXXVI.****THE IMPERFECT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD.**

The Imperfect Indicative is formed by adding the following terminations to the radical part of the verbs :

**For the 1st Conjugation :**

-aba  
-abas  
-aba  
-abamos  
-abais  
-aban

**For the 2d and 3d Conjugations :**

-ia  
-ias  
-ia  
-iamos  
-iais  
-ian

**NOTE.** — The verbs **ser**, 2. *to be*, **ver**, 2. *to see*, and **ir**, 3. *to go*, are the only verbs that form an exception to the rule which refers to all other regular and irregular verbs.

**1st Conjugation.**

Habl-aba,	<i>I spoke or I was speaking.</i>
Habl-abas,	<i>thou spakest or thou wast speaking.</i>
Habl-aba,	<i>he spoke or he was speaking.</i>
Habl-abamos,	<i>we spoke or we were speaking.</i>
Habl-abais,	<i>you spoke or you were speaking.</i>
Habl-aban,	<i>they spoke or they were speaking.</i>

**2d Conjugation.**

Vend-ia,	<i>I sold or I was selling.</i>
Vend-ias,	<i>thou soldest or thou wast selling.</i>
Vend-ia,	<i>he sold or he was selling.</i>
Vend-iamos,	<i>we sold or we were selling.</i>
Vend-iais,	<i>you sold or you were selling.</i>
Vend-ian,	<i>they sold or they were selling.</i>

**3d Conjugation.**

Ven-ia,	<i>I came or I was coming.</i>
Ven-ias,	<i>thou camest or thou wast coming.</i>
Ven-ia,	<i>he came or he was coming.</i>
Ven-iamos,	<i>we came or we were coming.</i>
Ven-iais,	<i>you came or you were coming.</i>
Ven-ian,	<i>they came or they were coming.</i>

*Exceptions.*

- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| 1. Iba,  | <i>I went or I was going.</i>           |
| Ibas,    | <i>thou wentest or thou wast going.</i> |
| Iba,     | <i>he went or he was going.</i>         |
| Ibamos,  | <i>we went or we were going.</i>        |
| Ibais,   | <i>you went or you were going.</i>      |
| Iban,    | <i>they went or they were going.</i>    |
| 2. Veia, | <i>I saw or I was seeing.</i>           |
| Veias,   | <i>thou sawest or thou wast seeing.</i> |
| Veia,    | <i>he saw or he was seeing.</i>         |
| Veiamos, | <i>we saw or we were seeing.</i>        |
| Veiais,  | <i>you saw or you were seeing.</i>      |
| Veian,   | <i>they saw or they were seeing.</i>    |
| 3. Era,  | <i>I was.</i>                           |
| Eras,    | <i>thou wast.</i>                       |
| Era,     | <i>he was.</i>                          |
| Éramos,  | <i>we were.</i>                         |
| Érais,   | <i>you were.</i>                        |
| Eran,    | <i>they were.</i>                       |

**Vocabulario.**

- El enemigo, *the enemy.*  
 El escritorio, *the office.*  
 El modo, *the way.*  
 El negocio, *the business.*  
 El oso, *the bear.*  
 El paraguas, *the umbrella.*  
 El tiempo, *the time.*  
 La elegancia, *the elegance.*

- La fortaleza, *the fortress.*  
 La limonada, *the lemonade.*  
 La luz, *the light.*  
 La puerta, *the door.*  
 Caro, *dear.*  
 Diferente, *different.*  
 Creer, *2. to believe.*  
 Entrar, *1. to enter.*

**Vocabulary.**

- Gastar, *1. to spend.*  
 Llamar, *1. to call.*  
 Llegar, *1. to arrive.*  
 Mandar, *1. to send.*  
 Mirar, *1. to look at.*  
 Ocupar, *1. to occupy.*  
 Tocar, *1. to play on.*  
 Vestir, *3. to dress.*

**Exercise 71.**

1. Yo sabia que su hermano de V. estaba malo la semana pasada, pero yo creia que él estaba bueno ahora. 2. ¿ Estaba V. en Francia en aquel tiempo ? 3. Si, señor, yo estaba allí desde dos años. 4. ¿ Qué hacia V. entonces ? 5. Yo estudiaba para ser médico. 6. ¿ Como estaban vestidas las dos señoras ? 7. Estaban vestidas con mucha elegancia. 8. Yo no sabia lo que querian estos hombres. 9. Querian entrar en la casa para robar. 10. Hablabamos muy bien el frances cuando éramos jóvenes. 11. ¿ Qué hacia su hermano de V. cuando

estaba en Inglaterra ? 12. No hacia nada, pero gastaba mucho dinero. 13. ¿ Cuanto recibia por mes ? 14. Mi padre le mandaba doscientos pesos todos los meses. 15. ¿ Qué estaban V. V. mirando en la calle ? 16. Estabamos mirando á un hombre que hacia bailar un oso. 17. ¿ Qué le decia aquella señora á V.? 18. Me decia que esperaba á su marido y á sus hijos esta noche. 19. ¿ A quien conocian V. V. en aquella ciudad ? 20. No conociamos á nadie. 21. ¿ Qué querian estos caballeros ? 22. Querian verle á V. 23. Juan queria comprar mi caballito, pero no tenia bastante dinero. 24. ¿ A qué hora iba V. á casa del médico ? 25. Yo iba todas las mañanas á las diez y media. 26. ¿ Á quien veia V. en su casa ? 27. Yo veia á su señora y á sus hijos. 28. ¿ Qué vendia aquella mujer ? 29. Ella vendia muy buenas peras. 30. ¿ Á quien daba V. todo su dinero ? 31. Yo no lo daba á nadie, yo lo prestaba á mi primo que hacia muy buenos negocios. 32. Nuestros soldados ocupaban todas las fortalezas del enemigo. 33. ¿ Á que hora almorzaban V. V.? 34. Almorzabamos muy temprano, pero comiamos muy tarde.

### Exercise 72.

1. Who was the man at the door ? 2. It was not a man, it was a little boy.
3. What did he want ? 4. He wished to know if Mr. Charles Marti lived in this house, as (*pues*) he had a letter for him.
5. Was not the gentleman in his room ? 6. He was there this morning, but he has gone out.
7. Did you not know that my brother had arrived ? 8. I did not know it.
9. Were you acquainted with Mr. Arroyo ? 10. I knew him very well when he was young.
11. He was very poor then, but now he is very rich.
12. Why did you not wish to buy that house ? 13. Because it was too dear, and I had not money enough.
14. With whom were you in Paris ? 15. I was there with my mother and sisters.
16. Do you know what Charles was telling me ? 17. I could see that he was speaking to you, but I could not hear a word.
18. He was telling me that he knew who had stolen your umbrella.
19. Where were you going this morning ? 20. I was going to my office ; I go there now very early.
21. To whom were you writing this morning ? 22. I was writing to all my friends.
23. Could you see any one in the house ? 24. I could see no one, because there was no light in the room.
25. Who was playing on the piano ? 26. My sisters were playing, and my brothers were singing.
27. Where were you when I was calling you ? 28. I

was in the garden with the children. 29. My friend used to come every day, but I don't know where he is now. 30. What did you drink when you were sick? 31. I drank lemonade.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** The use of the *Imperfect*, *Past Definite*, and *Past Indefinite*, which in many cases would have but one form in English, presents one of the greatest difficulties met by those learning the Spanish language. The following rules are calculated to facilitate the task of the student. Practice, reading, and reasoning must also be depended upon as the best auxiliaries for the correct use of the Imperfect Tense.

1. The Imperfect is used to express an action or event which has *already occurred*, but which was *existing* or *going on* when *another action or event took place*:

Él estudiaba cuando entraron,      *He was studying when they entered.*

2. This Tense is also used to express what was *customary* or *habitual* at a certain past time, and in that case may generally be rendered in English by prefixing "used to" to the Infinitive Mood, as :

Cuando vivíamos en el campo, estudiábamos mucho,

*When we lived (used to live) in the country we studied (used to study) much.*

**OBSERVATION.** — We should not use the Imperfect, however, in speaking of an *accidental occurrence*:

Sin embargo, una vez, jugamos todo el dia,

*Once, however, we played the whole day.*

3. The Imperfect is also used to describe the *qualities of persons* or *things*, and the *state, place*, or *disposition* in which they were in past time.

This Tense may, therefore, be called the *Descriptive Tense* of Spanish :

Las muchachas estaban vestidas de blanco, y tenían flores en los cabellos,

*The girls were dressed in white, and had flowers in their hair.*

**Leccion XXXVII.****Lesson XXXVII.**

THE PAST DEFINITE OR PRETERITE, AND THE PAST INDEFINITE.

**1.** The terminations of the Past Definite are the following for most verbs :

For the 1st Conjugation.

-é  
-aste  
-ó  
-ámos  
-ásteis  
-aron

For the 2d and 3d Conjugations.

-í  
-iste  
-ió  
-imos  
-isteis  
-íeron

*1st Conjugation.***Hablar, to speak.**

Habl-é,	<i>I spoke or I did speak.</i>
Habl-aste,	<i>thou spakest or thou didst speak.</i>
Habl-ó,	<i>he spoke or he did speak.</i>
Habl-ámos,	<i>we spoke or we did speak.</i>
Habl-ásteis,	<i>you spoke or you did speak.</i>
Habl-áron,	<i>they spoke or they did speak.</i>

**Amar, to love.**

Am-é,	<i>I loved or I did love.</i>
Am-aste,	<i>thou lovedst or thou didst love.</i>
Am-ó,	<i>he loved or he did love.</i>
Am-ámos,	<i>we loved or we did love.</i>
Am-ásteis,	<i>you loved or you did love.</i>
Am-áron,	<i>they loved or they did love.</i>

*2d Conjugation.***Vender, to sell.**

Vend-í,	<i>I sold or I did sell.</i>
Vend-iste,	<i>thou soldest or thou didst sell.</i>
Vend-ió,	<i>he sold or he did sell.</i>
Vend-imos,	<i>we sold or we did sell.</i>
Vend-isteis,	<i>you sold or you did sell.</i>
Vend-iéron,	<i>they sold or they did sell.</i>

**Comer, to eat.**

Com-i,	<i>I ate or I did eat.</i>
Com-iste,	<i>thou atest or thou didst eat.</i>
Com-ió,	<i>he ate or he did eat.</i>
Com-imos,	<i>we ate or we did eat.</i>
Com-isteis,	<i>you ate or you did eat.</i>
Com-iéron,	<i>they ate or they did eat.</i>

*3d Conjugation.***Recibir, to receive.**

Recib-i,	<i>I received or I did receive.</i>
Recib-iste,	<i>thou receivedst or thou didst receive.</i>
Recib-ió,	<i>he received or he did receive.</i>
Recib-imos,	<i>we received or we did receive.</i>
Recib-isteis,	<i>you received or you did receive.</i>
Recib-iéron,	<i>they received or they did receive.</i>

**Salir, to go out.**

Sal-i,	<i>I went out or I did go out.</i>
Sal-iste,	<i>thou wentest out or thou didst go out.</i>
Sal-ió,	<i>he went out or he did go out.</i>
Sal-imos,	<i>we went out or we did go out.</i>
Sal-isteis,	<i>you went out or you did go out.</i>
Sal-iéron,	<i>they went out or they did go out.</i>

*Past Indefinite.*

He hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.	<i>I have spoken — sold — received, etc.</i>
Has hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	<i>thou hast spoken — sold — received, etc.</i>
Ha hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.	<i>he has spoken — sold — received, etc.</i>
Hemos hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	<i>we have spoken — sold — received, etc.</i>
Habeis hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	<i>you have spoken — sold — received, etc.</i>
Han hablado — vendido — recibido, etc.,	<i>they have spoken — sold — received, etc.</i>

**Vocabulario.**

**El bosque,** *the wood.*  
**El embajador,** *the ambassador.*  
**El enemigo,** *the enemy.*  
**El ladrón,** *the thief.*  
**El lugar,** *the place.*  
**El veneno,** *the poison.*  
**La deuda,** *the debt.*  
**La fonda,** *the hotel.*  
**La posteridad,** *the posterity.*  
**Cansado,** *tired.*  
**Colon,** *Columbus.*  
**Dios,** *m. God.*  
**Romano,** *Roman.*  
**Abrir,** *3. to open.*  
**Aconsejar,** *1. to advise.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Andar,** *1. to walk.*  
**Asegurar,** *1. to assure.*  
**Comprender,** *2. to understand.*  
**Derrotar,** *1. to defeat.*  
**Entrar,** *1. to enter.*  
**Esperar,** *1. to expect.*  
**Ofrecer,** *2. to offer.*  
**Pelear,** *1. to fight.*  
**Perder,** *2. to lose.*  
**Preguntar,** *1. to ask.*  
**Presentar,** *1. to introduce.*  
**Prometer,** *2. to promise.*  
**Responder,** *2. to answer.*  
**Salir,** *3. to leave, to go out.*  
**Vencer,** *2. to conquer.*

**Exercise 73.**

1. Don Juan me preguntó si V. estaba en su cuarto ? 2. ¿ Y qué respondió V. ? 3. Respondí que yo no sabia, pero que él podía subir á ver. 4. El general presentó los oficiales al príncipe. 5. Mi padre vendió su casa al tio de V. 6. ¿ Sabe V. lo que pagó por ella ? 7. Pagó mucho menos de lo que valia. 8. ¿ Cuanto dinero recibieron V. V. ? 9. Recibimos como trescientos pesos. 10. Dios prometió á Abraham una grande posteridad. 11. ¿ Conoce V. á este caballero ? 12. Le he conocido en Paris. 13. ¿ Cuando vió V. á Carlito ? 14. Le ví el mes pasado en Boston donde estaba con su padre. 15. ¿ Á que hora comieron V. V. ayer ? 16. Comimos á la misma hora que los otros dias. 17. ¿ Con quien habló V. en el escritorio ? 18. Hablé con el dependiente del banquero. 19. ¿ Han escrito V. V. sus cartas ? 20. Las escribimos anoche ; sabe V. si ha salido el vapor ? 21. Salió ayer á las cuatro de la tarde. 22. ¿ Quién bebió el vino ? 23. Yo no sé quien bebió el vino, pero sé muy bien quien comió los bollos. 24. Los enemigos perdieron diez mil hombres en aquella batalla. 25. José (*Joseph*) me aseguró que él había pagado todas sus deudas, pero yo le respondí que no lo creia. 26. Cuando Aníbal vió á los embajadores romanos, tomó veneno. 27. El enfermo quería salir esta mañana, pero yo le aconsejé de no hacerlo. 28. Los muchachos abrieron la puerta del jardín y entraron en él. 29. Colon descubrió la América en el año 1492. 30. El pobre Felipe perdió todo su dinero

en aquella especulacion. 31. Los ladrones entraron en aquella casa y robaron todo lo que hallaron. 32. Trabajamos muchísimo hoy, y estamos muy cansados. 33. ¿ A quien vieron V. V. en el teatro ? 34. Vimos á todos nuestros amigos. 35. Los Romanos vencieron á todas las naciones del mundo.

### Exercise 74.

1. Why did you not write to your brother ? 2. I wrote to him, but he did not answer me. 3. Did you see Mr. Martin ? 4. I did not see him, I was not in the city when he was here. 5. The general lost the battle, but his soldiers fought with much courage. 6. Have you studied your lessons ? 7. We studied them last night. 8. Did you go out with your sister when she was here ? 9. We went out every day. 10. Who took my book ? 11. Nobody took it, it is in the same place yet. 12. Did you receive what you were expecting ? 13. We have not received anything yet. 14. Did you understand that man ? 15. I understood everything, although he spoke French. 16. Did you ever study French ? 17. I spoke it very well when I was younger. 18. Did your brother sell his horses ? 19. He sold two of them, and he sent the other to the country. 20. Why did he not lend it to you ? 21. Because I have a horse myself. 22. Why did not your sister dance at the ball ? 23. Because she was not very well, and she only stayed (*se quedó*) half an hour. 24. Does she know how to dance ? 25. She learned all the new dances during the winter. 26. The thieves killed a poor man in the forest. 27. Our soldiers defeated the enemy and took their principal cities. 28. That little boy ate too much last night ; and to-day he is sick. 29. My brother saw your mother when he was in England ; did she reside a long time in that country ? 30. She resided there for two years. 31. The man killed the dog because he bit his little boy. 32. Where did you breakfast this morning ? 33. I breakfasted in the French hotel where you saw me last week. 34. Did you drink anything at his house ? 35. He did not offer us anything.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

1. The *Past Definite* or *Preterite* and the *Past Indefinite* are used in all those cases of past time where the *Imperfect* cannot

be used. The *Preterite*, however, is used more especially to express an action which took place *but once*, and when the time at which the action took place *has entirely elapsed*.

The Preterite is, therefore, especially used in narrative style, and is also designated as the *Pretérito histórico*:

Pedro el Cruel no respetó las leyes,  
y se portó mal con sus aliados.      *Peter the Cruel did not respect the laws, and acted wrongly towards his allies.*

**2.** The Preterite may, however, be used when there is continuation of time; but, in this case, the action must have taken place at a remote period, and the time must be designated:

Roma fué por mas de dos siglos la  
señora del orbe,      *Rome was for more than two centuries the mistress of the world.*

**3.** The same tense is also very often used to express customary and repeated actions or qualities, when it is intended to express the time rather than the action. When we say:

Napoleón era (*imperf.*) gran guerrero,      *Napoleon was a great warrior,*  
we express the quality, but when we say:

Napoleón fué (*preterite*) gran guerrero,  
we think of the time in which he was living.

**4.** The Preterite may be rendered in English according to the meaning of the sentence by its *corresponding form*, or by the auxiliary *did* which has no equivalent in Spanish:

Comimos ayer en su casa,      *We dined yesterday at his house.*  
No salí anoche,      *I did not go out last night.*

**5.** The Past Indefinite is also used to express a past action when the time at which it took place belongs to a period of time (day, week, month, year, etc.) not entirely elapsed:

Hoy he estado en la iglesia,      *I have been to church to-day.*  
No he ido al teatro este año,      *I have not been to the theater this year.*

**6.** The Past Indefinite is also used to express an action but lately performed:

He leido los papeles,      *I have read the papers.*

It is furthermore used to express the successes or merits of a person when we wish to give more expression to the sentence :

Napoleon ha conquistado en poco tiempo Italia y Alemania,      Napoleon (*has*) conquered in a short time Italy and Germany.

### *7. General Observations on the Imperfect, Preterite, and Past Indefinite.*

The Imperfect can *seldom* be rendered in English by the past tense which takes *did* as an auxiliary except, when in interrogative sentences, *did* is used as an auxiliary to *used to*, either expressed or understood.

The Preterite never corresponds like the Imperfect to the English Imperfect, composed of the auxiliary and the Present Participle, nor can it be rendered by a verb preceded by *used to*.

The three Tenses above mentioned offer in their application a certain difficulty, as they are sometimes *obligatory*, and sometimes *optional*; or, in other words, their use is sometimes *a question of grammar*, and sometimes only *a question of style*.

When several sentences concur to the same end, as in the following narrative, it is not always an easy matter to determine whether the student should use the *Imperfect* or another Tense, the *Preterite* for instance, as he has to take into consideration not only the *special shade of meaning of each verb*, but also *the general tenor of the other sentences forming the whole of the narration*. As already stated, the *Imperfect* is used as a descriptive tense, while the *Preterite* is only used as a narrative tense.

All the Imperfects of the following Spanish translation are printed in *italics*.

*Era poco mas de mediodía cuando entraron los Españoles en su alojamiento, y hallaron prevenido un banquete regalado y espléndido para Cortés y los cabos de su ejército, con grande abundancia de bastimentos menos delicados para el resto de la gente, y muchos Indios de servicio que suministraban los manjares y las bebidas con igual silencio y puntualidad. Por la tarde vino Mo-*

*It was a little over mid-day when the Spaniards entered their lodgings, and found a delicate and splendid banquet prepared for Cortes and the captains of his army, and at the same time a great abundance of less delicate provisions for the remainder of the people, while many Indians, attending to the service, brought in the eatables and beverages with equal silence and punctuality.*

tezuma con la misma pompa y acompañamiento, á visitar á Cortés, que, avisado poco ántes, salió á recibirle hasta el patio principal, con todo el obsequio debido á semejante favor. Acompañole hasta la puerta de su cuarto, donde le hizo una profunda reverencia, y él pasó á tomar su asiento con despejo y gravedad. Mandó luego que acercasen otro á Cortés: hizo seña para que se apartasen á la pared los caballeros que *andaban* cerca de su persona, y Cortés advirtió lo mismo á los capitanes que le asistian.

*Montezuma came in the afternoon with the same pomp and retinue to visit Cortes, and the latter having been informed of this some time before, came out to receive him as far as the principal court, with all the courtesy due to such a favor. Cortes accompanied him as far as the door of his room, where he made a deep bow to him, and Montezuma passed on and took his seat with ease and gravity. He then ordered that they should bring forward another seat for Cortes, and made a sign to the nobles who walked near his person to withdraw as far as the wall, while Cortes did the same to the captains who followed him.*

Llegaron los intérpretes, y cuando se prevenia Cortés para dar principio á su oracion, le detuvo Motezuma, dando á entender que tenia que hablar ántes de oir, y se refiere que discurrió en esta sustancia:

*The interpreters then arrived, and as Cortes was preparing to commence his discourse, Montezuma stopped him, giving him to understand that he had to speak before he would listen, and it is related that he spoke thus:*

## Leccion XXXVIII.

### IRREGULARITIES OF THE PRETERITE.

#### I.

##### 1. Tener, 2. to have.

Tuve, *I had (did have).*

Tuviste, *thou hadst.*

Tuvo, *he had.*

Tuvimos, *we had.*

Tuvisteis, *you had.*

Tuviéron, *they had.*

## Lesson XXXVIII.

### IRREGULARITIES OF THE PRETERITE.

#### I.

##### 2. Estar, 1. to be.

Estuve, *I was.*

Estuviste, *thou wast.*

Estuvo, *he was.*

Estuvimos, *we were.*

Estuvisteis, *you were.*

Estuvieron, *they were.*

- 3. Hacer,** 2. *to make, to do.*  
 Hize, *I made or I did make.*  
 Hiciste, *thou madest.*  
 Hizo, *he made.*  
 Hicimos, *we made.*  
 Hicísteis, *you made.*  
 Hiciéron, *they made.*

- 4. Querer,** 2. *to wish, to be willing.*  
 Quise, *I wished or I did wish.*  
 Quisiste, *thou wished.*  
 Quiso, *he wished.*  
 Quisimos, *we wished.*  
 Quisísteis, *you wished.*  
 Quisiéron, *they wished.*

- 5. Poder,** 2. *to be able.*  
 Pude, *I was able or I could.*  
 Pudiste, *thou wast able.*  
 Pudo, *he was able.*  
 Pudimos, *we were able.*  
 Pudísteis, *you were able.*  
 Pudiéron, *they were able.*

- 6. Poner,** 2. *to put.*  
 Puse, *I put or I did put.*  
 Pusiste, *thou didst put.*  
 Puso, *he put.*  
 Pusimos, *we put.*  
 Pusísteis, *you put.*  
 Pusiéron, *they put.*

- 7. Saber,** 2. *to know.*  
 Supe, *I knew or I did know.*  
 Supiste, *thou didst know.*  
 Supo, *he knew.*  
 Supimos, *we knew.*  
 Supísteis, *you knew.*  
 Supiéron, *they knew.*

- 8. Decir,** 3. *to say, to tell.*  
 Dije, *I said or I did say.*  
 Dijiste, *thou saidst.*  
 Dijo, *he said.*  
 Dijimos, *we said.*  
 Dijisteis, *you said.*  
 Dijeron, *they said.*

- 9. Haber,** 2. *to have (auxiliary and impersonal).*  
 Hube, *I had (did have).*  
 Hubiste, *thou hadst.*  
 Hubo, *he had.*  
 Hubimos, *we had.*  
 Hubísteis, *you had.*  
 Hubiéron, *they had.*

- 10. Andar,** 1. *to walk.*  
 Anduve, *I walked or I did walk.*  
 Anduviste, *thou didst walk.*  
 Anduvo, *he walked.*  
 Anduvimos, *we walked.*  
 Anduvísteis, *you walked.*  
 Anduviéron, *they walked.*

- 11. Caber,** 2. *to be contained.*  
 Cupe, *I was contained.*  
 Cupiste, *thou wast contained.*  
 Cupo, *he was contained.*  
 Cupimos, *we were contained.*  
 Cupísteis, *you were contained.*  
 Cupiéron, *they were contained.*

- 12. Traer,** 2. *to bring.*  
 Traje, *I brought or I did bring.*  
 Trajiste, *thou didst bring.*  
 Trajo, *he brought.*  
 Trajimos, *we brought.*  
 Trajísteis, *you brought.*  
 Trajeron, *they brought.*

**13. Conducir,** 3. *to conduct, to take.*  
 Conduje, *I conducted or I did conduct.*  
 Condujiste, *thou didst conduct.*  
 Condujo, *he conducted.*  
 Condujimos, *we conducted.*  
 Condujisteis, *you conducted.*  
 Condujeron, *they conducted.*

**14. Venir,** 3. *to come.*  
 Vine, *I came or I did come.*  
 Viniste, *thou camest.*  
 Vino, *he came.*  
 Vinimos, *we came.*  
 Vinisteis, *you came.*  
 Vinieron, *they came.*

**II.**

**1. Dar,** 1. *to give.*  
 Di, *I gave.*  
 Diste, *thou gavest.*  
 Dió, *he gave.*  
 Dímos, *we gave.*  
 Disteis, *you gave.*  
 Diéron, *they gave.*

**2. Ser,** 2. *to be, and Ir, to go.*  
 Fui, *I was; I went or I did go.*  
 Fuiste, *thou wast; thou wentest.*  
 Fué, *he was; he went.*  
 Fuimos, *we were; we went.*  
 Fuisteis, *you were; you went.*  
 Fuéron, *they were; they went.*

**III.**

**1. Sentir,** 3. *to feel.*  
 Senti, *I felt or I did feel.*  
 Sentiste, *thou feltest.*  
 Sintió, *he felt.*  
 Sentimos, *we felt.*  
 Sentisteis, *you felt.*  
 Sintieron, *they felt.*

**2. Pedir,** 3. *to ask for.*  
 Pedí, *I asked or I did ask for.*  
 Pediste, *thou didst ask for.*  
 Pidió, *he asked for.*  
 Pedimos, *we asked for.*  
 Pedisteis, *you asked for.*  
 Pidieron, *they asked for.*

**3. Dormir,** 3. *to sleep.*  
 Dormí, *I slept.*  
 Dormiste, *thou didst sleep.*  
 Durmió, *he slept.*  
 Dormimos, *we slept.*  
 Dormisteis, *you slept.*  
 Durmieron, *they slept.*

**4. Morir,** 3. *to die.*  
 Morí, *I died or I did die.*  
 Moriste, *thou diedst.*  
 Murió, *he died.*  
 Morimos, *we died.*  
 Moristeis, *you died.*  
 Murieron, *they died.*

**Vocabulario.**

**El Árabe,** *the Arab.*  
**El cartero,** *the postman.*  
**El cielo,** *the heaven.*  
**El huracan,** *the hurricane.*  
**El instante,** *the instant.*  
**El Romano,** *the Roman.*  
**La muerte,** *the death.*  
**La nacion,** *the nation.*  
**Afuera,** *out.*  
**Á pié,** *on foot.*  
**Cansado,** *tired.*  
**Despues,** *afterwards, then.*  
**Dios,** *n. God.*  
**En seguida,** *immediately.*  
**Galileo,** *Galileo.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Hasta,** *till, until, as far as.*  
**Indomable,** *indomitable.*  
**Mismo,** *very, self.*  
**Ocupado,** *busy.*  
**Rómulo,** *Romulus.*  
**Asolar,** 1. *to devastate.*  
**Caer,** 2. *to fall.*  
**Consolar,** 1. *to comfort.*  
**Dejar,** 1. *to leave.*  
**Derribar,** 1. *to upset.*  
**Echar (1.) á pique,** *to founder.*  
**Nacer,** 2. *to be born.*  
**Presentar,** 1. *to present.*  
**Sentir,** 3. *to feel, to regret.*  
**Someter,** 2. *to subdue.*

**Exercise 75.**

1. ¿Dónde estuvo V. esta mañana ? 2. Estuve todo el tiempo en mi cuarto.
3. ¿Durmió bien el enfermo ? 4. Durmió hasta las cinco esta mañana, y despues estuvo mejor.
5. En el año de 1846 hubo en la Habana un terrible huracan que echó á pique muchos barcos, derribó casas y asoló muchas haciendas.
6. Mi amigo vino con nosotros hasta la puerta, pero no quiso entrar.
7. Tuvimos muy buen tiempo en nuestro viaje.
8. ¿Porqué no habló V. con mi padre ? 9. No pude hablarle, estaba tan ocupado que me dijo de (*to*) volver esta tarde.
10. ¿Supieron V. V. sus lecciones hoy ? 11. Las supimos muy bien.
12. ¿Quién le dió á V. tanto dinero ? 13. Pedí cien pesos á mi padre, y otros cien pesos á mi tio, y me los dieron en seguida.
14. ¿Sabe V. dónde puse mi baston ? 15. V. lo ha dejado en el otro cuarto.
16. ¿Quién trajo esto aquí ? 17. No sé, pero creo que es el hombre que vino anoche.
18. ¿Ha venido el cartero ? 19. En este mismo instante ; ahí tiene V. las cartas.
20. ¿Quién fué el primer rey de Roma ? 21. Rómulo fué el primero.
22. ¿Creyó V. esto ? 23. Sí, lo creí, y todo el mundo lo creyó tambien.
24. El general murió en la batalla.
25. ¿Estuvo V. anoche en el teatro ? 26. No, señor ; estuve en el concierto.
27. Los hermanos Rodriguez estuvieron aquí ayer, sentimos muchísimo haber (*having*) éstado afuera.
28. ¿Oyó V. lo que dijo este hombre ? 29. Oí todo lo que dijo.
30. El caballero que vino ayer está todavía durmiendo ; nos dijo que venia muy can-

sado del viaje. 31. Newton nació en el mismo año en que murió Galileo. 32. Porqué no quiso V. ir al parque con los otros caballeros ? 33. Porque no quisieron ir á pie. 34. Mi padre vivió en este pais cuando tenia veinte años. 35. El banquero dió un baile la semana pasada.

### Exercise 76.

1. What did that man tell you ? 2. He told me that he had no money, and that he could not pay you. 3. The Arabs were always an indomitable nation ; the Romans themselves could not subdue them. 4. Louis XIV. was a great king. 5. He read the letter and gave it to his father. 6. The general presented his sons to the king. 7. They gave all their money to the poor. 8. My brother went first to France and then to England. 9. The rain fell for (*durante*) three days. 10. He brought a great deal of money, and bought many things for his friends. 11. He took his friend by the hand and presented him to his father. 12. God made the heaven and the earth. 13. We had very bad weather in the country. 14. He put the money on the table and went out. 15. Several generals died in that battle. 16. We felt the cold more this year than last year. 17. What did your sister do when she heard of the death of her best friend ? 18. She wept a great deal, and we could not comfort her. 19. The children went to the park with their father. 20. We could not do that, and nobody in the house could do it. 21. Why could you not write to him ? 22. Because I did not know what to write. 23. The boy came and brought this letter for you. 24. My father gave us money and we went to the theater. 25. Why did you not come earlier ? 26. We could not come because we were very busy. 27. What did you do in the city ? 28. We bought all the things that we needed. 29. Napoleon was a great general. 30. Did you ask him for the money ? 31. I only asked him for twenty dollars, and he gave them to me. 32. We were very well received by your family.

### Gramática.

1. As seen above, the verbs **tener**, 2. *to have* ; **estar**, 1. *to be* ; **hacer**, 2. *to make, to do* ; **querer**, 2. *to wish, to be willing* ; **poder**, 2. *to be able* ; **poner**, 2. *to put* ; **saber**, 2. *to know* ; **decir**, 3. *to say* ; *to tell* ; **haber**, 2. *to have* (auxiliary and impersonal) ; **andar**, 1. *to*

### Grammar.

**walk; caber,** 2. *to be contained*; **traer,** 2. *to bring*; **conducir,** 3. *to conduct, to take*; and **venir,** 3. *to come*; have the same terminations for the Preterite, namely :

-e      -iste      -o      -imos      -isteis      -ieron,

having a sort of regularity among themselves in this Tense.

**2.** The verb **dar,** 1. *to give*, unlike the other verbs of the 1st conjugation takes, for the Preterite, the terminations of the regular verbs of the 2d and 3d conjugations, namely :

-i      -iste      -ió      -imos      -isteis      -ieron.

**3.** The verbs **ser,** 2. *to be*, and **ir,** 3. *to go*, as shown, have the same Preterite, namely :

f-uí      f-uiste      f-ué      f-uimos      f-uisteis      f-ueron.

**4.** Verbs like **pedir,** 3. *to ask for*; **sentir,** 3. *to feel, to regret*; etc., which in the Gerund change the *e* into *i* (**pidiendo, sintiendo**, etc.,) change also the same letter in the 3d person singular and 3d person plural of the Preterite (**pidió, pidiéron; sinto, sintiéron**, etc.).

Verbs like **dormir,** 3. *to sleep*; **morir,** 3. *to die*; etc., which in the Gerund change the *o* into *u* (**durmiento, muriendo**, etc.), change also the same letter in the 3d person singular and 3d person plural of the Preterite (**durmio, durmiéron; murió, muriéron**, etc.).

**5.** Verbs ending in the Infinitive in **car**, change in the Preterite *c* into **qu** before *e*: **tocar,** 1. *to touch*; **toqué,** *I touched* or *I did touch*; etc.

Verbs ending in **gar** insert a **u** before the **e** in the same tense : **jugar,** 1. *to play*; **jugué,** *I played* or *I did play*; etc.

Verbs ending in **eer** change the *i* into **y** before the **o**: **creer,** 2. *to believe*; **creyó,** *he believed*; etc.

Verbs ending in **uir** change the *i* into **y** before the **o**: **uir,** 3. *to flee*; **huyó,** *he fled*; etc.

**OBSERVATION.** — The changes above given also take place in other tenses and, in the two last cases, also before the letters **a** and **o**.

**Leccion XXXIX.****THE PAST ANTERIOR AND THE PLUPERFECT.****Past Anterior.**

Hube hablado, *I had spoken.*  
 Hubiste hablado, *thou hadst spoken.*  
 Hubo hablado, *he had spoken.*  
 Hubimos hablado, *we had spoken.*  
 Hubísteis hablado, *you had spoken.*  
 Hubiéron hablado, *they had spoken.*

**Lesson XXXIX.****Pluperfect.**

Habia hablado, *I had spoken.*  
 Habias hablado, *thou hadst spoken.*  
 Habia hablado, *he had spoken.*  
 Habiamos hablado, *we had spoken.*  
 Habiais hablado, *you had spoken.*  
 Habian hablado, *they had spoken.*

**Vocabulario.**

**El heredero,** *the heir.*  
**El nombre,** *the name.*  
**El periódico,** *the newspaper.*  
**El vapor,** *the steamer.*  
**La noticia,** *the news.*  
**La palabra,** *the word.*  
**La urbanidad,** *the urbanity.*  
**Abierto,** *opened.*  
**Á caballo,** *on horseback.*  
**Amistoso,** *friendly.*  
**Apénas,** *hardly, no sooner.*  
**Aún,** *yet.*  
**Cuando,** *when.*  
**Despues que,** *after.*  
**Qué,** *when.*  
**Triste,** *sad.*

**Vocabulary.**

<b>Tan pronto como,</b>	}	<i>as soon as.</i>
<b>Luego que,</b>		
<b>Así que,</b>		
<b>Al punto que,</b>		

**Ya,** *already.*  
**Comer,** 2. *to dine.*  
**Consultar,** 1. *to consult.*  
**Contener,** 2. *to contain.*  
**Entregar,** 1. *to hand.*  
**Llevar,** 1. *to take.*  
**Merecer,** 2. *to deserve.*  
**Montar,** 1. *to mount.*  
**Olvidar,** 1. *to forget.*  
**Pronunciar,** 1. *to pronounce.*  
**Tomar,** 1. *to take.*  
**Visitar,** 1. *to visit.*

**Exercise 77.**

1. ¿Qué hizo V. cuando hubo almorcado? 2. Tan pronto como hube almorcado, volví á mi escritorio. 3. Así que me hubo visto, me dió el dinero. 4. Apénas me hubo dicho estas palabras, cuando salió. 5. Luego que hubo leido la carta, montó á caballo y salió de la ciudad. 6. ¿Dónde había olvidado V. su bastón? 7. Yo no había olvidado mi bastón, había olvidado mí paraguas; lo que era peor, pues comenzó á llover muchísimo. 8. Cuando hubo vistado la casa, dijo que no quería comprarla. 9. Yo había salido cuando entraron los ladrones en mi cuarto. 10. Cuando hubiéron abierto la puerta,

viéron que no habia nada que robar. 11. Guillermo no habia aprendido su leccion, y habia sido castigado como lo merecia. 12. Despues que hubo visto á su amigo, estuvo mas satisfecho. 13. ¿ Habia recibido su padre la carta cuando salió ? 14. Aún no la habia recibido. 15. Cuando hubo comido, tomó su sombrero y dijo que tenia que salir. 16. Me entregó el dinero tan pronto como lo hubo recibido. 17. Cuando hubo vendido su casa, compró otra mas grande. 18. Cuando le hubo dicho mi nombre, me recibió con la mayor urbanidad. 19. Al punto que me hubo visto, me hizo seña de (*to*) seguirle. 20. Me prestó el libro así que le hube dado otro. 21. Despues que hubo llegado, me escribió una carta muy amistosa. 22. Luego que hubo muerto el general, vendieron los herederos la casa. 23. Ya habia yo leido la carta cuando llegó mi hermano. 24. ¿ Habia hablado V. al médico ? 25. Si, yo le habia consultado varias yeces.

### Exercise 78.

- When he had said what he had to say, he left (*salió de*) the house.
- As soon as the father had read what the letter of his son contained, he handed it to me.
- Hardly had he said that when his friend entered.
- What did you do when you had dined ?
- I went to my friend's, who took me to the theater.
- When I had written my letters I went out.
- As soon as I had finished my work I gave it to him.
- After he had visited the city he returned to the country.
- We had hardly breakfasted when we heard the news.
- Had you seen my lawyer ?
- I had seen yours and mine.
- The children had told me that you had gone out.
- I wished to go out, but I had no umbrella and it was raining.
- When they heard that I had received good news they all came to (*á*) see me.
- When they had read the newspapers they wrote their letters.
- After they had seen our house they wished to buy it, but my father would not sell it.
- The steamers had arrived, but we had not received any letters.
- The father had died without seeing (*ver*) his sons.
- Why had you opened the door ?
- Because I was too warm with the door closed.
- Mr. Martin had not arrived this morning when I was at his house.
- Had you not heard that he was yet in Boston ?
- I had not heard anything.
- To whom had you spoken ?
- I had spoken to the servants.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** The Past Anterior is formed from the Preterite of the auxiliary **haber**, *to have*, and the Past Participle of the verb ; while the Pluperfect of the Indicative is composed of the Imperfect Indicative of the same auxiliary, and the Past Participle of the verb :

Cuando hube reconocido (*past anterior*) mi error, me avergonzé de lo que había hecho (*pluperfect*).

*When I had perceived my error, I was ashamed of what I had done.*

**2.** The Past Anterior generally expresses that an *action took place immediately before* another *past* action or event.

This Tense is principally used after one of the conjunctions : **despues que**, *after* ; **luego que**, *así que*, *al momento que*, *al punto que*, *as soon as* ; **apenas**, *hardly*, *scarcely*, *no sooner* :

Despues que — así que — cuando hubo comido, salió,

*After — as soon as — when he had dined, he went out.*

Se embarcó luego que hubo recibido el pasaporte,

*He embarked as soon as he had received the passport.*

OBSERVATIONS. — **1.** As seen by the examples given, the verb of the principal sentence must be in the Preterite when the tense of the subordinate sentence is in the Anterior.

**2.** The conjunctions and conjunctive locutions above given do not necessarily require the verb to be put in the Past Anterior tense ; they may be frequently used with other tenses :

Así que hemos comido, vamos á pasar,

*As soon as we have dined, we go and take a walk.*

Apénas tuvo el dinero cuando me pagó,

*He had hardly the money when he paid me.*

**3.** The Pluperfect marks an action or event not only as *past in itself*, but also past *with regard to some other past action or event* :

Habíamos pensado que V. vendría temprano,

*We had thought that you would come early.*

OBSERVATION. — Nearly all the rules given for the Imperfect may be applied to the Pluperfect.

**Leccion XL.****Lesson XL.****THE FUTURE AND FUTURE ANTERIOR.****Regular Verbs.***1st Conjugation.***Amar**, to love.**Amar-é**, I shall or will love.**Amar-ás**, thou shalt or wilt love.**Amar-á**, he shall or will love.**Amar-émos**, we shall or will love.**Amar-éis**, you shall or will love.**Amar-án**, they shall or will love.**Hablar**, to speak.**Hablar-é**, I shall or will speak.**Hablar-ás**, thou shalt or wilt speak.**Hablar-á**, he shall or will speak.**Hablar-émos**, we shall or will speak.**Hablar-éis**, you shall or will speak.**Hablar-án**, they shall or will speak.*2d Conjugation.***Comer**, to eat.**Comer-é**, I shall or will eat.**Comer-ás**, thou shalt or wilt eat.**Comer-á**, he shall or will eat.**Comer-émos**, we shall or will eat.**Comer-éis**, you shall or will eat.**Comer-án**, they shall or will eat.**Beber**, to drink.**Beber-é**, I shall or will drink.**Beber-ás**, thou shalt or wilt drink.**Beber-á**, he shall or will drink.**Beber-émos**, we shall or will drink.**Beber-éis**, you shall or will drink.**Beber-án**, they shall or will drink.*3d Conjugation.***Recibir**, to receive.**Recibir-é**, I shall or will receive.**Recibir-ás**, thou shalt or wilt receive.**Recibir-á**, he shall or will receive.**Recibir-émos**, we shall or will receive.**Recibir-éis**, you shall or will receive.**Recibir-án**, they shall or will receive.**Partir**, to depart.**Partir-é**, I shall or will depart.**Partir-ás**, thou shalt or wilt depart.**Partir-á**, he shall or will depart.**Partir-émos**, we shall or will depart.**Partir-éis**, you shall or will depart.**Partir-án**, they shall or will depart.**Irregular Futures.****1. Hacer**, 2. to do, to make.**Haré**, I shall or will do.**Harás**, thou shalt or wilt do.**Hará**, he shall or will do.**Harémos**, we shall or will do.**Haréis**, you shall or will do.**Harán**, they shall or will do.**2. Poder**, 2. to be able.**Podré**, I shall or will be able.**Podrás**, thou shalt or wilt be able.**Podrá**, he shall or will be able.**Podrémos**, we shall or will be able.**Podréis**, you shall or will be able.**Podrán**, they shall or will be able.

**3. Poner, 2. to put.**

Pondré, *I shall or will put.*

Pondrás, *thou shalt or wilt put.*

Pondrá, *he shall or will put.*

Pondrémos, *we shall or will put.*

Pondréis, *you shall or will put.*

Pondrán, *they shall or will put.*

**5. Saber, 2. to know.**

Sabré, *I shall or will know.*

Sabrás, *thou shalt or wilt know.*

Sabrá, *he shall or will know.*

Sabrémos, *we shall or will know.*

Sabréis, *you shall or will know.*

Sabrán, *they shall or will know.*

**7. Venir, 3. to come.**

Vendré, *I shall or will come.*

Vendrás, *thou shalt or wilt come.*

Vendrá, *he shall or will come.*

Vendrémos, *we shall or will come.*

Vendréis, *you shall or will come.*

Vendrán, *they shall or will come.*

**9. Salir, 3. to go out.**

Saldré, *I shall or will go out.*

Saldrás, *thou shalt or wilt go out.*

Saldrá, *he shall or will go out.*

Saldrémos, *we shall or will go out.*

Saldréis, *you shall or will go out.*

Saldrán, *they shall or will go out.*

**11. Tener, 2. to have.**

Tendré, *I shall or will have.*

Tendrás, *thou shalt or wilt have.*

Tendrá, *he shall or will have.*

Tendrémos, *we shall or will have.*

Tendréis, *you shall or will have.*

Tendrán, *they shall or will have.*

**4. Querer, 2. to wish, to be willing.**

Querré, *I shall or will wish.*

Querrás, *thou shalt or wilt wish.*

Querrá, *he shall or will wish.*

Querrémos, *we shall or will wish.*

Querréis, *you shall or will wish.*

Querrán, *they shall or will wish.*

**6. Valer, 2. to be worth.**

Valdré, *I shall or will be worth.*

Valdrás, *thou shalt or wilt be worth.*

Valdrá, *he shall or will be worth.*

Valdrémos, *we shall or will be worth.*

Valdréis, *you shall or will be worth.*

Valdrán, *they shall or will be worth.*

**8. Decir, 3. to say, to tell.**

Diré, *I shall or will say.*

Dirás, *thou shalt or wilt say.*

Dirá, *he shall or will say.*

Dirémos, *we shall or will say.*

Diréis, *you shall or will say.*

Dirán, *they shall or will say.*

**10. Ir,\* 3. to go.**

Iré, *I shall or will go.*

Irás, *thou shalt or wilt go.*

Irá, *he shall or will go.*

Irémos, *we shall or will go.*

Iréis, *you shall or will go.*

Irán, *they shall or will go.*

**12. Haber, 2. to have.**

Habré, *I shall or will have.*

Habrá, *thou shalt or wilt have.*

Habrá, *he shall or will have.*

Habrémos, *we shall or will have.*

Habréis, *you shall or will have.*

Habrán, *they shall or will have.*

\* The verb *ir*, 3. to go, although one of the most irregular verbs in Spanish, forms its future regularly.

**Vocabulario.**

**El mérito,** *the merit.*  
**El negocio,** *the business.*  
**La procesion,** *the procession.*  
**Así que,** *so that.*  
**Junio,** m. *June.*  
**Necesario,** *necessary.*

**Vocabulary.**

<b>Pronto,</b> <i>soon.</i>	<b>Pasar,</b> 1. <i>to pass.</i>
<b>Segun,</b> <i>according to.</i>	<b>Pensar,</b> 1. <i>to think.</i>
<b>Siempre,</b> <i>always.</i>	<b>Perdonar,</b> 1. <i>to forgive.</i>
<b>Acabar,</b> 1. <i>to finish.</i>	<b>Prometer,</b> 2. <i>to promise.</i>
<b>Asegurar,</b> 1. <i>to assure.</i>	<b>Tratar,</b> 1. <i>to treat.</i>
<b>Enriquecer,</b> 2. <i>to enrich.</i>	<b>Vencer,</b> 2. <i>to conquer.</i>

**Exercise 79.**

1. ¿Cuando vendrá V. á vernos? 2. Irémos un dia de estos, cuando no estémos tan ocupados. 3. ¿Como lo sabrá V.? 4. Mi hermano me lo dirá. 5. Veré muy pronto si V. sabrá sus lecciones. 6. Le aseguro á V. que las sabré. 7. El panadero vino esta mañana y dijó que no podrá volver hoy. 8. ¿Cuando tendrá V. el dinero. 9. Lo tendré esta tarde. 10. Á qué hora comerémos hoy? 11. Comerémos muy temprano. 12. ¿Cuando habrá V. acabado su trabajo? 13. Lo habré acabado mañana por la mañana. 14. ¿Qué beberá V.? 15. Beberé agua si V. no tiene vino. 16. Hoy recibirémos todo lo que necesitamos. 17. ¿Qué harán V. V. si no tienen dinero? 18. Harémos lo que siempre hemos hecho. 19. ¿Vendrá su hermano de V. hoy? 20. Vendrá si tiene tiempo. 21. ¿Qué dirá su padre si sabe esto? 22. Dirá que V. ha hecho muy mal en no consultarle. 23. ¿Cuando saldrán los muchachos? 24. No saldrán hoy, pues el tiempo está malísimo. 25. ¿No irá V. al concierto de la señorita Abel. 26. No podré ir, pues no estaré en la ciudad. 27. Dios nos tratará segun nuestros méritos. 28. V. no habrá acabado su trabajo mañana, porque V. no trabaja bastante; y yo habré acabado el mio, porque trabajo sin perder (*losing*) un momento. 29. ¿Cree V. que Juan hará lo que le he dicho? 30. Él no querrá hacerlo. 31. Mis hermanas han ido al campo, pero volverán la semana que viene. 32. Espero que mi amigo me perdonará. 33. V. podrá salir tan pronto como habrá acabado lo que tiene que hacer. 34. ¿Que dirán V. V. á estos hombres? 35. No les hablarémos.

**Exercise 80.**

1. When will you receive letters from your family? 2. I shall receive one to-morrow. 3. This business will enrich us all. 4. Will you write to me? 5. I will write to you every week. 6. When will you go out with the children? 7. I will go out this afternoon.

8. They will conquer or die. 9. Will you be able to do it without me ?  
 10. I don't know if I shall be able to do it. 11. How much money  
 will you give to your brother ? 12. I will give him enough for his  
 journey. 13. Will it be necessary to tell him anything ? 14. It will  
 be better (*valdrá mas*) not to say anything. 15. If we go to his house,  
 he will treat us well. 16. Do you think that I shall be able to speak  
 Spanish in two years ? 17. You will speak pretty well, if you are willing  
 to study. 18. When will the procession pass ? 19. It will pass  
 at three o'clock. 20. I will go and (*á*) see them as soon as I shall  
 have finished this work. 21. If we go out now, our teacher will see  
 us. 22. When will your cousin go to the country ? 23. He will go in  
 the month of June. 24. When will you send me the book that you  
 promised me ? 25. I will send it to you to-morrow morning.  
 26. Shall you be at home this afternoon. 27. Yes, sir, I shall be  
 (there). 28. My friend has not received any letter, so that he will  
 not be able to tell you anything. 29. Will it be necessary to go to  
 your house this evening ? 30. It will not be necessary. 31. How  
 much money shall you receive ? 32. I don't know how much I shall  
 receive. 33. Have the boys finished their lessons ? 34. They will  
 soon have done (*finished*). 35. I know what he has said, but I shall  
 not say a word.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The Future of regular verbs is formed by adding to the Present Infinitive the following terminations :

-é      -ás      -á      -émos      -éis      -án

The termination of the Future is the same for all verbs, whether regular or irregular, the radical part alone being changed for the latter.

**2.** The verb **satisfacer**, 2. *to satisfy*, is conjugated like **hacer**, 2. *to do, to make*; the **f** being, however, preserved through the conjugation : **satisfago**, *I satisfy*, **satisfaré**, *I shall or will satisfy*, etc.

**3.** **Caber**, 2. *to contain, to be contained*, has the same irregularity as **poder**, 2. *to be able*, and makes **cabré**, etc., in the Future.

**4.** All the other verbs which form their Future irregularly, have been given above. Their derivatives are conjugated in the same way.

Thus : **componer**, 2. *to mend*, **deponer**, 2. *to lay down*, **disponer**, 2. *to dispose*, **oponer**, 2. *to oppose*, etc., are conjugated in the Future like **poner**, 2. *to put*.

**Contener**, 2. *to contain*, **detener**, 2. *to detain*, **obtener**, 2. *to obtain*, etc., are conjugated like **tener**, 2. *to have*,

**Equivaler**, 2. *to be equivalent*, is conjugated like **valer**, 2. *to be worth*.

OBSERVATION. — **Valer mas**, lit.: *to be worth more*, is rendered in English by **to be better**.

**Avenir**, 3. *to happen*, **convenir**, 3. *to agree*, **intervenir**, 3. *to interfere*, etc., form their Future like **venir**, 3. *to come*.

**Predecir**, 3. *to foretell*, **contradecir**, 3. *to contradict*, **desdecir**, 3. *to deny*, form their Future like **decir**, 3. *to say, to tell*.

**Bendecir**, 3. *to bless*, and **maldecir**, 3. *to curse*, of which the Past Participle is **bendecido** (or **bendito**), and also **maldito**, form, however, their Future regularly :

*Bendeciré*, *I shall or will bless*.

*Bendecirémos*, *we shall or will bless*.

*Bendecirás*, *thou shalt or wilt bless*.

*Bendeciréis*, *you shall or will bless*.

*Bendecirá*, *he shall or will bless*.

*Bendecirán*, *they shall or will bless*.

**5.** The Future is often used in Spanish instead of the Imperative :

*Irás á la plaza y comprarás un pollo*,     *Go to the market and buy a chicken.*

**6.** The *Future Anterior* is formed from the Past Participle of the verb conjugated with the Future of the auxiliary **haber**, *to have* :

*Habré acabado esta noche*,     *I shall have finished to-night.*

**Leccion XLI.****Lesson XLI.****IMPERATIVE MOOD.***1st Conjugation.***Hablar**, 1. *to speak.***Comprar**, 1. *to buy.***Cantar**, 1. *to sing.*

Yo habl-**o**, *I speak*; { Habl-**e** V. (*sing.*) or habl-**en** V. V. (*pl.*), *speak (you).*  
 Habl-**emos**, *let us speak.*

Yo compr-**o**, *I buy*; { Compr-**e** V. (*sing.*) or compr-**en** V. V. (*pl.*), *buy (you).*  
 Compr-**emos**, *let us buy.*

Yo cant-**o**, *I sing*; { Cant-**e** V. (*sing.*) or cant-**en** V. V. (*pl.*), *sing (you).*  
 Cant-**emos**, *let us sing.*

*2d and 3d Conjugations.***Comer**, 2. *to eat.***Beber**, 2. *to drink.***Vender**, 2. *to sell.***Dicir**, 3. *to say, to tell.***Venir**, 3. *to come.***Salir**, 3. *to go out.*

Yo com-**o**, *I eat*; { Com-**a** V. (*sing.*) or com-**an** V. V. (*pl.*), *eat (you).*  
 Com-**amos**, *let us eat.*

Yo beb-**o**, *I drink*; { Beb-**a** V. (*sing.*) or beb-**an** V. V. (*pl.*), *drink (you).*  
 Beb-**amos**, *let us drink.*

Yo vend-**o**, *I sell*; { Vend-**a** V. (*sing.*) or vend-**an** V. V. (*pl.*), *sell (you).*  
 Vend-**amos**, *let us sell.*

Yo dig-**o**, *I say, I tell*; { Dig-**a** V. (*sing.*), *say or tell (you).*  
 Dig-**an** V. V. (*pl.*), *say or tell (you).*  
 Dig-**amos**, *let us say or tell.*

Yo veng-**o**, *I come*; { Veng-**a** V. (*sing.*) or veng-**an** V. V. (*pl.*), *come (you).*  
 Veng-**amos**, *let us come.*

Yo salg-**o**, *I go out*; { Salg-**a** V. (*sing.*) or salg-**an** V. V. (*pl.*), *go (you) out.*  
 Salg-**amos**, *let us go out.*

**RULE.** — The **o** of the 1st Person of the Present Indicative is changed into **e** and **en** for the 1st Conjugation, and into **a** and **an** for the 2d and 3d Conjugations.

*Exceptions.*

**Ser, 2. to be;**      { Sea V. (*sing.*) or sean V. V. (*pl.*), *be (you).*  
                                   { Seamos, *let us be.*

**Estar, 1. to be;**      { Esté V. (*sing.*) or esten V. V. (*pl.*), *be (you).*  
                                   { Estemos, *let us be.*

**Dar, 1. to give;**      { Dé V. (*sing.*) or den V. V. (*pl.*), *give (you).*  
                                   { Démos, *let us give.*

**Saber, 2. to know;**      { Sepa V. (*sing.*) or sepan V. V. (*pl.*), *know (you).*  
                                   { Sepamos, *let us know.*

**Ir, 3. to go;**      { Vaya V. (*sing.*) or vayan V. V. (*pl.*), *go (you).*  
                                   { Vayamos, *let us go.*

**Imperative with Pronouns.**

Traigame V. esto,	<i>Bring me this.</i>
No se lo dé V.,	<i>Do not give it to him.</i>
Véndanos V. su caballo,	<i>Sell us your horse.</i>
Préstemelo V.,	<i>Lend it to me.</i>
Búsquelos V.,	<i>Look for them.</i>
No lo corte V.,	<i>Do not cut it.</i>
Vengan V. V. esta noche,	<i>Come this evening.</i>
No salgan V. V. ahora,	<i>Do not go out now.</i>
Dígamelo V.,	<i>Tell it to me.</i>
No se lo diga V. á nadie,	<i>Do not tell it to anybody.</i>
Salgamos un rato,	<i>Let us go out for a moment.</i>
Ven aquí, Juanito,	<i>Come here, Johnny.</i>
Vuelva V. esta noche,	<i>Return this evening.</i>
No hablen V. V. tanto,	<i>Do not speak so much.</i>
Trabajemos,	<i>Let us work.</i>
No hagas eso,	<i>Do not do that.</i>
Confórmate con tu suerte,	<i>Be satisfied with your lot.</i>
Ponga V. el libro sobre la mesa,	<i>Put the book on the table.</i>
Dígale V. á Juan que su padre ha llegado,	<i>Tell John that his father has arrived.</i>
Hablad á este hombre,	<i>Speak to that man.</i>

**Vocabulario.**

<b>El asunto,</b> <i>the matter.</i>	<b>La verdad,</b> <i>the truth.</i>
<b>El boticario,</b> <i>the drug-gist.</i>	<b>La virtud,</b> <i>the virtue.</i>
<b>El coche,</b> <i>the coach.</i>	<b>Alto,</b> <i>loud.</i>
<b>El correo,</b> <i>the post, the mail.</i>	<b>Enfadado,</b> <i>angry.</i>
<b>El estado,</b> <i>the condition.</i>	<b>Ligero,</b> <i>quick.</i>
<b>El favor,</b> <i>the favor.</i>	<b>Pronto,</b> <i>quickly.</i>
<b>El ruido,</b> <i>the noise.</i>	<b>Quieto,</b> <i>quiet.</i>
<b>El temor,</b> <i>the fear.</i>	<b>Turbulento,</b> <i>boisterous.</i>
<b>La cancion,</b> <i>the song.</i>	<b>Amar,</b> 1. <i>to love.</i>
<b>La patria,</b> <i>the country.</i>	<b>Abrir,</b> 3. <i>to open.</i>
	<b>Cantar,</b> 1. <i>to sing.</i>
	<b>Correr,</b> 2. <i>to run.</i>

**Vocabulary.**

<b>Emplear,</b> 1. <i>to employ.</i>
<b>Encender,</b> 2. <i>to light.</i>
<b>Llevar,</b> 1. <i>to take.</i>
<b>Obedecer,</b> 2. <i>to obey.</i>
<b>Oir,</b> 3. <i>to hear.</i>
<b>Olvidar,</b> 1. <i>to forget.</i>
<b>Pagar,</b> 1. <i>to pay.</i>
<b>Practicar,</b> 1. <i>to practise.</i>
<b>Prestar,</b> 1. <i>to lend.</i>
<b>Salir,</b> 3. <i>to leave.</i>
<b>Saltar,</b> 1. <i>to jump.</i>
<b>Tomar,</b> 1. <i>to take.</i>

**Exercise 81.**

1. No tenga V. miedo, el perro no muerde.
2. Emplee V. bien el tiempo.
3. Amemos nuestra patria.
4. Sepa V. sus lecciones mañana.
5. No digas todo lo que haces, pero hagas todo lo que dices.
6. Esté V. quieto.
7. Mándeme V. mis libros por el muchacho.
8. Seamos amigos.
9. Déme V. esto, lo necesito.
10. Pregunte V. si el Señor Martinez está en casa.
11. Vaya V. á casa del Señor Gutierrez y dígale que le quiero ver.
12. Salga V. de aquí y no vuelva mas.
13. Venga V. pronto, yo le necesito á V.
14. Dígame V. quién ha hecho esto.
15. Hágame V. el favor de (*to*) decirme dónde vive el médico.
16. Hay uno que vive en esta casa.
17. Sepa V. que soy el mejor amigo que V. tiene.
18. Tome V. este dinero y déselo á este pobre.
19. Hable V. sin temor, y diga la verdad.
20. Muchachos, no jueguen en la calle.
21. Corra V. pronto y traigame mi paráguas.
22. Hable V. á ese hombre, y pregúntele lo que quiere.
23. Háblele V. mismo, yo no hablo frances.
24. Tome V. un coche, si V. no quiere ir á pié.
25. No hagas eso, amiguito.
26. Déme V. la mano ; muy bien, ahora salte V.
27. No me hable V., estoy enfadado con V.
28. Digamos siempre la verdad.
29. Piense V. en (*of*) mí.
30. Escribame V. de Paris.
31. Créame, amigo, la cosa no es así.
32. Salgamos, ya es tarde.
33. Démos V. nuestro dinero, lo necesitamos.
34. Lleve V. esa carta al correo ; ya es tiempo.
35. Vámonos temprano.
36. No venga V. tan tarde mañana, pues tengo que salir.

## Exercise 82.

1. Take this key, open my room, and bring me my stick. 2. Let us write our letters, the mail leaves to-night. 3. Come early to-morrow morning, we have a great deal to do. 4. Do not go out without me. 5. Write to us every week from Paris. 6. Give something to that poor man ; he is hungry. 7. Be my friend. 8. Go out, I don't need you here. 9. Don't speak to that man, he is not your friend. 10. Take this letter to your father, and tell him that I wish to see him. 11. Speak louder, I cannot hear you. 12. Do me the favor to (*de*) give me a piece of bread. 13. Call that gentleman, he has forgotten something. 14. Give me something to (*que*) drink, I am very thirsty. 15. Ask that woman if Mr. Zamora is at home. 16. Do not run so fast, it is not late. 17. Do not believe what that man says, he never tells the truth. 18. Light the gas ; we don't see anything here. 19. Shut the door ; we do not wish to be seen. 20. Don't buy that house, it is in very poor (*mal*) condition. 21. Take this and give it to your sister. 22. Do not make so much noise, your little brother is sleeping. 23. Tell me all that you know about (*de*) this matter. 24. Write to this merchant and tell him that we need blue cloth. 25. Go to the druggist's, but return quickly. 26. If you do not need your book, lend it to me. 27. I will tell you something, but do not tell it to anybody. 28. Obey your masters. 29. Let us love and practise virtue. 30. Let us see who is at the door. 31. Here is a dollar, take it and pay that man. 32. Do not be so boisterous, your mother is not well. 33. Come here, I have something to tell you. 34. Do not give her that, she is too small yet. 35. Let us sing a Spanish song.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

1. Those verbs which insert an **i** in the conjugation of certain tenses, as **encender**, 2. *to light* ; **comenzar**, 1. *to commence* ; etc. (L. 33, R. 2), and those which change *o* into **ue**, as **almorzar**, 1. *to breakfast* ; **morder**, 2. *to bite* ; etc. (L. 33, R. 2) do not change their radical in the first person plural of the Imperative :

Enciendo, <i>I light</i> ;	encendamos, <i>let us light</i> .
Comienzo, <i>I commence</i> ;	comenzemos, <i>let us commence</i> .
Muerdo, <i>I bite</i> ;	mordamos, <i>let us bite</i> .
Almuerzo, <i>I breakfast</i> ;	almorzemos, <i>let us breakfast</i> .

NOTE.—**Pedir**, 3. *to ask*, **sentir**, 3. *to feel*, and a few others, make **pidamos**, *let us ask*, **sintamos**, *let us feel*, etc.

**Dormir**, 3. *to sleep*, and **morir**, 3. *to die*, make **durmamos**, *let us sleep*, and **muramos**, *let us die*,

**2.** Verbs ending in **car** change the **c** into **qu** before an **e**. Those ending in **gar** insert a **u** after the **g** and before an **e**:

Busquelo V., *look for it.*      Juegue V., *play.*

For other changes required by the rules of Pronunciation see Lesson 38.

**3.** The pronouns **usted** (V.), and **ustedes** (V. V.) must accompany the Imperative in the second person plural:

Venga V., *come* ;      Vengan V.V., *come*.

**a.** These pronouns may be left out if there exists a certain familiarity between the speaker and the person addressed, and we can say :

Venga aquí, *come here* ;      Vengan aquí, *come here*.

Politeness does not admit of this omission, however.

**b.** If two or more Imperatives occur in the same sentence, it is sufficient that the pronoun should accompany the first Imperative :

Vaya V. á mi cuarto, y traigame mi libro,      *Go to my room and bring me my book.*

**4.** For rules referring to the place of the pronouns accompanying the Imperative see L. 22, 30, 31. The student will have to bear in mind, however, that the pronouns **usted** and **ustedes** are always placed last in the Imperative.

**5.** Besides the three persons of the Imperative given above, there is also a second person singular which is used as the pronoun **tú** when speaking to friends, relations, children, etc.

The verb **estar**, 1. makes in the 2d person singular **esté**, *be (thou)*, **ser**, 2. makes **se**, *be (thou)*.

**a.** **Hablar**, 1. *to speak*, **cortar**, 1. *to cut*, **amar**, 1. *to love*, make in the imperative *habla*, *corta*, *ama*.    **Vender**, 2. *to sell*, **comer**,

2. *to eat, beber*, 2. *to drink, make vendé, come, bebe. Recibir*, 3. *to receive, dividir*, 3. *to divide, abrir*, 3. *to open, make recibe, divide, abre.*

b. Some verbs in the same person, end with an **e** instead of an **a**, as : **oye**, *hear (thou)*, **conduce**, *conduct or take (thou)*, **pide**, *ask (thou)*, etc. Other verbs drop the last letter or the last syllable of the second person plural : **ten**, *have (thou)*, **pon**, *put (thou)*, **ven**, *come (thou)*, **di**, *say (thou)*, **sal**, *go out (thou)*, etc.

c. The Imperative negative of the second person singular is expressed by means of the subjunctive :

No hables, <i>do not speak.</i>	No salgas, <i>do not go out.</i>
No vengas, <i>do not come.</i>	

**6.** Besides the terminations given, there are also two others ending for the 2d person plural of the Imperative, namely : **d**, preceded by *a*, *e*, and *i*, and **is**, preceded by *a* or *e* :

Sed,	<b>{</b> <i>be</i>	No seais,	<b>{</b> <i>be not.</i>
Estad,		No esteis,	
Comed,	<i>eat.</i>	No comais,	<i>do not eat.</i>
Venid,	<i>come.</i>	No vengais,	<i>do not come.</i>

These forms of the Imperative are used with **vosotros** (see the use of this pronoun L. 4, R. 3) ; the second form being used in the negative.

**7.** The second person singular is generally used in proverbs, maxims, etc. :

Ama á tu prójimo como á tí mismo,	<i>Love thy neighbor as thyself.</i>
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

---

## Leccion XLII.

## Lesson XLII.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

**1.** The First Person Singular or Plural of the Present of the Subjunctive is formed in the same way as the Imperative (see

Lesson 41, p. 223), while the other Persons may easily be conjugated with their proper terminations, as is shown below. The same exceptions exist in this tense as in the Imperative.

### *1st Conjugation.*

#### **Hablar, to speak.**

Que yo habl-e,	<i>that I may speak.</i>
Que tu habl-es,	<i>that thou mayest speak.</i>
Que él habl-e,	<i>that he may speak.</i>
Que nosotros habl-emos,	<i>that we may speak.</i>
Que vosotros habl-éis,	<i>that you may speak.</i>
Que ellos habl-en,	<i>that they may speak.</i>

### *2d Conjugation.*

#### **Vender, to sell.**

Que yo vend-a,	<i>that I may sell.</i>
Que tu vend-as,	<i>that thou mayest sell.</i>
Que él vend-a,	<i>that he may sell.</i>
Que nosotros vend-amos,	<i>that we may sell.</i>
Que vosotros vend-áis,	<i>that you may sell.</i>
Que ellos vend-an,	<i>that they may sell.</i>

### *3d Conjugation.*

#### **Recibir, to receive.**

Que yo recib-a,	<i>that I may receive.</i>
Que tu recib-as,	<i>that thou mayest receive.</i>
Que él recib-a,	<i>that he may receive.</i>
Que nosotros recib-amos,	<i>that we may receive.</i>
Que vosotros recib-áis,	<i>that you may receive.</i>
Que ellos recib-an,	<i>that they may receive.</i>

### *Exceptions.*

#### **Ser, 2. to be.**

Que yo sea,	<i>that I may be.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

#### **Estar, 1. to be.**

Que yo esté,	<i>that I may be.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Haber, 2. (auxiliary) to have.**

Que yo haya,                            *that I may have.*  
 etc.                                        etc.

**Dar, 1. to give.**

Que yo dé,                            *that I may give.*  
 etc.                                        etc.

**Saber, 2. to know.**

Que yo sepa,                            *that I may know.*  
 etc.                                        etc.

**Ir, 3. to go.**

Que yo vaya,                            *that I may go.*  
 etc.                                        etc.

**Vocabulario.**

El carbon, *the coal.*  
 El ejército, *the army.*  
 El empleo, *the employment.*  
 El invierno, *the winter.*  
 El momento, *the moment.*  
 La lengua, *the language.*  
 La leña, *the wood.*  
 Á menos que, *unless.*  
 Aunque, *although.*  
 Con tal que, *provided.*  
 Contrario, *contrary.*  
 Desgraciado, *unfortunate.*

Hasta que, *until.*  
 Listo, *ready.*  
 Menester, *necessary.*  
 Natural, *natural.*  
 Por mas...que, *however.*  
 Satisfecho, *satisfied.*  
 Sorprendido, *surprised.*  
 Tonto, *foolish.*  
 Buscar, 1. *to look for.*  
 Convenir, 3. *to be proper.*  
 Convidar, 1. *to invite.*  
 Desear, 1. *to desire.*

**Vocabulary.**

Esperar, 1. *to wait.*  
 Marchar, 1. *to march.*  
 Preferir, 3. *to prefer.*  
 Preparar, 1. *to prepare.*  
 Pretender, 2. *to pretend.*  
 Querer, 2. *to grant.*  
 Sentir, 3. *to regret.*  
 Suplicar, 1. *to entreat.*  
 Temer, 2. *to fear.*  
 Ver, 2. *to see.*

**Exercise 83.**

1. ¿Qué quiere V. que yo haga? 2. Quiero que V. escriba á su amigo y que le diga de venir. 3. Me alegra (*I am glad*) que V. esté satisfecho de mi trabajo. 4. Estoy sorprendido de que V. no sepa nada de eso. 5. Es necesario que salgamos temprano, pues debemos llegar á la ciudad ántes de la noche. 6. Siento que V. no tenga el dinero que V. me prometió. 7. Es posible que las cartas lleguen hoy. 8. Es de desear que acabemos hoy. 9. Es mejor que V. no le diga nada. 10. No conviene que V. hable tanto. 11. Deseo que V. vaya en seguida á su casa. 12. Dios quiera que no lleguemos demasiado

tardé. 13. ¿ Cree V. que él pueda venir la semana que viene ? 14. No creo que lo pueda. 15. Es tiempo que acabe el invierno, pues ya no tenemos carbon ni leña. 16. Si es verdad (*true*) que su padre llegue mañana, será menester prepararle un cuarto. 17. Déme V. una lección que sea mas fácil. 18. ¿ Cuando quiere V. que yo le devuelva el dinero ? 19. Devuélvamelo tan pronto como V. pueda. 20. He suplicado á mi amigo que venga á mi casa, pero él prefiere ir á la fonda. 21. Este hombre pretende que le dén un empleo. 22. Que venga si quiere. 23. Queremos que V. V. trabajen mas. 24. El maestro desea que aprendamos la lengua inglesa. 25. Tememos que este hombre sea nuestro enemigo. 26. No apruebo que V. salga todas las noches. 27. Puede ser que él vaya á Paris. 28. Quiero que V. me diga lo que sea la verdad. 29. Quiero un maestro que no sea demasiado joven. 30. Nuestro padre no quiere que durmamos tan tarde. 31. No encuentro ninguno que pueda prestarme el dinero que necesito. 32. Don Juan Morales es el mejor hombre que conozca. 33. Este es el mejor vino que haya bebido. 34. El me dará dinero hasta que yo haya encontrado un buen empleo. 35. Lo haré aunque no sepa muy bien hacerlo.

### Exercise 84.

1. Captain Henry is the bravest officer I know in the army.
2. It is the best bread we have had this year.
3. Here is, I think, the last book he has written.
4. I am surprised that your brother should come at (*en*) this moment.
5. He wishes me to return to-morrow, but I don't think that I shall be able to do it.
6. It is unfortunate that you should have lost all your money.
7. It is better for you to arrive in the morning.
8. Is it true that he has said that ?
9. I don't think he has said it.
10. At what time do you think he will be here ?
11. I don't think he can be here before eleven.
12. It is impossible for me to go out so early.
13. Although he is poor he has more friends than you.
14. Do you think that I am foolish enough to believe that ?
15. Is it possible that you should have spent so much money ?
16. My father wishes me to go to the country with him.
17. We wish you to study your lessons.
18. The general wishes that every soldier be ready to march.
19. God grant that he may live long (*muchos años*) !
20. I wish him to come and to bring the money.
21. It is very natural that he should think that I am his friend.
22. It is well (*bueno*) that he should know it.
23. I am looking for a

man who may be willing to lend me some money. 24. See that everything is ready. 25. I do not believe it, although he may say the (*lo*) contrary. 26. Wait till he comes. 27. I shall go out unless it rains. 28. We will wait for you, provided you do not come too late. 29. However rich he may be, he is unhappy. 30. Unless he invites me, I shall not go to his house. 31. I will buy that house when I have money enough. 32. He says he will come provided they send him a carriage. 33. I do not wish you to speak so.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** The Spanish **Subjunctive Mood** is used when the verb of the principal proposition expresses *command, consent, desire, will, wish, doubt, fear or apprehension, approbation, duty, ignorance, suspicion, convenience, entreaty, surprise, admiration, joy, wonder, necessity, possibility, denial, advice, prohibition, permission, warning*, and, in general, the emotions of the mind ; the two propositions being connected by the conjunction **que, that**.

The **Subjunctive Mood**, being always subordinate to the verb that precedes it, its tenses are regulated by this verb.

The **Present Subjunctive** is generally used when the preceding verb is in the *Present or Future Indicative*, and in the *Imperative*.

Le ruego que venga,	<i>I beg him to come.</i>
Le rogaré que venga,	<i>I will beg him to come.</i>
Ruégale V. que venga,	<i>beg him to come.</i>
Quiero que V. V. trabajen,	<i>I wish that you should work.</i>
Es posible que yo vaya,	<i>I may possibly go.</i>

**2.** The first proposition may be understood or may be placed after the Subjunctive :

Que venga si quiere, or Si quiere que venga, ¡ Dios lo quiera !	} <i>Let him come if he wishes.</i> <i>May God grant it !</i>
---	--

OBSERVATION. — In this last example the principal proposition is understood, the sentence being an abbreviation of :

¡ Deseo que Dios lo quiera !      *I desire that God may grant it !*

3. Spaniards never say *do you wish or require me, him, her, us, them, etc., to do so and so, etc.* Another expression with the Subjunctive Mood is used in such cases, and instead of *I wish you to come*, the Spaniards say :

Deseo que V. venga,      *I wish that you should come.*

4. The conjunction **que**, *that*, which connects the two propositions, can never be understood, as is often the case in English, but must be expressed and even repeated before every subordinate verb :

No creo que venga,      *I do not think he will come.*

Quiero que venga y que traiga el dinero,      *I wish him to come and to bring the money.*

OBSERVATION. — It does not follow when the two propositions of a sentence are joined by the conjunction **que**, *that*, that the verb of the second proposition must be put in the Subjunctive Mood. It requires for this, that the verb of the first proposition should express as said in Rule I, an idea of *command, consent, etc.* Thus we should say, using the Indicative :

Yo sé que él es rico,      *I know that he is rich.*

Creo que tiene razon,      *I believe that he is right.*

5. The subjunctive is generally used after verbs used interrogatively or negatively, when *doubt* is expressed. Thus if we say, using the Indicative :

Pienso que saldrá hoy,      *I think he will leave to-day;*

we should say, using the Subjunctive :

¿ Piensa V. que él salga hoy ?      *Do you think he will leave to-day ?*

This rule is, however, far from being absolute, for we can say with equal propriety :

Creo } que él salga mañana	<i>I believe }</i>
Espero }                  or	<i>I hope }</i>
Pienso } que él saldrá mañana	<i>I think }</i>

*that he will leave to-morrow.*

a. The second verb may in some cases be placed in the **Preterito perfecto**, *Preterite perfect*, of the Subjunctive, or in the **Futuro perfecto**, *Future perfect*, of the Indicative :

Presumo que le hayan encontrado, *or* } *I presume that they have met him.*  
 Presumo que le habrán encontrado, } *I presume that they have met him.*

**6.** There are certain verbs in Spanish, as **pretender**, 2. *to pretend*, which require the Present Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to their meaning :

Mi hermano pretende que le dén un empleo,

*My brother pretends (is of opinion) that they should give him a situation.*

Este hombre pretende que le ha dado á V. el dinero,

*This man pretends (insists) that he has given you the money.*

**7.** The Subjunctive is also used in Spanish after an Impersonal verb expressing an idea of *volition, doubt, necessity, contingency, uncertainty*, etc. (See Rule I.), as :

Es propio (conveniente or á propósito),	<i>It is proper.</i>
Es de desear,	<i>It is desirable.</i>
Conviene,	<i>It becomes.</i>
Es bueno,	<i>It is proper or well.</i>
Es malo,	<i>It is wrong.</i>
Es necesario,	<i>It is necessary.</i>
Es menester, {	
Es lástima,	<i>It is a pity.</i>
Es sorprendente,	<i>It is surprising.</i>
Es fácil,	<i>It is easy or possible.</i>
Es imposible,	<i>It is impossible.</i>
Es tiempo,	<i>It is time.</i>
Es suficiente. Basta,	<i>It is sufficient.</i>
Es natural,	<i>It is natural.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**8.** The Subjunctive is also used when the verb of the second proposition expresses some *contingent or future effect* :

Lo compraré cuando tenga dinero,      *I will buy it when I have money.*

Le hablaré así que le vea,      *I will speak to him when I see him.*

Lo haré ántes que él venga,      *I will do it before he comes.*

**9.** A *Relative Pronoun* either used alone or preceded by a noun, and any of the words **solo**, *alone*, **ninguno**, *no, none*, *no one*, **pocos**, *few*; **cualquiera**, *whatever*, **quiendrígua**, *whoever*, **nadie**, *nobody*, *no one*, **único**, *only thing*, **primero**, *first*, **último**, *last*, **más**, *more*, **mejor**, *best*, requires the Subjunctive when there is an idea of *uncertainty* :

Busco á un hombre que quiera pres-	<i>I am looking for a man willing to lend me money.</i>
tarme dinero,	
Esto es, creo, lo único que le per-	<i>This is, I think, the only thing be-</i>
tenezca,	<i>longing to him.</i>
Hay pocos que lo sepan,	<i>There are few who know it.</i>
Quienquiera que lo vea, pensará	<i>Whoever sees it will think as I do.</i>
como yo,	
Cualquiera que sea su fortuna, él	<i>Whatever be his fortune, he will</i>
morirá pobre,	<i>die poor.</i>

**10.** A few *Conjunctive expressions* require the Subjunctive Mood when they express a *doubt or uncertainty*. Such are :

<b>Á fin que, in order that.</b>	<b>Hasta que, until.</b>
<b>Á menos que, unless.</b>	<b>Léjos de que, far from.</b>
<b>Antés que, before.</b>	<b>Por poco que, however little.</b>
<b>Aunque, although.</b>	<b>Por mucho que, } however.</b>
<b>Aun cuando, although.</b>	<b>Por mas que,</b>
<b>Bien que, though.</b>	<b>Para que, in order that.</b>
<b>En caso que, in case that.</b>	<b>Siempre que, whenever.</b>
<b>Con tal que, provided that.</b>	<b>Supuesto que, supposing that.</b>
<b>; Ojalá! would to God!</b>	

**11.** For those verbs which change *c* into **qu**, and for those which insert a **u** after the *g* and before an *e*, and for other observations which refer to the Subjunctive, as well as to the Imperative, see grammatical part of Lesson XLI.

**12.** The Perfect of the Subjunctive is formed from the Present of the Subjunctive of the auxiliary **haber**, 2. *to have*, and the Past Participle of the verb :

Que yo haya hablado,	<i>That I may have spoken.</i>
Que hayamos salido,	<i>That we may have gone out.</i>

OBSERVATION.— All the general rules given on the use of the Present Subjunctive apply to the Perfect of the Subjunctive.

## Leccion XLIII.

## Lesson XLIII.

## IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Regular Verbs.

## 1st Conjugation.

- Que yo habl-ara or habl-ase,      *that I might or should speak.*  
 Que tu habl-aras or habl-ases,      *that thou mightest or shouldst speak.*  
 Que él habl-ara or habl-ase,      *that he might or should speak.*  
 Que nosotros habl-áramos or habl-ásemos,      *that we might or should speak.*  
 Que vosotros habl-arais or habl-aseis,      *that you might or should speak.*  
 Que ellos habl-aran or habl-asesen,      *that they might or should speak.*

## 2d Conjugation.

## Vender, to sell.

- Que yo vend-iéra or vend-iése,      *that I might or should sell.*  
 Que tu vend-ieras or vend-ieses,      *that thou mightest or shouldst sell.*  
 Que él vend-iéra or vend-iése,      *that he might or should sell.*  
 Que nosotros vend-iéramos or vend-iésemos,      *that we might or should sell.*  
 Que vosotros vend-ierais or vend-ieseis,      *that you might or should sell.*  
 Que ellos vend-ieran or vend-iesen,      *that they might or should sell.*

## 3d Conjugation.

## Recibir, to receive.

- Que yo recib-iéra or recib-iése,      *that I might or should receive.*  
 Que tu recib-ieras or recib-ieses,      *that thou mightest or shouldst receive.*  
 Que él recib-iéra or recib-iése,      *that he might or should receive.*  
 Que nosotros recib-iéramos or recib-iésemos,      *that we might or should receive.*  
 Que vosotros recib-ierais or recib-ieseis,      *that you might or should receive.*  
 Que ellos recib-ieran or recib-iesen,      *that they might or should receive.*

**Irregular Verbs.****Tener, 2. to have.**

Que yo tuviera or tuviese,	<i>that I might or should have.</i>
Que tu tuvieras or tuvieses,	<i>that thou mightest or shouldst have.</i>
Que él tuviera or tuviese,	<i>that he might or should have.</i>
Que nosotros tuviéramos or tuviésemos,	<i>that we might or should have.</i>
Que vosotros tuvierais or tuvieseis,	<i>that you might or should have.</i>
Que ellos tuvieran or tuviesen,	<i>that they might or should have.</i>

**Haber, 2. (auxiliary) to have.**

Que yo hubiera or hubiese,	<i>that I might or should have.</i>
Que tu hubieras or hubieses,	<i>that thou mightest or shouldst have.</i>
Que él hubiera or hubiese,	<i>that he might or should have.</i>
Que nosotros hubiéramos or hubiésemos,	<i>that we might or should have.</i>
Que vosotros hubierais or hubieseis,	<i>that you might or should have.</i>
Que ellos hubieran or hubiesen,	<i>that they might or should have.</i>

**Estar, 1. to be.**

Que yo estuviera or estuviese,	<i>that I might or should be.</i>
Que tu estuvieras or estuvieses,	<i>that thou mightest or shouldst be.</i>
Que él estuviera or estuviese,	<i>that he might or should be.</i>
Que nosotros estuviéramos or estuviésemos,	<i>that we might or should be.</i>
Que vosotros estuvierais or estuvieseis,	<i>that you might or should be.</i>
Que ellos estuviéran or estuviesen,	<i>that they might or should be.</i>

**Ser, 2. to be.**

Que yo fuera or fuese,	<i>that I might or should be.</i>
Que tu fueras or fueseis,	<i>that thou mightest or shouldst be.</i>
Que él fuera or fuese,	<i>that he might or should be.</i>
Que nosotros fuéramos or fuésemos,	<i>that we might or should be.</i>
Que vosotros fuerais or fueseis,	<i>that you might or should be.</i>
Que ellos fueran or fuesen,	<i>that they might or should be.</i>

**Dar, 1. to give.**

Que yo diera or diese, etc.	<i>that I might or should give.. etc.</i>
--------------------------------	---

**Andar, 1. to walk.**

Que yo anduviera or anduviese,      *that I might or should walk.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Hacer, 2. to make, to do.**

Que yo hiciera or hiciese,      *that I might or should do.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Caer, 2. to fall.**

Que yo cayera or cayese,      *that I might or should fall.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Poder, 2. to be able.**

Que yo pudiera or pudiese,      *that I might or should be able.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Poner, 2. to put.**

Que yo pusiera or pusiese,      *that I might or should put.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Querer, 2. to be willing.**

Que yo quisiera or quisiese,      *that I might or should be willing.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Saber, 2. to know.**

Que yo supiera or supiese,      *that I might or should know.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Traer, 2. to bring.**

Que yo trajera or trajese,      *that I might or should bring.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Valer, 2. to be worth.**

Que yo valiera or valiese,      *that I might or should be worth.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Conducir, 3. to conduct, to take.**

Que yo condujera or condujese,      *that I might or should conduct.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Pedir, 3. to ask for.**

Que yo pidiera or pidiese,      *that I might or should ask for.*  
 etc.    etc.

**Venir, 3. to come.**

Que yo viniera or viniese,  
etc.

*that I might or should come.*  
*etc.*

**Dicir, 3. to say, to tell.**

Que yo dijera or dijese,  
etc.

*that I might or should say.*  
*etc.*

**Salir, 3. to go out.**

Que yo saliera or saliese,  
etc.

*that I might or should go out.*  
*etc.*

**Ir, 3. to go.**

Que yo fuera or fuese,  
etc.

*that I might or should go.*  
*etc.*

**Vocabulario.**

**El articulo,** *the article.*  
**El asunto,** *the business.*  
**El espejo,** *the mirror.*  
**El gasto,** *the expense.*  
**El idioma,** *the language.*  
**El lugar,** *the spot.*  
**El medio,** *the means, the way.*  
**Aprobar,** 1. *to approve.*  
**Arreglar,** 1. *to arrange.*  
**Convidar,** 1. *to invite.*  
**Dedicar,** 1. *to devote.*  
**Devolver,** 2. *to give back.*  
**Dudar,** 1. *to doubt.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Encontrar,** 1. *to meet.*  
**Engañar,** 1. *to deceive.*  
**Fabricar,** 1. *to manufacture.*  
**Llorar,** 1. *to weep, to cry.*  
**Permitir,** 3. *to allow.*  
**Recomendar,** 1. *to recommend.*  
**Suplicar,** 1. *to entreat.*  
**Suponer,** 2. *to suppose.*  
**Á credito,** *on credit.*  
**En seguida,** *immediately.*  
**En tiempo pasado,** *formerly.*  
**Por precision,** *by necessity.*  
**Teorético,** *theoretical.*

**Exercise 85.**

1. Mi maestro queria que yo aprendiese una leccion mas larga.
2. ¿ Que queria V. que él hiciera sin dinero ? 3. Que comprase las mercancías á crédito. 4. Estos dos caballeros querian que yo les vendiese mi caballo. 5. Yo no creia que fuese tan tarde. 6. ¿ Temia V. que él saliese sin nosotros ? 7. Lo único que yo temia éra que él no nos esperase. 8. Era el único almacen donde pudiéramos hallar este artículo. 9. El queria que yo le dijera lo que yo debia, antes que me diera el dinero. 10. ¿ Dudaba V. que él viniera como lo

habia prometido ? 11. ¡ Aprobaba V. que él me hablase así ? 12. Era menester que gastásemos muchísimo dinero para arreglar nuestra casa. 13. Yo no creia que V. engañase á sus amigos. 14. Era el único medio que nos quedase, pues nuestros asuntos no permitian que hiciéramos nuevos gastos. 15. Cuando salí para Francia, mi padre me recomendó que viviese con personas que no hablasen otro idioma mas que el frances, y con quienes tuviese que hablarlo por precision, bien ó mal. 16. Tambien que leyese algunos buenos autores, y hecho todo esto por algun tiempo, me dedicase entonces al estudio teorético. 17. ¡ Quien hubiera pensado que nos encontrariamos en un lugar como este, despues de tanto tiempo que no nos hemos visto ! 18. Yo le habia escrito á fin de que viniera. 19. He comido mucho, y mas de lo que hubiera debido. 20. Yo iba todas las mañanas á su casa para que me diera una leccion de español. 21. Cantaban aunque tuviesen gana de llorar. 22. El deseaba que yo fuese en seguida á su casa. 23. Yo le habia suplicado que viniese temprano, pero llegó el último de todos. 24. Aquel hombre pretendia que le pagasen mucho mas de lo que habia ganado. 25. Él estaba muy sorprendido de que no supiésemos nada de esto.

### Exercise 86.

1. What did you wish me to do ? 2. I wished that you should write to your friend, and that you should tell him to return. 3. I was surprised that he had not sent me the money. 4. It was to be desired that they should finish in time. 5. When did he wish us to return the money ? 6. He wished that you should return it as soon as possible. 7. I did not think that he was so ill. 8. Our teacher wished that we would come earlier to school. 9. We were afraid that it would rain the whole day. 10. He was looking for a man who would lend him money. 11. I went to his house, although I was very tired. 12. Our father did not wish that we should go out so late. 13. He was the best friend I had in the city. 14. It was the best wine that I had ever drank. 15. It was very unfortunate that he had lost all his money. 16. Although he was poor, he had many friends. 17. It was very natural that he should speak so. 18. He could not spend so much money, however rich he might be. 19. I would not go to his house unless he invited me. 20. He said he would come (*vendria*) provided you would send him a carriage.

21. The Venetians were formerly the only people who manufactured and sold mirrors. 22. I was afraid he would come without his brother. 23. I did not think that you were so foolish. 24. It was necessary for us to go every evening to his house. 25. We did not think that it was so late. 26. Mr. Martin did not wish me to go out without him. 27. He was the only one who spoke Spanish. 28. We did not suppose he would arrive in time. 29. My mother wished us to sing for her.

**Grámatica.****Grammar.**

**1.** The Imperfect of the Subjunctive has three forms :

The first ending in :

-ra      -ras      -ra      -ramos      -rais      -ran

the second in :

-ria      -rias      -ria      -riamos      -riais      -rian

and the third in :

-se      -ses      -se      -semos      -seis      -sen

The 1st and 3d forms, which are treated in this lesson, are formed from the 3d person plural of the Past Definite, by changing the termination **ron** into the terminations given above.

**Examples.**

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Tuvié-ron, <i>they had</i> ;    | { tuvie-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.<br>{ tuvie-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen.     |
| Hubié-ron, <i>they had</i> ;    | { hubie-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.<br>{ hubie-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen.     |
| Estuvié-ron, <i>they were</i> ; | { estuvie-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.<br>{ estuvie-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen. |
| Fué-ron, <i>they were</i> ;     | { fue-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.<br>{ fue-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen.         |
| Hablá-ron, <i>they spoke</i> ;  | { habla-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.<br>{ habla-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen.     |
| Comié-ron, <i>they ate</i> ;    | { comie-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.<br>{ comie-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen.     |

Recibié-ron, *they received* ;

| recibie-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.  
| recibie-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen.

Pudié-ron, *they were able* ;

| pudie-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.  
| pudie-se, -ses, -se, -semos, seis, -sen.

Supié-ron, *they knew* ;

| supie-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.  
| supie-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen.

Dijé-ron, *they said* ;

| dije-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.  
| dije-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen.

Vinié-ron, *they came* ;

| vinie-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran.  
| vinie-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen.

etc.

etc.

NOTE.—The second form of the Subjunctive will be treated in the following lesson.

**2. The Imperfect Subjunctive** is used when the verb of the 1st proposition which requires a Subjunctive after it, is in one of the Past tenses of the Indicative :

Yo quería	que él viniera ó viniese.	I wished
Yo deseé		I desired
Yo he solicitado		I have entreated
Yo había solicitado		I had entreated

{ that he would come.

OBSERVATION.—All the general rules given on the use of the Present Subjunctive, apply to the **Imperfect** and **Pluperfect Subjunctive**.

**3. The Present Subjunctive** may, however, be used after the Past Definite, when the time of the action is not definitely stated :

Le he suplicado que venga á mí      *I have entreated him to come to my house.*

**4. The Present or the Imperfect Subjunctive** may be used when the verb of the 1st proposition is in the *Futuro perfecto* :

Él habrá pretendido que le dejen      *He will have pretended that they (dejaran ó dejases) libre.*

*should let him free.*

**5. The Imperfect Subjunctive** is used instead of the Present when followed by a conditional clause :

¿ Cree V. que me lo diesen, si les pidiera ?      *Do you think they would give it to me, if I should ask them.*

**6.** The **Pluperfect Subjunctive** is formed from the Imperfect Subjunctive of the auxiliary **haber**, *to have*; and the Past Participle of the verb:

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Que yo hubiera or hubiese hablado; | <i>that I might have spoken.</i>   |
| Que él hubiera or hubiese salido;  | <i>that I might have gone out.</i> |
- 

## Leccion XLIV.

## Lesson XLIV.

### SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED).

#### Conditional and Potential Mood.

##### 2d Termination of the Subjunctive.

Yo hablar-ia,	<i>I should or would speak.</i>
Tú hablar-ias,	<i>Thou shouldst or wouldest speak.</i>
Él hablar-ia,	<i>He should or would speak.</i>
Nosotros hablar-iamos,	<i>We should or would speak.</i>
Vosotros hablar-iais,	<i>You should or would speak.</i>
Ellos hablar-ian,	<i>They should or would speak.</i>
Yo come-ria,	<i>I should or would eat.</i>
Tu come-rias,	<i>Thou shouldst or wouldest eat.</i>
Él come-ria,	<i>He should or would eat.</i>
Nosotros come-riamos,	<i>We should or would eat.</i>
Vosotros come-riais,	<i>You should or would eat.</i>
Ellos come-rian,	<i>They should or would eat.</i>
Yo recibi-ria,	<i>I should or would receive.</i>
Tu recibi-rias,	<i>Thou shouldst or wouldest receive.</i>
Él recibi-ria,	<i>He should or would receive.</i>
Nosotros recibi-riamos,	<i>We should or would receive.</i>
Vosotros recibi-riais,	<i>You should or would receive.</i>
Ellos recibi-rian,	<i>They should or would receive.</i>
Yo daria,	<i>I should or would give.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>
Yo tendria,	<i>I should or would have.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

Yo habria, etc.	<i>I should or would have.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo estaria, etc.	<i>I should or would be.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo seria, etc.	<i>I should or would be.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo haria, etc.	<i>I should or would make (or do).</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo sabria, etc.	<i>I should or would know.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo pondria, etc.	<i>I should or would put.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo podria, etc.	<i>I should or would be able.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo querria, etc.	<i>I should or would be willing.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo valdria, etc.	<i>I should or would be worth.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo diria, etc.	<i>I should or would say.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo saldria, etc.	<i>I should or would go out.</i> <i>etc.</i>
Yo vendria, etc.	<i>I should or would come.</i> <i>etc.</i>

**Ejemplos.**

- ¿ Quién diria que este hombre es tan rico ?  
 ¿ Que haria V. si V. fuese rico ?  
 Yo compraria una casa grande.  
 Si yo supiera hacerlo, lo haria.  
 Yo escribiria en inglés si pudiera.

**Examples.**

- Who would say that that man is so rich ?  
 What would you do if you were rich ?  
 I would buy a large house.  
 If I knew how to do it, I would do it.  
 I would write in English if I could.

Yo daria mucho para saber la verdad.

*¿Qué le escribiria V.?*

Yo le escribiria todo lo que he oido.

*¿Cuanto dinero necesitaria V.?*

Yo necesitaria á lo ménos cien pesos.

*¿Estaria V. aquí si V. pudiera salir?*

Yo saldria en seguida.

V. *deberia* venir conmigo.

Yo *quisiera* saber donde está mi hermano.

*Deberiamos haber* salido mas temprano.

I would give much to know the truth.

What would you write to him?

I would write all I have heard.

How much money would you need?

I would need at least one hundred dollars.

Would you be here if you could go out?

I would go out immediately.

You *ought* to come with me.

I *should like* to know where my brother is.

We *ought to have* gone out sooner.

### Vocabulario.

**El concepto**, *the opinion*.

**El motivo**, *the motive*.

**El precio**, *the price*.

**El socorro**, *the assistance*.

**El viento**, *the wind*.

**La clase**, *the class*.

**La cosa**, *the matter of importance*.

**La deuda**, *the debt*.

**La fresa**, *the strawberry*.

**La mentira**, *the falsehood*.

**La recompensa**, *the recompense*.

**Las señas**, *the direction*.

**Cansado**, *tired*.

**Hasta**, *until, as far as*.

**Haragan**, *lazy*.

### Vocabulary.

**Ojalá!** *would to God!*

**Por cierto**, *certainly*.

**Adelantar**, 1. *to be fast*.

**Cambiar**, 1. *to exchange*.

**Descubrir**, 3. *to discover*.

**Dirigir**, 3. *to direct*.

**Examinar**, 1. *to examine*.

**Formar**, 1. *to form*.

**Jugar**, 1. *to play*.

**Marchar**, 1. *to go*.

**Molestar**, 1. *to trouble*.

**Obligar**, 1. *to oblige*.

**Pagar**, 1. *to pay*.

**Pegar**, 1. *to strike*.

**Repetir**, 3. *to repeat*.

### Exercise 87.

1. Yo aprenderia el frances si tuviera tiempo de estudiar. 2. Colon prometió una recompensa al primero que descubriera la tierra. 3. Si V. fuera al campo este año, yo iria tambien. 4. Los muchachos habrian comido todas las fresas si no hubieran tenido miedo de ser castigados. 5. V. podria saber la verdad si V. quisiera. 6. Yo le habria mandado su carta, si hubiera sabido donde V. vivia. 7. ¿Queria V. hacerme un favor? 8. Con mucho gusto; que desea V.? 9. Quisiera

que V. me llevase esta carta al correo. 10. Nada mas fácil, déme V. la carta. 11. ¿ Podria V. hacer eso sin mí ? 12. Podria hacerlo si no estuviese tan cansado. 13. Lloveria si no hiciera tanto viento. 14. Seria bueno que V. fuese á verle. 15. Si hubieramos recibido el dinero que esperabamos, habriamos salido con el vapor frances. 16. Si V. supiera lo que él ha dicho de su amigo, V. no estaria satisfecho. 17. ¿ Cree V. que si él no viniese, iria yo á verle ? 18. ¡ Ojalá no hubiera yo perdido mi dinero ! 19. Si lloviese esta tarde, y no pudieramos ir al campo, iriamos al teatro esta noche. 20. Este hombre tendria mas dinero, si no hubiese jugado. 21. Aunque fuésemos ricos, no pagariamos el precio que nos pide. 22. Beberiamos si tuviésemos mejor agua. 23. El S. D. Pedro Molina me dijo que dejaría á V. sus señas para dirigirle sus cartas en Paris, y con este motivo me he tomado la libertad de molestar á V. 24. Yo no cambiaria mi caballo por el suyo. 25. Quisiera que V. examinase mi reloj, pues no marcha bien. 26. ¿ Marchaba bien, antes ? 27. Adelantaba un poco, pero no era cosa ; cinco minutos cada veinticuatro horas. 28. ¿ Porqué no me escribió V. cuando estaba en Paris ? 29. Yo le hubiera escrito, si no hubiese pensado que V. había salido de la ciudad. 30. Si tuvieramos tiempo, iriamos con V. hasta la ciudad.

### Exercise 88.

1. What would you do, if you were invited to that ball ? 2. I should certainly not go. 3. I should tell a falsehood if I said that.
4. Would you like to go with me ? 5. I would go, if I had time.
6. That poor man would have died without assistance, if I had not come in time. 7. Would you have received my letter in time, if I had written to you ? 8. No, your letter would have arrived too late.
9. What would you have done, if he had struck you ? 10. He never would have struck me ; he is afraid of me. 11. Would you repeat what he said ? 12. I would repeat it, if you wished. 13. We would buy that house, if it were not too small for us. 14. Would you buy mine ? 15. I would buy it, if you sold it. 16. You would be now in the first class, if you had not been so lazy. 17. I should like to see your brother, where is he now ? 18. He must be in his room, if he has not gone out. 19. You ought to have spoken to that man when he was here. 20. Were you not afraid that he would go out without you ? 21. Yes, I was afraid he would forget me. 22. I should wish

them to be here to-morrow morning early. 23. It would be necessary for him to give me at least two hundred dollars. 24. I wish that I had never known him. 25. Had I seen the new comedy, I would have told you how it was. 26. If you always worked as much as to-day, you would soon be rich. 27. What opinion would you have formed of me, if I had done what they wished me to do? 28. That young man would not pay his debts, if he were not obliged. 29. If I had thought that you were sick, I would not have gone out. 30. I would not speak to that man, although he were rich.

**Gramática.****Grammar.****1. The Second form of the Subjunctive ending in**

**-ia, -ias, -ia, -iamos, -iais, -ian,**

is formed from the First person singular of the Future, by changing the termination *é* into the terminations given above:

Hablaré, *I shall or will speak.*      Hablaría, *I should or would speak.*

Comeré, *I shall or will eat.*      Comería, *I should or would eat.*

Recibiré, *I shall or will receive.*      Recibiría, *I should or would receive.*

etc.      etc.

This Second form of the Subjunctive has therefore all the irregularities of the Future.

**2. The Second form of the Subjunctive, as well as the First form, which ends in**

**-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran,**

is also used in conditional phrases, corresponding to the verb with *should* or *would* in English. These forms are therefore called sometimes **Imperfect Conditionals.**

In phrases in which these forms are used with the Potential, there are generally two sentences, one of which is the *principal* and the other the *subordinate*. In Spanish, the verb of the principal sentence takes the second termination in **-ia, -ias, -ia, -iamos, -iais, -ian**; while the verb of the subordinate sentence takes either the first termination in **-ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran**, or the third termination in **-se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen**.

These forms are generally preceded or followed in English by the conjunction **if**, *si*; with a verb in the Imperfect tense:

Si recibiésemos (or recibíramos) *If we should receive money, we*  
dinero, saldriamos para la ciudad, *would leave for the city.*

3. The conjunction **si**, *if*; although sometimes understood in English, should be expressed in Spanish:

Si yo estuviera (or estuviese) bueno, *Were I (if I were) in good health,*  
yo iria con V., *I would go with you.*

OBSERVATION.—Although there are cases in Spanish where the conjunction may be left out, the student will do well to adhere to the rule, as the omission of the conjunction cannot be determined by definite rules.

4. The sentence may commence in Spanish either by the conjunction **si**, *if*; or by the principal proposition:

Iria con V. si tuviese (or tuviera) dinero, } *I would go with you if I had*  
Si tuviese (or tuviera) dinero, iria con V., } *money.*

If, however, the sentence does not commence with the conjunction, the principal verb must take the termination **-ra** or **-ria**, that is, the first termination or that of the Conditional. The termination **se** could not be used correctly:

Tuviera or tendria mas dinero si *He would have more money if he*  
fuese mas prudente, *were more prudent.*

5. When expressing a wish, without a preceding conjunction, the termination **-ra** or **-ria** must be used:

; Daria todo lo que tengo para verle ! *I would give all I have to see him !*  
; Cuanto me alegrara de verle ! *How glad I would be to see him !*

6. If an interjection precedes the wish expressed the termination **-ra** or **-se** must be used:

; Ojalá no le hubiera (or hubiese) yo *Would to God that I had not*  
conocido ! *known him !*

7. Although the conjunction is generally left out in Spanish in the second sentence, as is the case in English, it may, however, be repeated if we wish to emphasize what we express:

Si lloviese y no pudieramos ir al campo, iríamos al teatro,

*If it rained and we could not go to the country, we would go to the theatre.*

Aun cuando V. tuviese todo el dinero del mundo, y aun cuando V. me lo diese para que le descubriera este secreto, no lo haría,

*Even if you had all the money in the world and you would give it to me to reveal this secret to you, I would not do it.*

**8.** The Present Indicative may also govern the *Conditional*, if this tense is followed or preceded by another sentence in the *Imperfect Subjunctive*:

*i* Cree V. que iría yo á verle sin que él viniese ? or *i* Cree V. que si él no viniese iría yo á verle ?

*Do you think that I would go and see him without his coming?*

**9.** When the *determining verb* is in one of the *Preterites of the Indicative*, it governs the *Imperfect Subjunctive* or the *Conditional*:

Creyó { que le pidieran (pidiesen  
Habia pensado } or pedirían) una fianza,

*He thought (or had thought) that they would ask him for a security.*

The Pluperfect or the Past Conditional may also be used :

Creímos que ya hubiera (hubiese or habria) acabado su trabajo,

*We thought that he would already have finished his work.*

**10.** Other conjunctions implying a condition such as **aunque**, **bien que**, *although, though*; **dado que**, *granting*; require also the Subjunctive :

Aunque fuese mi amigo no le perdonaría,

*Though he were my friend I would not forgive him.*

## 11. Potential Mood.

1. **May** and **can** may be translated either by the *Present Indicative* or by the *Present Subjunctive* of the verb **poder**, 2. *to be able*; and also by the *Present Subjunctive* of the verb used in the sentence :

Puedo venir,

*I can come.*

Se puede que venga,

*I may come.*

Déme V. el dinero para que pueda pagar lo que debo, or Déme V. el dinero para que pague lo que debo,

*Give me the money, that I may pay what I owe.*

## 2. Could, might, should, would.

Could is rendered by the *Conditional* of the verb **poder**, when a condition is implied, and by the *Imperfect* or *Preterite* of the same verb when it implies power :

Yo podria ir si quisiera,      *I could go if I wished.*

Yo no podia ir solo, }      *I could not (was not able to) go alone.*

## 3. Might is translated by the Conditional of the verb **poder** when power is implied :

Él podria venir si quisiera,      *He might come if he wished.*

When implying *possibility* it is expressed in the same way as **may** :

Se puede que venga,      *He may or might come.*

## 4. Should, implying *duty*, or meaning **ought to**, is rendered by the *Conditional* of the verb **deber** :

V. deberia venir conmigo,      *You ought to come with me.*

Deberian obedecer,      *They should obey.*

## 5. Should like to is rendered by the first or second form of the *Imperfect Subjunctive* of the verb **querer** :

Quisiera or querria verle,      *I should like to see him.*

## 6. Would, implying *willingness*, is rendered by the *Imperfect Indicative* or *Preterite* of the verb **querer** :

No queria (or no quiso) hablar,      *He would not speak.*

## 7. Might have and should have are in most cases translated by the *Conditional* of the verbs **poder** and **deber** with the *Infinitive* of **haber** :

Él podria haber venido,      *He might have come.*

Él deberia haber venido,      *He should have come.*

**Leccion XLV.****Lesson XLV.****SUBJUNCTIVE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT.****1. Haber, 2. — 2. Tener, 2. to have.**

Hubiere — tuviere,	<i>I shall or will have.</i>
Hubieres — tuvieres,	<i>thou shalt or wilt have.</i>
Hubiere — tuviere,	<i>he shall or will have.</i>
Hubiéremos — tuviéremos,	<i>we shall or will have.</i>
Hubiéreis — tuviéreis,	<i>you shall or will have.</i>
Hubieren — tuvieren,	<i>they shall or will have.</i>

**3. Estar, 1. — 4. Ser, 2. to be.**

Estuviere — fuere,	<i>I shall or will be.</i>
Estuvieres — fueres,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be.</i>
Estuviere — fuere,	<i>he shall or will be.</i>
Estuviéremos — fuéremos,	<i>we shall or will be.</i>
Estuviéreis — fuéreis,	<i>you shall or will be.</i>
Estuvieren — fueren,	<i>they shall or will be.</i>

**5. Hablar, 1. to speak.      6. Comer, 2. to eat.      7. Recibir, 3. to receive.**

Hablar — comiere — recibiere,	<i>I shall or will speak — eat — receive.</i>
Hablares — comieres — recibieres,	<i>thou shalt or wilt speak — eat — receive.</i>
Hablar — comiere — recibiere,	<i>he shall or will speak — eat — receive.</i>
Hablarémos — comiéremos — re- cibiéremos,	<i>we shall or will speak — eat — receive.</i>
Hablaréis — comiéreis — recibié- reis,	<i>you shall or will speak — eat — receive.</i>
Hablaren — comieren — recibi- ren,	<i>they shall or will speak — eat — re- ceive.</i>

**Vocabulario.**

- El alojamiento, *the lodging.*
- El invierno, *the winter.*
- El lugar, *the place.*
- La amistad, *the friendship.*
- La noticia, *the news.*
- Frio, *cold.*
- Acabar, *1. to finish.*

**Vocabulary.**

- Aconsejar, *1. to advise.*
- Acontecer, *2. to happen.*
- Encontrar, *1. to find, to meet.*
- Mandar, *1. to order.*
- Olvídar, *1. to forget.*
- Padecer, *2. to suffer.*
- Prescribir, *3. to prescribe.*

**Exercise 89.**

1. Si el próximo invierno fuere tan frio como el último, los pobres padecerán muchísimo.
2. ¿ Irá V. á pasar el domingo conmigo en el campo?
3. Si yo hubiere acabado lo que tengo que hacer, iré con mucho gusto.
4. Tu padre me ha dicho que si tu estudiases bien, te dará un bonito reloj.
5. No saldré mañana, si el tiempo fuere tan malo como hoy.
6. Si viere V. á su padre mañana, no olvide lo que le he dicho.
7. Llevarémos á su hermano con nosotros, si fuere posible.
8. Compraré la casa en que vivo, cuando tuviere dinero.
9. Si almorcara temprano mañana, iré á ver á mi amigo.
10. No olvidarémos nada de lo que la amistad prescribiere.

**Exercise 90.**

1. They have promised to tell me all that shall happen while I shall be (am) absent.
2. Tell your friend when you (shall) meet him, that I have good news for him.
3. If you breakfast to-morrow at (*en*) the same place, bring me the umbrella which I forgot there.
4. You must do, my friend, all that your father (shall) commands you.
5. The physician has advised me (*de*) not to go to the country, if the weather is not any better.
6. If you are unwell in the country, come back to the city.
7. If we should have money next month, we will send you some.
8. When I find a good teacher, I will learn Spanish.
9. We will write to you if we should be satisfied with (*de*) our new lodging.
10. We will go out, when we have dined.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

1. The Future of the Subjunctive, of which the terminations are

-re, -res, -re, -remos, -reis, -ren,

expresses a positive future conditional action, and is therefore used in conditional phrases with **si**, *if*, to denote a future time. It is also used with **cuando**, *when*, and other relatives, when future time is expressed.

The rules given for the use of the Present of the Subjunctive are applicable to the Future of the Subjunctive when the sense is conditional or future. The Future of the Subjunctive is not

of frequent use, and occurs in the sentence to give more energy and precision to the idea expressed.

The **Future Perfect** of the **Subjunctive** is formed from the Future of the Subjunctive of the auxiliary **haber**, *to have*; and the Past Participle of the verb.

---

## Leccion XLVI.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### 1. Government of the Infinitive without Preposition :

*Principal verbs requiring no Preposition before the following Infinitive :*

<b>Aconsejar</b> , 1. <i>to advise.</i>	<b>Necesitar</b> , 1. <i>to need.</i>
<b>Acostumbrar</b> , 1. <i>to accustom.</i>	<b>Negar</b> , 1. <i>to deny.</i>
<b>Afirmar</b> , 1. <i>to affirm.</i>	<b>Oir</b> , 3. <i>to hear.</i>
<b>Concebir</b> , 3. <i>to conceive.</i>	<b>Parecer</b> , 2. <i>to appear.</i>
<b>Confesar</b> , 1. <i>to confess.</i>	<b>Pensar</b> , 1. <i>to think, to intend.</i>
<b>Contar</b> , 1. <i>to relate.</i>	<b>Poder</b> , 2. <i>to be able.</i>
<b>Creer</b> , 2. <i>to believe.</i>	<b>Preferir</b> , 3. <i>to prefer.</i>
<b>Declarar</b> , 1. <i>to declare.</i>	<b>Presumir</b> , 3. <i>to presume.</i>
<b>Deber</b> , 2. <i>to owe, must.</i>	<b>Pretender</b> , 2. <i>to pretend.</i>
<b>Dejar</b> , 1. <i>to let, to leave.</i>	<b>Prohibir</b> , 3. <i>to forbid.</i>
<b>Desear</b> , 1. <i>to desire.</i>	<b>Prometer</b> , 2. <i>to promise.</i>
<b>Esperar</b> , 1. <i>to hope.</i>	<b>Protestar</b> , 1. <i>to protest.</i>
<b>Hacer</b> , 2. <i>to make, to do.</i>	<b>Querer</b> , 2. <i>to be willing.</i>
<b>Imaginar</b> , 1. <i>to imagine.</i>	<b>Sentir</b> , 3. <i>to feel, to regret.</i>
<b>Intentar</b> , 1. <i>to intend.</i>	<b>Soler</b> , 2. <i>to be accustomed.</i>
<b>Mandar</b> , 1. <i>to order.</i>	<b>Temer</b> , 2. <i>to fear.</i>
<b>Manifestar</b> , 1. <i>to manifest.</i>	<b>Ver</b> , 2. <i>to see.</i>
etc.	etc.

### Ejemplos.

Deseo tener dinero.  
Él afirma haber dicho la verdad.  
Temo ver á mi amigo.  
Veo venir mucha gente.  
Osé decirle la verdad.  
Oigo llamar á la puerta.

<b>Necesitar</b> , 1. <i>to need.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Negar</b> , 1. <i>to deny.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Oir</b> , 3. <i>to hear.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Parecer</b> , 2. <i>to appear.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Pensar</b> , 1. <i>to think, to intend.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Poder</b> , 2. <i>to be able.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Preferir</b> , 3. <i>to prefer.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Presumir</b> , 3. <i>to presume.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Pretender</b> , 2. <i>to pretend.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Prohibir</b> , 3. <i>to forbid.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Prometer</b> , 2. <i>to promise.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Protestar</b> , 1. <i>to protest.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Querer</b> , 2. <i>to be willing.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Sentir</b> , 3. <i>to feel, to regret.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Soler</b> , 2. <i>to be accustomed.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Temer</b> , 2. <i>to fear.</i>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>Ver</b> , 2. <i>to see.</i>	<b>etc.</b>

### Examples.

I wish to have money.  
He affirms that he has told the truth.  
I fear to see my friend.  
I see many people coming.  
I dared to tell him the truth.  
I hear (some one) knocking at the door.

## 2. Government of the Infinitive with the Preposition *á*:

*Principal verbs requiring the Preposition á before the following Infinitive:*

**Animar**, 1. *to encourage.*

**Aprender**, 2. *to learn.*

**Aspirar**, 1. *to aspire.*

**Ayudar**, 1. *to help.*

**Comenzar**, 1. *to commence.*

**Condenar**, 1. *to condemn.*

**Consentir**, 3. *to consent.*

**Convidar**, 1. *to invite.*

etc. etc.

**Empezar**, 1. *to begin.*

**Enseñar**, 1. *to teach.*

**Habituár**, 1. *to accustom.*

**Inclinár**, 1. *to incline.*

**Invitar**, 1. *to invite.*

**Salir**, 3. *to go out.*

**Tender**, 2. *to aim.*

**Venir**, 3. *to come.*

etc. etc.

### Ejemplos.

Autorizo á V. á hablar.

Él vino á visitarme.

Salí á ver los soldados.

Él me enseña á cantar.

Nos convidó á comer con él.

### Examples.

I authorize you to speak.

He came to visit me.

I went out to see the soldiers.

He teaches me to sing.

He invited us to dine with him.

## 3. Government of the Infinitive with the preposition *de*:

*Principal verbs requiring the Preposition de before the following Infinitive:*

**Cesar**, 1. *to cease.*

**Disuadir**, 3. *to dissuade.*

**Encargar**, 1. *to commission.*

etc. etc.

**Excusar**, 1. *to excuse.*

**Eximir**, 3. *to free.*

**Rabiar**, 1. *to rage.*

etc. etc.

### Ejemplos.

Cesó *de* venir aquí.

Me encargó *de* darle á V. esta carta.

### Examples.

He ceased coming here.

He requested me to give you this letter.

## 4. Government of the Infinitive with the preposition *para*:

Lo hago *para* complacerle á V. I do it to please you.

Trabajo *para* ganar dinero. I work to earn money.

## 5. Government of the Infinitive with the preposition *en*:

Le ocupo *en* escribir una carta. I employ him to write a letter.

Persiste *en* querer salir. He insists on going out.

## 6. Government of the Infinitive with the preposition **con**:

Le entretengo *con* leerle algo interesante.

I amuse him by reading something interesting to him.

## 7. The Infinitive used with the *Article*:

Mucho temo el verle *venir*.

I much fear to see him come.

El perfecto *tocar* de este músico me encanta.

The perfect playing of this musician delights me.

No es tan fácil el *escribir* un buen poema.

It is not so easy to write a good poem.

Al *verle*, me fui.

On seeing him I went away.

Al *salir*, recibió una carta.

On going out, he received a letter.

Enfermó del mucho *beber*.

He became sick from much drinking.

Al *ir á verle*, le encontré.

In going to see him, I met him.

### Vocabulario.

**El centavo**, *the cent*.

**El paseo**, *the walk*.

**El viaje**, *the journey*.

**La autorizacion**, *the authorization*.

**La dificultad**, *the difficulty*.

**La intencion**, *the intention*.

**La página**, *the page*.

**La traducion**, *the translation*.

**Bajo**, *low*.

**Dispuesto**, *disposed*.

**Inocente**, *innocent*.

**Seguro**, *sure*.

**Tal**, *such as*.

**Acostumbrar**, 1. *to accustom*.

**Acusar**, 1. *to accuse*.

**Autorizar**, 1. *to authorize*.

**Ayudar**, 1. *to help*.

**Complacer**, 2. *to please*.

**Consistir**, 3. *to consist*.

**Copiar**, 1. *to copy*.

### Vocabulary.

**Dar** (1.) *un paseo*, *to take a walk*.

**Deber**, 2. *must*.

**Descansar**, 1. *to rest*.

**Dibujar**, 1. *to draw*.

**Encargar**, 1. *to charge*.

**Entender**, 2. *to understand*.

**Excusar**, 1. *to excuse*.

**Esperar**, 1. *to expect*.

**Gobernar**, 1. *to manage, to govern*.

**Gritar**, 1. *to cry*.

**Inducir**, 3. *to induce*.

**Obligar**, 1. *to compel*.

**Osar**, 1. *to dare*.

**Partir**, 3. *to leave*.

**Pensar**, 1. *to intend*.

**Resolver**, 2. *to resolve*.

**Soler**, 2. *to be in the habit*.

**Visitar**, 1. *to visit*.

**Volver** (2.) *á hacer*, 2. *to do again*.

## Exercise 91.

1. Creo haber visto á su hermano en el concierto, pero no estoy seguro si era él. 2. ¿Me promete V. venir mañana? 3. Yo se lo prometo á V. 4. Acostumbro comer y dormir poco. 5. V. no me deja

trabajar con su mucho hablar. 6. No podrémos salir hoy, porque tenemos muchísimo que hacer. 7. Su amigo de V. debe saber á que hora llega el correo. 8. ¿ Quién le ha autorizado á V. á hacer eso ? 9. Nadie me ha autorizado, pero yo creia poder hacerlo sin autorizacion. 10. No estoy acostumbrado á comer tanto. 11. Mi amigo vino á visitarme ayer, pero no estabamos en casa. 12. El comenzó hablando bajo y acabó gritando. 13. Mi padre me ha encargado de decirle á V. que sentia mucho no poder mandarle el dinero hoy. 14. Nunca le escusaré de haber hablado así. 15. Vengo á ver si ha llegado de la Habana el señor Alvarez. 16. No puedo decirselo, porque no lo sé. 17. ¿ Porqué trabaja V. tan tarde ? 18. Lo hago para complacerle á mi padre. 19. Este hombre no entiende gobernar su casa. 20. He resuelto no salir de la ciudad este verano. 21. ¿ Á dónde va V. ahora ? 22. Voy á visitar á algunos amigos que han llegado de Francia. 23. La dificultad consiste en saber donde hallar al señor Romero. 24. Anduve todo el dia para ver si encontraba una casa bastante grande para mi familia. 25. Presté dos libros á su amigo de V., pero él no ha vuelto á traérme los. 26. Acabo de ver al Señor Juliano en la calle. 27. Me dijo que acababa de llegar de Europa. 28. Mis hijas aprenden á dibujar con el Señor Rondel. 29. El banquero nos convidó á comer, pero no pudimos ir. 30. Aquel profesor fué el que me enseñó á hablar inglés.

### Exercise 92.

1. We went out this morning to see the procession, but we did not see anything ; for we arrived too late. 2. My brother begins to speak Spanish. 3. I went to see your brother last Sunday, but they told me that he was not in (the) town. 4. I am working now to rest this evening. 5. I intend to leave at the end of this week. 6. What have you resolved to do ? 7. I have resolved to sell my house, and to buy a larger one. 8. When are you going to bring me my books ? 9. I am going to bring them to-morrow. 10. The physician has advised me not to go out to-day. 11. He continued to sing and I to write. 12. I am in the habit of writing every week to my family. 13. If you will help me to finish my translation, I will help you to copy these pages. 14. You cannot compel me to do this. 15. I am disposed to pay what is right, but not one cent more. 16. Nothing will induce me to visit him. 17. He thought that he could do it without me, but he very soon saw that it was impossible. 18. I dared to tell

him the truth, and he forgave me. 19. We were invited to go to the country, but we could not leave our work. 20. If I do it, it is only to please you. 21. We wish to have money to go to the theater. 22. He protests that he never had such an intention. 23. I fear not to have money enough for my journey. 24. Will you promise me never to do that again? 25. I cannot promise that. 26. Will you tell your brother that we expect him to-morrow? 27. We are going to take a walk this evening, will you come with us? 28. We cannot go, we have too much to do. 29. Do you know how to speak French? 30. No, sir, I only speak English. 31. He accuses me of having done that, but I assure you that I am innocent.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** Some Spanish verbs require no preposition before another verb in the Infinitive Mood. Such are principally the verbs which indicate *desire*, *wish*, *fear*, *doubt*, *need*, *duty*, and also those which express a *thought* or *speech*, *command*, *advice*, *prohibition*, and a few others as given above. Many of these verbs may also be used with the Present Indicative and the conjunction *que*:

Él cuenta que ha ganado mucho *He says that he has earned much  
dinero,* *money.*

**2.** Although according to the Spanish Academy the verb *decir*, *3. to say, to tell*, must never be followed by an Infinitive, many writers do not adhere to this rule :

Añadian el perjuicio que decían *They added the prejudice which  
recibir. — QUINTANA.* *they said they were receiving.*

NOTE. — The verb **decir** requires in other cases the preposition **á** before a person, and **de** before a verb.

Dije á mi hermano de venir, *I told my brother to come.*

**3.** Other verbs require in Spanish the preposition **á** before another verb in the Infinitive Mood.

Such are principally those which express a *destination*, *encouragement*, *habit*, *propriety*, etc., and others given above.

Verbs which indicate *motion*, as **venir**, 3. *to come*; **salir**, 3. *to go out*; belong to the same category.

**4.** The verb **comenzar**, 1. **empezar**, 1. and **acabar**, 1. require the preposition **por** in the sense of *to begin with*, and *to end by*:

La diversion comenzó por cantar, y *The amusement began with singing*  
acabó por llorar, *and ended with crying.*

NOTE. — In cases like the above, the *Gerund* is more generally used:

Comenzó hablando bajo y acabó *He began speaking low and ended*  
gritando, *by shouting.*

**5.** Those verbs which govern the Infinitive with the preposition **de** are principally those which express *distance*, *cessation*, *accusation*, *discussion*, and a few others:

NOTE. — The preposition **de** is also used when the Infinitive, as **genitivo partitivo**, *genitive partitive*, is governed by a noun:

Tengo el honor de saludar á V., *I have the honor to salute you.*

**6.** The preposition **para** is used before the Infinitive to express more forcibly an *intention*, and whenever the English preposition **to** may be rendered by **in order to**:

Trabajo ahora para descansar luego, *I am working now to rest later.*

**7.** Those verbs which express *occupation* or *insistence* require the preposition **en** before the Infinitive:

Me ocupa en leer, *He occupies me in reading.*

Persiste en decirlo, *He persists in saying so.*

**8.** The preposition **con** governs in the Infinitive those verbs which indicate *entertainment*, *diversion*, *amusement*, etc. :

Le entretengo con contarle cuentos, *I amuse him by telling him stories.*

NOTE. — The *Gerund* is often used, however, in such cases:

Le diviendo tocando el piano, *I amuse him by playing on the piano.*

**9.** Some verbs may take or omit either of the prepositions according to their meaning :

Este hombre no entiende hacer eso, *That man does not understand how to do that.*

No entiendo de meterme en negocios agenos,	<i>I don't mean to meddle with other people's business.</i>
Acerté á verle al ir á su casa,	<i>I succeeded in seeing him on going to his house.</i>
He acertado en hablar con él,	<i>I have done right in speaking to him.</i>

NOTE.—There are even verbs which have different meanings with the same preposición :

Dejó <i>de</i> escribir cuando entré,	<i>He ceased writing when I entered.</i>
No deje V. <i>de</i> escribirme,	<i>Do not neglect writing to me.</i>

**10.** The following rules for the guidance of the student in the use of Prepositions require special attention :

1. When the Infinitive occurs in the sentence as subject or object of the determining verb, it is used without a preposition when the question **who?** or **what?** may be asked :

He resuelto salir hoy,	<i>I have resolved (what?) to go out to-day.</i>
Él ofreció ayudarme,	<i>He offered (what?) to help me.</i>

2. When the question **to what?** or **where to?** may be asked, the preposition **á** must be used :

Yo le animaré á hacerle,	<i>I will encourage him (to what?) to do it.</i>
Voy á visitar mi tio,	<i>I am going (where to?) to visit my uncle.</i>

3. The preposition **de** is used in answer to the questions **of what?** **from what?** **at what?** **from where?**

Se espantó de verle tan pálido,	<i>He was alarmed (at what?) at seeing him so pale.</i>
Su pobreza proviene de su gastar,	<i>His poverty is the result (of what?) of his expenses.</i>

4. The preposition **en** is used in answer to the questions **in what?** **on what?**

La dificultad consiste en hallarle,	<i>The difficulty consists (in what?) in finding him.</i>
El insiste en salir,	<i>He insists (on what?) on going out.</i>

5. The preposition **con** is used in answer to the questions **with what? by what?**

Este hombre ha destruido su salud      *This man has destroyed his health (by con mucho beber,*      *what?) by much drinking.*

NOTE.—Although there are many cases in which the right use of the Preposition cannot be indicated, the rules given above may be followed in most cases.

**11.** The verb **acabar**, 1. *to end, to finish*, followed by the preposition **de** and an Infinitive, expresses an action which has just taken place :

Acabo de verle,      *I have just seen him.*  
Acababa de comer cuando yo entré,      *He had just dined when I entered.*

**12.** The verbs **mandar**, 1. *to send, to order*, and **hacer**, 2. *to make, to do*, followed by an Infinitive, have the meaning of the English verbs *to cause, to let, to have* :

Hago hacer un sombrero,	<i>I have a hat made.</i>
Mando lavar mi ropa,	<i>I have my clothes washed.</i>
Hace teñir el paño,	<i>He has the cloth dyed.</i>

**13.** The Infinitive may be used in Spanish as a Substantive and as the subject or object of the verb. It may, therefore, be preceded in this case by the article or by any other part of speech :

No he olvidado el insopportable hablar de este hombre,	<i>I have not forgotten the insupportable talking of that man.</i>
Al avanzar nuestro ejército se re- tiraron los enemigos,	<i>Our army having advanced, the enemy retired.</i>
No ganará V. nada con ese hablar,	<i>You will gain nothing by this talk.</i>

**14.** There are cases where the Infinitive may be used with or without the article :

Es injusto acusar (or el acusar) este hombre de este crimen,	<i>It is unjust to accuse this man of this crime.</i>
---	---

## Leccion XLVII.

## Lesson XLVII.

## THE INFINITIVE GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

<b>A mas de,</b>		<i>Besides,</i>
<b>Ademas de,</b>	}	<i>although,</i>
<b>Sobre,</b>		
<b>Tras de,</b>		
<b>A menos de,</b>		<i>Unless.</i>
<b>A pesar de,</b>		
<b>Sin embargo de,</b>	}	<i>Notwithstanding,</i>
<b>No obstante de,</b>		<i>however.</i>
<b>Despues de,</b>		<i>After.</i>
<b>Antes de,</b>		<i>Before.</i>
<b>Sin,</b>		<i>Without.</i>
<b>En cuanto á,</b>		<i>As for.</i>
<b>Por,</b>		<i>On account of, for, instead of.</i>
<b>En consecuencia de,</b>		<i>In consequence of.</i>

## Ejemplos.

**A mas de** } haberle visto, le he  
**Ademas de** } hablado,  
**A pesar de** } haberle yo pagado  
**Sin embargo de** } no estuvo satisfecho,  
**No obstante de** } Antes de salir, comió,  
**Antes de** salir, comió,  
**Despues de** haber comido, salió,  
**Sali** sin nadie verme.

No fué admitido por ser extranjero,  
Tras de no pagarme, me insulta,  
Sobre ser Inglés, quiere pasar por Americano.  
En cuanto á dar dinero, no lo haré.  
No sé como acabar eso.

## Examples.

Besides seeing him, I spoke to him.  
Notwithstanding that I paid him, he was not pleased.

He dined before going out.  
He went out after having dined.  
I went out without anybody seeing me.

He was not admitted (*on account of his*) being a stranger.  
Besides not paying me, he insults me.  
Although he is an Englishman, he wishes to pass for an American.  
As for giving money, I shall not do it.  
I don't know how to finish that.

**Vocabulario.**

**El gasto**, *the expense.*  
**El obrero**, *the workman.*  
**El vestido**, *the dress.*  
**La colocacion**, *the situation.*  
**La divinidad**, *the divinity.*  
**La pregunta**, *the question.*  
**Generoso**, *generous.*  
**Tal**, *such as.*

**Vocabulary.**

<b>Atacar</b> , 1. <i>to attack.</i>	<b>Invocar</b> , 1. <i>to invoke.</i>
<b>Castigar</b> , 1. <i>to punish.</i>	<b>Obedecer</b> , 2. <i>to obey.</i>
<b>Consultar</b> , 1. <i>to consult.</i>	<b>Obtener</b> , 2. <i>to obtain.</i>
<b>Contestar</b> , 1. <i>to answer.</i>	<b>Ofender</b> , 3. <i>to offend.</i>
<b>Continuar</b> , 1. <i>to continue.</i>	<b>Pagar</b> , 1. <i>to pay.</i>
<b>Descansar</b> , 1. <i>to rest.</i>	<b>Seguir</b> , 3. <i>to follow.</i>
<b>Entrar</b> , 1. <i>to enter.</i>	<b>Trabajar</b> , 1. <i>to work.</i>
<b>Examinar</b> , 1. <i>to examine.</i>	<b>Volver</b> , 2. <i>to return.</i>

**Exercise 93.**

1. Despues de haber yo leido el libro, se lo presté á mi amigo.
2. Á pesar de no bien trabajar, quiere que le paguen bien. 3. Ademas de ser haragan, gasta mucho. 4. Sin embargo de ser muy pobre, quiere pasar por rico. 5. Antes de consentir yo á lo que él quiere, debo examinar si él tiene razon. 6. Perdonó á sus enemigos, antes de morir. 7. En consecuencia de haberle yo dicho que viniera, vino. 8. En cuanto á tener yo que hacer todos los gastos, lo veremos. 9. ¿ Que contestar á tal pregunta ? 10. ¿ Como saber si mi amigo está en la ciudad ? 11. Á donde ir para encontrarle ? 12. Este hombre me ha ofendido demasiado por poder perdonarle yo. 13. El muchacho tomó el libro sin dárselo yo. 14. Sin verme nadie, entré en mi cuarto. 15. No haga V. nada antes de consultarme. 16. ¿ Porqué hizo V. eso ? 17. Lo hize sin saber lo que estaba haciendo. 18. Ademas de ser él mi amigo, lo es tambien de V. 19. Quiero hacerlo sin decirselo á nadie. 20. Le di la carta por creer que era para él.

**Exercise 94.**

1. After having written his letters, he went out. 2. You cannot obtain that situation, unless you speak Spanish and English. 3. Do not go out without seeing me. 4. Michael (*Miguel*) is punished for having spoken. 5. Do not speak without knowing. 6. Besides being very rich, he is also very generous. 7. Notwithstanding that I told him not to do it, he would not obey me. 8. How shall I do that ? 9. Where shall I look for my books? 10. He could not follow us (on account of his) being too old. 11. Before going away, he said that he would not return. 12. Although he works badly (*mal*), he wishes to be paid like a good workman. 13. After he had rested, he con-

tinued his journey. 14. Besides his not reading the letter, he tore it to pieces (*la hizo pedazos*). 15. Besides receiving him in my house, I gave him money and clothes. 16. They invoked their divinities before attacking the enemy. 17. He took the money without my giving it to him. 18. He is sick on account of having eaten too much. 19. Besides not paying us, he says that we owe him money. 20. I wish you to do it without saying a word to him.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** Some of the prepositions given above which govern the Infinitive have different meanings.

**Por**, for instance, has the meaning of *on account of* or *because* in the following sentence :

No fué admitido por ser extranjero,      *He was not admitted on account of his being a stranger.*

while in the next sentence it is rendered by *instead of* :

Le di mi libro por darle el suyo,      *I gave him my book instead of giving him his own.*

**2.** The Infinitive is often governed also by the Conjunctions **como**, *how*, and **que**, *that*, by the adverb **dónde**, *where*, and by the Interrogative Pronouns :

No sé como acabar esto,	<i>I don't know how to finish that.</i>
Le traigo que comer,	<i>I bring you to eat.</i>
¡Como decir lo que siento !	<i>How shall I say what I feel ?</i>
¡No sabe V. á quien vender su caballo ?	<i>Do you not know to whom you could sell your horse ?</i>

NOTE.—The above examples can only be explained by an ellipsis, by which the natural object of the Infinitive is omitted :

No sé como (puedo) acabar esto,	<i>I don't know how (I can) finish that.</i>
¡Como (podré) decir lo que siento !	<i>How (shall I be able) to say what I feel.</i>
Le traigo (algo que V. pueda) comer,	<i>I bring you (something that you can) eat.</i>

**3.** The Infinitive sentences may also be rendered in Spanish by the Present Indicative or by the Subjunctive Mood, by adopting a different construction :

Despues de haberle dado el dinero sa- }  
lió or Despues que le hube dado el } After I had given him the money, he  
dinero, salió, } went out.

Tras de no pagarme, no me saluda or } Besides not paying me, he does not  
Tras de que no me paga no me saluda, } salute me.

Salí sin verme él or }  
Salí sin que él me viera, } I went out without his seeing me.

## Leccion XLVIII.

## Lesson XLVIII.

### THE GERUND OR PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

1. **Amar**, 1. *to love* ;  
**Causar**, 1. *to cause* ;  
**Habitar**, 1. *to inhabit* ;  
**Participar**, 1. *to participate* ;  
**Tocar**, 1. *to touch* ,  
**Obedecer**, 2. *to obey* ;  
**Pertenecer**, 2. *to belong* ;  
**Seguir**, 3. *to follow* ;

- amando, amante, *loving*.  
causando, causante, *causing*.  
habitando, habitante, *inhabiting*.  
participando, participante, *participating*.  
tocando, tocante, *touching*.  
obedeciendo, obediente, *obeying*.  
perteneciendo, perteneciente, *belonging*.  
siguiendo, siguiente, *following*.

### Vocabulario.

- El almirante**, *the admiral*.  
**El capitán**, *the captain*.  
**El colegio**, *the college*.  
**El enemigo**, *the enemy*.  
**El estudio**, *the study*.  
**El dervis**, *the dervis*.  
**El habitante**, *the inhabitant*.  
**El lado**, *the side*.  
**El ojo**, *the eye*.  
**El palacio**, *the palace*.  
**El precepto**, *the precept*.  
**El puente**, *the bridge*.

### Vocabulary.

- El reino**, *the kingdom*.  
**La capital**, *the capital*.  
**La equivocacion**, *the mistake*.  
**La escuadra**, *the squadron*.  
**La guerra**, *the war*.  
**La hora**, *the time*.  
**La imprenta**, *the press*.  
**La posada**, *the inn*.  
**La posesion**, *the possession*.  
**La Tartaria**, *Tartary*.  
**La victoria**, *the victory*.
- Dentro de**, *within*.  
**Por**, *through*.  
**Atravesar**, 1. *to cross over*.  
**Construir**, 3. *to construct*.  
**Desobedecer**, 2. *to disobey*.  
**Explicar**, 1. *to explain*.  
**Licenciar**, 1. *to disband*.  
**Montar**, 1. *to mount*.  
**Reir**, 3. *to laugh*.  
**Sacar**, 1. *to draw*.  
**Salir (2) de**, *to leave*.  
**Sublevar**, 1. *to revolt*.  
**Suspender**, 2. *to suspend*.

**Exercise 95.**

1. Los muchachos llegaron llorando de la escuela, pues habian sido castigados. 2. Hablando de otra cosa, como está su padre de V. ?
3. Está muy bien hoy, gracias. 4. Pasando el otro dia por la calle nueva, ví á su amigo de V. 5. Saliendo yo de la iglesia, entraba él.
6. No sabiendo que hacer, dormí todo el dia. 7. Los estudiantes de nuestro colegio acabarán sus estudios dentro de pocos dias. 8. El entró riendo, pero salió llorando. 9. Diciendo esto, salió del cuarto.
10. Estando el padre en Francia, murió el hijo en Nueva York.
11. Habiendo el general ganado la victoria, tomó la fortaleza.
12. Temiendo el emperador que volviese á empezar la guerra, licenció solo una parte de su ejército. 13. Habiendo el rey mandado que suspendiesen la libertad de imprenta, se sublevó el pais.
14. Habiendo sabido que su hermano no había venido, mandó por él. 15. Los hombres habiendo de temer á Dios, desobedecen sus preceptos.
16. Los habitantes de esta ciudad son muy industrioso. 17. Creyendo yo encontrar á mi amigo, fuí muy temprano á su casa. 18. Los hijos de este pobre hombre son muy obedientes.
19. Habiendo el general hecho construir un puente, pasó todo el ejército al otro lado del rio.
20. Cuando entré, estaba él durmiendo. 21. ¿Qué estaban haciendo los muchachos en el cuarto ? 22. Algunos estaban jugando, y otros estudiando.
23. Queriendo sacar su reloj, vió que se lo habian robado.
24. Siendo capitán el almirante Blake, fué mandado con una pequeña escuadra contra las posesiones españolas. 25. Viajando un dervis por la Tartaria llegó á la capital del reino y por equivocacion tomó el palacio del rey por una posada pública.

**Exercise 96.**

1. To whom were you writing this morning ? 2. I was writing to my brother in Paris. 3. My father having heard that you were in town, has sent me to invite you to his house. 4. As we were passing through your street, we met Miss Mary. 5. While we were in Paris, we heard that your father was very sick. 6. Not knowing what to do, we wrote to our friends. 7. When he opened his eyes, he saw his brother near his bed. 8. I have been reading the whole morning.
9. I saw the boys stealing the apples in the garden. 10. If you explain our lesson to us, we will understand it. 11. To-morrow at this time, we shall be travelling. 12. If I have time, I will do it.

13. The general, having defeated the enemy, was received by the king. 14. The captain having mounted his horse, left the city. 15. When he saw the soldiers coming, he called me. 16. Hannibal having crossed the Alps, defeated the Romans. 17. Having studied the English language for several years, I speak it well now. 18. My brother is a student in that college. 19. When my father gave me the money, I paid all my debts. 20. As he was travelling through England, he met all our friends. 21. Those children are very disobedient. 22. He has annoyed us by talking too much. 23. As I was not able to do it alone, I told my brother to help me. 24. Why are these little girls crying? 25. Because they have lost their mother.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The use of the Gerund or Present Participle is considered in Spanish as most elegant, and it is therefore of frequent occurrence in writing and in speaking.

Many Spanish verbs have two forms in the Gerund, the one ending in **ante** or **ente**, and the second in **ando** or **iendo**; the first form being called **participios de presente**, *Participles of the Present*; or **participios activos**, *Active Participles*.

There were formerly more **Participios de presente** with the same object as their verbs, than there are now, but the use of these participles as Adverbial Adjectives, Adjectives and Nouns, having become more and more frequent, they no longer govern their verbs. The use of the Gerund has probably become more frequent than that of the **Participios de presente**, although both Participles have often the same meaning, on account of the greater euphony of the Gerund. The **Participio de presente** only occurs now in certain verbs, and is therefore not mentioned in the Infinitive Mood.

**2.** We refer the student to **Lesson 19** for the formation of the Gerund and for some of the Rules relating to this tense.

**3.** There are cases when the Gerund and the Infinitive may be used alike :

Le ví cazando *or* cazar,      *I saw him hunting or hunt.*

4. When a motion is expressed, either the Gerund of the verb **ir**, 3. *to go*; or that of **andar**, 1. *to walk*; may precede the other verbs:

Yendo *or* Andándome paseando, le      *Going to take a walk I met him.*  
encontré,

### **5. The Gerund is also used :**

1st. When it indicates the state of the subject:

**Habla durmiendo,** *He speaks while he sleeps.*

2d. When the verb expresses the cause of an action:

Teniendo él que le atacasen tomó sus pistolas, *Fearing that they would attack him, he took his pistols.*

NOTE.—In sentences like the above, the Gerund may be replaced by the Infinitive with **por**: **Por temer él que le atacasen**, etc.

3d. When the verb expresses means or instrumentality:

**Estudiando se aprende,** *One learns by studying.*

NOTE. — The Infinitive preceded by *con*, *with*, may be used in the above sentence : **Con estudiar se aprende.**

**6. The Compound Gerund or Particípio de Preterito** is of the same nature as the Gerund and is used in the same way :

Habiendo el hijo perdido á su padre,  
volvió á su pais, *The son, having lost his father, returned to his country.*

7. The Gerund is often used in Spanish in cases where the English use the Conjunctions **as**, **since**, **if**, and the adverbs **when**, **while**, **whilst**:

Siendo así, no saldré,  
No teniendo dinero, no puedo ir al  
teatro,  
Viéndome tan triste, se puso á  
llorar,  
Habiendo él de venir acá, se fué al  
teatro,

*Since it is so, I shall not go out.  
As I have no money, I cannot go to  
the theater.  
When he saw me so sad, he began  
to cry.  
While he was to come here, he went  
to the theater.*

**NOTE.** — Many sentences rendered in Spanish by the Gerund might, however, be used as in English with the tenses of the Indicative or of the Subjunctive with such words as **como**, **as**; **luego que**, *as soon as*; **cuando**, **asi que**, *when*; etc.

Viéndome or Así que me vió,      *When he saw me.*

**8.** The Gerund (simple or compound) is most elegantly used in Spanish at the beginning of the sentence, especially in short narrations, the subject being sometimes separated from its verb :

Paseando un dia por la calle el Presidente Jefferson, con un comerciante, contestó al saludo de un negro que pasaba. —*i* Porqué, le preguntó el comerciante, se presta V. á saludar á un esclavo? — Sentiria mucho, contestó el Presidente, que un esclavo me escediese en urbanidad,

*As President Jefferson was one day walking through the street with a merchant, he answered the salutation of a passing negro. — Why does your Excellency deign to salute a slave? asked the merchant. — I should be very sorry, answered the President, that a slave should surpass me in politeness.*

**9.** Verbs of the 3d Conjugation ending in **-chir**, **-llir** and **-ñir** form their Gerund in **endo** and not in **iendo**, as the dipthong **ie** very seldom stands after **ch**, **ll** and **ñ**. We must therefore say : **ciñendo**, from **ceñir**, 3. *to gird*; **hinchendo**, from **henchir**, 3. *to fill*; **riendo**, from **reir**, 3. *to laugh*.

The *i* is also omitted for the same reason in the 3d Persons of the Preterite of the Indicative and in all the Persons of the Subjunctive of the same verbs : **riñó**, from **reñir**, 3. *to quarrel*; **engulleres**, from **engullir**, 3. *to engulf*; etc.

The verb **volver**, 2. followed by the Preposition **á** before an Infinitive, expresses the repetition of an action :

Vuelvo á salir,      *I go out again.*

**Leccion XLIX.****THE PAST PARTICIPLE.****Ejemplos.**

Este libro está bien escrito.  
 Estos libros están bien escritos.  
 La casa está acabada.  
 Las casas están acabadas.  
 He recibido una carta de París.  
 Hemos visto el teatro nuevo.  
 Los muchachos han comido las manzanas.  
 Nuestros soldados han derrotado al enemigo.  
 La lección que V. nos ha dado, es muy difícil.  
 El enemigo atacado por todas partes, se retiró.  
 Bien sabido es, que este hombre es rico.  
 Llamado un cirujano, examinó la herida.

**Lesson XLIX.****Examples.**

This book is well written.  
 These books are well written.  
 The house is finished.  
 The houses are finished.  
 I have received a letter from Paris.  
 We have seen the new theater.  
 The boys have eaten the apples.  
 Our soldiers have defeated the enemy.  
 The lesson which you have given us is very difficult.  
 The enemy being attacked on all sides, retired.  
 It is well known that this man is rich.  
 A surgeon having been called, he examined the wound.

**Irregular Participles.**

<b>Abrir</b> , 3. <i>to open</i> ;	<b>abierto</b> , <i>opened</i> .
<b>Cubrir</b> , 3. <i>to cover</i> ;	<b>cubierto</b> , <i>covered</i> .
<b>Decir</b> , 3. <i>to say, to tell</i> ;	<b>dicho</b> , <i>said, told</i> .
<b>Escribir</b> , 3. <i>to write</i> ;	<b>escrito</b> , <i>written</i> .
<b>Hacer</b> , 2. <i>to make, to do</i> ;	<b>hecho</b> , <i>made, done</i> .
<b>Morir</b> , 3. <i>to die</i> ;	<b>muerto</b> , <i>died</i> .
<b>Poner</b> , 2. <i>to put</i> ;	<b>puesto</b> , <i>put</i> .
<b>Resolver</b> , 2. <i>to resolve</i> ;	<b>resuelto</b> , <i>resolved</i> .
<b>Ver</b> , 2. <i>to see</i> ;	<b>visto</b> , <i>seen</i> .
<b>Volver</b> , 2. <i>to return</i> ;	<b>vuelto</b> , <i>returned</i> .

**Participles having often an active meaning.**

<b>Acostumbrado</b> , <i>accustomed</i> .	<b>Atrevido</b> , <i>bold</i> .
<b>Agradecido</b> , <i>grateful</i> .	<b>Bien hablado</b> , <i>well spoken</i> .

Callado, *reserved.*  
 Cansado, *tiresome.*  
 Comedido, *well behaved.*  
 Desesperado, *despairing.*  
 Disimulado, *dissimulated.*  
 Entendido, *experienced.*  
 Esforzado, *bold.*  
 Leido, *well read.*  
 Medido, *prudent.*  
 Mirado, *considerate.*  
 Moderado, *moderate.*  
 Osado, *bold.*  
 Parado, *slow.*

Parecido, *resembling.*  
 Partido, *liberal.*  
 Pausado, *cautious.*  
 Porfiado, *obstinate.*  
 Precavido, *cautious.*  
 Preciado, *vain.*  
 Presumido, *conceited.*  
 Recatado, *wise.*  
 Sabido, *learned.*  
 Sentido, *sensible.*  
 Sufrido, *patient.*  
 Trascendido, *acute.*  
 Valido, *influential.*

### Vocabulario.

**E**l congreso, *the Congress.*  
**E**l cuadro, *the picture.*  
**E**l desuso, *the desuetude.*  
**E**l dia festivo, *the holiday.*  
**E**l grande, *the grandee.*  
**E**l Moro, *the Moor.*  
**E**l mundo, *the world.*  
**E**l refresco, *the refreshment.*  
**L**a atencion, *the attention.*  
**L**a cena, *the supper.*  
**L**a comida, *the eating.*  
**L**a discordia, *the discord.*  
**L**a inocencia, *the innocence.*  
**L**a ley, *the law.*  
**L**a memoria, *the memory.*  
**L**a ociosidad, *the idleness.*  
**L**a palabra, *the word.*  
**L**a perdida, *the loss.*  
**L**a prerrogativa, *the prerogative.*  
**L**a salida, *the exit.*

### Vocabulary.

**A**gradable, *agreeable.*  
**C**ierto, *certain.*  
**E**norme, *enormous.*  
**F**ernando, *Ferdinand.*  
**I**abel, *Isabella.*  
**P**or desgracia, *unfortunately.*  
**P**orfiado, *obstinate.*  
**P**resumido, *conceited.*  
**A**trasar, 1. *to delay.*  
**C**asar, 1. *to marry.*  
**C**oncluir, 3. *to conclude.*  
**C**onvencer, 2. *to convince.*  
**D**efender, 2. *to defend.*  
**E**stablecer, 2. *to establish.*  
**O**frecer, 2. *to offer.*  
**P**intar, 1. *to depict.*  
**R**einhar, 1. *to reign.*  
**R**eparar, 1. *to compensate.*  
**S**ufocar, 1. *to suffocate.*  
**V**olver, 2. *to turn.*

### Exercise 97.

1. Concluida la cena, todo el mundo salió.
2. Salí de la casa resuelto á verle.
3. Derrotados los enemigos, volvieron á pasar el río.
4. ¿ Ha recibido V. la carta que yo lo he escrito ?
5. La he recibido esta mañana.
6. Ví á su amigo de V. á la salida del teatro.
7. La

comida es muy buena en este hotel. 8. Debemos considerar como perdidos los días que pasamos en la ociosidad. 9. La discordia ha siempre reinado en el universo. 10. Las puertas estaban abiertas y entraban todos los que querían. 11. ¿ Ha oido V. cantar aquella señora ? 12. La oí cantar el domingo pasado en nuestra iglesia. 13. ¿ Ha visto V. los cuadros que mi hermano ha comprado ? 14. Todavía no los he visto. 15. Esta ley ha sido establecida por el Congreso. 16. Le hemos mandado á V. todos los libros que V. nos ha pedido. 17. Las cartas estaban tan mal escritas que no pudimos leerlas. 18. Este hombre es muy honrado, siempre me ha devuelto el dinero que le he prestado. 19. ¿ Es verdad que ha muerto Pedro ? 20. Por desgracia es cierto. 21. ¿ Ha padecido mucho ? 22. No puede V. imaginar lo que ha padecido. 23. Es V., amigo Pablo, el hombre mas porfiado del mundo. 24. No podremos comprar hoy lo que necesitamos, pues los días festivos están cerrados los almacenes. 25. Tengo una hermana casada en Madrid, con un médico español ; y como la visité el año pasado, he aprendido á hablar un poco español. 26. Me habían pintado el viaje como bastante desagradable ; pero fué al contrario muy agradable, menos el habernos atrasado unas ocho horas en el camino. 27. Don Juan ha dado el brazo á mi madre hasta el coche. 28. No sé como reparar la enorme pérdida que he hecho. 29. Las prerrogativas de los grandes de España han sido muchas, pero todas han caído en desuso. 30. Estamos sofocados con el calor que tenemos aquí desde que principió el verano.

### Exercise 98.

1. These things have passed from my memory. 2. We have read all the books you have lent us ; have you received any others ?
3. We can lend you those we bought the other day. 4. Where have you been ? 5. I have been to the ball. 6. Why have not the children gone to school to-day ? 7. Because one of their teachers has died. 8. I don't know where I have put my gloves, will you do me the favor to look for them for me ? 9. I believe that you have left them in your room. 10. Do you know what your father has resolved ? 11. He has not resolved anything yet. 12. Whom have you seen in that house ? 13. I have not seen anybody. 14. You must not leave your windows open during the night. 15. John is loved by no one, because he is too conceited. 16. My friend will come after (the) dinner. 17. The war with Portugal being concluded,

Ferdinand and Isabella turned their attention to the Moors of Granada. 18. I have lost one of my books, I don't know how. 19. That soldier has lost his arm while defending his country. 20. Have you heard what that man has said? 21. I have heard every word. 22. Have you offered anything to those ladies? 23. Yes, sir, I have offered them refreshments. 24. Have you seen our new theater? 25. I have not seen anything yet, I have not been out for (*desde*) three days. 26. How were your sisters dressed for the ball? 27. They were dressed in (*de*) white. 28. I have been so busy this morning, that I have not been able to write to your father. 29. Our friends arrived this morning, but we have not seen them yet. 30. Being convinced of his innocence, I defended him.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The Past Participle of the verbs of the 1st Conjugation, as has been already said (L. 17, R. 5), ends in **ado**; and those of the 2d and 3d Conjugations end in **ido**, the Irregular participles being given above.

**2.** The Past Participle as well as the Gerund is at the same time an Adjective, being derived from the verb and participating of its meaning, as in this sentence :

Una carta bien escrita,      *A well written letter.*

**3.** The Past Participle, called **pasivo** in Spanish, is not limited to a certain definite time, but may refer to any time, according to the tense with which it is combined. It loses its passive signification when connected with the verb **haber**, 2. *to have*; to form the tenses of the **verbo activo**, *active verb*.

With Intransitive, Unipersonal, and Reflective verbs, it can only have an active signification, as these verbs do not admit the passive form.

**4.** It has already been observed (L. 18, R. 1), that the Past Participle joined to the verb **haber**, 2. *to have*; is invariable, although it had formerly a feminine termination, and agreed with its object.

Joined with the verbs **ser**, 2. *to be*, and **estar**, 1. *to be*; the Past Participle is considered as an Adjective, and agrees in gender and number with its subject :

La casa esta acabada,	<i>The house is finished.</i>
Los buenos muchachos son amados,	<i>Good boys are loved.</i>

**5.** The Past Participle often occurs in Spanish with its own subject, and corresponds then to the Latin *Ablative absolute*. In such cases it is only an abbreviation of the Gerund and is generally placed before the noun, with which it agrees in gender and number :

Aprovechadas estas ventajas se fa-	<i>By profiting of these advantages,</i>
cilita el aprender,	<i>learning is made easier.</i>

NOTE.—The subject may, however, precede the Participle, when both sentences have the same subject :

El enemigo atacado de todas partes,	<i>The enemy being attacked on all</i>
se retiró,	<i>sides, retired.</i>

**6.** A Preposition may sometimes precede the Past Participle :

Despues de restablecida la paz flo-	<i>After peace is re-established the</i>
recerán las artes,	<i>arts will flourish.</i>

NOTE.—As seen by the above examples, the Participle is in one case an abbreviation of the Gerund, while in the other the auxiliary verb is omitted : *Siendo aprovechadas estas ventajas*, etc., *despues de ser restablecida la paz*, etc.

**7.** Past Participles used as Adjectives may govern the preposition **de** or **por**, the preference being generally given to **de** :

Es un hombre despreciado de todos,	<i>He is a man despised by all.</i>
------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

**8.** Those Participles which have an active meaning, have also a passive one :

*Active sense.*

Hombre leido, *a well read man.*

Mujer leida, *a well read woman.*

*Passive sense.*

Libro leido, *a book read.*

Carta leida, *a letter read.*

**9.** Many Past Participles are used as nouns in the feminine form : **bebida**, *drink, beverage* ; **entrada**, *entrance* ; **salida**, *exit, departure* ; **llegada**, *arrival* ; **comida**, *dinner, eating* ; **medida**, *measure* ; **corrida**, *race* ; **mirada**, *look* ; **vista**, *sight* ; etc.

**Leccion L.****Lesson L.****THE PAST PARTICIPLE (Continued).****Principal Spanish Verbs having two Participles.**

**Abstraer**, 2. to abstract ;  
**Aceptar**, 1. to accept ;  
**Astringir**, 3. to contract ;  
**Atender**, 2. to heed ;  
**Bendecir**, 3 to bless ;  
**Compeler**, 2. to compel ;  
**Completar**, 1. to complete ;  
**Comprender**, 2. to understand ;  
**Comprimir**, 3. to compress ;  
**Concluir**, 3. to conclude ;  
**Confesar**, 1. to confess ;  
**Confundir**, 3. to confound ;  
**Contentar**, 1. to content ;  
**Contraer**, 2. to contract ;  
**Convencer**, 2. to convince ;  
**Convertir**, 3. to convert ;  
**Corregir**, 3. to correct ;  
**Corromper**, 2. to corrupt ;  
**Cultivar**, 1. to cultivate ;  
**Desertar**, 1. to desert ;  
**Desnudar**, 1. to lay bare ;  
**Despertar**, 1. to awake ;  
**Difundir**, 3. to diffuse ;  
**Dirigir**, 3. to direct ;  
**Dispersar**, 1. to disperse ;  
**Distinguir**, 3. to distinguish ;  
**Dividir**, 3. to divide ;  
**Elegir**, 3. to elect ;  
**Enjugar**, 1. to wipe ;  
**Erigir**, 3. to erect ;  
**Esceptuar**, 1. to except ;  
**Escluir**, 3. to exclude ;  
**Espeler**, 2. to expel ;  
**Espresar**, 1. to express ;  
**Estender**, 2. to extend ;  
**Estinguir**, 3. to extinguish ;

**abstrauido, abstracto, abstracted.**  
**aceptado, acepto, accepted.**  
**astringido, astricto, contracted.**  
**atendido, atento, heeded.**  
**bendecido, bendito, blessed.**  
**compelido, compulso, compelled.**  
**completado, completo, completed.**  
**comprendido, comprenso, understood.**  
**comprimido, compreso, compressed.**  
**concluido, concluso, concluded.**  
**confesado, confeso, confessed.**  
**confundido, confuso, confounded.**  
**contentado, contento, contented.**  
**contraido, contrato, contracted.**  
**convencido, convicto, convinced.**  
**convertido, converso, converted.**  
**corregido, correcto, corrected.**  
**corrompido, corrupto, corrupted.**  
**cultivado, culto, cultivated.**  
**desertado, deserto, deserted.**  
**desnudado, desnudo, laid bare.**  
**despertado, despierto, awaked.**  
**difundido, difuso, diffused.**  
**dirigido, directo, directed.**  
**dispersado, disperso, dispersed.**  
**distinguido, distinto, distinguished.**  
**dividido, diviso, divided.**  
**elegido, electo, elected.**  
**enjugado, enjuto, wiped.**  
**erigido, erecto, erected.**  
**esceptuado, excepto, excepted.**  
**escluido, escluso, excluded.**  
**espelido, espulso, expelled.**  
**espresado, espresso, expressed.**  
**estendido, estenso, extended.**  
**extinguido, extinto, extinguished.**

Estraer, 2. to extract ;	estraido, extracto, extracted.
Exentar, 1. to exempt ;	exentado, exento, exempted.
Favorecer, 2. to favor ;	favorecido, favorito, favored.
Fijar, 1. to fix ;	fijado, fijo, fixed.
Fingir, 3. to feign ;	fingido, ficto, feigned.
Freir, 3. to fry ;	freido, frito, fried.
Hartar, 1. to satiate ;	hartado, harto, sated.
Imprimir, 3. to impress ; to print ;	imprimido, impreso, impressed, printed.
Improvisar, 1. to extemporize ;	improvisado, improviso, extemporized.
Incluir, 3. to include ;	incluido, incluso, included.
Infectar, 1. to infect ;	infectado, infecto, infected.
Inscribir, 3. to inscribe ;	inscribido, inscrito, inscribed.
Inserir, 3. { to insert ;	inserido, inserto, inserted.
Insertar, 1. }	
Invertir, 3. to invert ;	invertido, invertto, inverted.
Juntar, 1. to join ;	juntado, junto, joined.
Limpiar, 1. to clear ;	limpiado, limpio, cleared.
Maldecir, 3. to curse ;	maldecido, maldito, cursed.
Manifestar, 1. to manifest ;	manifestado, manifesto, manifested.
Marchitar, 1. to fade ;	marchitado, marchito, faded.
Nacer, 2. to be born ;	nacido, nato, been born.
Ocultar, to conceal ;	ocultado, oculto, concealed.
Omitir, 3. to omit ;	omitido, omiso, omitted.
Oprimir, 3. to oppress ;	oprimido, opreso, oppressed.
Perfeccionar, 1. to perfect ;	perfeccionado, perfecto, perfected.
Pervertir, 3. to pervert ;	pervertido, perverso, perverted.
Poseer, 2. to possess ;	poseido, poseso, possessed.
Prender, 2. to catch ;	prendido, preso, caught.
Prescribir, 3. to prescribe ;	presribido, prescrito, prescribed.
Presumir, 3. to presume ;	presumido, presunto, presumed.
Pretender, 2. to pretend ;	pretendido, pretenso, pretended.
Profesar, 1. to profess ;	profesado, profeso, professed.
Proscribir, 3. to proscribe ;	proscribido, proscrito, proscribed.
Proveer, to provide ;	proveido, provisto, provided.
Repletar, 1. to fill ;	repletado, repleto, filled.
Romper, 2. to break ;	rompido, roto, broken.
Salvar, 1. to save ;	salvado, salvo, saved.
Secar, 1. to dry ;	secado, seco, dried.
Sepultar, 1. to bury ;	sepultado, sepulto, buried.
Situar, 1. to place ;	situado, sito, placed.
Soltar, 1. to let loose ;	soltado, suelto, let loose.
Sujetar, 1. to subject ;	sujetado, sujetto, subjected.

**Suprimir**, 3. *to suppress* ;  
**Suspender**, 2. *to suspend* ;  
**Sustituir**, 3. *to substitute* ;  
**Tender**, 2. *to spread* ;  
**Tenir**, 3. *to dye* ;  
**Torcer**, 2. *to twist* ;  
**Vaciar**, 1. *to empty* ;

**suprimido, supreso, suppressed.**  
**suspendido, suspenso, suspended.**  
**substituido, substituto, substituted.**  
**tendido, tenso, spread.**  
**teñido, tinto, dyed.**  
**torcido, tuerto, twisted.**  
**vaciado, vacio, emptied.**

**Vocabulario.**

**El accidente**, *the accident*.  
**El cielo**, *the heaven*.  
**El cólera**, *the cholera*.  
**El monte**, *the mountain*.  
**El monumento**, *the monument*.  
**El muro**, *the wall*.  
**El pescuezo**, *the neck*.  
**El populacho**, *the mob*.  
**El servicio**, *the service*.  
**La bagetela**, *the trifle*.  
**La carcel**, *the prison*.  
**La cuenta**, *the account*.  
**La estatua**, *the statue*.  
**La invitacion**, *the invitation*.

**Vocabulary.**

**La liberalidad**, *the liberality*.  
**La lista**, *the list*.  
**Lá máxima**, *the maxim*.  
**La opinion**, *the opinion*.  
**La obra**, *the work*.  
**La ruina**, *the ruin*.  
**La silla**, *the chair*.  
**Bajo**, *under*.  
**Delante**, *before*.  
**Junto**, *together*.  
**Liberal**, *liberal*.  
**Militar**, *military*.  
**Vacio**, *empty*.

**Exercise 99.**

1. ¿ Quién ha abierto la puerta y ha puesto una silla delante ?
2. ¿ No le he dicho yo á V. que había visto á su hermana en el teatro ?
3. He escrito todo lo que V. me ha prescrito. 4. Estoy convencido que mi amigo llegará hoy mismo. 5. El cólera ha infectado á mucha gente, y todavía hay muchos que están infectos. 6. El cocinero ha torcido el pescuezo de la gallina. 7. El buque está provisto de todo lo necesario. 8. Los ladrones estaban ocultos en el monte, pero han sido prendidos por los soldados. 9. Aunque estuviese yo despierto, él pretende que me ha despertado. 10. El cielo ha bendecido sus obras. 11. Estoy tan confuso que no sé lo que estoy haciendo. 12. No me han permitido salir todavía. 13. Este cuadro no está todavía completo. 14. Todavía no hemos comprendido lo que él quería decir. 15. Hemos corregido todos los ejercicios, y ahora están correctos. 16. Son los hombres más corruptos que hemos conocido. 17. No comprendo lo que está inscrito en (*on*) este monumento.

18. Fué un accidente imprevisto, y á nadie podemos culpar. 19. Todas las mesas en la casa estan rotas. 20. Estos libros han sido impresos en Paris.

### Exercise 100.

1. My friend invited me to dine with him, but I could not accept his invitation.
2. I was awake when your friends arrived in the night.
3. These two friends are always together.
4. The flowers you bought for your sister are already faded.
5. The roads are not dry yet, and we will have to take a carriage.
6. Fill the empty glasses with (*de*) wine.
7. More than fifty men were buried under the ruins of the old church.
8. The thieves were caught and taken to (the) prison.
9. The mob has been dispersed by the soldiers.
10. We have included all our expenses in the account we gave you.
11. Do you know if the fire has been extinguished?
12. It was extinguished when I passed through the street.
13. This young man has been exempted from military service.
14. He has confessed that he has spent all his money in buying trifles.
15. The inhabitants of the city have erected a statue to that great man.
16. I have been obliged to sell my favorite horse.
17. All these maxims were inscribed on the walls of our school.
18. These men have been expelled from their country for their liberal opinions.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

**1.** Many verbs have in Spanish two Past Participles, a regular and an irregular one. The regular Participle of such verbs must be used in compound tenses with the verb **haber**, 2. *to have*; or when the sentence is passive:

Le hemos convencido de su error,      *We have convinced him of his error.*  
 Fué expulsado del pais,      *He was expelled from the country.*

The irregular participle is used as an Adjective or when standing alone, and with the exception of **preso**, **prescrito**, **proscrito**, **provisto**, **roto**, **injerto**, **opreso**, **impreso**, and **supreso**, can never be accompanied by the auxiliary **haber**, 2. *to have*. In the case of these nine verbs, either of the Participles may be used, and we can as well say **ha preso** as **ha prendido**. **Roto** is of more frequent occurrence than **rompido**.

## Leccion LI.

## Lesson LI.

## THE PASSIVE VERB (VOZ PASIVA).

**Ser alabado, to be praised.**

INFINIT. PRES. :	Ser alabad- <b>o</b> , - <b>a</b> , - <b>os</b> , - <b>as</b> ,	<i>to be praised.</i>
PRET. PERF. :	haber sido alabad- <b>o</b> , - <b>a</b> , - <b>os</b> , - <b>as</b> ,	<i>to have been praised.</i>
FUTURO :	haber de ser alabad- <b>o</b> , - <b>a</b> , - <b>os</b> ,	<i>to have to be praised.</i>
PART. PAS. :	- <b>as</b> , alabad- <b>o</b> , - <b>a</b> , - <b>os</b> , - <b>as</b> ,	<i>praised.</i>
GERUNDIO :	siendo alabado,	<i>being praised.</i>
PART. PRET. :	habiendo sido alabado,	<i>having been praised.</i>
PART. FUTURO:	habiendo de ser alabado,	<i>having to be praised.</i>
INDIC. PRES. :	yo soy alabado (a),	<i>I am praised.</i>
	nosotros(as) somos alabados(as),	<i>we are praised.</i>
PRET. IMPERF. :	yo era alabado,	<i>I was praised.</i>
PRET. DEFINIDO :	yo fuí alabado,	<i>I have been praised.</i>
PRET. INDEFIN. :	yo he sido alabado,	<i>I had been praised.</i>
PRET. ANTERIOR :	yo hube sido alabado,	<i>I shall or will be praised.</i>
PRET. PLUSCUAMP :	yo habia sido alabado,	<i>I shall or will have been praised.</i>
FUTURO IMPERF. :	yo seré alabado,	<i>be praised.</i>
FUTURO PERF. :	yo habré sido alabado,	<i>that I may be praised.</i>
IMPERATIVE :	sea alabado,	<i>that I might be praised.</i>
SUBJ. PRES. :	que yo sea alabado,	<i>I should or would be praised.</i>
SUBJ. IMPERF. :	que yo fuere or fuese alabado,	<i>that I may have been praised.</i>
COND. SIMP. :	yo seria alabado,	<i>that I might have been praised.</i>
PRET. PERF. :	que yo haya sido alabado,	<i>I should or would have been praised.</i>
PLUSCUAMPERF. :	que yo hubiera { sido alabado, que yo hubiese { sido alabado,	<i>I shall be praised.</i>
COND. COMP. :	yo habria sido alabado,	<i>I shall have been praised.</i>
FUTURO IMP. :	yo fuere alabado,	
FUTURO COMP. :	yo hubiere sido alabado,	

## Ejemplos.

La casa del general está vendida.  
Los enemigos han sido derrotados.

## Examples.

The general's house is sold.  
The enemy has been defeated.

El puente está construido.  
 Mi conducta ha sido aprobada.  
 La carta ha sido escrita por él.  
 Los muchachos han sido castigados.  
 Mi sombrero está perdido.  
 Hemos sido engañados.  
 Él es estimado y amado.  
 Queremos ser obedecidos.

The bridge is built.  
 My conduct has been approved.  
 The letter has been written by him.  
 The boys have been punished.  
 My hat is lost.  
 We have been deceived.  
 He is esteemed and loved.  
 We wish to be obeyed.

*Examples with the pronoun se:*

Esto se ve á menudo.  
 El café se vende bien.  
 Se ama al hombre de bien.  
 Se admira la sabiduría de Sócrates.  
 Esto no se puede hacer así.  
 Aquí se habla español.  
 No se puede ver cosa mas maravillosa.

That is often seen.  
 Coffee sells well.  
 The honest man is loved.  
 The wisdom of Socrates is admired.  
 That cannot be done so.  
 Spanish is spoken here.  
 Nothing more wonderful can be seen.

**Vocabulario.**

**El diputado,** *the deputy.*  
**El gobierno,** *the government.*  
**El objeto,** *the object.*  
**El retrato,** *the picture.*  
**El terremoto,** *the earthquake.*  
**La cantatriz,** *the singer.*  
**La ciencia,** *the science.*  
**La comedia,** *the comedy.*  
**La conjuracion,** *the conspiracy.*  
**La juventud,** *the youth.*  
**La licencia,** *the license.*  
**La muerte,** *the death.*  
**La necesidad,** *the necessity.*  
**La obra,** *the work.*  
**La sentencia,** *the maxim.*

**Vocabulary.**

**La tienda,** *the shop.*  
**Barato,** *cheap.*  
**Escipion,** *Scipio.*  
**Alabar,** 1. *to praise*  
**Alquilar,** 1. *to let*  
**Arruinar,** 1. *to ruin.*  
**Componer,** 2. *to compose*  
**Destruir,** 3. *to destroy*  
**Escoger,** 2. *to select.*  
**Eligir,** 3. *to elect.*  
**Favorecer,** 2. *to favor.*  
**Reconocer,** 2. *to know.*  
**Representar,** 1. *to play.*  
**Reprimir,** 3. *to repress.*  
**Restablecer,** 2. *to re-establish.*

**Exercise 101.**

- Este paño se vende en la tienda del Señor Palma.
- Se han admirado mucho las sentencias de Séneca.
- Las ciencias han siempre sido favorecidas por los buenos gobiernos.
- Este príncipe no será alabado después de su muerte.
- La cantatriz ha sido muy

aplaudida anoche. 6. Mi amigo ha sido elegido diputado de su ciudad. 7. ¿Que se dice en la ciudad? 8. Se dice que el azúcar se venderá muy bien este año. 9. Este retrato ha sido hecho por uno de nuestros mejores pintores. 10. Esta señora es amada y estimada de todos los que la conocen. 11. Se ve que V. está contento hoy. 12. No engañamos á nadie, pero somos engañados muy á menudo. 13. Estos muchachos han sido alabados por sus maestros. 14. No hemos sido convidados por su hermano, y así no hemos ido á su casa. 15. Si se hubiera descubierto la conjuración de Catilina, si Ciceron no hubiese sido consul? 16. Se reconoce al verdadero amigo en la necesidad. 17. ¿Sabe V. si se vende esa casa? 18. No, señor, se alquila. 19. Esta obra ha sido compuesta por mi amigo. 20. La hacienda ha sido vendida despues de la muerte del dueño. 21. La licencia fué reprimida y la paz restablecida en el pais. 22. Estas cosas han sido escogidas por mi hermano cuando estaba en Paris. 23. No se puede saber como le fué posible al ladron entrar en la casa. 24. Estoy seguro que esta carta no ha sido escrita por él. 25. Se cree que el Presidente llegará esta mañana.

### Exercise 102.

- These goods have been received from England.
- Where have these objects been found?
- They have been found in a carriage.
- Those glasses have been broken by the children.
- Those houses have been sold very cheap.
- The general had been wounded several times in his youth.
- This letter has been written by one of our friends.
- What would you have done if you had known that?
- I would have done the same thing that I have done.
- If you go to his house, you will be very well received.
- This comedy has been played twice at (*en*) the large theater.
- Have the thieves been caught?
- Two of them have been caught.
- If I had been invited to the ball, I would have gone with my sister.
- It is said that there has been a great fire in the city.
- It was said yesterday that the general had died.
- That city has been destroyed by an earthquake.
- I think that coffee will sell very well this year.
- Such things are often seen.
- French goods are sold in that store.
- Hannibal was conquered by Scipio.
- The beautiful house of the banker will be sold this week.
- Your brother is seen every afternoon in the park.
- They speak only French in that school.
- Our friends have been ruined by the war.

26. All the sugar has been bought by that merchant. 27. I have been deceived several times by that man. 28. That child is loved by everybody.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** Passive verbs are conjugated in all their tenses with the auxiliary verb **ser**, *2. to be*. To this auxiliary the Past Participle of *active* or *transitive* verbs is added, the same agreeing in gender and number with the subject :

El muchacho es amado,

*The boy is loved.*

La muchacha es amada,

*The girl is loved.*

Los muchachos son amados,

*The boys are loved.*

Las muchachas son amadas,

*The girls are loved.*

**2.** Active verbs are often used *passively* with the pronoun **se** in the third person singular or plural :

Estos libros se venden en aquella  
librería,

*Those books are sold in that book-  
store.*

No se puede ver nada,

*Nothing can be seen.*

El café se vende bien,

*Coffee sells well.*

**3.** It is to be noticed, however, that when a passive sentence is formed with the pronoun **se**, this sentence may preserve the construction of the active :

Se ama al hombre de bien,

*The honest man is loved.*

**4.** The verb remains invariable in the singular when the passive subject is a person; and the acting ablative is not expressed :

Es dolor el ver como se aprecia mas  
á los infames aduladores que á  
los hombres honrados,

*It is painful to see that infamous  
flatterers are more esteemed than  
honorable men.*

**5.** The Past Participle remains invariable with the compound tense of the verb :

Se ha amado á María por sus vir-  
tudes,

*Mary has been loved for her virtues.*

**6.** When the object of the sentence is a thing, or when the acting ablative is expressed, the verb agrees with the object, although the Past Participle remains invariable :

¡ Oh siglo miserable, en el cual se estiman las virtudes por bicocas, cuando las acompaña la pobreza !  
Se han admirado mucho las sentencias de Seneca por sus propios enemigos,

*O miserable century, in which virtue is considered as nothing when accompanied by poverty !*

*The maxims of Seneca have been much admired, even by his enemies.*

**7.** The verbs **quedar**, 1. *to remain*, and **ir**, 3. *to go*, may sometimes be used instead of **ser** to give more expression to the sentence :

Ha quedado verificado que eso no es verdad,  
Va demostrado que la tierra rotura alrededor del sol,

*It has been proved that this is not true.*

*It is proved that the earth revolves around the sun.*

## Leccion LIII.

## Lesson LIII.

### REFLECTIVE VERBS.

#### Pronouns accompanying the Reflective Verbs.

**Me,** *myself.*

**Te,** *thyself.*

**Se,** *himself, herself, itself, themselves, yourself, yourselves.*

**Nos,** *ourselves.*

**Os,** *yourselves.*

**Alabarse,** *to praise one's self.*

**Infinitive.**

Alabarse, *to praise one's self.*

**Past.**

Haberse alabado, *to have praised one's self.*

**Past Participle.**

Alabádose, *praised one's self.*

*Gerund.*

Alabándose,	<i>praising one's self.</i>
Habiéndose alabado,	<i>having praised one's self.</i>

## Indicative Present.

Me alabo,	<i>I praise myself.</i>
Te alabas,	<i>thou praisest thyself.</i>
Se alaba,	{ <i>he praises himself.</i> <i>she praises herself.</i>
Nos alabamos,	<i>we praise ourselves.</i>
Os alabais,	<i>you praise yourselves.</i>
Se alaban,	<i>they praise themselves.</i>
V. se alaba ( <i>sing.</i> ),	<i>you praise yourself.</i>
V. V. se alaban ( <i>pl.</i> ),	<i>you praise yourselves.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

## Past Indefinite.

Me he alabado,	<i>I have praised myself.</i>
Te has alabado,	<i>thou hast praised thyself.</i>
Se ha alabado,	{ <i>he has praised himself.</i> <i>she has praised herself.</i>
Nos hemos alabado,	<i>we have praised ourselves.</i>
Os habeis alabado,	<i>you have praised yourselves.</i>
Se han alabado,	<i>they have praised themselves.</i>
V. se ha ( <i>sing.</i> ) alabado,	<i>you have praised yourself.</i>
V. V. se han ( <i>pl.</i> ) alabado,	<i>you have praised yourselves.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

## Imperative.

Alábate,	<i>praise thyself.</i>
Alábese,	<i>let him praise himself.</i>
Alabémonos,	<i>let us praise ourselves.</i>
Alabaos,	<i>praise yourselves.</i>
Alábense,	<i>let them praise themselves.</i>
Alábese V.,	<i>praise yourself.</i>
Alábense V. V.,	<i>praise yourselves.</i>

## Reflective verb conjugated with another verb.

Yo quiero alabar- <b>me</b> ,	<i>I will praise myself.</i>
Tu quieres alabar- <b>te</b> ,	<i>thou wilt praise thyself.</i>
Él quiere alabar- <b>se</b> ,	<i>he will praise himself.</i>
Ella quiere alabar- <b>se</b> ,	<i>she will praise herself.</i>
Nosotros queremos alabar- <b>nos</b> ,	<i>we will praise ourselves.</i>

Vosotros quereis alabar-**os**,  
 Ellos (*m.*) { quieren alabar-**se**,  
 Ellas (*f.*) {  
 V. quiere (*sing.*) alabar-**se**,  
 V. V. quieren (*pl.*) alabar-**se**,

*you will praise yourselves.*  
*they will praise themselves.*  
*you will praise yourself.*  
*you will praise yourselves.*

**Ejemplos.**

**Llamarse**, 1. *¿ Como se llama V. ?*  
 — Me llamo José.

**Equivocarse**, 1. V. se equivoca.

**Sentarse**, 1. Siéntese V., señora.

**Levantarse**, 1. *¿ Á que hora se levanta V. ?* — Me levanto á las seis.

**Acostarse**, 1. *¿ Porqué no se acuestan los muchachos ?* — Se acostarán pronto.

**Pasearse**, 1. *¿ Quiere V. pasearse conmigo ?* — No tengo tiempo de pasearme.

**Divertirse**, 3. Me divierto mucho aquí,

**Enfadarse**, 1. No se enfade V.

**Cortarse**, 1. Los muchachos se han cortado.

**Vestirse**, 3. Nos vestirémos mas tarde.

**Calentarse**, 1. Caliéntese V.

**Verse**, 2. No puedo verme en el espejo.

**Arrepentirse**, 3. Él se arrepintió antés de morir.

**Dirigirse**, 3. *¿ Á quien debo dirigirme ?* — V. puede dirigirse á mí.

Ellas se han escrito.

No nos hemos hablado.

**Examples.**

What is your name? — My name is Joseph.

You are mistaken.

Sit down, madam.

At what time do you rise? — I rise at six o'clock.

Why do not the boys go to bed?  
 — They will soon go to bed.

Will you take a walk with me? — I have no time to walk.

I amuse myself very much here.

Do not get angry.

The boys have cut themselves.

We will dress later.

Warm yourself.

I cannot see myself in the looking-glass.

He repented before dying.

To whom must I apply? — You may apply to me.

They have written to each other.

We have not spoken to each other.

**Vocabulario.**

**El mercader,** *the merchant.*  
**La colocacion,** *the situation.*  
**La cuenta,** *the account.*  
**La miseria,** *the misery.*  
**Ligero,** *quick.*  
**Parado,** *standing.*  
**Acordarse,** 1. *to remember.*  
**Acostarse,** 1. *to go to bed.*  
**Apoderarse,** 1. *to take possession.*  
**Bañarse,** 1. *to bathe.*  
**Burlarse,** 1. *to laugh at.*  
**Caerse,** 2. *to fall.*  
**Calentar,** 1. *to warm.*  
**Casarse,** 1. *to marry.*  
**Comportarse,** 1. *to behave.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Defender,** 2. *to defend.*  
**Desmayarse,** 1. *to faint.*  
**Despertarse,** 1. *to awake.*  
**Divertirse,** 3. *to amuse one's self.*  
**Dormirse,** 3. *to fall asleep.*  
**Enfadarse,** 1. *to get angry.*  
**Equivocarse,** 1. *to make a mistake.*  
**Llamarse,** 1. *to be called.*  
**Levantarse,** 1. *to rise.*  
**Pasearse,** 1. *to take a walk.*  
**Quedarse,** 1. *to remain.*  
**Quejarse,** 1. *to complain.*  
**Quemar,** 1. *to burn.*  
**Rendirse,** 3. *to surrender.*  
**Sentarse,** 1. *to sit down.*

**Exercise 103.**

1. ¡Porqué no se sienta V.? 2. No estoy cansado, prefiero quedarme parado. 3. ¡Se divierten V. V. en el campo? 4. Nos divertimos muchísimo ahí. 5. ¡No se equivoca V. cuando V. dice eso?
6. No me equivoco. 7. ¡Porqué ne se pasea V. todas las mañanas?
8. Me paseo cuando el tiempo está bueno. 9. ¡Se levanta V. temprano?
10. Me levanto tan pronto como me despierto. 11. Si V. tiene frío, caliéntese. 12. No se queme V.; el plato está muy caliente. 13. No sé lo que tengo, pero no puedo dormir cuando me acuesto por la noche. 14. Es porque V. se acuesta demasiado temprano, y se levanta demasiado tarde. 15. ¡Como se llama su amigo de V.?
16. Se llama Juan, y su hermana se llama María. 17. ¡Porqué no va V. al jardín á divertirse con los muchachos?
18. No me siento bien, quiero ir á acostarme. 19. Los enemigos se apoderaron de una de nuestras fortalezas. 20. Toda la familia está en el campo; yo me he quedado solo en la ciudad. 21. ¡Se acuerda V. de lo que dijo este hombre?
22. Me acuerdo de todo le que dijo. 23. Dígale V. al mercader que se equivocó en la cuenta que nos mandó. 24. ¡Porqué se queja V. de mí?
25. Yo no me quejo de nadie. 26. ¡Se han hablado estas señoras?
27. Creo que no se han hablado. 28. ¡Dónde ha conocido V. á este caballero?
29. Nos hemos conocido en Madrid.
30. ¡Porqué se burlan V. V. de este hombre?
31. Porque es muy ridículo.
32. El hijo de Juan se está muriendo.
33. 'La pobre madre

se desmayó cuando le hablaron de la muerte de su hijo. 34. Mi hermano se casará cuando tenga una buena colocacion. 35. Si V. no hubiese corrido tan ligero, no se habria caido.

### Exercise 104.

1. Why do not the children go to bed ? 2. They will not go to bed.
3. How is that said in Spanish ? 4. I don't know how it is said.
5. What is your name, my friend ? 6. My name is Edward.
7. Why does not brother get up ; is he sick ? 8. He is not sick, but he always gets up late.
9. Sit down, I will be ready in a moment.
10. Will you take a walk with us ? 11. With pleasure ; where do you wish to go ? 12. Let us go to the park.
13. Why do you get angry so quickly ? 14. You are mistaken ; I never get angry.
15. Will you not go to the concert with us ? 16. I am so tired that I am afraid to fall asleep.
17. When I was in the country I rose very early, but since I have been (am) in town I rise very late.
18. Have the children taken a walk ? 19. Yes, sir, they take a walk every morning early.
20. What did you say when he complained to you ? 21. I did not say anything.
22. He believed himself rich, but he was far from being so.
23. These soldiers defended themselves with the greatest courage.
24. That officer covered himself with glory.
25. Where have you known each other ? 26. We have known each other in France.
27. The enemy has surrendered.
28. The children have taken a bath in the river.
29. Don't laugh at that man, because he is poor and old.
30. I have never laughed at him.
31. That boy has behaved very badly.
32. She fainted on hearing that.
33. You have made a mistake in saying that.
34. After having lost his fortune, he saw himself in the greatest misery.
35. My sister will be married next week.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

1. Reflective or Pronominal verbs are conjugated in Spanish with two Personal Pronouns of the same Person, the *first* (expressed or understood) being the subject, and the second, according to the *active* or *neuter* meaning of the verb, the direct or indirect object :

Yo me divierto or me divierto,  
El se alaba or se alaba,

*I amuse myself. -*  
*He praises himself.*

NOTE. — The indirect pronoun may also be placed after the verb and form but one word with the same :

Divertímonos muchísimo,      *We amuse ourselves much.*

**2.** Reflective verbs are either **essentially reflective**, that is, they cannot be used *without the two personal pronouns*, as **arrepentirse**, 3. *to repent*; **acordarse**, 1. *to remember*, etc., or **accidentally reflective**, that is, they may be formed as in English, from active or neuter verbs : **quemarse**, 1. *to burn one's self*, from **quemar**, 1. *to burn*; **calentarse**, 1. *to warm one's self*, from **calentar**, 1. *to warm*, etc.

The number of verbs **essentially reflective** is limited, but **accidentally reflective verbs** are unlimited, since in Spanish, as well as in English, almost any verb may be used *reflectively*.

**3.** Many verbs which are reflective in Spanish, are not so in English. Such are among others, the verbs :

Quejarse, 1. <i>to complain</i> .	Arrepentirse, 3. <i>to repent</i> .
Acordarse, 1. <i>to remember</i> .	Apoderarse, 1. <i>to take possession</i> .
etc.	etc.

**4.** A reflective verb, conjugated with another verb, takes the corresponding personal pronoun before the Infinitive :

Quiero divertirme,	<i>I wish to amuse myself.</i>
Vamos á bañarnos,	<i>We are going to take a bath.</i>

NOTE. — It is to be observed that in this case also the *indirect pronoun* may precede the first verb : **Me quiero divertir**. *I wish to amuse myself*; **nos vamos á bañar**, *we are going to take a bath*, etc.

**5.** In compound tenses, the indirect pronoun is placed before the auxiliary :

Me he cortado,	<i>I have cut myself.</i>
Se han burlado de V.,	<i>They have made fun of you.</i>
Él se ha comprado una casa,	<i>He has bought himself a house.</i>

**6.** Reflective verbs, when used with plural persons, also express in Spanish a reciprocal or mutual action :

Se viéron, pero no se hablaron,	<i>They saw each other, but they did not speak to each other.</i>
---------------------------------	---

Se han escrito muchas cartas,

*They have written many letters to each other.*

7. The *s* of the first person plural, and the *d* of the second person, are dropped in the Imperative of Reflective verbs :

**Amémonos** instead of *amémosnos*,      *Let us love each other.*

**Amaos** instead of *amados*,      *Love each other.*

8. Accidentally reflective verbs have often a different meaning from that of the primitive verb, as for instance :

Burlarse de uno,      *To make fun of some one.*

Burlar las esperanzas de uno,      *To destroy the hopes of some one.*

Dormirse, 3. *to fall asleep.*

Dormir, 3. *to sleep.*

Desmayarse, 1. *to faint.*

Desmayar, 1. *to lose courage.*

Caerse, 2. *to fall.*

Caer en una falta, *to commit a fault.*

9. There are many Spanish verbs which may be used either reflectively or not, without altering their meaning :

Fiarse or fiar de alguno,      *To trust somebody.*

Chancearse or chancear con alguno,      *To joke with some one.*

Reirse or reir de alguno,      *To laugh at some one.*

Se ha muerto or Ha muerto,      *He has died.*

## Leccion LIII.

## Lesson LIII.

### REFLECTIVE VERBS (*Continued*).

#### **Irse**, 3. *to go away.*

Yo me voy,

*I am going away.*

Tu te vas,

*Thou art going away.*

El se va,

*He is going away.*

Ella se va,

*She is going away.*

Nosotros nos vamos,

*We are going away.*

Vosotros os vais,

*You are going away.*

Ellos (*m.*) se van, {

*They are going away.*

Ellas (*f.*) se van, }

V. (*sing.*) se va, }

*You are going away.*

V. V. (*pl.*) se van, }

**Reflective Verbs referring to parts of the Body.**

Cortarse <i>la</i> mano,	<i>To cut one's hand.</i>
Yo me corto la mano,	<i>I cut my hand.</i>
Tu te cortas la mano,	<i>Thou cuttest thy hand.</i>
Él se corta la mano,	<i>He cuts his hand.</i>
Ella se corta la mano,	<i>She cuts her hand.</i>
Nosotros nos cortamos la mano,	<i>We cut our hand.</i>
Vosotros os cortais la mano,	<i>You cut your hand.</i>
Ellos ( <i>m.</i> ) se cortan la mano, {	<i>They cut their hand.</i>
Ellas ( <i>f.</i> ) se cortan la mano, {	
V. ( <i>sing.</i> ) se corta la mano, {	<i>You cut your hand.</i>
V. V. ( <i>pl.</i> ) se cortan la mano, {	
Ponerse <i>el</i> sombrero,	<i>To put on one's hat.</i>
Yo me pongo el sombrero,	<i>I put on my hat.</i>
Tu te pones el sombrero,	<i>Thou puttest on thy hat.</i>
Él se pone el sombrero,	<i>He puts on his hat.</i>
Ella se pone el sombrero,	<i>She puts on her hat.</i>
Nosotros nos ponemos el sombrero,	<i>We put on our hat.</i>
Vosotros os poneis el sombrero,	<i>You put on your hat.</i>
Ellos ( <i>m.</i> ) se ponen el sombrero, {	<i>They put on their hats.</i>
Ellas ( <i>f.</i> ) se ponen el sombrero, {	
V. ( <i>sing.</i> ) se pone el sombrero, {	<i>You put on your hat.</i>
V. V. ( <i>pl.</i> ) se ponen el sombrero, {	
Ponerselo,	<i>To put it on.</i>
Yo me lo pongo,	<i>I put it on.</i>
Tu te lo pones,	<i>Thou puttest it on.</i>
Él se lo pone,	<i>He puts it on.</i>
Ella se lo pone,	<i>She puts it on.</i>
Nosotros nos lo ponemos,	<i>We put it on.</i>
Vosotros os lo poneis,	<i>You put it on.</i>
Ellos ( <i>m.</i> ) se lo ponen, {	<i>They put it on.</i>
Ellas ( <i>f.</i> ) se lo ponen, {	
V. ( <i>sing.</i> ) se lo pone, {	<i>You put it on.</i>
V. V. ( <i>pl.</i> ) se lo ponen, {	

**Compound Tenses.**

Yo me he cortado la mano,	<i>I have cut my hand.</i>
Tu te has cortado la mano,	<i>Thou hast cut thy hand.</i>
Él se ha cortado la mano,	<i>He has cut his hand.</i>
Ella se ha cortado la mano.	<i>She has cut her hand.</i>

Nosotros nos hemos cortado la mano,  
 Vosotros os habeis cortado la mano,  
 Ellos (*m.*) se han cortado la mano, }  
 Ellas (*f.*) se han cortado la mano, }  
 V. (*sing.*) se ha cortado la mano, }  
 V. V. (*pl.*) se han cortado la mano, }

*We have cut our hand.*  
*You have cut your hand.*  
*They have cut their hand.*  
*You have cut your hand.*

Yo me he puesto el sombrero,  
 etc.

*I have put on my hat.*  
*etc.*

Yo me lo he puesto,  
 etc.

*I have put it on.*  
*etc.*

### Ejemplos.

Mateo se ensució los dedos.  
 Nos hemos quemado la mano.  
 ¿ Se ha quitado V. los zapatos ?  
 No me los he quitado.  
 ¿ Se pondrá V. el sombrero nuevo ?  
 Me pondré el viejo.  
 ¿ Quién le corta á V. las uñas ?  
 Mi madre me las corta.  
 Cuando se va V. ?  
 Me voy ahora.

### Examples.

Matthew soiled his fingers.  
 We have burned our hand.  
 Have you taken off your shoes ?  
 I have not taken them off.  
 Will you put on your new hat ?  
 I will put on the old one.  
 Who cuts your nails ?  
 My mother cuts them for me.  
 When are you going away ?  
 I am going away now.

### Vocabulario.

**El dedo,** *the finger.*  
**El guante,** *the glove.*  
**La bota,** *the boot.*  
**La cama,** *the bed.*  
**La camisa,** *the shirt.*  
**La cara,** *the face.*  
**La casaca,** *the coat.*  
**La media,** *the stocking.*  
**La pierna,** *the leg.*  
**La uña,** *the nail.*  
**Ádios,** *good by.*

### Vocabulary.

**Afuera,** *out.*  
**Hinchado,** *swollen.*  
**Pues,** *well.*  
**Afeitar,** 1. *to shave.*  
**Lavar,** 1. *to wash.*  
**Marcharse,** 1. *to depart.*  
**Ponerse,** 2. *to put on.*  
**Quitarse,** 1. *to take off.*  
**Seguir,** 3. *to continue.*  
**Sentar,** 1. *to become.*

### Exercise 105.

1. Vayase V. de aquí, V. hace demasiado ruido.
2. Me iré en un momento.
3. ¿ Se ha lavado V. las manos ?
4. Me he lavado las

manos y la cara. 5. ¿Cuando se marcha su hermano de V.? 6. Se marchará esta noche á las ocho. 7. ¿Porqué no se corta V. las uñas? 8. Me las corto todas las semanas. 9. Los hombres quieren irse. 10. Pues, que se vayan. 11. ¿Porqué no se quita V. las medias ántes de acostarse? 12. Yo me las quito en la cama. 13. Quitese V. el sombrero cuando V. entra en el cuarto. 14. Yo siempre me lo quito. 15. Vámonos, ya es tarde. 16. No puedo irme ahora; tengo todavía demasiado que hacer. 17. No puedo ponerme los zapatos, tengo los piés hinchados. 18. Ese muchacho se va á cortar los dedos si sigue jugando con el cuchillo. 19. Póngase V. otra camisa, la que V. tiene no está limpia. 20. El pobre Juan se rompió la pierna, cuando cayó de su caballo. 21. ¿Cuantas veces se afeita V.? 22. Me afeito todos los días. 23. ¿Porqué no se quita V. las botas? 24. No puedo quitarmelas. 25. Ádios, amigo, me voy.

### Exercise 106.

1. Why do you go away so soon?
2. I have to go away, it is already late.
3. Johnny is a bad boy, he would not take off his hat in Mrs. Riera's house.
4. Wash that child's face and take him out.
5. I cannot write, I must first warm my hands.
6. Do not go away yet, I need you.
7. When can I go away?
8. You may go away in half an hour.
9. Would you go away if you could remain longer?
10. I would not go away if I had not so much to do.
11. Wash your hands and come with me.
12. Do not take off your hat, you have to go out yet.
13. I cannot put on these gloves, they are too small for me.
14. Poor Mr. Castro broke his arm the other day.
15. Which coat will you put on?
16. I will put my blue coat on.
17. Let us go away, my father is waiting for us.
18. Which of your brothers is going away next week?
19. They are both going away.
20. Take off that hat, it does not become you.
21. Good by, sir, we are going away.
22. If you fall down, you will break your head.
23. I have burned my hand, and I cannot work to-day.
24. He put on his hat and coat, and went away without saying a word.
25. Felipe will not put on his shoes; he says that he has sore feet.
26. Our friends are going away to-morrow.
27. Why do you not go with them?
28. You know very well that I am obliged to remain in town?

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

1. The reflective pronoun is used in Spanish when the object of the verb is a *part of the body*, and in such cases the article takes the place of the *possessive adjective* before the noun :

Yo me corto el dedo,	<i>I cut my finger.</i>
Él se lava la cara,	<i>He washes his face.</i>

2. The verbs **ponerse**, 2. *to put on*, and **quitarse**, 1. *to take off*, follow the same rule as above when referring to articles of clothing and others when destined for parts of the body :

Me pongo el sombrero,	<i>I put on my hat.</i>
Me quito los guantes,	<i>I take off my gloves.</i>

---

## Lección LIV.

## Lesson LIV.

## PERIPHRASTIC VERBS.

Hacerse,	<i>to become.</i>	Haber de,
Meterse,		Tener de,
Ponerse,		Haber menester de,
Volverse,		Tener menester de,
Llegar á ser,		Deber de,
Venir á ser,		Placer, 2.
Irse haciendo,		Gustar, 1.
Venir á ser,		Agradar, 1.
Venir á parar,		
		<i>must, shall.</i>
		<i>to like, to please.</i>

## Conjugation.

**Hacerse, 2. meterse, 2. ponerse, 2. volverse, 2. to become.**

## Present Indicative.

Yo me hago,	<i>I become.</i>
Tu te haces,	<i>thou becomest.</i>
Él se hace,	<i>he becomes.</i>
Ella se hace,	<i>she becomes.</i>
Nosotros nos hacemos,	<i>we become.</i>
Vosotros os haceis,	<i>you become.</i>

Ellos ( <i>m.</i> ) se hacen,	{	<i>they become.</i>
Ellas ( <i>f.</i> ) se hacen,		
V. ( <i>sing.</i> ) se hace,	{	<i>you become.</i>
V. V. ( <i>pl.</i> ) se hacen,		

### Preterite Indefinite.

Me he hecho,	<i>I have become.</i>
Te has hecho,	<i>thou hast become.</i>
Él se ha hecho,	<i>he has become.</i>
Ella se ha hecho,	<i>she has become.</i>
Nosotros nos hemos hecho,	<i>we have become.</i>
Vosotros os habeis hecho,	<i>you have become.</i>
Ellos ( <i>m.</i> ) se han hecho,	{ <i>they have become.</i>
Ellas ( <i>f.</i> ) se han hecho,	
V. ( <i>sing.</i> ) se ha hecho,	{ <i>you have become.</i>
V. V. ( <i>pl.</i> ) se han hecho,	

### Llegar, l. venir á ser.

#### Present Indicative.

Yo llego á ser,	{	<i>I become.</i>
Yo vengo á ser,		
etc.		<i>etc.</i>

#### Preterite Indefinite.

He llegado á ser,	{	<i>I have become.</i>
He venido á ser,		

### Irse haciendo.

#### Present Indicative.

Yo me voy haciendo,	<i>I am becoming.</i>
Tu te vas haciendo,	<i>thou art becoming.</i>
Él se va haciendo,	<i>he is becoming.</i>
Ella se va haciendo,	<i>she is becoming.</i>
Nosotros nos vamos haciendo,	<i>we are becoming.</i>
Vosotros os vais haciendo,	<i>you are becoming.</i>
Ellos ( <i>m.</i> ) se van haciendo,	{ <i>they are becoming.</i>
Ellas ( <i>f.</i> ) se van haciendo,	
V. ( <i>sing.</i> ) se va haciendo,	{ <i>you are becoming.</i>
V. V. ( <i>pl.</i> ) se van haciendo,	

## Preterite Indefinite.

Me he ido haciendo,	<i>I have become.</i>	
Te has ido haciendo,	<i>thou hast become.</i>	
Se ha ido haciendo,	<i>he or she has become.</i>	
Nos hemos ido haciendo,	<i>we have become.</i>	
Os habeis ido haciendo,	<i>you have become.</i>	
Se han ido haciendo,	<i>they have become.</i>	
V. (sing.) se ha ido haciendo,	<i>}</i>	<i>you have become.</i>
V. V. (pl.) se han ido haciendo,		

**Haber, 2. tener menester de, haber de, deber de.**

## Present Indicative.

Yo he menester de salir,	<i>I must go out.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

## Preterite Indefinite.

He habido menester de salir,	<i>I have been obliged to go out.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

**Gustar, 1. placer, 2. agradar, 1. to like, to please.**Present Indicative (*affirmatively*).

Me gusta or gustan,	<i>I like or like to.</i>	
Te gusta or gustan,	<i>thou likest or likest to.</i>	
Le gusta or gustan,	<i>he or she likes or likes to.</i>	
Nos gusta or gustan,	<i>we like or like to.</i>	
Os gusta or gustan,	<i>you like or like to.</i>	
Les gusta or gustan,	<i>they like or like to.</i>	
Á V. le gusta or gustan (sing.),	<i>}</i>	<i>you like or like to.</i>
Á V. V. les gusta or gustan (pl.),		

Present Indicative (*interrogatively*).

¿ Me gusta (or gustan) á mí ?	<i>do I like (or do I like to) ?</i>
¿ Te gusta (or gustan) á tí ?	<i>dost thou like (or like to) ?</i>
¿ Le gusta (or gustan) á él ?	<i>does he like (or like to) ?</i>
¿ Le gusta (or gustan) á ella ?	<i>does she like (or like to) ?</i>

<i>i Nos gusta (or gustan) á nosotros ?</i>	<i>do we like (or like to) ?</i>
<i>i Os gusta (or gustan) á vosotros ?</i>	<i>do you like (or like to) ?</i>
<i>i Les gusta (or gustan) á ellos (m.) ?</i>	<i>do they like (or like to) ?</i>
<i>i Les gusta (or gustan) á ellas (f.) ?</i>	
<i>i Le gusta (or gustan) á V. (sing.) ?</i>	
<i>i Les gusta (or gustan) á V. V. (pl.) ?</i>	<i>do you like (or like to) ?</i>

**Vocabulario.**

**El chaleco,** *the vest.*  
**El precio,** *the price.*  
**El prisionero,** *the prisoner.*  
**El sastre,** *the tailor.*  
**La lluvia,** *the rain.*  
**Los padres,** *the parents.*  
**Débil,** *weak.*  
**De repente,** *suddenly.*  
**Despacio,** *slowly.*  
**Honrado,** *honest.*  
**Loco,** *insane.*  
**Orgulloso,** *proud.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Otra cosa,** *something else.*  
**Sobre,** *about.*  
**Afusilar,** 1. *to shoot.*  
**Concluirse,** 3. *to end.*  
**Construir,** 3. *to build.*  
**Correr,** 2. *to run.*  
**Echarse,** 1. *to begin.*  
**Gritar,** 1. *to scream.*  
**Llamar,** 1. *to call.*  
**Odiar,** 1. *to hate.*  
**Respetar,** 1. *to respect.*  
**Seguir,** 3. *to continue.*

**Exercise 107.**

1. Mi hermano se ha hecho negociante.
2. Este hombre no sabe nada, y se ha metido á médico.
3. Por sus talentos llegó aquel oficial á ser general.
4. El tiempo se ha puesto tan malo, que no hemos podido marcharnos.
5. Juan se puso tan malo, que creímos que se iba á morir.
6. Yo no sé en que vendrá á parar esta disputa.
7. Me es preciso salir mañana muy temprano.
8. Si el enfermo sigue malo, habrá que llamar al médico.
9. El hijo debe y ha de respetar á sus padres.
10. El general mandó afusilar á los prisioneros.
11. Sobre eso, hay mucho que decir.
12. El muchacho se echó á correr despues de haber robado las manzanas.
13. ¡Le gusta á V. la cerveza?
14. No me gusta mucho.
15. ¡Que se hará de nosotros si no recibimos dinero!
16. Hemos menester de salir ántes de las tres.
17. Nuestro amigo Felipe trabaja mucho, y se va haciendo rico.
18. Estando en la calle, se puso á gritar.
19. Muchos de mis amigos se han hecho ricos en América.
20. No me gustan estos libros, y así no los leo.
21. Se dice que el padre de Enrique se ha vuelto loco.
22. Aquel hombre se volvió tan orgulloso que era odiado de todos.
23. Tendrémos que pagarle á este hombre el precio que pide.

24. Mejor quiero ser pobre que robar. 25. El año que viene me haré construir una casa mas grande. 26. No me agrada la conducta de este hombre. 27. Vamos mas despacio; á mi no me gusta andar tan ligero. 28. ¿ Á que ha venido á parar aquello? 29. Todavía no se sabe. 30. No nos place que V. V. hagan eso. 31. Deje V. entrar á este hombre.

### Exercise 108.

1. My brother would have become a general if the war had not ended.
2. What will become of those two men?
3. A bad prince seldom becomes a good king.
4. Being in the street, he became very sick.
5. The poor man became so weak that he could not walk.
6. John is getting richer every day.
7. I do not like this man, I don't believe he is honest.
8. You will have to give him all the money he asks.
9. The thief began to run when he saw us.
10. What will become of those poor children?
11. You will get sick if you are not more prudent.
12. When iron is exposed to rain it becomes rusty.
13. What would you like to eat?
14. I should like to eat some chicken.
15. I believe that man has become insane.
16. He has become a physician after having studied several years in Paris.
17. You will have to speak to him, if he comes again.
18. I am having a new vest made by my tailor.
19. If you don't like this wine, I will give you something else.
20. The weather has suddenly become very cold.
21. I don't know what will become of that man.
22. Napoleon the First became great by his victories.
23. I have to stay at home until my brother returns.
24. He began to laugh when I told him that.
25. Are we going to read or to write?
26. You are to read first.
27. If I call you, come immediately, and don't keep me waiting (*make me wait*).
28. Next year we are going to have a house built.
29. Henry has become rich in a few years.
30. My sister says that she does not like her new house.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

1. There are verbs besides the auxiliary verbs already mentioned which may be called **periphrastic verbs**, because they are used not only to form the compound tenses of other verbs, but also to circumscribe the sentence. The verbs **haber**, 2. and **tener**, 2. followed by the preposition **de**, belong to this category,

and so do certain *active* and *neuter* verbs taken reflectively or followed by the preposition *á*, as will be seen by the list above.

**2.** The verb **to become**, when expressing a change of condition or profession by the subject, is rendered in Spanish by **hacerse**, 2. **ponerse**, 2. and **meterse**, 2. :

Se ha hecho Se ha puesto Se ha metido	}	á médico,	<i>He has become a physician.</i>
---	---	-----------	-----------------------------------

**3.** When the change of condition is not performed by the subject, but is a consequence of its merits, **llegar á ser**, **venir á ser**, or **ser hecho** are then used :

Por sus talentos llegó á ser (vino á ser      *By his talents he became physician*  
or fué hecho) médico de cámara,                  *of the court.*

NOTE. — **Irse haciendo** is used to express a progressing action.

**4.** **To become** or **to get** is translated by **ponerse**, 2. to express a change in health, and by the same verb and by **volverse**, 2. or **hacerse**, 2. if we express a change in the physical or moral condition of a person, animal, or thing :

Se ha puesto enfermo, Se volvió loco,	He has become sick. He became insane.
--	--

**5.** **To result** is best translated by **ser**, **salir de**, or **venir á parar** :

Yo no sé en que vendrá á parar (que saldrá or que será) de esta disputa,      *I don't know what the result of this dispute will be.*

**6.** **To commence**, when governing an Infinitive and expressing a motion, or the feeling of joy and sadness, is rendered by **empezar**, 1. **ponerse**, 2. and **echarse**, 1. with the preposition *á* :

Empezó á correr, Se puso á reír, Se echó á llorar,	He began to run. He began to laugh. He began to cry.
--	--

## Leccion LV.

## Lesson LV.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**Llover,** 2. *to rain.*

Llueve,	<i>It rains.</i>
Llovia,	<i>It was raining.</i>
Llovió,	<i>It did rain.</i>
Lloverá,	<i>It will rain.</i>
Llovería,	<i>It should or would rain.</i>
Que llueva,	<i>That it may rain.</i>
Que lloviese or lloviera,	<i>That it might rain.</i>
Ha llovido,	<i>It has rained.</i>
Habia llovido,	<i>It had been raining.</i>
Hubo llovido,	<i>It had rained.</i>
Habrá llovido,	<i>It will have rained.</i>
Habria llovido,	<i>It should or would have rained.</i>
Que haya llovido,	<i>That it may have rained.</i>
Que hubiese } llovido,	<i>That it might have rained.</i>
Que hubiera }	
Habiendo llovido,	<i>Having rained.</i>
<b>Helar,</b> 1. <i>to freeze;</i>	hiela, <i>it freezes.</i>
<b>Granizar,</b> 1. <i>to hail;</i>	graniza, <i>it hails.</i>
<b>Deshelar,</b> 1. <i>to thaw;</i>	deshiela, <i>it thaws.</i>
<b>Never,</b> 1. <i>to snow;</i>	nieva, <i>it snows.</i>
<b>Tronar,</b> 1. <i>to thunder;</i>	truena, <i>it thunders.</i>
<b>Lloviznar,</b> 1. <i>to drizzle;</i>	llovizna, <i>it drizzles.</i>
<b>Relampaguear,</b> 1. <i>to lighten;</i>	relampaguea, <i>it lightens.</i>
<b>Ventear,</b> 1. <i>to blow;</i>	ventea, <i>it blows.</i>
<b>Amanecer,</b> 2. } <i>to dawn:</i>	amanece, } <i>it dawns.</i>
<b>Alborear,</b> 1. } <i></i>	alborea, } <i></i>
<b>Anochecer,</b> 2. <i>to grow dark;</i>	anochece, <i>it grows dark.</i>

**Hacer,** 2. and **Haber,** 2. impersonally.

¿ Que tiempo hace ?	<i>How is the weather ?</i>
Hace buen tiempo, . }	<i>It is fine weather.</i>
Hace hermoso tiempo,	
Hace mal tiempo,	<i>It is bad weather.</i>
Hace calor,	<i>It is warm.</i>
Hace frio,	<i>It is cold.</i>

Hace viento,	<i>It is windy.</i>
Hace sol,	<i>The sun shines.</i>
Hay sol,	<i>The moon shines.</i>
Hay luna,	<i>It is muddy.</i>
Hace lodo,	<i>It is dusty.</i>
Hay polvo,	<i>It is daylight.</i>
Hace dia,	<i>It is night.</i>
Hace noche,	

Acaecer, 2.  
Acontecer, 2.  
Suceder, 2.  
etc.

Importar, 1. *to be important.*  
Parecer, 2. *to appear, to seem.*  
Convenir, 3. *to be proper.*  
etc.

### Vocabulario.

El invierno, *the winter.*  
El lodo, *the mud.*  
El puerto, *the port.*  
El quitasol, *the sunshade.*  
El sobretodo, *the overcoat.*  
El trineo, *the sleigh.*  
El trueno, *the thunder.*  
La carreta, *the cart.*  
La estacion, *the season.*  
La luna, *the moon.*  
La milla, *the mile.*

### Vocabulary.

La sociedad, *the society.*  
La ventana, *the window.*  
Algo, *rather.*  
Á menudo, *often.*  
Comedido, *polite.*  
Húmedo, *damp.*  
Oscuro, *dark.*  
Preciso, *necessary.*  
Singular, *singular.*  
Alegrarse, 1. *to rejoice.*  
Vestirse, 3. *to dress.*

### Exercise 109.

1. ¡ Que hermoso tiempo hace hoy, no es verdad ? 2. Sí, hace un tiempo de primavera. 3. ¡ Hace calor en su pais de V. ? 4. No hace tanto calor como aquí. 5. Hoy llueve demasiado, los muchachos no podrán salir. 6. Esta noche habrá luna, podremos dar un paseo en el parque. 7. ¡ Si sigue la lluvia, habrá mucho lodo en las calles. 8. ¡ Que tiempo hará mañana ? V. puede estar seguro que hará mal tiempo. 9. Hay mucho sol ; tome V. su quitasol. 10. Ayer hizo bastante frio. 11. No hizo demasiado frio. 12. ¡ Qué fué lo que sucedió ? 13. Sucedío que nadie tenia dinero, cuando fué preciso pagar. 14. Si hace frio, póngase V. el sobretodo. 15. Nunca hace demasiado frio para mí. 16. Ni para mí tampoco. 17. Ha nevado muy á menudo este invierno. 18. Abra V. la ventana, y vea V. que tiempo hace. 19. Esta helando. 20. Relampagueó muchísimo

anoche. 21. Conviene ser comedido en la sociedad. 22. Importa que salgamos temprano mañana. 23. Acaece muchas veces que llueve y hiela al mismo tiempo. 24. Es verdad que su hermano me ha dicho esto, pero yo no lo creo. 25. Yo amanecí en Toledo y anochecí en Madrid. 26. Me acaecieron muchas cosas en el viaje. 27. Anochece muy temprano ahora. 28. ¿Está tronando ; oye V. el trueno ? 29. No es el trueno, es una carreta que está pasando en la calle. 30. Si hace buen viento, llegarémos mañana temprano al puerto.

### Exercise 110.

1. It is important to know who was the last person who entered the room.
2. A singular thing has occurred.
3. It seems as if you had nothing to say.
4. As soon as it dawns we will dress and leave the house.
5. If I had known that it was so cold, I should not have gone out.
6. It was so hot here last summer that we all went to the country.
7. It hailed last night, and I thought that it would also hail to-day.
8. It thundered and lightened the whole day, but it did not rain.
9. Did it snow this morning ?
10. No, but it will either snow or rain in a moment.
11. It dawns very early in this season.
12. I wish it would snow every day, that we might go in a sleigh.
13. How many miles are there from here to B. ?
14. It is too late to go there to-day.
15. Dear friend, how glad I am to see you again.
16. It is too damp to-day to go out.
17. It is very dark here, open the windows.
18. It is not daylight yet.
19. It was very fine weather yesterday.
20. It was rather cold.
21. Was it cold when you were in the country ?
22. It was colder there than last year at the same time.
23. I think that it will be very warm this summer.
24. Do you know what happened to my brother ?
25. Yes, John told me what happened to him.
26. It is very muddy, put on your other shoes.
27. If it rains, I will lend you my umbrella.
28. It was raining, but it does not rain now.
29. It is very windy.
30. They say that it is just as warm in the country as in the city.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

- 1. Impersonal verbs** can only be used in the Infinitive or in the third person singular without any pronoun :

Llueve, *it rains* ;      graniza, *it hails*.

**2.** Impersonal verbs are either **essentially impersonal**, that is, cannot be used otherwise, as **llover**, 2. *to rain*; **nevar**, 1. *to snow*; etc., or they are accidentally impersonal, that is, they may be formed from any *active* or *neuter verb*.

**3.** The verbs **amanecer**, 1. *to dawn*, and **anochecer**, 2. *to grow dark*, when used as neuter verbs, may be conjugated with all persons. We may therefore say :

Amanecímos en Toledo, y anocheci-      *It was daylight when we reached To-*  
mos en Madrid,      *ledo, and night when we reached*  
    *Madrid.*

**4.** The impersonal verbs **acaecer**, 2. **acontecer**, 2. **convenir**, 3. **importar**, 1. **parecer**, 2. **suceder**, 2. admit a subject and agree with the same when accompanied by the pronouns **me**, **te**, **le**, etc. :

Me acaecieron muchas cosas,	<i>Many things happened to me.</i>
Le sucedieron varias desgracias,	<i>Several misfortunes happened to him.</i>

---

## Leccion LVI.

## Lesson LVI.

### GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

#### Verbs requiring Prepositions after them.

##### Ejemplos.

- V. abusa *de* nuestra amistad.
- El se acerca *de* (á) la ventana.
- Yo me acuerdo *de* él.
- Me alegro *de* ver á V.
- El se aleja *de* nosotros.
  
- El se inclina *al* vicio.
- Yo adhiero *á* mi opinion.
- Él está acostumbrado *á* la limpieza.
- Ha sido condenado *á* la prision.
  
- El pais abunda *en* hierro.
- Él ha caido *en* error.
- Yo confio *en* V. .

##### Examples.

- You abuse our friendship.
- He approaches the window.
- I remember him.
- I am glad to see you.
- He goes away from us.
  
- He inclines towards vice.
- I adhere to my opinion.
- He is accustomed to cleanliness.
- He has been sentenced to prison.
  
- The country is abundant in iron.
- He has fallen into a mistake.
- I trust to you.

Hemos convenido *en* esto.  
Yo no creo en eso.

Se casó *con* mi hermana.  
Cumplo *con* mi obligacion.  
Me he escusado *con* él.  
Me molesta *con* sus visitas.

Él calla *por* miedo.  
Me doy *por* vencido.  
Estoy *por* él.  
Pecamos *por* orgullo.

We have agreed to that.  
I do not believe in that.

He married my sister.  
I do my duty.  
I have apologized to him.  
He annoys me with his visits.

He is silent through fear.  
I consider myself as conquered.  
I abide by him.  
We sin through pride.

### Vocabulario.

**El avaro**, *the miser.*  
**El beneficio**, *the benefit.*  
**El consejo**, *the advice.*  
**El pleito**, *the lawsuit.*  
**El reo**, *the culprit.*  
**La costa**, *the expense.*  
**La fiebre**, *the fever.*  
**La friolera**, *the trifle.*  
**La lágrima**, *the tear.*  
**La sentencia**, *the judgment.*  
**La yerba**, *the grass.*  
**Acostumbrado**, *accustomed.*  
**Agradecido**, *thankful.*  
**Bordado**, *trimmed.*  
**Acercarse**, *1. to approach.*

### Vocabulary.

**Adherir**, *3. to adhere.*  
**Alejarse**, *1. to leave.*  
**Apartar**, *1. to remove.*  
**Apelar**, *1. to appeal.*  
**Censurar**, *1. to censure.*  
**Colmar**, *1. to overwhelm.*  
**Condenar**, *1. to condemn.*  
**Dedicar**, *1. to devote.*  
**Desconfiar**, *1. to distrust.*  
**Embarcar**, *1. to engage.*  
**Entender**, *2. to understand.*  
**Formalizarse**, *1. to get vexed.*  
**Habituarse**, *1. to accustom one's self.*  
**Interesarse**, *1. to take interest.*  
**Jactarse**, *1. to boast.*

### Exercise 111.

1. Si V. adhiere á mi opinion, adheriré yo á la suya.
2. El reo ha sido condenado á muerte.
3. Acuérdese V. de mi.
4. El rey colmó á su ministro de beneficios.
5. Este hombre padece de fiebres.
6. Censuran á este rico de avaro.
7. Con mis consejos le he apartado de malas compañias.
8. Mi hermano ha sido condenado en las costas del pleito.
9. No se acerque V. de la ventana, pues hace frio.
10. Estoy acostumbrado á estos trabajos.
11. V. no tiene razon de acusarme de esto.
12. Estoy agradecido á los beneficios que he recibido.
13. Me alejé de aquella tierra con las lágrimas en los ojos.
14. Me alegro de verle á V. bueno.
15. El negociante ha apelado de

la sentencia. 16. El traje de la reina estaba bordado de oro. 17. V. no deberia burlarse de este hombre. 18. Yo no me burlo de nadie. 19. He cambiado mi caballo por otro. 20. Nos hemos cansado del viaje. 21. Él se casará con aquella señora tan rica. 22. Aquel joven dedica todo su tiempo al estudio. 23. Desconfio de este hombre sin conocerle. 24. Temo que V. se embarque en malos negocios. 25. No entendemos nada de eso. 26. V. V. sé han formalizado por una friolera. 27. No tiene V. razon de gloriarse de esa accion. 28. No hemos podido habituarnos á ese pais. 29. Nos hemos interesado en este joven, pero él nos ha engañado. 30. El pobre hombre se mantenía de frutas y de yerbas.

### Exercise 112.

1. If you make fun of me, I will tell it to your father.
2. Has the soldier been sentenced to death?
3. He has been sentenced to (the) prison.
4. He boasts of a thing of which he ought to be ashamed.
5. Our teacher takes great interest in our studies.
6. Do you remember my brother?
7. I remember him very well, but I don't remember your cousin.
8. I am doing something now to which I am not accustomed.
9. Why do you not come near the fire?
10. I am not cold, I am very well here.
11. I am very glad to know that you have not lost your money in that business.
12. We have exchanged our coffee for tea.
13. I do not understand anything about this matter.
14. You are wrong to distrust that man, he is your friend.
15. He accuses me of having deceived him, but he does not tell the truth.
16. I adhere to what I have said.
17. If you engage in that business you will lose all your money.
18. That young man supports his family with his work.
19. Remember what I told you when you see your brother.
20. We are thankful for the benefits we have received.
21. Do not go away from the window.
22. He is very glad to see that his brother studies so much.
23. If you appeal from the judgment, you will be condemned a second time.
24. I have become tired of that house.
25. Do you think that Mr. Martinez will marry Miss Ruiz?
26. I think he will marry her next month.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

- 1. Many verbs which sometimes in English are not followed by any preposition, govern in Spanish either the genitive, the

dative, or the ablative, with the prepositions **de**, **á**, **con**, **por**, **para**, **sobre**, etc. Some of these verbs may even, without changing their meaning, govern different prepositions, as :

*Instruir á alguno de, en or sobre algo,*      *To inform some one of something.*

Other verbs change their meaning according to the preposition which follows them :

Creo en él,

*I believe in him.*

Me creo de esta cosa,

*I am convinced of that thing.*

**2.** Most reflective verbs, and those which express the movements of the soul or mind, want, fulness, separation, accusation, blame, etc., generally govern the preposition **de**.

**OBSERVATION.** — It would be difficult to give definite rules for the government of the other prepositions. The Grammar of the Spanish Academy contains a long list of verbs with their corresponding prepositions. We have omitted the same, as we consider that the student will have to depend principally on practice and reading to master these as well as other difficulties.

## Lección LVII.

### GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

#### Ejemplos.

Este hombre es digno *de* su posición.  
Estoy deseoso *de* verle.  
Mi hermano es alto *de* cuerpo.  
Aquella señora es pálida de color.  
Nuestra casa está cercana de la ciudad.  
Estoy cierto de su venida.

Este vino es agrio *al* gusto.  
Él es amable *á* todos.  
Esto es beneficio *á* la salud.  
Él es fiel *á* sus amigos.

Él está triste por la muerte de su hermano.  
Estoy alegre con la llegada de mi hermano.

## Lesson LVII.

### GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

#### Examples.

This man is worthy of his position.  
I am anxious to see him.  
My brother is tall in size.  
That lady has a pale complexion.  
Our house is near the city.

I am sure of his coming.

This wine is sour to the taste.  
He is amiable towards everybody.  
This is good for the health.  
He is faithful to his friends.

He is sad about the death of his brother.  
I am glad at the arrival of my brother.

**Vocabulario.**

**El compañero,** *the companion.*  
**El héroe,** *the hero.*  
**El pesar,** *the grief.*  
**El poder,** *the power.*  
**El principio,** *the principle.*  
**El temor,** *the fear.*  
**La alabanza,** *the praise.*  
**La botella,** *the bottle.*  
**La costumbre,** *the manner.*  
**La mina,** *the mine.*  
**La naranja,** *the orange.*  
**La razon,** *the reason.*  
**La ruina,** *the ruin.*  
**La súplica,** *the entreaty.*  
**Aceptable,** *acceptable.*  
**Ansioso,** *eager.*  
**Codicioso,** *greedy.*  
**Conforme,** *conformably.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Despreciado,** *despised.*  
**Digno,** *worthy.*  
**Encendido,** *red.*  
**Exento,** *exempted.*  
**Favorable,** *favorable.*  
**Incapaz,** *incapable.*  
**Indigno,** *unworthy.*  
**Inmóvil,** *immovable.*  
**Lleno,** *full.*  
**Maduro,** *ripe.*  
**Penoso,** *hard, painful.*  
**Poderoso,** *powerful.*  
**Propenso,** *inclined.*  
**Propicio,** *propitious.*  
**Sorprendido,** *surprised.*  
**Descascarar,** 1. *to peel.*  
**Obrar,** 1. *to act.*

**Exercise 113.**

- Este hombre es muy codicioso de dinero.
- V. está lleno de soberbia, y V. no tiene motivo para ello.
- Mi hermano ha sido exento del servicio militar.
- Es una cosa fácil de hacer, y sin embargo V. la hace muy mal.
- Los habitantes de aquella isla son puros de costumbres.
- Es penoso de ver á ese hombre correr á la ruina.
- Hemos obrado conforme á la razon.
- Don Pedro es un hombre despreciado de todos y indigno del empleo que ocupa.
- Esta fruta no es buena para comer.
- V. es incapaz de comprender nuestras ideas.
- Estoy contento con lo que tengo, y no deseo nada mas.
- La proposicion que V. nos hace es aceptable para todos.
- La pobre mujer se quedó inmóvil de temor.
- La accion de ese hombre es digna de alabanza.
- La vida humana está llena de pesares.
- El héroe está siempre ansioso de gloria ; y, el avaro, codicioso de dinero.
- Este muchacho es muy bonito de cara.
- Esta lengua es fácil de aprender.
- Aquel pais es rico en granos, pero pobre en minas.
- Estoy cierto de mi asencion.
- El hombre verdaderamente liberal es fiel á sus principios.
- La libertad es propicia á las ciencias y á las artes.
- ¿ Porqué está V. tan encendido de cara ?
- Porque acabo de correr, y tengo mucho calor.
- La naranja madura es fácil de descascarar.

## Exercise 114.

1. That fruit is not good to eat, it is not ripe yet.
2. If you act in (*de*) that way you will be despised by everybody.
3. You ought to be satisfied with what you have.
4. I am anxious to see your brother, when does he arrive?
5. He will be here to-morrow.
6. That action is unworthy of an honest man.
7. The mighty are inclined to abuse their power.
8. It is easy to say that, but it is not so easy to do as you think.
9. I am certain of what I say.
10. The weather is very favorable for our journey.
11. That bottle is full of wine.
12. That country is very rich in gold mines.
13. We are most anxious to know the truth.
14. I knew that you were incapable of acting thus.
15. That child is beloved by all his companions.
16. They have acted according to (the) reason.
17. Life is full of misery.
18. I am tired of the conduct of this man.
19. We are not accustomed to see so many people in our small town.
20. I am surprised at what that man has told us.
21. He is deaf to all our entreaties.
22. Those men are poor in means, but rich in credit.
23. They are very sad about the death of their father.
24. Your father's proposition is acceptable to everybody.
25. The poor servant was all his life faithful to his master.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

- 1.** Many adjectives have in Spanish a meaning by themselves, while others require a complement to their meaning, as **digno**, *worthy*; **propenso**, *inclined*; **comparable**, *comparable*; etc. :

Es una acción digna (*of what?*) de elogio, *It is an action worthy of praise.*

Los poderosos son propensos (*to what?*) á abusar de su poder, *The mighty are inclined to abuse their power.*

- 2.** An adjective may govern a noun, an Infinitive, or a sentence in the Subjunctive mood :

Fiel á sus amigos, *Faithful to his friends.*

Diestro en saltar, *Skilful in jumping.*

Él es indigno de que le compadezcan, *He is unworthy of being pitied.*

- 3.** Those adjectives which express *worthiness*, *unworthiness*, *facility*, *difficulty*, *fulness*, *want*, *scarcity*, *eagerness*, *anxiety*, *de-*

*sire, exception, moral or physical qualities, moral or physical separation, distance, proximity, certainty, uncertainty, danger, etc., generally govern the preposition de:*

Digno de recompensa,	<i>Worthy of reward.</i>
Indigno de perdon,	<i>Unworthy of pardon.</i>
Facil de hacer,	<i>Easy to do.</i>
Penoso de hacer,	<i>Difficult to do.</i>
Lleno de soberbia,	<i>Full of pride.</i>
Escaso de conceptos,	<i>Poor in ideas.</i>
Deseoso de trabajar,	<i>Desirous of working.</i>
Codicioso de dinero,	<i>Eager for money.</i>
Gordo de talle,	<i>Stout in body.</i>
Blando de corazon,	<i>Soft in heart.</i>
Inseparable de sus amigos,	<i>Inseparable from his friends.</i>
Cercano de la ciudad,	<i>Near the city.</i>
Lejano de la ciudad,	<i>Far from the city.</i>
Cierto de su venida,	<i>Certain of his arrival.</i>
Seguro de peligro,	<i>Sure of danger.</i>
etc.	<i>etc.</i>

4. Adjectives expressing the feelings of the soul or mind take the prepositions **de**, **por**, or **con**:

Inmóvil de temor,	<i>Immovable with fear.</i>
Triste por su muerte.	<i>Sad at his death.</i>
Alegre con su llegada,	<i>Pleased at his arrival.</i>

NOTE. — When the adjective precedes a verb in the Infinitive mood, the preposition **de** may always be used :

**Contento de ver,**                           *Glad to see you.*

5. In most other cases the adjectives require the same prepositions as in English.

#### 6. Past Participles used as adjectives may govern **de** or **por**:

Es un hombre despreciado de (*por*) todos. *He is a man despised by all.*

7. There are also adjectives which vary in meaning, according to the preposition which follows them :

Esta fruta es buena para comer,      *This fruit is good to eat.*  
Esta naranja es buena de descascarar.      *This orange is easy to peel.*

**Leccion LVIII.****Lesson LVIII.****THE ADVERB.****Adverbs of Place.**

Aquí, <i>there.</i>	Dentro (de), <i>in.</i>
Aquí, acá, <i>here.</i>	Fuera (de), <i>out.</i>
Allí, <i>there.</i>	Arriba, <i>up.</i>
Allá, <i>yonder.</i>	Abajo, <i>down.</i>
Cerca (de), <i>near.</i>	Adelante, <i>forward.</i>
Léjos (de), <i>far.</i>	Atras, <i>back.</i>
Dónde, <i>where.</i>	Delante (de), <i>before.</i>
Ádonde, <i>whereto.</i>	Detras (de), <i>behind.</i>
Dedonde, <i>wherfrom.</i>	Encima (de), <i>upon.</i>
Adentro, <i>within.</i>	etc.
etc.	etc.

**Adverbs of Time.**

Hoy, <i>to-day.</i>	Pronto, <i>soon.</i>
Mañana, <i>to-morrow.</i>	Siempre, <i>always.</i>
Ahora, <i>now.</i>	Nunca, } <i>never.</i>
Luego, <i>afterwards.</i>	Jamas, }
Tarde, <i>late.</i>	Ya, <i>already.</i>
Temprano, <i>early.</i>	Mientras, <i>whilst.</i>
Presto, <i>quick.</i>	Aún, <i>yet, still.</i>
etc.	etc.

**Adverbs of Manner.**

Bien, <i>well.</i>	Recio, <i>loud.</i>
Mal, <i>badly.</i>	Despacio, <i>slowly.</i>
Así, <i>so, thus.</i>	Depriesa, <i>quickly.</i>
Bajo, <i>low.</i>	Alto, <i>loud.</i>
etc.	etc.

**Adverbs of Quantity.**

Mucho, <i>much.</i>	Muy, <i>very.</i>
Poco, <i>little.</i>	Tan, <i>so, as.</i>
Sobrado,	Tanto, <i>so much, as much.</i>
Harto, } <i>enough.</i>	Cuanto, <i>how much.</i>
Bastante,	Demasiado, <i>too much.</i>
etc.	etc.

**Adverbs of Comparison.**

Mas, <i>more.</i>	Mejor, <i>better.</i>
Ménos, <i>less.</i>	Peor, <i>worse.</i>
etc.	etc.

**Adverbs of Order.**

Primeramente, <i>first.</i>	Sucesivamente, <i>successively.</i>
Ultimamente, <i>lastly.</i>	Antes (de), <i>before.</i>
	Despues (de), <i>after.</i>

**Adverbs of Affirmation.**

Sí, <i>yes.</i>	Verdaderamente, <i>verily.</i>
Ciertamente, <i>certainly.</i>	Indudablemente, <i>undoubtedly.</i>
etc.	etc.

**Adverbs of Negation.**

No, <i>no.</i>	Nada, <i>nothing, not anything.</i>
Tampoco, <i>neither, not either.</i>	De ninguna manera, <i>nowise.</i>
etc.	etc.

**Adverbs of Uncertainty.**

Tal vez,	Acaso,
Quizá, } perhaps.	Por ventura, } perhaps (in interrogations).
Quizás,	Por fortuna,
etc.	etc.

**Adverbial Expressions.**

Sobre poco mas ó ménos,	<i>About, more or less.</i>
Á lo ménos,	<i>At least.</i>
Á diestra y siniestra,	<i>Right and left.</i>
Á duras penas.	<i>With great trouble.</i>
De aquí para allí,	<i>Here and there.</i>
De acá para allá,	
Aquí y allí,	
Acá y allá, acullá,	

**Formation of Adverbs with *mente* (ly).**

Fácil, facilmente,	<i>Easy, easily.</i>
Constante, constantemente,	<i>Constant, constantly.</i>
Triste, tristemente,	<i>Sad, sadly.</i>
Alegre, alegremente,	<i>Joyful, joyfully.</i>
Elegante, elegantemente,	<i>Elegant, elegantly.</i>
Sabio, sabiamente,	<i>Wise, wisely.</i>

Delicado, delicadamente,  
Claro, claramente,  
Verdadero, verdaderamente,

*Delicate, delicately.*  
*Clear, clearly.*  
*True, truly.*

**Vocabulario.**

**El baston**, *the cane.*  
**La desgracia**, *the misfortune.*  
**La fuerza**, *the strength.*  
**La groseria**, *the rudeness.*  
**La tarde**, *the afternoon.*  
**Acaso**, *perhaps.*  
**Afuera**, *without.*  
**Amargo**, *bitter.*  
**Bajo**, *low.*  
**Callado**, *silent.*  
**Ciego**, *blind.*  
**Claro**, *clear.*  
**Conciso**, *concise.*  
**Cortes**, *polite.*

**Vocabulary.**

**Cruel**, *cruel.*  
**Despues**, *after, afterward.*  
**Probable**, *probable.*  
**Tal vez**, *perhaps.*  
**Acompañar**, 1. *to accompany.*  
**Arrepentirse**, 3. *to repent.*  
**Conseguir**, 3. *to obtain.*  
**Escuchar**, 1. *to listen to.*  
**Faltar**, 1. *to fail.*  
**Oir**, 3. *to hear.*  
**Provenir**, 3. *to result.*  
**Referir**, 3. *to relate.*  
**Responer**, 2. *to answer.*

**Exercise 115.**

1. ¡Como me ha engañado este hombre !
2. Hemos siempre sabido nuestra leccion desde que vamos á la escuela.
3. He venido acá temprano para ver á su hermano de V.
4. Ciceron habló sabia y eloquentemente.
5. Cesar escribió clara, concisa y elegantemente.
6. Yo le hablé cortesmente y el me respondió con groseria.
7. Los muchachos entraron calladitamente, pues la madre estaba muy mala.
8. Jamas vi tal cosa.
9. Si V. quiere, irémos mañana al teatro.
10. Le referiré á V. la historia, si ya no la sabe V.
11. Yo creo que V. podrá conseguir facilmente el dinero que V. necesita.
12. Esta casa debe haber costado mucho dinero.
13. Vengo de afuera, y he visto una cosa muy curiosa.
14. Aquí mataron á un hombre, segun he oido.
15. Primero vino su hermano de V. y despues los otros amigos.
16. ¡Acaso vendrá su padre hoy ?
17. Vendrá tal vez esta noche á las diez.
18. El anda de aquí para allí sin saber donde sentarse.
19. V. ha sido muy imprudente, y de ahí proviene su desgracia.
20. ¡Á qué hora vendrá el médico ?
21. Ya viene.
22. Lo haré si ya no me faltan las fuerzas.
23. No iré allá, pues estoy mejor donde estoy.
24. ¡Qué tristísimamente llora esta mujer !
25. Hable V. claro, si V. quiere que yo le comprenda.
26. Nunca volveré á ver á mi querido amigo.

## Exercise 116.

1. If you do not pay him, you will repent it bitterly.
2. These two friends are constantly together.
3. You must act prudently if you do not wish to lose your money.
4. Your friend has treated his sister very cruelly.
5. Your exercise is not well done ; you have written it badly.
6. You would have acted more wisely if you had not answered that man.
7. I could not listen politely to all he said about you.
8. I have blindly followed your instructions.
9. Speak low, my friend, there is somebody in the other room.
10. How do you do to-day ?
11. I am pretty well, thank you.
12. When will your sister arrive ?
13. She will probably arrive this afternoon.
14. Look for my cane, I wish to go out now.
15. Shall you accompany your friends to Paris ?
16. I shall perhaps accompany them.
17. If you come to-morrow, do not come too late.
18. I shall not be able to come before nine o'clock.
19. Our house is already finished.
20. They walk the whole day here and there without doing anything.
21. Do not speak so loud, I have the headache.
22. I was near him when he was wounded.
23. He was before me, and my brother was behind me.
24. Come quick, I have something to tell you.
25. This author writes very well.
26. We walked very slowly and arrived too late.

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

## 1. Place of the Adverb.

1. The Adverb is generally placed in Spanish after the verb. In compound tenses it is placed after the participle, and never between the same and the auxiliary :

El discípulo ha siempre estudiado      *The scholar has always studied his lesson.*

Although, according to the rules of syntax, we may deviate from this rule, the student would do well to adhere to the same, and thus avoid the mistakes which may result from any deviation.

2. A few adverbs must always stand before the verb, as **no**, etc., and the adverbs of exclamation : **cuanto**, **cuan**, **como**, etc. :

; *Como me ha engañado !      How he has deceived me !*

The following adverbs also precede the verb : **apenas**, *hardly* ; **cuando**, *when* ; **luego que**, *as soon as* ; **así que**, *so soon as* ;

**miéntras que**, *whilst*; **dónde**, *where*; **de donde**, *whence*, and a few others.

## 2. Formation of Adverbs.

1. Adverbs are formed from adjectives in two different ways : Adjectives having the same termination for both genders add **mente** (corresponding to the English termination *ly*) to form the adverb :

Fácil, facilmente,	<i>Easy, easily.</i>
Dulce, dulcemente,	<i>Sweet, sweetly.</i>
Feliz, felizmente,	<i>Happy, happily.</i>
Igual, igualmente,	<i>Equal, equally.</i>

2. Adjectives having a different form for the masculine and feminine add **mente** to the feminine form :

Sabio, sabiamente,	<i>Wise, wisely.</i>
Claro, claramente,	<i>Clear, clearly.</i>
Honrado, honradamente,	<i>Honest, honestly.</i>
Rico, ricamente,	<i>Rich, richly.</i>

3. Superlatives may be formed from all adverbs ending in **mente**:

Tristísimamente,	<i>Most sadly.</i>
Dulcísimamente,	<i>Most sweetly.</i>

4. When several adverbs follow each other in the same sentence, it is sufficient to add the termination **mente** to the last adverb, while all the preceding adverbs take the form of the feminine of the adjective :

El habla sabia y elocuentemente,	<i>He speaks wisely and eloquently.</i>
El escribe clara, concisa y elegan- temente,	<i>He writes clearly, concisely, and elegantly.</i>

The same rule is to be observed for the superlative.

5. When different adverbs in **mente** occur in the same sentence without modifying the same verb, it is preferable, for the sake of euphony, to replace one of the adverbs by a noun connected with the preposition **con** :

Hablé cortesmente y el respondió con grosería,	<i>I spoke courteously and he an- swered rudely (with rudeness).</i>
---	--

6. Adverbs ending in **mente** govern the same prepositions as the adjectives from which they are formed :

Anteriormente *á*, etc.

*Anterior to, etc.*

7. Adverbs cannot be formed from all adjectives. Such are : **verde**, *green*; **azul**, *blue*; **enfermo**, *ill*; **poco**, *little*; **mucho**, *much*, etc.

8. A few adverbs may be used diminutively or augmentatively, but only in a familiar way :

Se entró calladitamente y la tomó      *He entered very quietly and took*  
suavitamente por la mano,                  *her very gently by the hand.*

9. Certain adjectives may be used in Spanish as adverbs, and remain then invariable. Such are the adjectives : **claro**, *clear, clearly*; **oscuro**, *obscure, obscurely*; **derecho**, *straight*; **torcido**, *twisted*; **fuerte**, *strong, strongly*, etc.

10. The adverb **ya**, which is generally rendered by *already*, is sometimes rendered by *indeed, since, now, etc.* :

Ya ha llegado,

*He has already arrived.*

Ya de dia, ya de noche,

*Now in daytime, now at night.*

Ya que V. lo sabe,

*Since you know it.*

Ya se arrepentirá V.,

*You will indeed repent it.*

## Leccion LIX.

### THE PREPOSITION.

**A**, *to, at.*

**Hácia**, *towards, to.*

**Ante**, *before.*

**Hasta**, *as far as, until, till, even.*

**Con**, *with.*

**Para**, *for, in order to, to.*

**Contra**, *against.*

**Por**, *by, through, for.*

**De**, *of, from.*

**Segun**, *according to, as.*

**Desde**, *from, since.*

**Sin**, *without.*

**En**, *in.*

**Sobre**, *on, upon, about, above.*

**Entre**, *between, among.*

**Tras**, *behind, besides.*

## Lesson LIX.

**Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases requiring *de* after them.**

**Ademas,** *besides.*  
**Alrededor,** *around.*  
**Antes,** *before* (ref. to time).  
**A pesar,** *notwithstanding.*  
**Cerca,** *near.*  
**Deabajo,** *under.*  
**Delante,** *before.*

**Dentro,** *in.*  
**Despues,** *after.*  
**Detras,** *behind.*  
**Encima,** *on, upon.*  
**Enfrente,** *opposite.*  
**Fuera,** *out.*  
**Por medio,** *by means,*

**Prepositions followed by *a.*****En cuanto,** *as far.***Junto,** *next.***Ejemplos.**

Vendré *á* las ocho.  
 Compareció *ante* el juez.  
 Estoy *con* mi padre.  
 Estamos *contra* V.  
 Se habla *de* V.  
 Saldré *en* el mes de Agosto.  
 Eran *entre* quinze *á* veinte hombres.

Mire V. *hacia* el norte.  
 Voy *hasta* mi casa.  
 Trabajo *para* ganar.  
 Va *á* Madrid *por* un año.  
 Lo digo *segun* me lo han dicho.  
 Vive *sin* trabajar.  
 El libro está *sobre* la mesa.  
 Voy *tras* V.  
 Vendré *despues de* las tres.  
 El está *detrás de* mi.  
 El perro está *debajo de* la mesa.

**Examples.**

I will come at eight o'clock.  
 He appeared before the judge.  
 I am with my father.  
 We are against you.  
 They speak of you.  
 I shall leave in the month of August.  
 There were between fifteen and twenty men.  
 Look towards the north.  
 I am going as far as my house.  
 I work to earn.  
 He goes to Madrid for a year.  
 I tell it as they told me.  
 He lives without working.  
 The book is on the table.  
 I go behind you.  
 I will come after three o'clock.  
 He is behind me.  
 The dog is under the table.

**Vocabulario.**

**El empleo,** *the employment, situation.*  
**El grito,** *the outcry.*  
**El marinero,** *the sailor.*  
**El número,** *the number.*  
**El principiante,** *the beginner.*

**Vocabulary.**

**El real,** *the shilling.*  
**El reo,** *the culprit.*  
**El sueño,** *the dream.*  
**El verso,** *the verse.*  
**La bondad,** *the kindness.*

**La cadena,** *the chain.*  
**La caridad,** *the charity.*  
**La comida,** *the dinner.*  
**La gota,** *the drop.*  
**La insolencia,** *the insolence.*  
**La máscara,** *the mask.*  
**La prueba,** *the proof.*  
**La vara,** *the yard.*  
**Abundante,** *abundant.*  
**Borracho,** *intoxicated.*  
**Corto,** *short.*  
**Culpado,** *guilty.*  
**Derecho,** *right.*

**Sentado,** *seated.*  
**Cojear,** 1. *to limp, to be lame.*  
**Comparecer,** 2. *to appear.*  
**Contar,** 1. *to count.*  
**Costar,** 1. *to cost.*  
**Dirigir,** 3. *to direct.*  
**Disputar,** 1. *to dispute.*  
**Esceder,** 2. *to exceed.*  
**Mover,** 2. *to move, to turn.*  
**Pararse,** 1. *to stand.*  
**Preguntar,** 1. *to inquire.*  
**Suministrar,** 1. *to offer.*

### Exercise 117.

1. Esta carta va dirigida á mi hermano.
2. Andamos de calle á calle sin saber donde vamos.
3. Este paño se vende á veinte reales la vara.
4. He tomado el dinero á tres por ciento.
5. El vino se perdiógota ágota.
6. El reo compareció ante el juez, y fué condenado á la carcel por veinte años.
7. Con enseñar tambien se aprende.
8. La vida del hombre con ser tan corta, nos suministra abundantes pruebas de que no es un sueño.
9. Esta casa está cerca de la de mi hermano.
10. Este vino es de diez años.
11. Mi amigo cojea del pié derecho.
12. Nos vestimos de marineros para ir al baile de máscaras.
13. Yo haré esto para V., pero no de balde.
14. Yo iria de buena gana al campo con V.
15. Tengo un empleo y gano desde ayer.
16. Nadie le escedia á este hombre en bondad.
17. Entre otras cosas he visto un cuadro muy hermoso en la casa del médico.
18. Quintana cuenta con razon á Herrera entre (or en) el número de los primeros autores españoles.
19. Este hombre hasta tuvo la insolencia de venir borracho á mi casa.
20. Para principiante, no ha hecho V. mal este trabajo.
21. La caridad es sobre todas las virtudes.
22. Se disputa sobre el sentido de este verso.
23. Movióse la conversacion sobre vinos franceses.
24. Tras ser culpado, es él que mas levanta el grito.
25. Este reloj me cuesta cien pesos sin la cadena.
26. Los hombres estaban sentados al rededor de la mesa.

### Exercise 118.

1. That lady comes from Europe.
2. She used to live at our house before the death of her husband.
3. What were you doing under the

table? 4. I was looking for my pen. 5. We can do nothing without money. 6. Will you go as far as the church for me? 7. I will accompany you as far as that street. 8. You speak without knowing what you say. 9. Here are some apples for you. 10. My sister lives far from us. 11. Do you know the lady who lives opposite your house? 12. Yes, she is an English lady. 13. Why do those boys walk behind us? 14. They are going to the school next to our house. 15. My brother will come first, and I will go afterwards. 16. My father is in his room and is writing to my mother. 17. Do nothing without consulting me. 18. Come and (*á*) see us this evening with your friends. 19. Do not stand before me, I cannot see anything. 20. His sons were seated around the table. 21. Those two ladies live opposite the church. 22. Let us go as far as the park. 23. The dog is under the table. 24. There is a garden behind the house, and a church behind the garden. 25. I was seated next to my brother, and my sister next to him. 26. Here is money for your dinner. 27. I received these goods by railroad. 28. Has anybody inquired for me? 29. There came a man who inquired for you, and who went away when he heard that you were not at home. 30. We must stay here until to-morrow.

**Gramática.****Grammar.**

**1.** The preposition **á**, which has the same meaning in Spanish as the English prepositions *to* and *at*, is also used to express :

**1.** The way in which something is done :

Á pie, *On foot.*

**2.** The manner, usage, or form of a thing :

Á la moda, *In the fashion.*

**3.** The motive or aim of an action :

¡ Á que propósito, *To what end?*

**4.** The instrument used to perform an action :

Le eché á palos, *I drove him away with a stick.*

**5.** Superiority or advantage :

Le gané á correr, *I beat him running.*

## 6. Amusement or entertainment :

Juega á las cartas,      *He plays cards.*

## 7. Repetition of an interrupted but continued action :

Gota ágota,      *Drop by drop.*

## 8. To form a great number of adverbial locutions :

Á la verdad,      *Truly.*

Á lo ménos,      *At least.*

2. The preposition **ante**, *before*, means in the presence of :

Ante el juez,      *Before the judge.*

It often takes the place of **ántes que** or **ántes de**, and indicates the preference of one thing or action over another :

Ante todo or **ántes de todo**,      *Before everything.*

3. The preposition **con**, *with*, may also mean *although* or *by* when accompanied by the Infinitive :

Con enseñar tambien se aprende,      *By teaching one also learns.*

La vida del hombre, con ser tan corta, etc.      *The life of man, although short,*  
etc.

**Con** is also used to form certain locutions :

Con que V. ha llegado,      *So you have arrived.*

4. The preposition **de**, which is generally rendered by *of* or *from*, is also used :

## 1. To express the time at which a thing happens :

De dia,      *In daytime.*

## 2. The proper time to do a thing :

Es tiempo de dormir,      *It is time to sleep.*

## 3. Abundance or scarcity :

Abundante de trigo,      *Abundant in grain.*

4. When standing between an adjective and an Infinitive, and when rendered in English by the preposition **to** :

Difícil de alcanzar,      *Difficult to reach.*

## 5. Between two nouns referring to the same object :

El bribon del criado,      *That rogue of a servant.*

## 6. In exclamations of sorrow and pity :

¡ Pobre de mi padre !      *My poor father !*

## 7. The age :

El vino era de dos años,      *The wine was two years old.*

## 8. To designate the part affected in referring to a physical or moral infirmity :

Cojea del pie derecho,      *He is lame in the right foot.*

## 9. The way of dressing :

Vistióse de marinero,      *He dressed as a sailor.*  
Estaba de luto,      *He was in mourning.*

10. When the word **pedazo**, *piece*, or another noun is understood :

Probé del asado,      *I tasted (a piece of) the roast meat.*  
Dame de vestir,      *Give me (clothes) to dress.*

## 11. To form many adverbial locutions :

De balde, *for nothing*;      de veras, *truly*.  
De modo que, *so that*;      de buena gana, *willingly*.

The preposition **de** may finally stand sometimes for **por** or **con** :

Lo hizo de (*or por*) miedo,      *He did it out of fear.*  
Lo hize de (*or con*) buen corazon,      *I did it with a good heart.*

5. The preposition **en**, *in*, is also used :

## 1. Before the gerund :

En diciendo eso,      *Saying that.*

## 2. To express a continued and repeated act :

De rato en rato,      *From moment to moment.*

This preposition always governs the ablative.

6. The preposition **para**, *for, to (in order to)*, also expresses an act ready to be performed :

Estoy para partir,      *I am about leaving.*

7. The preposition **por**, *for, by, though*, also expresses :

## 1. The means, etc. :

Casarse por procurador,      *To marry by proxy.*

## 2. The motive, etc. :

Lo hace por fuerza,                    *He does it by force.*

## 3. The price, etc. :

Por poco dinero,                    *For little money.*

## 4. Equality, etc. :

Uno vale por dos,                    *One is worth two.*

## 5. What happens in favor of a person or thing :

Empeñarse por él,                    *To occupy one's self for him.*

## 6. What is done in place of a person or thing :

Trabajo por él,                    *I work in his place.*

## 7. Exchange :

Le doy mi sombrero por el suyo,    *I give you my hat for yours.*

## 8. The estimation in which a person or thing is held :

Está tenido por bueno,                    *He is considered as a good man.*

**Leccion LX.****DEFECTIVE VERBS.***1st Conjugation.*

**Antojarse**, *to occur to the mind* (only used in the third person).

**Pesar**, *to repent* (only used in the third person singular).

*2d Conjugation.*

**Pacer**, *to graze.*

**Reponer**, *to reply.*

**Placer**, *to please.*

**Soler**, *to be accustomed.*

**Raer**, *to rub off.*

**Tañer**, *to play.*

**Roer**, *to gnaw.*

**Yacer**, *to lie.*

*3d Conjugation.*

**Abolir**, *to abolish.*

**Asir**, *to seize.*

**Arrecirse**, *to be benumbed with cold.*

**Erguir**, *to erect.*

**Lesson LX.**

## Gramática.

## Grammar.

**1.** **Pacer**, 2. *to graze*; **raer**, 2. *to rub off*; and **roer**, 2. *to gnaw*; are not used in the first person singular of the *Presente de indicativo* nor of the *subjuntivo*, unless we except the verb **roer**, which, according to some grammarians, makes in these tenses **roa**, **roas**, **roa**, and according to others **roya**, **royas**, **roya**.

**2.** **Reponer**, 2. in the sense of *to reply*, is only used in the *Pretérito definido* of the Indicative: **repuse**, **repusiste**, **repuso**, etc.

**3.** **Soler**, 2. is generally only found in the following tenses and persons:

**Suelo**, *I am accustomed to*; **sueles**, **suele**, **solemos**, **soleis**, **suelen**.

**Solia**, *I was accustomed to*; **solias**, **solia**, **soliamos**, **soliais**, **solian**.

The other tenses are used very seldom, the first *Imperfecto de subjuntivo*, **soliera**, and the second *Condicional*, **soldria**, never occur.

**4.** **Tañir**, 3. *to play*, has no first person singular, as it had formerly, namely **tango**, derived from the Latin.

**5.** **Yacer**, 2. *to lie*, is conjugated thus:

GERUNDIO :	<b>Yaciendo.</b>
INDICATIVO PRESENTE :	<b>Yazgo</b> , <b>yace</b> .
IMPERFECTO :	<b>Yacia</b> , etc.
FUTURO :	<b>Yaceré</b> , etc.
IMPERFECTO SUBJUNTIVO :	<b>Yaciera</b> , etc.
CONDICIONAL :	<b>Yacería</b> , etc.
PRESENTE :	<b>Yazga</b> or <b>yazca</b> .
FUTURO DE SUBJUNTIVO :	<b>Yacière</b> .
IMPERATIVO :	<b>Yaz tu</b> , <b>yaced vosotros</b> .

**6.** **Salve** and **vale** are only used in the second person singular of the Imperative of the Latin verbs **salveo**, **valeo**, the former meaning *I greet thee* and the second *fare thee well*. These expressions are, however, considered nowadays as obsolete.



## Leccion LXI.

## Lesson LXI.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT.

## Vocabulario.

**El creador,** *the creator.*  
**El movimiento,** *the movement.*  
**El padrino,** *the godfather.*  
**El raton,** *the mouse.*  
**El sol,** *the sun.*  
**La causa,** *the cause, the case.*  
**La especie,** *the species.*  
**La fiesta,** *the feast.*  
**La grandeza,** *the greatness.*  
**La humanidad,** *the humanity.*  
**La marcha,** *the march.*  
**La mayor parte,** *the most.*  
**La mitad,** *the half.*  
**La navegacion,** *navigation.*  
**La necesidad,** *necessity.*  
**La obra,** *the work.*

## Vocabulary.

**La planta,** *the plant.*  
**Cesar,** *Cæsar.*  
**Pompeyo,** *Pompey.*  
**Distinto,** *distinct.*  
**Supremo,** *supreme.*  
**Aguardar,** 1. *to expect, to await.*  
**Anunciar,** 1. *to announce.*  
**Arruinar,** 1. *to ruin.*  
**Conversar,** 1. *to converse.*  
**Decidir,** 3. *to decide.*  
**Divertir,** 3. *to amuse.*  
**Escapar,** 1. *to escape.*  
**Instruir,** 3. *to instruct.*  
**Interesar,** 1. *to interest.*  
**Juzgar,** 1. *to judge.*  
**Sentir,** 3. *to feel.*

## Exercise 121.

1. Pedro, Juan y yo hemos estado aquí esta mañana. 2. El padre y el hijo han salido esta mañana. 3. Ni el teatro ni la música me divierten. 4. El ejército de Francia é Inglaterra estaban en marcha.
5. El estudiar y conversar con los sabios instruye al hombre. 6. Dar y saber dar son dos cosas muy distintas. 7. La justicia, la religion y la humanidad quieren que V. obre de otro modo. 8. Los cielos y la tierra, el sol y las estrellas, todo nos anuncia la grandeza del supremo creador. 9. La mitad de los soldados se ha ido. 10. Es la obra y no la persona que interesa la posteridad. 11. Juzgar y sentir no son la misma cosa. 12. Serán V. V., señores, quienes decidirán en esta causa. 13. Son treinta pesos que V. me debe. 14. El número de las especies de animales es mas grande, segun dicen, que el número de las especies de plantas. 15. Su padre de V. ó su tio será el padrino de mi hermanito. 16. El padre de Juan es uno de los que han sido arruinados por la última guerra. 17. Ni V. ni él lo saben. 18. De mis conocidos no todos serian mis amigos. 19. La agricultura, las

artes, el comercio y la navegacion, todo está perdido en aquel pobre pais. 20. La mayor parte de mis amigos está esta noche en el teatro.

### Exercise 122.

1. My brother and I will leave to-morrow for the country.
2. Have not most of your friends left for Paris?
3. Most of them intend to remain in town this summer.
4. Neither Cæsar nor Pompey was to be an emperor.
5. John and Henry are very good friends.
6. Great, rich, poor, little, no one escapes death.
7. Fear or necessity are the cause of all the movements of the mouse.
8. One half of the children of that school are Germans.
9. It is we who are responsible for your conduct.
10. Your brother and I will go to the same school next year.
11. I am sure that it is you who have said that.
12. A great number of strangers were present at that feast.
13. He and I are brothers.
14. Neither you nor your friend will arrive in time.
15. It was your father and not your mother who was here.
16. He or she will have the book.
17. This gentleman and I have travelled together.
18. It is not the son but the daughter who has died.
19. There are three gentlemen at the door.
20. It is they we are expecting.
21. Charles and I are poor, but Peter and his brother are rich.

### Gramática.

### Grammar.

1. When the subject is composed of two or more nouns joined by a conjunction, the verb is put in the plural :

El padre y el hijo han estado aquí,      *The father and the son have been here.*

2. When the subjects are connected by **ni**, *neither*, or by **o**, *or*, the verb must also be put in the plural. Usage and euphony allow, however, the use of the singular, and we can say :

Ni la música ni el teatro le divierten or divierte,      *Neither music nor the theatre amuse him.*

This sentence may also have the subjects at the end of the sentence :  
**No le divierte ni la música ni el teatro.**

3. The verb must likewise be in the plural when one subject alone is expressed and the other or others are understood :

El ejército de Valencia y Murcia estaban en marcha,      *The armies of Valencia and Murcia were on their march.*

**4.** If the subjects are not of the same Person, the verbs agree with the person which has the priority. The first Person has the priority of the second, and the second of the third :

V. y yo lo sabemos,	<i>You and I know it.</i>
V. y él lo saben,	<i>You and he know it.</i>

**5.** The verb is put in the singular when the subject is composed of two infinitives :

El estudiar y conversar con los sabios instruye al hombre,	<i>Studying and conversing with wise men instruct man.</i>
---	--

**6.** When a verb has several subjects not connected by any conjunction, it is put in the singular, unless the sentence begins with the verb. In this case the verb is put in the plural :

La justicia, la religion, la humani- dad, lo reclama, or Lo reclaman la justicia, la religion y la hu- manidad,	<i>Justice, religion, and humanity demand it.</i>
--	---

**7.** When a word occurs in the sentence which embraces all the others, the verb must agree with this word :

Los cielos y la tierra, el sol y las estrellas, todo nos anuncia la grandeza de Dios.	<i>The heavens and the earth, the sun and the stars, all announce the greatness of God to us.</i>
---	---

**8.** When the verb has for its subject a general collective noun, it agrees with the latter :

El ejército está bien organizado,	<i>The army is well organized.</i>
-----------------------------------	------------------------------------

If the collective is partitive, the verb may either agree with the same, or with the noun which follows it, and which is governed by the preposition **de** :

La mitad de los soldados se ha ido or se han ido,	<i>One half of the soldiers have gone away.</i>
--	---

## Leccion LXII.

## Lesson LXII.

## CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

## Conjunctions.

The Conjunctions most generally used are :

<b>Y, and.</b>	<b>Porque, because.</b>
<b>Ni...ni, neither...nor.</b>	<b>Ya que, since.</b>
<b>O, or.</b>	<b>Respecto, regarding.</b>
<b>Ya...ya, now...now.</b>	<b>Por consiguiente, consequently.</b>
<b>Sea...sea, either...or.</b>	<b>Por eso, therefore.</b>
<b>Pero, but.</b>	<b>Sobre, thereupon.</b>
<b>Sin embargo, however.</b>	<b>Algo, somewhat.</b>
<b>No obstante, notwithstanding.</b>	<b>Pues, since.</b>
<b>Á ménos que, unless.</b>	<b>Miéntras, whilst.</b>
<b>Si, if, whether, so.</b>	<b>Conforme, as.</b>
<b>Con tal que, provided.</b>	<b>Antes que, before.</b>
<b>Para que, in order that.</b>	<b>Aun, ever.</b>
<b>Porqué, why.</b>	<b>Por miedo, for fear.</b>

## Interjections.

## Of Joy.

<b>Ah, ah!</b>	<b>Ah, ah!</b>
<b>Ah, que alegría!</b>	<b>{ What a joy !</b>
<b>Ay que gozo !</b>	
<b>Bueno !</b>	<b>Good !</b>

<b>Gracias á Dios !</b>	<b>Thank God !</b>
<b>Bendito sea Dios !</b>	<b>{ God be</b>
<b>Alabado sea Dios !</b>	<b>{ praised !</b>
<b>Vaya, vaya !</b>	<b>Well, now !</b>

## Of Sadness.

<b>Ah, ay !</b>	<b>Ah, ay !</b>
<b>Ay qué pena !</b>	<b>What a pain !</b>
<b>Ay de mí !</b>	<b>Woe to me !</b>
<b>Ay de mí !</b>	<b>Poor me !</b>

<b>Dios mio !</b>	<b>Good heavens !</b>
<b>Válgame Dios !</b>	<b>May God help me !</b>
<b>Virgen santísima !</b>	<b>Holy Virgin !</b>
<b>Ave María !</b>	<b>God forbid !</b>

## Of Approbation and Surprise.

<b>Muy bien !</b>	<b>Very well !</b>
<b>Bien hecho !</b>	<b>Well done !</b>
<b>Me alegro mucho !</b>	<b>I am very glad !</b>
<b>Grandemente !</b>	<b>Splendid !</b>
<b>Esclente !</b>	<b>Excellent !</b>
<b>Es un pasmo !</b>	<b>{ Beautiful !</b>
<b>Es una maravilla !</b>	

<b>Cáspita !</b>	<b>Zounds !</b>
<b>Chispas !</b>	
<b>Cáscaras !</b>	
<b>Caracoles !</b>	
<b>Fuego !</b>	
<b>Ascuas !</b>	
<b>Bravo !</b>	<b>Bravo !</b>

**Está muy bien!** *It is very well!*

**Es milagro!** *Wonderful!*

**Guapo!** *Magnificent!*

**Viva, viva!** *Hurrah, hurrah!*

**Otra vez!** *Another time! Encore!*

**Oiga! calle!** *You don't say so!*

**Hola!** *Hallo!*

**Mire V.!** *Do you see?*

**Caramba!** *Plague!*

**Toma!** *Indeed! (Ironically.)*

### *Of Contempt, Blame, and Disgust.*

**Dios mio!** *Good heavens!*

**Eso no vale nada!** *That is good for nothing!*

**Eso es bueno!** *That is good indeed!*

**Vaya, vaya!** *Well, now!*

**Que asco!** *How disgusting!*

**Grande hazaña!** *A great feat!*

**Guapa cosa!** *A fine thing!*

**Qué vergüenza!** *What a shame!*

**Quita allá!** *Get away!*

**Oxte!** *Shame!*

**Calle, qué es bueno!** } *That is very*

**Vaya en gracia!** } *fine! (Iron.)*

### *Of Anger.*

**Voto á! si me enfado!** *Don't make me mad!*

**Voto á chápiro!** *I tell you, sir!*

**Par diez!** } *The plague take you!*

**Caramba!** }

**Diantre!** *Hang it!*

**Anda enhoramala!** } *Get away!*

**Vaya V. á pasear!** } *Get away!*

**Ascuas!** *That's too bad!*

### *Of Exhortation and Encouragement.*

**Vaya, vaya!** *Bravely!*

**Vamos, vamos!** *Come on!*

**Alerta!** *Wide awake!*

**Ea, venga álguien!** *Somebody here!*

**Ea pues!** *Well, now!*

**Ea, ánimo!** *Courage!*

**Basta, basta!** *Enough!*

**Quedo, quedo!** *Gently!*

**Guarda, guarda!** *Look out!*

**Á un ladito!** *Step aside!*

**Cuidado!** *Take care!*

**Fuera, fuera!** *Out with him!*

**Fuego, fuego!** *Fire!*

**Ay, que me matan!** *Murder!*

**Cógele, cógele!** *Hold him!*

**Acabóse!** *It is all over!*

### *Of Silence.*

**Calla, calla!** *Be silent!*

**Que callen!** *Quiet!*

**Silencio!** *Silence!*

**Chito, Chiton!** *Hush!*

## TÁBULA DE LAS TERMINACIONES

DE LAS TRES CONJUGACIONES REGULARES  
EN LOS TIEMPOS SIMPLES.

CONJUGATION.	PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
1. AR	AM-AR	am-ando	am-ado	am-o am-as am- <del>a</del> am-amos am-aís am-an	am-aba am-abas am-aba am-ábamos am-ábais am-aban	am-é am-aste am-ó am-ámos am-ásteis am-áron
2. ER	COM-ER	com-iendo	com-ido	com-o com-es com-e com-emos com-eís com-en	com-ia com-jas com-ia com-íamos com-iaís com-ian	com-i com-iste com-ió com-ímos com-ísteis com-íeron
3. IR	RECIB-IR	recib-iendo	recib-ido	recib-o recib-es recib-e recib-imos recib-is recib-en	recib-ia recib-ias recib-ia recib-famos recib-fais recib-ian	recib-í recib-iste recib-ió recib-ímos recib-ísteis recib-íeron

## TABLE OF TERMINATIONS

OF THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS  
IN THEIR SIMPLE TENSES.

FUTURE.	IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.			FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.
			TERMINATION	1.	2.	
am- <u>ase</u>	am-a	am-e	am-ara	-aria	-ase	am-are
am- <u>arás</u>	am-es	am-es	am-aras	-arias	-ases	am-ares
am- <u>ará</u>	am-e	am-e	am-ara	-aria	-ase	am-are
am- <u>arémos</u>	am-emos	am-emos	am-áramos	-áriamos	-ásemos	am-áremos
am- <u>aréis</u>	am-ad	am-eis	am-árais	-araias	-áseis	am-áreis
am- <u>arán</u>	am-en	am-en	am-aran	-arian	-ásen	am-áren
com- <u>eré</u>	com-e	com-a	com-iéra	-eria	-iese	com-iere
com- <u>erás</u>	com-as	com-as	com-ieras	-erias	-ieses	com-ieres
com- <u>erá</u>	com-a	com-a	com-iéra	-eria	-iese	com-iere
com- <u>erémos</u>	com-amos	com-amos	com-íeramos	-eríamos	-iésemos	com-íremos
com- <u>eréis</u>	com-ed	com-ais	com-íerais	-eraias	-íseis	com-íreis
com- <u>erán</u>	com-an	com-an	com-ieran	-erian	-iesen	com-ieren
recib- <u>iré</u>	recib-e	recib-a	recib-iéra	-iria	-iese	recib-iere
recib- <u>irás</u>	recib-as	recib-as	recib-ieras	-irias	-ieses	recib-ieres
recib- <u>irá</u>	recib-a	recib-a	recib-iéra	-iria	-iese	recib-iere
recib- <u>irémos</u>	recib-amos	recib-amos	recib-íeramos	-iríamos	-iésemos	recib-íremos
recib- <u>iréis</u>	recib-id	recib-ais	recib-íerais	-iraias	-íseis	recib-íreis
recib- <u>irán</u>	recib-an	recib-an	recib-ieran	-irian	-iesen	recib-ieren

TÁBULA ALFABÉTICA DE LOS  
PRINCIPALES VERBOS IRREGULARES Ó DEFECTIVOS.

NOTA.— El número colocado despues del Presente del Infinitivo de cada verbo indica la Conjugacion á la que pertenece este verbo.

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Abrir</b> , 3. <i>to open.</i>	Regular in all the other tenses.	abierto			
<b>Absolver</b> , 2. <i>to absolve.</i>	conjugated like <b>Mover</b> .	absuelto			
<b>Abstraer</b> , 2. <i>to abstract.</i>	conjugated like <b>Traer</b> .				
<b>Acertar</b> , 1. <i>to hit the aim.</i>	conjugated like <b>Acrecentar</b> .				
<b>Acordar</b> , 1. <i>to agree.</i>	acordando	acordado	acuerdo acuerdas acuerda acordamos acordais acuerdan	acordaba acordabas acordaba acordábamos acordávais acordaban	acordé acordaste acordó acordámos acordásteis acordaron
<b>Acostar</b> , 1. <i>to lay down.</i>	conjugated like <b>Acordar</b> .				
<b>Acrecentar</b> , 1. <i>to increase.</i>	acrecentando	acrecentado	acrecento acrecentas acrecenta acrecentamos acrecentais acrecentan	acrecentaba acrecentabas acrecentaba acrecentábamos acrecentávais acrecentaban	acrecenté acrecentaste acrecentó acrecentámos acrecentásteis acrecentaron
<b>Adestrar</b> , 1. <i>to guide.</i>	conjugated like <b>Acrecentar</b> .				
<b>Adherir</b> , 3. <i>to adhere.</i>	conjugated like <b>Asentir</b> .				

ALPHABETICAL TABLE OF THE  
PRINCIPAL IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE VERBS.

NOTE.—The number put after the Present Infinitive of each verb indicates the Conjugation to which that verb belongs.

FUTURE.	IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.			FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.
			TERMINATION			
			1.	2.	3.	
acordaré	acuerda	acuerde	acord-ara	-aria	-ase	acordare
acordarás	acuerdes	acuerdes	acord-aras	-arias	-ases	acordares
acordará	acuerde-	acuerde	acord-ara	-aria	-ase	acordare
acordarémos	acordemos	acordemos	acord-áramos	-aríamos	-ásemos	acordáremos
acordaréis	acordad	acordeis	acord-árais	-aríais	-áseis	acordáreis
acordarán	acuerden	acuerden	acord-aran	-arian	-ásen	acordaren
acrecentaré	acrecenta	acrecente	acrecent-ara	-aria	-ase	acrecentare
acrecentarás	acrecentes	acrecentes	acrecent-aras	-arias	-ases	acrecentares
acrecentará	acrecentie	acrecentie	acrecent-ara	-aria	-ase	acrecentare
acrecentarémos	acrecentemos	acrecentemos	acrecent-áramos	-aríamos	-ásemos	acrecentáremos
acrecentaréis	acrecentad	acrecenteis	acrecent-árais	-aríais	-áseis	acrecentáreis
acrecentarán	acrecienten	acrecienten	acrecent-aran	-arian	-ásen	acrecentaren

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Adquirir, 3.</b> <i>to acquire.</i>	adquiriendo	adquirido	adquiero adquieres adquiere adquirimos adquisis adquieran	adquiria adquirias adquiria adquiriamos adquiriais adquirian	adquirí adquiriste adquirió adquirímos adquiristeis adquiriéron
<b>Aducir, 3.</b> <i>to convey.</i>	See <b>Conducir.</b>				
<b>Advertir, 3.</b> <i>to advise.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Agorar, 1.</b> <i>to divine.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Alentar, 1.</b> <i>to encourage.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Almorzar, 1.</b> <i>to breakfast.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Andar, 1.</b> <i>to walk.</i>	andando	andado	ando andas anda andamos andais andan	andaba andabas andaba andabamos andabais andaban	anduve anduviste anduvo anduvimos anduvisteis anduviéron
<b>Apacentar, 1.</b> <i>to graze.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Apostar, 1.</b> <i>to bet.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Aprobar, 1.</b> <i>to approve.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Apretar, 1.</b> <i>to tighten.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Argüir, 3.</b> <i>to argue.</i>	See <b>Instruir.</b>				
<b>Arrecirse, 3.</b> <i>to be benumbed.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Arrendar, 1.</b> <i>to rent.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Arrepentirse,</b> 3. <i>to repent.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Ascender,</b> 2. <i>to ascend.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Asentar,</b> 1. <i>to establish.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Asentir,</b> 3. <i>to acquiesce.</i>	asintiendo	asentido	asiento asientes asiente asentimos asentis asienten	asentia asentias asentia asentiamos asentiais asentian	asenti asentiste asentió asentimos asentisteis asintieron
<b>Aserrar,</b> 1. <i>to saw.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Asestar,</b> 1. <i>to aim.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Asir,</b> 3. <i>to seize.</i> This verb is used only in a metaphorical sense.	asiendo	asido	asgo ases ase asimos asis asen	asia asias asia asiamos asiais asian	así asiste asío asímos asísteis asíeron
<b>Asolar,</b> 1. <i>to devastate.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Atender,</b> 2. <i>to mind.</i>	atendiendo	atendido	atiendo atiendes atiende atendemos atendeis atenden	atendia atendias atendia atendiamos atendiais atendian	atendí atendiste atendió atendimos atendisteis atendieron
<b>Atentar,</b> 1. <i>to attempt.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Aterrar,</b> 1. <i>to prostrate.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Atestar,</b> 1. <i>to crowd.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Atraer,</b> 2. <i>to attract.</i>	See <b>Traer.</b>				

FUTURE.	IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.			FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.
			TERMINATION	1.	2.	
asentiré	asiente	asiente	asint-iéra	asent-iria	asint-iese	asintiere
asentirás	asienta	asientes	asint-ieras	-irias	-ieses	asintieres
asentirá	asiente	asiente	asint-iéra	-iria	-iese	asintiere
asentirémos	asientémos	asentémos	asint-íeramos	-iríamos	-iésemos	asintiéremos
asentiréis	asentid	asentéis	asint-íerais	-iríais	-íseis	asintiéreis
asentirán	asienten	asienten	asint-íeran	-irian	-iesen	asintieren
asiré	asga	asga	asiera	asiria	asiese	asiere
asirás	asgase	asgas	asieras	asirias	asieses	asieres
asirá	asga	asga	asiera	asiria	asiese	asiere
asirémos	asgámos	asgámos	asiéramos	asiriámos	asiésemos	asiéremos
asiréis	asid	asgais	asiérais	asiriaais	asiéseis	asiéreis
asirán	asgan	asgan	asiéran	asirian	asiesen	asieren
atenderé	atienda	atienda	atend-iéra	-eria	-iese	atendiere
atenderás	atiende	atiendas	atend-ieras	-erias	-eses	atendieres
atenderá	atienda	atienda	atend-iéra	-eria	-iese	atendiere
atenderémos	atendámos	atendámos	atend-íeramos	-eríamos	-iésemos	atendiéremos
atenderéis	atended	atendais	atend-íerais	-eriais	-íseis	atendiéreis
atenderán	atiendan	atiendan	atend-íeran	-erian	-iesen	atendieren

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Atravesar, 1.</b> <i>to cross over.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Aventar, 1.</b> <i>to fan.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Avergonzar, 1.</b> <i>to shame.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Bendecir, 3.</b> <i>to bless.</i>	bendiciendo	bendito bendecido	bendigo bendices bendice bendecimos bendecis bendicen	bendecia bendecias bendecia bendeciamos bendeciais bendecian	bendije bendijiste bendijo bendijimos bendijisteis bendijeron
<b>Caber, 2.</b> <i>to be contained.</i>	cabiendo	cabido	quepo cabes cabe cabemos cabeis caben	cabia cabias cobia cabiamos cabiais cabian	cupe cupiste cupo cupimos cupisteis cupieron
<b>Caer, 2.</b> <i>to fall.</i>	cayendo	caido	caigo caes cae caemos caeis caen	caia caias caia caiamos caiais caian	caí caiste cayó caímos caísteis cayeron
<b>Calentar, 1.</b> <i>to warm.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Cegar, 1.</b> <i>to blind.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Cenir, 3.</b> <i>to gird.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Cerner, 2.</b> <i>to sift.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Cerrar, 1.</b> <i>to close, to shut.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Cimentar, 1.</b> <i>to ground.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				

FUTURE.	IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.			FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.
			TERMINATION			
			1.	2.	3.	
bendeciré	bendiga	bendiga	bend- -ijera	bend- -eciria	bend- -ijese	bendijere
bendecirás	bendice	bendigas	-ijeras	-ecirias	-ijeses	bendijeres
bendecirá	bendiga	bendiga	-ijera	-eciria	-ijese	bendijere
bendecirémos	bendigamos	bendigámos	-ijéramos	-eciríamos	-ijésemos	bendijéremos
bendeciréis	bendecid	bendigais	-ijérais	-eciríais	-ijéseis	bendijéreis
bendecirán	bendigan	bendigan	-ijérان	-ecirian	-ijesen	bendijeren
cabré	quepa	quepa	cupiera	cabria	cupiese	cupiere
cabrás	cabe	quepas	cupieras	cabrias	cupieses	cupieres
cabrá	quepa	quepa	cupiera	cabria	cupiese	cupiere
cabrémos	quepamos	quepamos	cupiéramos	cabriámos	cupiésemos	cupiéremos
cabréis	cabed	quepais	cupiérais	cabriáis	cupiéseis	cupiéreis
cabrán	quepan	quepan	cupiéran	cabrian	cupiesen	cupieren
caeré	caiga	caiga	cayera	caeria	cayese	cayere
caerás	cae	caigas	cayeras	caerias	cayeses	cayeres
caerá	caiga	caiga	cayera	caeria	cayese	cayere
caerémos	caigamos	caigámos	cayéramos	caeríamos	cayésemos	cayéremos
caeréis	eaud	caigais	cayérais	caeríais	cayéseis	cayéreis
caerán	caigan	caigan	cayéran	caerian	cayesen	cayeren

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
Cocer, 2. <i>to boil.</i>	cociendo	cocido	cuezo cueces cuece cocemos coceis cuecen	cocia cocias cocia cociamos cociais cocian	cocí cociste coció cocímos cocísteis cocíeron
Colar, 1. <i>to strain.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
Colegir, 3. <i>to collect.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
Colgar, 1. <i>to hang.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
Comedirse, 3. <i>to govern one's self.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
Comenzar, 1. <i>to commence.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
Competir, 3. <i>to compete.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
Concebír, 3. <i>to conceive.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
Concernir, 3. <i>to concern.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
Concertar, 1. <i>to concert.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
Concordar, 1. <i>to agree.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
Condescender, 2. <i>to condescend.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
Condolerse, 2. <i>to condole.</i>	See <b>Mover.</b>				
Conducir, 3. <i>to conduct.</i>	conduciendo	conducido	conduzco conduces conduce conducimos conducis conducen	conducia conducias conducia conduciamos conducias conducan	conduje condujiste condujo condujimos condujisteis condujeron



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Conferir</b> , 3. <i>to confer.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Confesar</b> , 1. <i>to confess.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Conocer</b> , 2. <i>to know, to be acquainted with.</i>	conociendo	conocido	conozco conoces conoce conocemos conoceis conocen	conocia conocias conocia conociamos conociais conocian	conocí conociste conoció conocimos conocisteis conocieron
<b>Conseguir</b> , 3. <i>to obtain.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Consentir</b> , 3. <i>to consent.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Consolar</b> , 1. <i>to comfort.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Constreñir</b> , 3. <i>to constrain.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Contar</b> , 1. <i>to count.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Contener</b> , 2. <i>to contain.</i>	See <b>Tener.</b>				
<b>Contender</b> , 2. <i>to contend.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Contradecir</b> , 3. <i>to contradict.</i>	See <b>Dicir.</b>				
<b>Controvertir</b> , 3. <i>to controvert.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Contraer</b> , 2. <i>to contract.</i>	See <b>Traer.</b>				
<b>Convertir</b> , 3. <i>to convert.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Corregir</b> , 3. <i>to correct.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Cubrir</b> , 3. <i>to cover.</i>		cubierto	Regular in all other tenses.		



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Dar, 1.</b> <i>to give.</i>	dando	dado	doy das da damos dais dan	daba dabas daba dabamos dabais daban	di diste dió dímos dísteis diéron
<b>Decaer, 2.</b> <i>to decay.</i>	See <b>Caer.</b>				
<b>Decentar, 1.</b> <i>to commence with.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Decir, 3.</b> <i>to tell, to say.</i>	diciendo	dicho	digo dices dice decimos decis dicen	decia decias decia deciamos deciais decaian	dije dijiste dijo dijimos dijisteis dijeron
<b>Deducir,</b> <i>to deduct.</i>	See <b>Conducir.</b>				
<b>Defender, 2.</b> <i>to defend.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Deferir, 3.</b> <i>to defer.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Degollar, 1.</b> <i>to behead.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Demoler, 2.</b> <i>to demolish.</i>	See <b>Mover.</b>				
<b>Demostrar, 1.</b> <i>to demonstrate.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Denegar, 1.</b> <i>to deny.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Denostar, 1.</b> <i>to abuse.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Derrengar, 1.</b> <i>to hate.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Derretir, 3.</b> <i>to melt.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Desavenir</b> , 3. <i>to disagree.</i>	See <b>Venir.</b>				
<b>Descender</b> , 2. <i>to descend.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Descollar</b> , 1. <i>to exceed.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Descordar</b> , 1. <i>to uncord an instrument.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Descomedirse</b> , 3. <i>to be rude.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Describir</b> , 3. <i>to describe.</i>	descrito	Regular in all the other tenses.			
<b>Desflocar</b> , 1. <i>to remove flakes.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Deshacer</b> , 2. <i>to undo.</i>	See <b>Hacer.</b>				
<b>Deshelar</b> , 1. <i>to thaw.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Desleir</b> , 3. <i>to dilute.</i>	See <b>Veir.</b>				
<b>Desolar</b> , 1. <i>to desolate.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Desollar</b> , 1. <i>to flay.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Desovar</b> , 1. <i>to spawn.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Despedir</b> , 3. <i>to dismiss.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Despernar</b> , 1. <i>to break or cut off one's legs.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Despertar</b> , 1. <i>to awake.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Desterrar</b> , 1. <i>to banish.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Desplegar,</b> 1. <i>to unfold.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Desvergonzarse,</b> 2. <i>to act impudently.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Dezmanar,</b> 1. <i>to tithe.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Diferir,</b> 3. <i>to delay.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Digerir,</b> 3. <i>to digest.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Discernir,</b> 3. <i>to discern.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Discordar,</b> 1. <i>to disagree.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Disolver,</b> 2. <i>to dissolve.</i>	See <b>Mover.</b>				
<b>Divertir,</b> 3. <i>to amuse.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Doler,</b> 2. <i>to ache.</i>	See <b>Mover.</b>				
<b>Dormir,</b> 3. <i>to sleep.</i>	durmiendo	dormido	duermo duermes duerme dormimos dormis duermen	dormia dormias dormia dormiamos dormiais dormian	dormi dormiste durmio dormimos dormisteis durmieron
<b>Elegir,</b> 3. <i>to elect.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Embestir,</b> 3. <i>to attack, to assail.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Empedrar,</b> 1. <i>to pare.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Empezar,</b> 1. <i>to begin.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Emporcar,</b> 1. <i>to dirt.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Encender</b> , 2. <i>to light.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Encensar</b> , 1. <i>to perfume (with incense).</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Encerrar</b> , 1. <i>to shut in, to enclose.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Encomendar</b> , 1. <i>to recommend.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Encontrar</b> , 1. <i>to meet.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Encordar</b> , 1. <i>to put strings and cords (to an instrument).</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Engreirse</b> , 3. <i>to adorn one's self.</i>	See <b>Reir.</b>				
<b>Engrosar</b> , 1. <i>to fatten.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Enmendar</b> , 1. <i>to correct.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Enrodar</b> , 1. <i>to break on the wheel.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Ensangrentar</b> , 1. <i>to stain with blood.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Entender</b> , 2. <i>to understand.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Enterrar</b> , 1. <i>to bury.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Envestir</b> , 3. <i>to invest.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Erguir</b> , 3. <i>to hold up the head.</i>	irguiendo	erguido	yergo yergues yergue erguimos erguis yerguen	erguía erguias erguía erguiamos erguias erguias	erguí erguiste irguió erguímox erguisteis irguíeron



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Errar</b> , 1. <i>to err.</i>	errando	errado	yerro yerras yerra erramos errais yerran	erraba errabas erraba errabamos errabais erraban	erré erraste erró errámos errasteis erráron
<b>Escarmentar</b> , 1. <i>to correct.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Escocer</b> , 2. <i>to irritate.</i>	See <b>Cocer.</b>				
<b>Escribir</b> , 3. <i>to write.</i>	Regular in all the other tenses.	escrito			
<b>Esforzar</b> , 1. <i>to strengthen.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Estar</b> , 1. <i>to be.</i> (See Auxiliary Verbs, p. 152).					
<b>Excluir</b> , 3. <i>to exclude.</i>	See <b>Instruir.</b>				
<b>Estreñir</b> , 3. <i>to bind.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Extender</b> , 2. <i>to extend.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Expedir</b> , 3. <i>to expedite.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Forzar</b> , 1. <i>to force.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Fregar</b> , 1. <i>to cleanse.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Freir</b> , 3. <i>to fry.</i>	See <b>Reir.</b>	frito <i>irr. part.</i>			
<b>Gemir</b> , 3. <i>to groan.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Gobernar</b> , 1. <i>to govern.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Haber, 2.</b> <i>to have.</i> (See Auxiliary Verbs, p. 136.)					
<b>Hacer, 2.</b> <i>to make, to do.</i>	haciendo	hecho	hago haces hace hacemos haceis hacen	hacia hacias hacia haciamos haciais hacian	hice hiciste hizo hicimos hicisteis hicieron
<b>Heder, 2.</b> <i>to stink.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Helar, 1.</b> <i>to freeze.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Henchir, 3.</b> <i>to stuff.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Hender, 2.</b> <i>to split.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Heñir, 3.</b> <i>to knead.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Herir, 3.</b> <i>to wound.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Herrar, 1.</b> <i>to shoe.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Hervir, 3.</b> <i>to boil.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>		-		
<b>Holgar, 1.</b> <i>to rest.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Hollar, 1.</b> <i>to depress.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Impedir, 3.</b> <i>to impede.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Imprimir, 3.</b> <i>to print.</i>	See <b>Instruir.</b>	impreso <i>irr. part.</i>	Regular in all the other tenses.		
<b>Incensar, 1.</b> <i>to incense.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
Incluir, 3. <i>to include.</i>	See <b>Instruir.</b>				
Inducir, 3. <i>to induce.</i>	See <b>Conducir.</b>				
Inferir, 3. <i>to infer.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
Inquirir, 3. <i>to inquire.</i>	See <b>Adquirir.</b>				
Instruir, 3. <i>to instruct.</i>	instruyendo	instruido	instruyo instruyes instruye instruimos instruis instruyen	instruia instruias instruia instruimos instruiais instruijan	instrui instruiste instruyó instruimos instruisteis instruyéron
Introducir, 3. <i>to introduce.</i>	See <b>Conducir.</b>				
Invernar, 1. <i>to winter.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
Invertir, 3. <i>to invert.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
Investir, 3. <i>to invest.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
Ingerir, 3. <i>to intermeddle.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
Ir, 3. <i>to go.</i>	yendo	ido	voy vas va vamos vais van	iba ibas iba ibamos ibais iban	fui fuiste fué fuimos fuisteis fuéreron
Jugar, 1. <i>to play.</i>	jugando	jugado	juego juegas juega jugamos jugais juegan	jugaba jugabas jugaba jugabamos jugabais jugaban	jugué jugaste jugó jugamos jugasteis jugáron
Llover, 2. <i>to rain.</i>	See <b>Mover.</b>				

FUTURE.	IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.			FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.
			TERMINATION			
			1.	2.	3.	
instruiré	instruya	instruya	instru-yera	-iria	-yese	instruyere
instruirás	instruye	instruyas	instru-eras	-irias	-yeses	instruyeres
instruirá	instruya	instruya	instru-tera	-iria	-yese	instruyere
instruirémos	instruyamos	instruyamos	instru-yéramos	-iriamos	-yésemos	instruyéremos
instruiréis	instruid	instruyais	instru-yérais	-iriais	-yéscis	instruyéreis
instruirán	instruyan	instruyan	instru-yeran	-irian	-yesen	instruyéren
iré	vaya	vaya	fueras	iria	fuese	fuere
irás	ve	vayas	fueras	irias	fueses	fueres
irá	vaya	vaya	fueras	iria	fuese	fuere
irémos	vayamos	vayamos	fuéramos	iriamos	fuésemos	fuéremos
iréis	id	vayamos	fuérais	iráis	fuéseis	fuéreis
irán	vayan	vayan	fuéran	irian	fuesen	fueren
jugaré	juega	juega	jugara	jugaria	jugase	jugare
jugarás	juege	juegues	jugaras	jugarias	jugases	jugares
jugará	juega	juega	jugara	jugaria	jugase	jugare
jugarémos	juguémos	juguémos	jugáramos	jugariamos	jugásemos	jugáremos
jugaréis	jugad	jugueis	jugárais	jugariais	jugáseis	jugáreis
jugarán	juegen	jueguen	jugaran	jugarian	jugasen	jugaren

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Maldecir,</b> 3. <i>to detract.</i>	See <b>Hendecir.</b>				
<b>Manifestar,</b> 1. <i>to manifest.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Mantener,</b> 2. <i>to support.</i>	See <b>Tener.</b>				
<b>Medir,</b> 1. <i>to measure.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Mentar,</b> 1. <i>to mention.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Mentir,</b> 3. <i>to lie.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Merendar,</b> 1. <i>to take a collation.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Moler,</b> 1. <i>to grind.</i>	See <b>Mover.</b>				
<b>Morder,</b> 3. <i>to bite.</i>	See <b>Mover.</b>				
<b>Morir,</b> 3. <i>to die.</i>	muriendo	muerto	muero mueres muere morimos moris mueren	moria morias moria moriámos moriais morian	morí moriste murió morimos moristeis muriéron
<b>Mostrar,</b> 1. <i>to show.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Mover,</b> 2. <i>to move.</i>	moviendo	movido	muevo mueves mueve movemos moveis mueven	movia movias movia movíamos moviais movian	moví moviste movió movimos movisteis movieron
<b>Negar,</b> 1. <i>to deny.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Never,</b> 1. <i>to snow.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				

FUTURE.	IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.			FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.
			TERMINATION			
			1.	2.	3.	
moriré	muera	muera	mur- -iera	mor- -iria	mur- -iese	muriere
morirás	muere	mueras	-ieras	-irias	-ises	murières
morirá	muera	muera	-iera	-iria	-iese	muriere
morirémos	muramos	muramos	-íramos	-iriamos	-iésemos	muriéremos
moriréis	morid	murais	-írais	-iriais	-íseis	muriéreis
morirán	mueran	mueran	-ieran	-irian	-iesen	murierten
moveré	mueva	mueva	mov- -iera	-ería	-icse	moviere
moverás	mueve	muevas	mov- -ieras	-erias	-eses	movieres
moverá	mueva	mueva	mov- -iera	-eria	-iese	moviere
moverémos	movamos	movamos	mov- -íramos	-eriamos	-iésemos	moviéremos
moveréis	moveñ	moveñais	mov- -írais	-eriais	-íseis	moviéreis
moverán	muevan	muevan	mov- -ieran	-erian	-iesen	movieren

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
Oir, 3. <i>to hear.</i>	oyendo	uido	oigo oyes oye oimos ois oyen	oia oias oia oiamos oiais oian	oi oiste oyó oimos oisteis oyéron
Oler, 2. <i>to smell.</i>	oliendo	olido	huelo hueles huele olemos oleis huelen	olia olias olia oliamos oliais olian	olí oliste olió olimios olisteis oliéron
Pedir, 3. <i>to ask for.</i>	pidiendo	pedido	pido pides pide pedimos pedis piden	pedía pedias pedía pediamos pediais pedian	pedí pediste pidió pedimos pedisteis pidiéron
Pensar, 1. <i>to think.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
Perder, 2. <i>to lose.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
Pervertir, 3. <i>to pervert.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
Placer, <sup>1</sup> 2. imp., <i>to please.</i>			me place <sup>2</sup> te place le place nos place os place les place	me placia <sup>2</sup> te placia le placia nos placia os placia les placia	me plugo <sup>2</sup> te plugo le plugo nos plugo os plugo les plugo
Plegar, 1. <i>to plait or fold.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
Poblar, 1. <i>to people.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				

<sup>1</sup> This verb may also be used as a regular verb in the future of the Indicative: *yo placeré, tu placerás*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> In the plural, *me placen*, etc., *me plucian*, etc., *me pluguiéron*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Martinez de la Rosa uses also *plazga* and *plazca*.

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Poder, 2.</b> <i>to be able.</i>	pudiendo	podido	puedo puedes puede podemos podeis pueden	podia podias podia podiamos podiais podian	pude pudiste pudo pudimos pudisteis pudiéron
<b>Podrir, 3.</b> <i>to rot.</i>	pudriendo	podrido	pudro pudres pudre podrimos podris pudren	podria podrias podria podriamos podriais podrian	podri podriste pudrió podrimos podristeis pudriéron
<b>Poner, 2.</b> <i>to put.</i>	poniendo	puesto	pongo pones pone ponemos poneis poneu	ponia ponias ponia poniamos poniais ponian	puse pusiste pusq pusimos pusisteis pusiéron
<b>Preferir, 3.</b> <i>to prefer.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Prescribir, 3.</b> <i>to prescribe.</i>		prescrito <i>irr. part.</i>	Regular in all the other tenses.		
<b>Probar, 1.</b> <i>to try.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Producir, 3.</b> <i>to produce.</i>	See <b>Conducir.</b>				
<b>Proferir, 3.</b> <i>to proffer.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Proscribir, 3.</b> <i>to proscribe.</i>		proscrito <i>irr. part.</i>	Regular in all the other tenses.		
<b>Quebrar, 1.</b> <i>to break.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Querer, 2.</b> <i>to will.</i>	queriendo	quérido	quiero quieres quiere queremos queréis quieren	queria querias queria queriamos queriais querian	quise quisiste qu'so quisimos quisisteis quisieron
<b>Raer, 2.</b> <i>to scrape.</i>	See <b>Caer.</b>				
<b>Recomendar, 1.</b> <i>to recommend.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Recordar, 1.</b> <i>to remind.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Recostar, 1.</b> <i>to recline.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Reducir, 3.</b> <i>to reduce.</i>	See <b>Conducir.</b>				
<b>Referir, 3.</b> <i>to refer.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Regar, 1.</b> <i>to water.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Regir, 3.</b> <i>to rule.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Regoldar, 1.</b> <i>to belch.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Reir, 3.</b> <i>to laugh.</i>	riendo or riyendo	reido	rio ries rie reimos reis rien	reia reias reia reiamos reiais reian	rei reiste rió reimos reísteis riéron
<b>Remendar, 1.</b> <i>to mend.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Rendir, 3.</b> <i>to surrender.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Renovar, 1.</b> <i>to renew.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Reñir</b> , 3. <i>to wrangle.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Repetir</b> , 3. <i>to repeat.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Requebrar</b> , 1. <i>to court.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Requerir</b> , 3. <i>to notify.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Rescontrar</b> , 1. <i>to compensate.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Resollar</b> , 1. <i>to respire.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Reventar</b> , 1. <i>to burst.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Revolcar</b> , 1. <i>to wallow.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Rodar</b> , 1. <i>to roll.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Roer</b> , 2. <i>to gnaw.</i>	See <b>Caer.</b>				
<b>Rogar</b> , 1. <i>to entreat.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Saber</b> , 2. <i>to know.</i>	sabiendo	sabido	sé sabes sabe sabemos sabeis saben	sabia sabias sabia sabiamos sabiais sabian	supe supiste supo supimos supisteis supiéron
<b>Salir</b> , 3. <i>to grant.</i>	saliendo	salido	salgo sales sale salimos salis salen	salia salias salia saliamos salialis salian	sali saliste salió salimos salisteis saliéron
<b>Satisfacer</b> , 2. <i>to satisfy.</i>	See <b>Hacer.</b>	But changing the <i>h</i> to <i>f</i> .			

FUTURE.	IMPERATIVE.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. TERMINATION 1.      2.      3.	FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.
sabré	sepa	sepa	supiera	supiere
sabrás	sabe	sepas	supieras	supieres
sabrá	sepa	sepa	supiera	supiere
sabrémos	sepamos	sepamos	sabiéramos	sabiéremos
sabréis	sabed	sepais	supiérais	supiéreis
sabrán	sepan	sepan	supieran	supieren
saldré	salga	salga	saliera	saliere
saldrás	sal	salgas	salieras	salieres
saldrá	salga	salga	saliera	saliere
saldrémos	salgamos	salgamos	saliéramos	saliéremos
saldréis	salid	salgais	saliérais	saliéreis
saldrán	<u>salgan</u>	salgan	salieran	saliéren
	satisface or satisfaz (2d pers. sing.).			

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Segar,</b> 1. <i>to reap.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Seguir,</b> 3. <i>to follow.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Sembrar,</b> 1. <i>to sow.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Sentar,</b> 1. <i>to become.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Sentir,</b> 3. <i>to feel.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				
<b>Ser,</b> 2. <i>to be.</i> (See Auxiliary Verbs, p. 136.)					
<b>Servir,</b> 3. <i>to serve.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Serrar,</b> 1. <i>to saw.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Soldar,</b> 1. <i>to solder.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Soler,</b> 2. <i>to be accustomed.</i>					
<b>Solver,</b> 2. <i>to solve.</i>	See <b>Mover.</b>	suelto <i>irr. part.</i>	.		
<b>Soltar,</b> 1. <i>to loosen.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>	suelto <i>irr. part.</i>			
<b>Sonar,</b> 1. <i>to sound.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Soñar,</b> 1. <i>to dream.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Sosegar,</b> 1. <i>to appease.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Soterrar,</b> 1. <i>to bury.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Sugerir,</b> 3. <i>to suggest.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Temblar,</b> 1. <i>to tremble.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Tender,</b> 2. <i>to expand.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Tener,</b> 2. <i>to have.</i> (See Auxiliary Verbs, p. 139.)					
<b>Tenir,</b> 3. <i>to dye.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Tentar,</b> 1. <i>to touch.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Torcer,</b> 2. <i>to twist.</i>	See <b>Cocer.</b>				
<b>Tostar,</b> 1. <i>to toast.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Traducir,</b> 3. <i>to translate.</i>	See <b>Conducir.</b>				
<b>Traer,</b> 2. <i>to bring.</i>	trayendo	traido	traigo traes trae traemos tracis traen	trai traias trai traiamos traias traians	traje trajiste trajo trajimos trajisteis trajeron
<b>Trascender,</b> 2. <i>to transcend.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Trascordarse,</b> 1. <i>to forget.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Trasegar,</b> 1. <i>to overact.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				
<b>Tronar,</b> 1. <i>to thunder.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Tropezar,</b> 1. <i>to stumble.</i>	See <b>Acrecentar.</b>				



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE.
<b>Valer, 2.</b> <i>to be worth.</i>	valiendo	valido	valgo vales vale valemos valeis valen	valia valias valia valiamos valiais valian	valí valiste valió valismos valisteis valiéron
<b>Venir, 3.</b> <i>to come.</i>	viniendo	venido	vengo vienes viene venimos venis vienen	venia venias venia veniamos veniais venian	vine viniste vino venimos venisteis viniéron
<b>Ver, 2.</b> <i>to see.</i>	viendo	visto	veo ves ve vemos veis ven	veia veias veia veiamos veiais veian	ví viste vió vimos visteis viéron
<b>Verter, 2.</b> <i>to spill.</i>	See <b>Atender.</b>				
<b>Vestir, 3.</b> <i>to dress.</i>	See <b>Pedir.</b>				
<b>Volcar, 1.</b> <i>to overset.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Volar, 1.</b> <i>to fly.</i>	See <b>Acordar.</b>				
<b>Volver, 2.</b> <i>to return.</i>	Regular in all the other tenses.	vuelto			
<b>Yacer, 2.</b> <i>to lie down.</i> (See Defective Verbs, p. 319.)					
<b>Zaherir, 3.</b> <i>to censure.</i>	See <b>Asentir.</b>				



## FORMACION DE LA LENGUA CASTELLANA.

La lengua castellana consta de palabras fenicias, griegas, góticas, árabes, y de otras lenguas de las que por dominacion ó por comercio habitaron ó frecuentaron estas partes. Pero principalmente abunda de palabras latinas enteras ó adulteradas.

Los Romanos estuvieron en España 600 años á lo ménos, aunque no se cuenten, sino desde el de 216 ántes de Cristo en que viniéron la primera vez con ejército, hasta el 416 despues de Cristo en que fué la entrada de los Godos; y si esta cuenta se hace hasta el año 623 de Cristo, en que los Romanos acabaron de perder lo que tenian en España, saldrá que estuvieron mas de 800 años.

En este tiempo introdujeron aquí su lengua vulgar, que era la latina, como lo hicieron en todas las demás provincias que conquistaron.

Con la decadencia del imperio romano y venida de los Godos se fué adulterando la lengua latina ó romana porque como los vencidos necesitaban acomodarse á la lengua de los vencedores, y estos deseaban y procuraban aprender la de los vencidos, contribuyeron unos y otros á estragar la lengua latina.

Los Godos hallaron dificultad en la declinacion de los nombres latinos, y

## FORMATION OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE.

The Castilian (Spanish) language is composed of words derived from the Phœnician, Greek, Gothic, and Arabic, and also from the languages of other nations which inhabited or visited Spain, intent on conquest or commerce. It abounds principally, however, in Latin words, either pure or adulterated.

The Romans occupied Spain for at least 600 years, if we date their occupation from the year 216 b. c., when their first army appeared there, until 416 a. d., when the Goths invaded the country. But if we extend our calculation to the year 623 a. d., when the Romans finally lost what they still possessed in Spain, the time of their occupation exceeds 800 years.

They introduced their language in the country, namely, the Latin language, as they did in all the other provinces which they conquered.

The Latin or Roman language became adulterated at the fall of the Roman empire and at the time of the invasion of the Goths, as the conquered nation had to adapt itself to the language of the conquerors, while the latter desired and endeavored to learn the language of the conquered. These reasons contributed to the alteration of the Latin language.

The Goths found difficulty in the declension of the Latin nouns, and

la dejaron enteramente supliendo los casos con preposiciones. En los verbos siguieron en parte las conjugaciones latinas, pero dejaron del todo la voz pasiva, y usaron para suplirla, de los participios pasivos con el verbo sustantivo *ser*.

Esta lengua latina, así adulterada, se empezó á llamar romance por su derivacion de la romana ó latina, para distinguir la de la gótica.

Con la irrupcion de los Arabes el año 714 padeció tambien alteracion el romance; pero como los Españoles empezaron desde luego á sacudir el nuevo yugo, á proporcion de las ventajas que iban consiguiendo, iba tambien la lengua cobrando fuerza y cultura.

El rey Don Alonso el Sábio mandó que cesase el uso de escribir en latin los privilegios, donaciones reales y escrituras públicas. Entre varias obras que compuso, ó hizo componer en romance, merece singular aprecio y elogio la de las *Leyes de las Partidas*, en la cual la lengua ostentó toda la riqueza y majestad que había adquirido hasta entonces, y en que llevó grandes ventajas, no solo á otras obras anteriores y contemporáneas, sino aun á muchas posteriores.

Siguieron su ejemplo D. Juan Manuel, hijo del infante D. Manuel, y el rey D. Alonso el XI. El primero compuso el libro del *Conde Lucanor*, el segundo el de *montería*, ámbas dignamente estimados.

Escribiéronse tambien las *Crónicas*

abandoned it, supplying the cases with prepositions. They partly followed the Latin conjugations of the verbs, but entirely rejected the passive voice, which they replaced by passive participles accompanied by the substantive verb *ser*.

The Latin language, thus adulterated, began then to be called the *Romance*, from its derivation from the Roman, and in order to distinguish it from the Gothic.

The Romance underwent some alteration after the irruption of the Arabs in the year 714, but as the Spaniards soon began to shake off the new yoke, their language acquired strength and culture, the latter keeping pace with the advantages obtained in warfare.

King Don Alonzo the Wise ordered that the Latin language should not be used any longer for charters, royal grants, and public deeds. Among different works which he composed himself or superintended in the *Romance* language, special mention and praise is due to the *Laws of Castile*, in which the richness and majesty which the language had acquired are shown to greater advantage than in any previous or contemporaneous, or even in many subsequent works.

D. Juan Manuel, son of the infante D. Manuel, and king D. Alonzo XI. followed his example. The former wrote a work called *Count Lucanor*, and the latter a treatise on Hunting; both works are greatly esteemed.

At that time were also written the

*del Santo Rey Don Fernando, de Don Alonso el Sábio, de Don Sancho el IV., de Don Fernando el IV., y de Don Alonso el XI.*

Pedro Lopez de Ayala, ya con estilo mas adornado, escribió las *Crónicas del rey Don Pedro, de Don Enrique II., y de Don Juan el I.* Alvar Garcia de Santa Maria, y Fernan Perez de Guzman, compusieron la de *Don Juan el II.* Juan de Mena, la obra de las *Trescientas, y la Coronacion.* El Bachiller Fernan Gomez de Ciudad Real, el *Centon epistolario,* que contiene unas admirables cartas sobre los principales sucesos del reinado de D. Juan el II. D. Alonso Tostado, Obispo de Avila, publicó varias obras en castellano; Hernando del Pulgar, su célebre *Crónica de los reyes católicos, y algo mas adelante, el doctor Francisco de Villalobos, en sus Problemas, y otros tratados que compuso en romance, dió á conocer la gracia y primor de que la lengua castellana es capaz.*

La publication de estas y otras obras semejantes, y la particular atencion con que se dedicaron á cultivar la lengua castellana muchos escritores insignes que han florecido desde el reinado de los Reyes Católicos, la fueron puliendo y perfeccionando, hasta ponerla en el estado en que hoy se halla.

*Chronicles of the Holy King D. Fernando, of D. Alonso the Wise, of D. Sancho IV., of D. Fernando IV., and of D. Alonso XI.*

Pedro Lopez de Ayala, in a more ornate style wrote the *Chronicles of king D. Pedro, of D. Enrique II., and of D. Juan I.* Alvar Garcia de Santa Maria and Fernan Perez de Guzman composed the *Chronicles of D. Juan II.;* Juan de Mena, a work on the *Three Hundred and on The Coronation.* Fernan Gomez de Ciudad Real wrote the *Epistolæ Cento, which contains admirable letters on the principal events of the reign of D. Juan II.* D. Alonso Tostado, Bishop of Avila, published several works in the Castilian language; also Hernando del Pulgar his celebrated *Chronicle of the Catholic Monarchs, and somewhat later, Dr. Francisco de Villalobos, in his Problems and other treatises which he composed in the Romance language, showed the grace and elegance of which the Castilian language is susceptible.*

The publication of these and other works, and the special attention paid to the cultivation of the Castilian language by many eminent writers who have flourished since the reigns of the Catholic Monarchs, have polished and perfected the language to the point at which it has arrived in our day.

# GENERAL VOCABULARY

INCLUDING ALL THE WORDS CONTAINED IN THE PRECEDING VOCABULARIES.

## I. Spanish-English.

### A.

abajo, *down stairs.*  
abánico, *m. fan.*  
abierto, *opened.*  
abogado, *m. lawyer.*  
aborrecer, *2. to hate.*  
abrir, *3. to open.*  
abundante, *abundant.*  
á caballo, *on horseback.*  
acabar, *1. to finish.*  
á casa, *to the house.*  
acaso, *perhaps.*  
accidente, *m. accident.*  
accion, *f. action.*  
aceite, *m. oil.*  
aceptable, *acceptable.*  
acerca, *1. to approach.*  
acompañar, *1. to accompany.*  
aconsejar, *1. to advise.*  
acontecer, *2. to happen.*  
acordarse, *1. to remember.*  
acostarse, *1. to go to bed.*  
acostumbrado, *accustomed.*  
acostumbrar, *1. to accustom.*  
á crédito, *on credit.*  
acusar, *1. to accuse.*

adelantar, *1. to be fast.*  
adherir, *3. to adhere.*  
adios, *good by.*  
admitido, *admitted.*  
afable, *affable.*  
afeitar, *1. to shave.*  
afuera, *out, without.*  
afusilar, *1. to shoot.*  
agradable, *agreeable.*  
agradecido, *thankful.*  
agrio, *sour.*  
água, *f. water.*  
aguardar, *1. to expect, to wait.*  
ahora, *now.*  
ahí, *there.*  
aire, *m. air.*  
alabanza, *f. praise.*  
alabar, *1. to praise.*  
albañil, *m. mason.*  
al contrario, *on the contrary.*  
aldea, *f. village.*  
alegrarse, *1. to rejoice.*  
alegre, *lively.*  
alejarse, *1. to leave.*  
Aleman, *m. German.*  
Alemania, *f. Germany.*  
algo, *something, anything, rather.*

algodon, *m. cotton.*  
alguien, *somebody, anybody.*  
alguna parte, *somewhere, anywhere.*  
algunas veces, *sometimes.*  
alguno, *some, any, some one, any one, somebody, anybody.*  
alli, *there.*  
almacen, *m. store.*  
almirante, *m. admiral.*  
almorzar, *1. to breakfast.*  
almuerzo, *m. breakfast.*  
alojamiento, *m. lodging.*  
á lo menos, *at least.*  
al punto que, *as soon as.*  
alquilar, *1. to let.*  
alto, *high, tall, loud.*  
amado, *loved.*  
amar, *1. to love.*  
amargo, *bitter.*  
íama V.? do you love?  
á menos que, *unless.*  
á menudo, *often.*  
Americano, *m. American.*  
amigo, *m. friend.*  
amistad, *f. friendship.*

amistoso, friendly.  
 amo, I love.  
 amo, m. master.  
 amor, m. love.  
 andar, l. to walk.  
 animal, m. animal.  
 anoche, last night.  
 ansioso, eager.  
 ántes de, before.  
 anunciar, l. to announce.  
 añadir, 3. to add.  
 año, m. year.  
 apartar, l. to remove.  
 apelar, l. to appeal.  
 apénas, hardly, no soon  
     er.  
 á pié, on foot.  
 apoderarse, l. to take  
     possession.  
 apostar, l. to bet.  
 aprender, l. to learn.  
 aprendido, learned.  
 aprobar, l. to approve.  
 aquello, that, that thing.  
 aquí, here.  
 aquí tiene V., here is.  
 Árabe, m. Arab.  
 árbol, m. tree.  
 arce, m. maple.  
 armario, m. closet.  
 arreglar, l. to arrange.  
 arrepentirse, 3. to repent.  
 arriba, up stairs.  
 arruinar, l. to ruin.  
 articulo, m. article.  
 asegurar, l. to assure.  
 así, thus, so, therefore.  
 así que, so that, as soon as.  
 asolar, l. to devastate.  
 asunto, m. matter, busi-  
     ness.

atacar, l. to attack.  
 atencion, f. attention.  
 atento, attentive.  
 atrasar, l. to delay.  
 atravesar, l. to cross  
     over.  
 aún, even, yet.  
 aunque, although.  
 ausente, absent.  
 autor, m. author.  
 autorizar, l. to authorize.  
 autorizacion, f. authori-  
     zation.  
 avaro, m. miser.  
 aventura, f. adventure.  
 ayer, yesterday.  
 ayudar, l. to help.  
 azúcar, m. sugar.  
 azul, blue.

B.

bagatela, f. trifle.  
 bailar, l. to dance.  
 baile, m. ball.  
 bailo, I dance.  
 bajar, l. to come down.  
 bajo, low, under.  
 banco, m. bank.  
 banquero, m. banker.  
 bañarse, l. to bathe.  
 barato, cheap.  
 barco, m. vessel.  
 bastante, enough.  
 baston, m. walking-stick,  
     cane.  
 bastonazo, m. blow (with  
     a stick).  
 batalla, f. battle.  
 baul, m. trunk.

bebo, I drink.  
 bendecir, 3. to bless.  
 beneficio, m. benefit.  
 benéfico, benevolent.  
 biblioteca, f. library.  
 bien, good, well.  
 billar, m. billiards.  
 blanco, white.  
 boca, f. mouth.  
 bocoy, m. hogshead.  
 bodega, f. cellar.  
 bollo, m. cake.  
 bondad, f. kindness.  
 bonito, pretty.  
 bordado, trimmed.  
 borracho, intoxicated.  
 bosque, m. wood.  
 bota, f. boot.  
 botella, f. bottle.  
 boticario, m. druggist.  
 boton, m. button.  
 buenas noches, good  
     night.  
 bueno, good, well.  
 buenos dias, good morn-  
     ing, good day.  
 buey, m. ox.  
 buque, m. ship, vessel.  
 burlarse, l. to laugh at.  
 buscar, l. to look for.

C.

caballeria, f. cavalry.  
 caballeriza, f. stable.  
 caballero, m. gentleman.  
 caballo, m. horse.  
 cada, each.  
 cadena, f. chain.  
 caer, 2. to fall.

**caerse**, 2. *to fall.*  
**café**, m. *coffee.*  
**caja**, f. *safe, box.*  
**cajon**, m. *drawer.*  
**calentar**, 1. *to warm.*  
**caliente**, *warm.*  
**callado**, *silent.*  
**calle**, f. *street.*  
**callejuela**, f. *lane.*  
**cama**, f. *bed.*  
**cambiar**, 1. *to exchange.*  
**camino**, m. *road.*  
**camisa**, f. *shirt.*  
**campo**, m. *country.*  
**cancion**, f. *song.*  
**cansado**, *tired.*  
**canta**, *sings.*  
**cantar**, 1. *to sing.*  
**cantatriz**, f. *singer.*  
**canto**, m. *singing.*  
**caña**, f. *cane.*  
**caoba**, f. *mahogany.*  
**capital**, f. *capital.*  
**capitan**, m. *captain.*  
**capitulo**, m. *chapter.*  
**cara**, f. *face.*  
**carbon**, m. *coal.*  
**carcel**, f. *prison.*  
**caridad**, f. *charity.*  
**Carlos**, *Charles.*  
**carne**, f. *meat.*  
**carne (f.) de vaca**, f. *beef.*  
**carnicero**, m. *butcher.*  
**carpintero**, m. *carpenter.*  
**cartero**, m. *postman.*  
**caro**, *dear.*  
**Carolina**, *Caroline.*  
**carreta**, f. *cart.*  
**carta**, f. *letter.*  
**casa**, f. *house.*  
**casaca**, f. *coat.*

**casar**, 1. *to marry.*  
**casarse**, 1. *to marry.*  
**castigar**, 1. *to punish.*  
**causa**, f. *cause, case.*  
**cazador**, m. *hunter.*  
**célebre**, *celebrated.*  
**cena**, f. *supper.*  
**censurar**, 1. *to censure.*  
**centavo**, m. *cent.*  
**cerca**, *near.*  
**cerca de**, *nearly.*  
**cereza**, f. *cherry.*  
**cerrado**, *closed, shut.*  
**cerrar**, 1. *to shut.*  
**cerveza**, f. *beer.*  
**Cesar**, *Cæsar.*  
**ciego**, *blind.*  
**cielo**, m. *heaven.*  
**ciencia**, *science.*  
**cierto**, *certain.*  
**ciudad**, f. *city.*  
**claro**, *clear.*  
**clase**, f. *class.*  
**clavel**, m. *pink.*  
**clima**, m. *climate.*  
**cocina**, f. *kitchen.*  
**cocinera**, f. *cook.*  
**cocinero**, m. *cook.*  
**coche**, m. *coach.*  
**codicioso**, *greedy.*  
**cojear**, 1. *to limp, to balance.*  
**colegio**, m. *college.*  
**cólera**, m. *cholera.*  
**colmar**, 1. *to overwhelm.*  
**colocacion**, f. *situation.*  
**Colon**, *Columbus.*  
**colorado**, *red.*  
**comedia**, f. *comedy.*  
**comedido**, *polite.*  
**comedor**, m. *dining-room.*

**comemos**, we *dine.*  
**¡come V.?** *do you dine?*  
**comer**, 2. *to dine, to eat.*  
**comerciante**, m. *merchant.*  
**comido**, *eaten.*  
**comida**, f. *eating, dinner.*  
**como**, *about, how.*  
**compañero**, m. *companion.*  
**comparecer**, 2. *to appear.*  
**complacer**, 2. *to please.*  
**componer**, 2. *to compare.*  
**comportamiento**, m. *behavior.*  
**comportarse**, 1. *to behave.*  
**comprado**, *bought.*  
**¡compra V.?** *do you buy?*  
**comprender**, 2. *to understand.*  
**compro**, *I buy.*  
**comun**, *ordinary, low.*  
**con**, *with.*  
**concepto**, m. *opinion.*  
**concierto**, m. *concert.*  
**conciso**, *concise.*  
**concluir**, 3. *to conclude, to finish.*  
**concluirse**, 3. *to end.*  
**conde**, m. *count.*  
**condenar**, 1. *to condemn.*  
**condesa**, f. *countess.*  
**condiscipulo**, m. *fellow-scholar.*  
**conducir**, 3. *to conduct, to take.*  
**conducta**, f. *conduct.*  
**confesar**, 1. *to confess.*  
**conforme**, *conformably.*

<b>congreso</b> , m. <i>congress</i> .	<b>correo</b> , m. <i>post, mail,</i>	<b>D.</b>
<b>conjuracion</b> , f. <i>con-</i>	<i>post-office.</i>	
<i>spiracy.</i>		
<b>conmigo</b> , <i>with me.</i>	<b>correr</b> , 2. <i>to run.</i>	
<b>conocer</b> , 2. <i>to know.</i>	<b>cortado</b> , <i>cut.</i>	
<b>¿conoce V.?</b> <i>do you know?</i>	<b>cortaplumas</b> , m. <i>pen-</i>	
<i>are you acquainted</i>	<i>knife.</i>	
<i>with?</i>	<b>cortar</b> , 1. <i>to cut.</i>	
<b>conocido</b> , m. <i>acquaint-</i>	<b>cortés</b> , <i>polite.</i>	
<i>ance.</i>	<b>corto</b> , <i>short.</i>	
<b>conocido</b> , <i>known.</i>	<b>cosa</b> , f. <i>thing, matter of</i>	
<b>conozco</b> , <i>I know, I am</i>	<i>importance.</i>	
<i>acquainted with.</i>	<b>costa</b> , f. <i>expense.</i>	
<b>conseguir</b> , 3. <i>to obtain.</i>	<b>costar</b> , 1. <i>to cost.</i>	
<b>consejo</b> , m. <i>advice.</i>	<b>costumbre</b> , f. <i>manner.</i>	
<b>consistir</b> , 3. <i>to consist.</i>	<b>creador</b> , m. <i>creator.</i>	
<b>consolar</b> , 1. <i>to console, to</i>	<b>crédito</b> , m. <i>credit.</i>	
<i>comfort.</i>	<b>creer</b> , 2. <i>to believe.</i>	
<b>construir</b> , 3. <i>to construct,</i>	<b>creo</b> , <i>I believe.</i>	
<i>to build.</i>	<b>criada</b> , f. <i>servant-girl.</i>	
<b>consultado</b> , <i>consulted.</i>	<b>criado</b> , m. <i>servant.</i>	
<b>consultar</b> , 1. <i>to consult.</i>	<b>crimen</b> , m. <i>crime.</i>	
<b>con tal que</b> , <i>provided.</i>	<b>cruel</b> , <i>cruel.</i>	
<b>contar</b> , 1. <i>to count.</i>	<b>cruz</b> , f. <i>cross.</i>	
<b>contener</b> , 2. <i>to contain.</i>	<b>cuaderno</b> , m. <i>copy-book.</i>	
<b>contento</b> , <i>pleased, satis-</i>	<b>cuadro</b> , m. <i>picture.</i>	
<i>fied.</i>	<b>cuando</b> , <i>when.</i>	
<b>contestar</b> , 1. <i>to answer.</i>	<b>cuánto</b> , <i>how much.</i>	
<b>contiene</b> , <i>contains.</i>	<b>cuarto</b> , m. <i>room.</i>	
<b>continuar</b> , 1. <i>to continue.</i>	<b>cuatro</b> , <i>four.</i>	
<b>contornos</b> , m. pl. <i>the</i>	<b>cuenta</b> , f. <i>account.</i>	
<i>suburbs.</i>	<b>cuento</b> , m. <i>tale.</i>	
<b>contrario</b> , <i>contrary.</i>	<b>cuchillo</b> , m. <i>knife.</i>	
<b>convencer</b> , 2. <i>to convince.</i>	<b>culpado</b> , <i>guilty.</i>	
<b>convenir</b> , 3. <i>to be prop-</i>		<b>CH.</b>
<i>er.</i>		
<b>conversar</b> , 1. <i>to con-</i>	<b>chaleco</b> , m. <i>vest.</i>	
<i>verse.</i>	<b>champaña</b> , f. <i>cham-</i>	
<b>convidar</b> , 1. <i>to invite.</i>	<i>pagne.</i>	
<b>copiar</b> , 1. <i>to copy.</i>	<b>chiquito</b> , <i>little.</i>	
<b>coronel</b> , m. <i>colonel.</i>		

deseamos, we wish.	dirigir, 3. to direct.	embarcar, 1. to engage.
desar, 1. to desire.	discípulo, m. pupil, scholar.	emperador, m. emperor.
desgracia, f. misfor- tune.	discordia, f. discord.	emplear, 1. to employ.
desgraciado, unfortu- nate.	disponer, 2. to dispose.	empleo, m. employment, situation.
desmayarse, 1. to faint.	dispuesto, disposed.	en, in.
desobedecer, 2. to diso- bey.	disputar, 1. to dispute.	encargar, 1. to charge.
desobediente, disobedient.	distinto, distinct.	en casa, at home (at the house of).
despacio, slowly.	divertir, 3. to amuse.	encender, 2. to light.
despertarse, 1. to awake.	divertirse, 3. to amuse one's self.	encendido, red.
despreciado, despised.	divinidad, f. divinity.	encerrar, 1. to lock up.
despues, afterwards, then, after.	docena, f. dozen.	encontrar, 1. to find, to meet.
despues de, after.	dolor de cabeza, f. head- ache.	encontrará, will find.
despues que, after.	dónde, where.	enfadado, angry.
destruir, 3. to destroy.	dormir, 3. to sleep.	enfadarse, 1. to get angry.
desuso, m. desuetude.	dormirse, 3. to fall asleep.	enemigo, m. enemy.
deuda, f. debt.	dos, two.	enfermo, m. patient(sick).
dé V., give.	doy, I give.	enfermo, ill, sick.
devolver, 2. to return, give back.	dudar, 1. to doubt.	engaño, 1. to deceive.
dia, m. day.	dueño, m. owner.	enorme, enormous.
dia festivo, ho'oliday.	dulce, sweet.	Enrique, Henry.
dibujar, 1. to draw.	durado, lasted.	enriquecer, 2. to enrich.
dibujo, m. drawing.	durante, during.	en seguida, immediately.
dice, says, tells.		enseña, teaches.
dicha, f. luck.		entender, 2. to under- stand.
dicho, said.		enterrar, 1. to bury.
dichoso, happy.	E.	entrar, 1. to enter.
diente, m. tooth.	echar á pique, to foun- der.	entre, between.
diferente, different.	echarse, 1. to begin.	entregar, 1. to hand.
difícil, difficult.	edad, f. age.	enviado, sent.
dificultad, f. difficulty.	Eduardo, Edward.	enviar, 1. to send.
diga V., say, tell.	ejemplo, example.	equivocacion, f. mistake.
digno, worthy.	ejército, m. army.	equivocarse, 1. to make a mistake.
dinero, m. money.	elegancia, f. elegance.	era, was.
Dios, m. God.	eligir, 3. to elect.	es, is.
diputado, m. deputy.	embajador, m. ambassa- dor.	escapar, 1. to escape.
		esceder, 2. to exceed.

**escelente**, *excellent.*  
**Escipion**, *Scipio.*  
**escoger**, 2. *to select.*  
**escribe**, *writes.*  
**¿ escribe V.?** *do you write?*  
**escribir**, 3. *to write.*  
**escribo**, *I write.*  
**escritura**, f. *writing.*  
**escrito**, *written.*  
**escitorio**, m. *office.*  
**escuadra**, f. *squadron.*  
**escuchar**, 1. *to listen to.*  
**escuela**, f. *school.*  
**excusar**, 1. *to excuse.*  
**eso**, *that.*  
**España**, f. *Spain.*  
**Español**, *Spanish, Spaniard.*  
**especie**, f. *species.*  
**especulacion**, f. *speculation.*  
**espejo**, m. *mirror.*  
**esperar**, 1. *to expect, to wait, to hope.*  
**esperanza**, f. *hope.*  
**estacion**, f. *season.*  
**establecer**, 2. *to establish.*  
**estado**, m. *state, condition.*  
**estar**, 1. *to be.*  
**estátua**, f. *statue.*  
**esto**, *this, this thing.*  
**estrangero**, m. *stranger.*  
**estrella**, f. *star.*  
**estudiado**, *studied.*  
**estudiamos**, *we study.*  
**estudiante**, m. *student.*  
**¿estudian V. V.?** *do you study?*  
**estudiar**, 1. *to study.*

**estudio**, m. *study.*  
**estudioso**, *studious.*  
**eterno**, *eternal.*  
**Europa**, *Europe.*  
**examinar**, 1. *to examine.*  
**excepto**, *except.*  
**exento**, *exempted.*  
**experiencia**, f. *experience.*  
**explicar**, 1. *to explain.*  
**extinguidor**, m. *extinguisher.*

**F.**

**fabricante**, m. *manufacturer.*  
**fabricar**, 1. *to manufacture.*  
**fácil**, *easy.*  
**faltar**, 1. *to fail.*  
**familia**, f. *family.*  
**favor**, m. *favor.*  
**favorable**, *favorable.*  
**favorecer**, 2. *to favor.*  
**fé**, f. *faith.*  
**Felipe**, *Philip.*  
**feliz**, *happy.*  
**femenil**, *effeminate.*  
**feo**, *ugly, homely.*  
**Fernando**, *Ferdinand.*  
**ferro carril**, m. *railroad.*  
**fiebre**, f. *fever.*  
**fiel**, *faithful.*  
**fiesta**, f. *feast, holy day.*  
**filial**, *filial.*  
**fin**, m. *end.*  
**flor**, f. *flower.*  
**fonda**, f. *hotel.*  
**formalizarse**, 1. *to get vexed.*

**formar**, 1. *to form.*  
**fortaleza**, f. *fortress.*  
**fortuna**, f. *fortune.*  
**Frances**, m. *Frenchman.*  
**Francia**, f. *France.*  
**fresa**, f. *strawberry.*  
**fresco**, *cool.*  
**frio**, *cold.*  
**friolera**, f. *trifle.*  
**fruta**, f. *fruit.*  
**fuego**, m. *fire.*  
**fuerte**, *strong.*  
**fuerza**, f. *strength.*  
**funcion**, f. *ceremony.*  
**fusil**, m. *gun.*

**G.**

**Galileo**, *Galileo.*  
**gallina**, f. *fowl, chicken.*  
**gana**, *earns.*  
**ganar**, 1. *to earn.*  
**gas**, m. *gas.*  
**gasta**, *spends.*  
**gastar**, 1. *to spend.*  
**gasto**, m. *expense.*  
**generalmente**, *generally.*  
**generoso**, *generous.*  
**gente**, f. *people.*  
**gloriosamente**, *gloriously.*  
**gobernar**, 1. *to manage, to govern.*  
**gobierno**, m. *government.*  
**gota**, f. *drop.*  
**gracias**, *thank you.*  
**grande**, m. *grandee.*  
**grandezza**, f. *greatness.*  
**Griego**, *Greek.*  
**gritar**, 1. *to cry, to scream.*

**grito**, m. *outcry*.  
**grosería**, *rudeness*.  
**guante**, m. *glove*.  
**guardar**, 1. *to keep*.  
**guerra**, f. *war*.  
**Guillermo**, *William*.  
**¡le gusta á V.?** *do you like?*  
**me gusta**, *I like, I am fond of*.  
**gusto**, m. *pleasure*.

**H.**

**hábil**, *skilful*.  
**habitante**, m. *inhabitant*.  
**habituarse**, 1. *to accustom one's self*.  
**habla**, *speaks*.  
**hablado**, *spoken*.  
**hablan**, *they speak*.  
**¡habla V.?** { *do you speak?*

**hablo**, *I speak*.  
**hacer**, 2. *to make, to do*.  
**¡hace V.?** *do you do?*  
**hacienda**, f. *estate*.  
**hallado**, *found*.  
**hallar**, 1. *to find*.  
**haragan**, *lazy*.  
**hasta**, *till, until, as far as*.

**hasta que**, *until*.  
**hay**, *there is*.  
**hecho**, *done*.  
**helar**, 1. *to freeze*.  
**heredar**, 1. *to inherit*.  
**heredero**, m. *heir*.  
**herido**, *wounded*.  
**hermana**, f. *sister*.

**hermano**, m. *brother*.  
**hermoso**, *handsome, fine*.  
**héroe**, m. *hero*.  
**hierro**, m. *iron*.  
**hija**, f. *daughter*.  
**hijo**, m. *son*.  
**hinchado**, *swollen*.  
**historia**, f. *history*.  
**hombre**, m. *man*.  
**honrado**, *honest*.  
**hora**, f. *hour, time*.  
**hormiga**, f. *ant*.  
**hotel**, m. *hotel*.  
**hoy**, *to-day*.  
**huevo**, m. *egg*.  
**humanidad**, f. *humanity*.  
**humedo**, *damp*.  
**huracan**, m. *hurricane*.

**I.**

**idioma**, m. *language*.  
**iglesia**, f. *church*.  
**ignorancia**, f. *ignorance*.  
**ignorante**, *ignorant*.  
**impaciente**, *impatient*.  
**importante**, *important*.  
**imposible**, *impossible*.  
**imprenta**, f. *press, imprint*.  
**incapaz**, *incapable*.  
**incendio**, m. *conflagration*.  
**indiferente**, *indifferent*.  
**indigno**, *unworthy*.  
**indomable**, *indomitable*.  
**inducir**, 3. *to induce*.  
**industrioso**, *industrious*.  
**infeliz**, *unhappy*.  
**ingenio**, m. *genius*.  
**Inglaterra**, *England*.

**Inglés**, m. *Englishman*.  
**inmóvil**, *immovable*.  
**inocencia**, f. *innocence*.  
**inocente**, *innocent*.  
**insolencia**, f. *insolence*.  
**instante**, m. *instant*.  
**instruir**, 3. *to instruct*.  
**instrumento**, m. *instrument*.  
**inteligente**, *intelligent*.  
**intencion**, f. *intention*.  
**interesante**, *interesting*.  
**interesar**, 1. *to interest*.  
**interesarse**, 1. *to take interest*.

**inútil**, *useless*.  
**invierno**, m. *winter*.  
**invitacion**, f. *invitation*.  
**invocar**, 1. *to invoke*.  
**ir**, 3. *to go*.  
**irse**, 3. *to go away*.  
**Isabel**, *Isabella*.  
**isla**, f. *island*.  
**Italia**, f. *Italy*.

**J.**

**jactarse**, 1. *to boast*.  
**jamas**, *ever, never*.  
**jamon**, m. *ham*.  
**jardin**, m. *garden*.  
**jardinero**, m. *gardener*.  
**joven**, *young*.  
**joyero**, m. *jeweller*.  
**Juan**, *John*.  
**jugar**, 1. *to play*.  
**Julio**, *Julius*.  
**Junio**, m. *June*.  
**junto**, *together*.  
**juventud**, f. *youth*.  
**juzgar**, 1. *to judge*.

## L.

- labrador, m. *farmer*.  
 lado, m. *side*.  
 ladron, m. *thief*.  
 lágrima, f. *tear*.  
 lámpara, f. *lamp*.  
 largo, *long*.  
 Latin, *Latin*.  
 lavandera, f. *washer-woman*.  
 lápiz, m. *pencil*.  
 lavar, l. *to wash*.  
 lección, f. *lesson*.  
 leche, f. *milk*.  
 leer, 2. *to read*.  
 legua, f. *league*.  
 legumbre, f. *vegetable*.  
 leido, *read*.  
 lejos, *far*.  
 lengua, f. *language*.  
 leña, f. *wood*.  
 león, m. *lion*.  
 levantarse, 1. *to rise*.  
 ley, f. *law*.  
 liberal, *liberal*.  
 liberalidad, f. *liberality*.  
 libertad, f. *liberty*.  
 libra, f. *pound*.  
 libro, m. *book*.  
 licencia, f. *license*.  
 licenciar, 1. *to disband*.  
 ligero, *quick*.  
 limonada, f. *lemonade*.  
 limpio, *clean*.  
 lista, f. *list*.  
 listo, *ready*.  
 loco, *insane*.  
 lodo, m. *mud*.  
 Lóndres, *London*.  
 luego que, *as soon as*.

- lugar, m. *place, spot*.  
 Luisa, *Louisa*.  
 luna, f. *moon*.  
 luz, f. *light*.

## LL.

- llamar, l. *to call*.  
 llamarse, l. *to be called*.  
 llave, f. *key*.  
 llega, *arrives*.  
 llegar, l. *to arrive*.  
 llegado, *arrived*.  
 lleno, *full*.  
 llevar, l. *to take*.  
 llora, *weeps*.  
 llorar, l. *to cry, to weep*.  
 llover, 2. *to rain*.  
 lluvia, f. *rain*.

## M.

- madre, f. *mother*.  
 madrina, f. *godmother*.  
 maduro, *ripe*.  
 maestro, m. *teacher*.  
 magnífico, *splendid*.  
 malo, *bad, ill, unwell*.  
 mandar, 1. *to send, to order*.  
 manda V., *send*.  
 mano, f. *hand*.  
 mantener, 2. *to support*.  
 manzana, f. *apple*.  
 mañana, f. *morning*.  
 mañana, *to-morrow*.  
 marcha, f. *march*.  
 marchar, 1. *to go, to march*.
- marcharse, 1. *to depart*.  
 marido, m. *husband*.  
 marinero, m. *sailor*.  
 mas, *more*.  
 máscara, f. *mask*.  
 matar, l. *to kill*.  
 máxima, f. *maxim*.  
 la mayor parte, *the most*.  
 media, f. *stocking*.  
 médico, m. *physician*.  
 medio, m. *means, way*.  
 medir, 3. *to measure*.  
 memoria, f. *memory*.  
 menester, *necessary*.  
 mentira, f. *falschood*.  
 mercader, m. *merchant*.  
 mercancías, f. pl. *goods*.  
 merecer, 2. *to deserve*.  
 mérito, m. *merit*.  
 mes, m. *month*.  
 mesa, f. *table*.  
 mi, *my*.  
 militar, *military*.  
 milla, f. *mile*.  
 mina, *mine*.  
 minuto, m. *minute*.  
 mirar, l. *to look at*.  
 miseria, f. *misery*.  
 mismo, *same, very, self*.  
 mitad, f. *half*.  
 modo, m. *way*.  
 molestar, 1. *to trouble*.  
 momento, m. *moment*.  
 montar, l. *to mount*.  
 monte, m. *mountain*.  
 monumento, m. *monument*.  
 morder, 2. *to bite*.  
 morir, 3. *to die*.  
 Moro, m. *Moor*.  
 mostrar, 1. *to show*.

motivo, m. <i>motive.</i>	necesario, <i>necessary.</i>	oir, 3. <i>to hear.</i>
move, 2. <i>to move, to turn.</i>	negocio, m. <i>business.</i>	; ojalá! <i>would to God!</i>
movimiento, m. <i>movement.</i>	negro, <i>black.</i>	ojo, m. <i>eye.</i>
muchacha, f. <i>girl.</i>	ni, neither, nor.	olor, m. <i>smell.</i>
muchacho, m. <i>boy.</i>	nieve, f. <i>snow.</i>	olvidar, 1. <i>to forget.</i>
muchas gracias, I (or we) <i>thank you.</i>	ninguno, <i>not any, none, no.</i>	onza, f. <i>ounce.</i>
mucho, mucha, <i>much.</i>	niño, m. <i>child.</i>	opinion, f. <i>opinion.</i>
muchos, muchas, <i>many.</i>	no, no.	orgulloso, <i>proud.</i>
mucho tiempo, <i>longtime.</i>	noche, f. <i>night.</i>	oro, m. <i>gold.</i>
muerte, f. <i>death.</i>	no...mas, <i>no...more.</i>	osar, 1. <i>to dare.</i>
muerto, <i>died.</i>	nombre, m. <i>name.</i>	oscuro, <i>dark.</i>
mujer, f. <i>woman, wife.</i>	norte, m. <i>north.</i>	oso, m. <i>bear.</i>
mundo, m. <i>world.</i>	nosotros, we, us.	otra cosa, <i>something else.</i>
muñeca, f. <i>doll.</i>	noticia, f. <i>news.</i>	otro, other, <i>another.</i>
murió, <i>died.</i>	novela, f. <i>novel.</i>	
muro, m. <i>wall.</i>	nuevo, <i>new.</i>	
música, f. <i>music.</i>	nuez, f. <i>nut.</i>	
muy, <i>very.</i>	número, m. <i>number.</i>	
	nunca, <i>never.</i>	

## N.

nacer, 2. <i>to be born.</i>
nacion, f. <i>nation.</i>
nada, <i>nothing, not anything.</i>
nadie, <i>nobody, not anybody,</i>
<i>body, no one.</i>
naranja, f. <i>orange.</i>
natural, <i>natural.</i>
navegacion, f. <i>navigation.</i>
necesidad, f. <i>necessity.</i>
necesita, <i>needs.</i>
¿necesita V.? <i>do you need?</i>
necesar, 1. <i>to need.</i>
necesito, I <i>need.</i>

necesario, <i>necessary.</i>	oir, 3. <i>to hear.</i>
negocio, m. <i>business.</i>	; ojalá! <i>would to God!</i>
negro, <i>black.</i>	ojo, m. <i>eye.</i>
ni, neither, nor.	olor, m. <i>smell.</i>
nieve, f. <i>snow.</i>	olvidar, 1. <i>to forget.</i>
ninguno, <i>not any, none, no.</i>	onza, f. <i>ounce.</i>
niño, m. <i>child.</i>	opinion, f. <i>opinion.</i>
no, no.	orgulloso, <i>proud.</i>
noche, f. <i>night.</i>	oro, m. <i>gold.</i>
no...mas, <i>no...more.</i>	osar, 1. <i>to dare.</i>
nombre, m. <i>name.</i>	oscuro, <i>dark.</i>
norte, m. <i>north.</i>	oso, m. <i>bear.</i>
nosotros, we, us.	otra cosa, <i>something else.</i>
noticia, f. <i>news.</i>	otro, other, <i>another.</i>
novela, f. <i>novel.</i>	
nuevo, <i>new.</i>	
nuez, f. <i>nut.</i>	
número, m. <i>number.</i>	
nunca, <i>never.</i>	
	P.
	paciencia, f. <i>patience.</i>
	padecer, 2. <i>to suffer.</i>
	padre, m. <i>father.</i>
	padres, m. pl. <i>parents.</i>
	padrino, m. <i>godfather.</i>
	pagar, 1. <i>to pay.</i>
	página, f. <i>page.</i>
	pais, m. <i>country.</i>
	pájaro, m. <i>bird.</i>
	palabra, f. <i>word.</i>
	palacio, m. <i>palace.</i>
	pan, m. <i>bread.</i>
	panadero, m. <i>baker.</i>
	pañó, m. <i>cloth.</i>
	pañuelo, m. <i>handkerchief.</i>
	papel, m. <i>paper.</i>
	paquete, m. <i>package.</i>
	para, <i>for.</i>
	parado, <i>standing.</i>
	paraguas, m. <i>umbrella.</i>
	pararse, 1. <i>to stand.</i>
	parecen, <i>seem.</i>

## O.

parque, m. park.	pícaro, m. rogue.	pozo, m. well.
parte, f. part.	pide, asks for.	practicar, 1. to practise.
partir, 3. to leave.	pié, m. foot.	precepto, m. precept.
pasado, past, last.	¿ piensa V.? do you intend?	precio, m. price.
pasado mañana, the day after to-morrow.	pierna, f. leg.	preciso, necessary.
pasar, 1. to pass.	pieza, f. piece.	preferir, 3. to prefer.
pasearse, 1. to take a walk.	pintar, 1. to depict.	pregunta, f. question.
paseo, m. walk.	pintura, f. painting.	preguntar, 1. to inquire, to ask.
paternal, paternal.	pio, pious.	preparar, 1. to prepare.
patio, m. yard.	pizarra, f. slate.	prerrogativa, f. prerogative.
patria, f. country.	planta, f. plant.	prescribir, 3. to prescribe.
pavo, m. turkey.	plata, f. silver.	presentar, 1. to present, to introduce.
paz, f. peace.	pleito, m. lawsuit.	prestar, 1. to lend.
pedazo, m. piece.	plomo, m. lead.	presumido, conceited.
pedir, 3. to ask for.	poblar, 1. to people.	pretender, 2. to pretend.
Pedro, Peter.	pobre, poor.	prima, f. cousin.
pegar, 1. to strike.	poco, adv. little.	primavera, f. spring.
pelea, f. fight.	pocos, few.	primero, first.
pelear, 1. to fight.	poder, m. power.	primo, m. cousin.
peligroso, dangerous.	poderoso, powerful.	principe, m. prince.
pelo, m. hair.	podrir, 3. to rot.	principiante, m. beginner.
penoso, hard, painful.	pollo, m. chicken.	principio, m. principle.
pensar, 1. to think, to intend.	Pompeyo, Pompey.	prisionero, m. prisoner.
pequeño, small, little.	ponerse, 2. to put on.	privilegio, m. privilege.
pera, f. pear.	populacho, m. mob.	probable, probable.
perder, 2. to lose.	por, through, by.	probablemente, probably.
pérdida, f. loss.	por cierto, certainly.	probar, 1. to prove.
perdido, lost.	por desgracia, unfortunately.	procesion, f. procession.
perdonar, 1. to forgive.	porfiado, obstinate.	profesor, m. professor.
periódico, m. newspaper.	por mas...que, however.	profundo, deep.
permitir, 3. to allow.	por precision, by necessity.	prometer, 2. to promise.
pero, but.	porque, because.	pronto, soon, quickly.
perro, m. dog.	¿ porqué? why?	pronunciar, 1. to pronounce.
persona, f. person.	por supuesto, of course.	propenso, inclined.
pertenece, belongs.	posada, f. inn.	propicio, propitious.
pesar, m. grief.	posesion, f. possession.	
pescuezo, m. neck.	possible, possible.	
peso, m. dollar.	posteridad, posterity.	

propiedad, f. *property*.  
 proponer, 2. *to propose*.  
 provenir, 3. *to come from*  
 (to originate), *to re-*  
*sult*.  
 próximo, *next*.  
 prueba, f. *proof*.  
 ¿puede V.? *can you?*  
 puedo, *I can*.  
 público, *public*.  
 pueblo, m. *town, village*.  
 puente, m. *bridge*.  
 puerta, f. *door*.  
 puerto, m. *port*.  
 pues, *as, well, for*.  
 puesto, *put*.  
 pulpero, m. *grocer*.  
 puñalada, f. *stab* (with a  
 poniard).

## Q.

qué, *which, what*.  
 qué, *when*.  
 quedarse, 1. *to remain*.  
 quejarse, 1. *to complain*.  
 quemar, 1. *to burn*.  
 querer, 2. *to grant*.  
 queso, m. *cheese*.  
 quien, *who, whom*.  
 quiere, *wishes*.  
 ¿quiero V.? *will you  
 have? do you wish?*  
 quieren, *wish*.  
 quiero, *I wish, I will  
 have*.  
 quieto, *quiet*.  
 quitarse, 1. *to take off*.  
 quitasol, m. *sunshade*.

R.  
 raro, *rare*.  
 ratón, m. *mouse*.  
 razon, f. *reason*.  
 real, m. *shilling*.  
 recibido, *received*.  
 recibir, 3. *to receive*.  
 recomendar, 1. *to recom-*  
*mend*.  
 recompensa, f. *recom-*  
*pense*.  
 reconocer, 2. *to know*.  
 referir, 3. *to relate*.  
 refresco, m. *refreshment*.  
 regimiento, m. *regiment*.  
 reina, f. *queen*.  
 reinar, 1. *to reign*.  
 reino, m. *kingdom*.  
 reír, 3. *to laugh*.  
 rendirse, 3. *to surren-*  
*der*.  
 reo, m. *culprit*.  
 reparar, 1. *to compen-*  
*sate*.  
 repetir, 3. *to repeat*.  
 representar, 1. *to play*.  
 reprimir, 3. *to repress*.  
 residir, 3. *to reside*.  
 resolver, 2. *to resolve*.  
 respetar, 1. *to respect*.  
 responder, 2. *to answer*.  
 restablecer, 2. *to re-es-*  
*tablish*.  
 retrato, m. *picture*.  
 rey, m. *king*.  
 ricachon, m. *a very rich  
 man*.  
 rico, *rich*.  
 rie, *laughs*.  
 rienda, f. *bridle*.

rincon, m. *corner*.  
 rio, m. *river*.  
 robar, 1. *to steal*.  
 Romano, m. *Roman*.  
 Rómulo, *Romulus*.  
 ropa, f. *clothes*.  
 rosa, f. *rose*.  
 rubio, *fair, blond*.  
 ruido, m. *noise*.  
 ruina, f. *ruin*.  
 Rusia, *Russia*.  
 Russo, *Russian*.  
 S.  
 sábana, f. *sheet*.  
 sabé, *knows*.  
 ¿sabé V.? *do you know?*  
 sabiamente, *wisely*.  
 sabio, *wise*.  
 sable, m. *saber*.  
 sacar, 1. *to draw*.  
 saco, m. *bag*.  
 sagrado, *sacred*.  
 sale, *goes out, comes out,*  
*leaves*.  
 ¿sale V.? *do you go out?*  
 salida, f. *exit*.  
 salir, 3. *to leave, to go  
 out*.  
 salir de, *to leave*.  
 saltar, 1. *to jump*.  
 salubre, *healthy*.  
 sastre, m. *tailor*.  
 satisfecho, *satisfied*.  
 seda, f. *silk*.  
 en seguida, *immediately*.  
 seguir, 3. *to continue, to  
 follow*.  
 segun, *according to*.

<b>seguro</b> , <i>sure</i> .	<b>son</b> , <i>are</i> .	<b>teologal</b> , <i>theological</i> .
<b>semana</b> , <i>f. week</i> .	<b>soñar</b> , <i>1. to dream</i> .	<b>teorético</b> , <i>theoretical</i> .
<b>la semana que viene</b> , <i>next week</i> .	<b>sopa</b> , <i>f. soup</i> .	<b>terremoto</b> , <i>earthquake</i> .
<b>sembrar</b> , <i>1. to sow</i> .	<b>sordo</b> , <i>deaf</i> .	<b>tia</b> , <i>f. aunt</i> .
<b>sentado</b> , <i>seated</i> .	<b>sorprendido</b> , <i>surprised</i> .	<b>tio</b> , <i>m. uncle</i> .
<b>sentar</b> , <i>1. to become</i> .	<b>su</b> , <i>his, her</i> .	<b>tiempo</b> , <i>m. time</i> .
<b>sentarse</b> , <i>1. to sit down</i> .	<b>sublevar</b> , <i>1. to revolt</i> .	<b>en tiempo pasado</b> , <i>formerly</i> .
<b>sentencia</b> , <i>f. maxim, judgment</i> .	<b>sucio</b> , <i>dirty</i> .	<b>tienda</b> , <i>f. shop</i> .
<b>sentir</b> , <i>3. to feel, to regret</i> .	<b>sueño</b> , <i>m. dream</i> .	<b>tiene</b> , <i>has</i> .
<b>señas</b> , <i>f. pl. direction</i> .	<b>suerte</b> , <i>f. fate</i> .	<b>tienen</b> , <i>have</i> .
<b>señor</b> , <i>sir, Mr.</i>	<b>sufocar</b> , <i>1. to suffocate</i> .	<b>tierra</b> , <i>f. earth</i> .
<b>señora</b> , <i>madam, Mrs.</i>	<b>suministrar</b> , <i>1. to offer</i> .	<b>tigre</b> , <i>m. tiger</i> .
<b>ser</b> , <i>to be</i> .	<b>súplica</b> , <i>f. entreaty</i> .	<b>tijeras</b> , <i>f. pl. scissors</i> .
<b>servicio</b> , <i>m. service</i> .	<b>suplicar</b> , <i>1. to entreat</i> .	<b>timido</b> , <i>timid</i> .
<b>servido</b> , <i>served</i> .	<b>suponer</b> , <i>2. to suppose</i> .	<b>tintero</b> , <i>m. inkstand</i> .
<b>si</b> , <i>if</i> .	<b>supremo</b> , <i>supreme</i> .	<b>tocar</b> , <i>1. to play on</i> .
<b>sí</b> , <i>yes</i> .	<b>suspender</b> , <i>2. to suspend</i> .	<b>todavia</b> , <i>yet</i> .
<b>siempre</b> , <i>always</i> .		<b>todo</b> , <i>all, everything</i> .
<b>lo siento</b> , <i>I am sorry for it.</i>		<b>todo el mundo</b> , <i>everybody</i> .
<b>siguen</b> , <i>follow</i> .	<b>T.</b>	
<b>silla</b> , <i>f. chair, saddle</i> .	<b>tal</b> , <i>such as</i> .	
<b>sin</b> , <i>without</i> .	<b>talento</b> , <i>m. talent</i> .	
<b>sin embargo</b> , <i>however</i> .	<b>tal vez</b> , <i>perhaps</i> .	
<b>singular</b> , <i>singular</i> .	<b>tambien</b> , <i>too, also</i> .	
<b>sino</b> , <i>but</i> .	<b>tampoco</b> , <i>not either, neither</i> .	
<b>soberbio</b> , <i>haughty</i> .	<b>tan</b> , <i>so</i> .	
<b>sobre</b> , <i>on, upon, about</i> .	<b>tan pronto como</b> , <i>as soon as</i> .	
<b>sobretodo</b> , <i>m. overcoat</i> .	<b>tarde</b> , <i>f. afternoon</i> .	
<b>sociedad</b> , <i>f. society</i> .	<b>tarde</b> , <i>late</i> .	
<b>socorro</b> , <i>m. assistance</i> .	<b>Tartaria</b> , <i>f. Tartary</i> .	
<b>sol</b> , <i>m. sun</i> .	<b>té</b> , <i>m. tea</i> .	
<b>solamente</b> , <i>only</i> .	<b>teatro</b> , <i>m. theater</i> .	
<b>soler</b> , <i>2. to be in the habit</i> .	<b>Telémaco</b> , <i>Telemachus</i> .	
<b>solo</b> , <i>alone</i> .	<b>temblar</b> , <i>1. to tremble</i> .	
<b>sombrerero</b> , <i>m. hatter</i> .	<b>temer</b> , <i>2. to fear</i> .	
<b>sombrero</b> , <i>m. hat</i> .	<b>temor</b> , <i>m. fear</i> .	
<b>someter</b> , <i>2. to subdue</i> .	<b>temprano</b> , <i>early</i> .	
	<b>tener</b> , <i>2. to hold, to have</i> .	

**trueno**, m. *thunder.*  
**turbulento**, *boisterous.*

**U.**

**último**, *last.*  
**unos pocos**, *a few.*  
**uña**, f. *nail.*  
**urbanidad**, f. *urbanity.*  
**útil**, *useful.*

**V.**

**va**, *goes.*  
**vaca**, f. *cow.*  
**vacio**, *empty.*  
**valiente**, *brave.*  
**valer**, 2. *to be worth.*  
**valor**, m. *courage.*  
**vapor**, m. *steam, steamer.*  
**vara**, f. *yard.*  
**varios**, as, *several.*  
**vaso**, m. *glass (to drink in).*  
**¡va V.?** *are you going?*  
**ve**, *sees.*  
**vencer**, 2. *to conquer.*  
**vende**, *sells.*

**vender**, 2. *to sell.*  
**¡vende V.?** *do you sell?*  
**vendido**, *sold.*  
**vendo**, *I sell.*  
**veneno**, m. *poison.*  
**veo**, *I see.*  
**venir**, 3. *to come.*  
**ventajoso**, *profitable.*  
**ventana**, f. *window.*  
**ver**, 2. *to see.*  
**verdad**, f. *truth.*  
**verde**, *green.*  
**verso**, m. *verse.*  
**vestido**, m. *dress.*  
**vestidos**, m. pl. *clothes.*  
**vestir**, 3. *to dress.*  
**vestirse**, 3. *to dress.*  
**¡ve V.?** *do you see?*  
**vez**, f. *time.*  
**viajar**, 1. *to travel.*  
**viaje**, m. *journey.*  
**victoria**, f. *victory.*  
**vida**, f. *life.*  
**vidrio**, m. *glass.*  
**viejo**, *old.*  
**viene**, *comes.*  
**viento**, m. *wind.*

**vigilante**, *watchful.*  
**vino**, m. *wine.*  
**virtud**, f. *virtue.*  
**visitar**, 1. *to visit.*  
**visto**, *seen.*  
**vive**, *lives.*  
**vivir**, 3. *to live.*  
**volar**, 1. *to fly.*  
**volver**, 2. *to turn, to return.*  
**volver á hacer**, 2. *to do again.*  
**voy**, *I am going.*  
**vuelva V.**, *return.*

**Y.**

**y**, *and.*  
**ya**, *already.*  
**ya no**, *no longer.*  
**yerba**, f. *grass.*  
**yo sé**, *I know.*

**Z.**

**zapatero**, m. *shoemaker.*  
**zapato**, m. *shoe.*

## II. English-Spanish.

## A.

*absent, ausente.*  
*about, sobre, como.*  
*abundant, abundante.*  
*acceptable, aceptable.*  
*accident, accidente, m.*  
*to accompany, acompañar, 1.*  
*according to, segun.*  
*account, cuenta, f.*  
*to accuse, acusar, 1.*  
*to accustom, acostumbrar, 1.*  
*accustomed, acostumbrado, 1.*  
*to accustom one's self, habituarse, 1.*  
*acquaintance, conocido, m.*  
*are you acquainted with? conoce V.?*  
*I am acquainted with, conozco.*  
*to act, obrar, 1.*  
*action, accion, f.*  
*to add, añadir, 3.*  
*to adhere, adherir, 3.*  
*admiral, almirante, m.*  
*admitted, admitido.*  
*adventure, aventura, f.*  
*advice, consejo, m.*  
*to advise, aconsejar, 1.*  
*affable, afable.*  
*after, despues, despues de, despues que.*  
*afternoon, tarde, f.*

*afterward, despues.*  
*afterwards, despues.*  
*age, edad, f.*  
*agreeable, agradable.*  
*air, aire, m.*  
*all, todo.*  
*to allow, permitir, 3.*  
*alone, solo.*  
*already, ya.*  
*also, tambien.*  
*although, aunque.*  
*always, siempre.*  
*ambassador, embajador, m.*  
*American, Americano, m.*  
*to amuse, divertir, 3.*  
*to amuse one's self, divertirse, 3.*  
*and, y.*  
*angry, enfadado.*  
*animal, animal, m.*  
*to announce, anunciar, 1.*  
*another, otro.*  
*to answer, contestar, 1.*  
*responder, 2.*  
*ant, hormiga, f.*  
*any, alguno.*  
*anybody, alguien, alguno.*  
*any one, alguno.*  
*anything, algo.*  
*anywhere, alguna parte.*  
*to appeal, apelar, 1.*  
*to appear, comparecer, 2.*

*apple, manzana, f.*  
*to approach, acercarse, 1.*  
*to approve, aprobar, 1.*  
*Arab, Árabe, m.*  
*are, son.*  
*to arrange, arreglar, 1.*  
*army, ejército, m.*  
*to arrive, llegar, 1.*  
*arrived, llegado.*  
*arrives, llega.*  
*article, articulo, m.*  
*as, pues.*  
*as far, hasta.*  
*as far as, hasta.*  
*to ask, preguntar, 1.*  
*to ask for, pedir, 3.*  
*asks for, pide.*  
*assistance, socorro, m.*  
*as soon as, tan pronto como, luego que, asi que, al punto que.*  
*to assure, asegurar, 1.*  
*at (the house of), en casa.*  
*at home, en casa.*  
*to attack, atacar, 1.*  
*attention, atencion, f.*  
*attentive, atento.*  
*aunt, tia, f.*  
*author, autor, m.*  
*authorization, autorizacion, f.*  
*to authorize, autorizar, 1.*  
*to awake, despertarse, 1.*

## B.

bad, *malo*.  
 bag, *saco*, m.  
 baker, *panadero*, m.  
 to balance, *pesar*, 1.  
 ball, *baile*, m.  
 bank, *banco*, m.  
 banker, *banquero*, m.  
 to bathe, *bañarse*, 1.  
 battle, *batalla*, f.  
 to be, *estar*, 1. *ser*, 2.  
 bear, *oso*, m.  
 because, *porque*.  
 to become, *sentar*, 1.  
 bed, *cama*, f.  
 beef, *carne (f.) de vaca*, f.  
 beer, *cerveza*, f.  
 before, *delante*, *antes de*.  
 to begin, *echarse*, 1.  
 beginner, *principiante*, m.  
 to behave, *comportarse*, 2.  
 behavior, *comportamiento*, m.  
 to believe, *creer*, 2.  
 I believe, *creo*.  
 belongs, *pertenece*.  
 benefit, *beneficio*, m.  
 benevolent, *benéfico*.  
 to bet, *apostar*, 1.  
 between, *entre*.  
 billiard, *billar*, m.  
 bird, *pájaro*, m.  
 to bite, *morder*, 2.  
 bitter, *amargo*.  
 black, *negro*.  
 to bless, *bendecir*, 3.  
 blind, *ciego*.  
 blond, *rubio*.

blow (with a stick), *bastonazo*, m.  
 blue, *azul*.  
 to boast, *jactarse*, 1.  
 boisterous, *turbulento*.  
 book, *libro*, m.  
 boot, *bota*, f.  
 to be born, *nacer*, 2.  
 bottle, *botella*, f.  
 bought, *comprado*.  
 box, *caja*, f.  
 boy, *muchacho*, m.  
 brave, *valiente*.  
 bread, *pan*, m.  
 breakfast, *almuerzo*, m.  
 to breakfast, *almorzar*, 1.  
 bridge, *puente*, m.  
 bridle, *rienda*, f.  
 to bring, *traer*, 2.  
 bring, *traiga V.*  
 brother, *hermano*, m.  
 brought, *traido*.  
 to build, *construir*, 3.  
 to burn, *quemar*, 1.  
 to bury, *enterrar*, 1.  
 business, *negocio*, m.  
 asunto, m.  
 busy, *ocupado*.  
 but, *pero*, *sino*.  
 butcher, *carnicero*, m.  
 button, *botón*, m.  
 do you buy? *¿compra V.?*  
 I buy, *compro*.  
 by, *por*.

C.

cake, *bollo*, m.  
 to call, *llamar*, 1.

to be called, *llamarse*, 1.  
 can you? *¿puede V.?*  
 I can, *puedo*.  
 cane, *caña*, f. *baston*, m.  
 capital, *capital*, f.  
 captain, *capitan*, m.  
 Caroline, *Carolina*.  
 carpenter, *carpintero*, m.  
 cart, *carreta*, f.  
 case, *causa*, f.  
 cause, *causa*, f.  
 cavalry, *caballería*, f.  
 celebrated, *célebre*.  
 cellar, *bodega*, f.  
 to censure, *censurar*, 1.  
 cent, *centavo*, m.  
 ceremony, *funcion*, f.  
 certain, *cierto*.  
 certainly, *por cierto*.  
 chain, *cadena*, f.  
 chair, *silla*, f.  
 champagne, *champaña*, f.  
 chapter, *capítulo*, m.  
 to charge, *encargar*, 1.  
 charity, *caridad*, f.  
 Charles, *Carlos*.  
 cheap, *barato*.  
 cheese, *queso*, m.  
 cherry, *cereza*, f.  
 chicken, *pollo*, m. *gallina*, f.  
 child, *niño*, m.  
 cholera, *cólera*, m.  
 church, *iglesia*, f.  
 city, *ciudad*, f.  
 class, *clase*, f.  
 clean, *limpio*.  
 clear, *claro*.  
 clerk, *dependiente*, m.  
 climate, *clima*, m.

<i>closed, cerrado.</i>	<i>congress, congreso, m.</i>	<i>crime, crimen, m.</i>
<i>closet, armario, m.</i>	<i>to conquer, vencer, 2.</i>	<i>cross, cruz, f.</i>
<i>cloth, paño, m.</i>	<i>to consist, consistir, 3.</i>	<i>to cross over, atravesar, 1.</i>
<i>clothes, ropa, f. vestidos, m. pl.</i>	<i>to console, consolar, 1.</i>	<i>cruel, cruel.</i>
<i>coach, coche, m.</i>	<i>conspiracy, conjuracion, f.</i>	<i>to cry, llorar, 1. gritar, 1.</i>
<i>coal, carbon, m.</i>	<i>to construct, construir, 3.</i>	<i>culprit, reo, m.</i>
<i>coat, casaca, f.</i>	<i>to consult, consultar, 1.</i>	<i>to cut, cortar, 1.</i>
<i>Cæsar, Cesar.</i>	<i>consulted, consultado.</i>	<i>cut, cortado.</i>
<i>coffee, café, m.</i>	<i>to contain, contener, 2.</i>	
<i>cold, frio.</i>	<i>contains, contiene.</i>	
<i>college, colegio, m.</i>	<i>to continue, seguir, 3.</i>	<b>D.</b>
<i>Columbus, Colon.</i>	<i>continuar, 1.</i>	
<i>colonel, coronel, m.</i>	<i>contrary, contrario.</i>	<i>damp, húmedo.</i>
<i>to come, venir, 3.</i>	<i>on the contrary, al contrario.</i>	<i>to dance, bailar, 1.</i>
<i>to come down, bajar, 1.</i>	<i>to converse, conversar, 1.</i>	<i>I dance, bailo.</i>
<i>comedy, comedia, f.</i>	<i>to convince, convencer, 2.</i>	<i>dancing, danza, f.</i>
<i>to come from (to originate), provenir, 3.</i>	<i>cook, cocinero, m.</i>	<i>dangerous, peligroso.</i>
<i>comes, viene.</i>	<i>cook, cocinera, f</i>	<i>to dare, osar, 1.</i>
<i>comes out, sale.</i>	<i>cool, fresco.</i>	<i>dark, oscuro.</i>
<i>to comfort, consolar, 1.</i>	<i>to copy, copiar, 1.</i>	<i>daughter, hija, f.</i>
<i>companion, compañero, m.</i>	<i>copy-book, cuaderno, m.</i>	<i>day, dia, m.</i>
	<i>corner, rincon, m.</i>	<i>the day after to-morrow, pasado mañana.</i>
<i>to compare, componer, 2.</i>	<i>to cost, costar, 1.</i>	<i>deaf, sordo.</i>
<i>to compel, obligar, 1.</i>	<i>cotton, algodon, m.</i>	<i>dear, caro.</i>
<i>to compensate, reparar, 1.</i>	<i>count, conde, m.</i>	<i>death, muerte, f.</i>
<i>to complain, quejarse, 1.</i>	<i>to count, contar, 1.</i>	<i>debt, deuda, f.</i>
<i>conceited, presumido.</i>	<i>countess, condesa, f.</i>	<i>to deceive, engañar, 1.</i>
<i>concert, concierto, m.</i>	<i>country, patria, f. campo, m. pais, m.</i>	<i>to decide, decidir, 3.</i>
<i>concise, conciso.</i>	<i>courage, valor, m.</i>	<i>deep, profundo.</i>
<i>to conclude, concluir, 3.</i>	<i>of course, por supuesto.</i>	<i>to defeat, derrotar, 1.</i>
<i>to condemn, condenar, 1.</i>	<i>cousin, primo, m.</i>	<i>to defend, defender, 2.</i>
<i>condition, estado, m.</i>	<i>cousin, prima, f.</i>	<i>to delay, atrasar, 1.</i>
<i>conduct, conducta, f.</i>	<i>cow, vaca, f.</i>	<i>to depart, marcharse, 1.</i>
<i>to conduct, conducir, 3.</i>	<i>creator, creador, m.</i>	<i>to depict, pintar, 1.</i>
<i>to confess, confesar, 1.</i>	<i>credit, crédito, m.</i>	<i>deputy, diputado, m.</i>
<i>confagation, incendio, m.</i>	<i>on credit, á crédito.</i>	<i>dervis, dervis, m.</i>
	<i>crew, tripulacion, f.</i>	<i>to deserve, merecer, 2.</i>
<i>conformably, conforme.</i>		<i>to desire, desear, 1.</i>

<i>despised, despreciado.</i>	<i>down stairs, abajo.</i>	<i>to end, concluirse, 3.</i>
<i>to destroy, destruir, 3.</i>	<i>dozen, docena, f.</i>	<i>enemy, enemigo, m.</i>
<i>desuetude, desuso, m.</i>	<i>to draw, sacar, 1. dibujar, 1.</i>	<i>to engage, embarcar, 1.</i>
<i>to devastate, asolar, 1.</i>	<i>drawer, cajon, m.</i>	<i>England, Inglaterra, f.</i>
<i>to devote, dedicar, 1.</i>	<i>drawing, dibujo, m.</i>	<i>Englishman, Ingles, m.</i>
<i>to die, morir, 3.</i>	<i>dream, sueño, m.</i>	<i>enormous, enorme.</i>
<i>died, murió, muerto.</i>	<i>to dream, soñar, 1.</i>	<i>enough, bastante.</i>
<i>different, diferente.</i>	<i>dress, traje, m. vestido, m.</i>	<i>to enrich, enriquecer, 2.</i>
<i>difficult, dificil.</i>	<i>to dress, vestirse, 3.</i>	<i>to enter, entrar, 1.</i>
<i>difficulty, dificultad, f.</i>	<i>I drink, bebo.</i>	<i>to entreat, suplicar, 1.</i>
<i>to dine, comer, 2.</i>	<i>drop, gota, f.</i>	<i>entreaty, súplica, f.</i>
<i>do you dine? ¿come V.?</i>	<i>druggist, boticario, m.</i>	<i>to escape, escapar, 1.</i>
<i>we dine, comemos.</i>	<i>during, durante.</i>	<i>to establish, establecer, 2.</i>
<i>dining-room, comedor, m.</i>		<i>estate, hacienda, f.</i>
<i>dinner, comida, f.</i>		<i>eternal, eterno.</i>
<i>to direct, dirigir, 3.</i>		<i>Europe, Europa, f.</i>
<i>direction, señas, f. pl.</i>		<i>even, aún.</i>
<i>dirty, sucio.</i>		<i>ever, jamas.</i>
<i>to disband, licenciar, 1.</i>	<i>E.</i>	<i>everybody, todo el mundo.</i>
<i>discord, discordia, f.</i>	<i>each, cada.</i>	<i>everything, todo.</i>
<i>to discover, descubrir, 3.</i>	<i>eager, ansioso.</i>	<i>example, ejemplo, m.</i>
<i>disobedient, desobediente.</i>	<i>early, temprano.</i>	<i>to examine, examinar, 1.</i>
<i>to disobey, desobedecer, 2.</i>	<i>to earn, ganar, 1.</i>	<i>to exceed, esceder, 2.</i>
<i>to dispose, disponer, 2.</i>	<i>earns, gana.</i>	<i>excellent, excelente.</i>
<i>disposed, dispuesto.</i>	<i>earth, tierra, f.</i>	<i>except, excepto.</i>
<i>to dispute, disputar, 1.</i>	<i>earthquake, terremoto, m.</i>	<i>to exchange, cambiar, 1.</i>
<i>distinct, distinto.</i>	<i>easy, fácil.</i>	<i>to excuse, excusar, 1.</i>
<i>to distrust, desconfiar, 1.</i>	<i>to eat, comer, 2.</i>	<i>exempted, exento.</i>
<i>divinity, divinidad, f.</i>	<i>eaten, comido.</i>	<i>exit, salida, f.</i>
<i>to do, hacer, 2.</i>	<i>eating, comida, f.</i>	<i>to expect, esperar, 1.</i>
<i>do you do? ¿hace V.?</i>	<i>Edward, Eduardo.</i>	<i>aguardar, 1.</i>
<i>to do again, volver á hacer.</i>	<i>effeminate, femenil.</i>	<i>expense, costa, f. gasto, m.</i>
<i>dog, perro, m.</i>	<i>egg, huevo, m.</i>	<i>experience, experiencia, f.</i>
<i>doll, muñeca, f.</i>	<i>elegance, elegancia, f.</i>	<i>to explain, explicar, 1.</i>
<i>dollar, peso, m.</i>	<i>to elect, eligir, 3.</i>	<i>extinguisher, extinguidor, m.</i>
<i>done, hecho.</i>	<i>emperor, emperador, m.</i>	<i>eye, ojo, m.</i>
<i>door, puerta, f.</i>	<i>to employ, emplear, 1.</i>	
<i>to doubt, dudar, 1.</i>	<i>employment, empleo, m.</i>	
	<i>empty, vacío.</i>	
	<i>end, fin, m.</i>	

## F.

face, cara, f.  
to fail, faltar, 1.  
to faint, desmayarse, 1.  
fair, rubio.  
faith, fe, f.  
faithful, fiel.  
to fall, caer, 2. caerse, 2.  
to fall asleep, dormirse,  
    3.  
family, familia, f.  
fan, abanico, m.  
far, ljos.  
farmer, labrador, m.  
falsehood, mentira, f.  
to be fast, adelantar, 1.  
fate, suerte, f.  
father, padre, m.  
favor, favor, m.  
to favor, favorecer, 2.  
favorable, favorable.  
fear, temor, m.  
to fear, temer, 2.  
feast, fiesta.  
to feel, sentir, 3.  
fellow-scholar, condisci-  
    pulo, m.  
**Ferdinand, Fernando.**  
fever, fiebre, f.  
few, pocos.  
a few, unos pocos.  
fight, pelea, f.  
to fight, pelear, 1.  
filial, filial.  
to find, hallar, 1. encon-  
    trar, 1.  
fine, hermoso.  
finger, dedo, m.  
to finish, concluir, 3.  
    acabar, 1.

fire, fuego, m.  
first, primero.  
flower, flor, f.  
to fly, volar, 1.  
to follow, seguir, 3.  
follow, siguen.  
I am fond of, me gusta.  
foolish, tonto.  
foot, pie, m.  
on foot, a pie.  
for, para, pues.  
to forget, olvidar, 1.  
to forgive, perdonar, 1.  
to form, formar, 1.  
formerly, en tiempo pa-  
    sado.  
fortress, fortaleza, f.  
fortune, fortuna, f.  
found, hallado.  
to founder, echar a  
    pique.  
four, cuatro.  
fowl, gallina, f.  
**France, Francia, f.**  
to freeze, helar, 1.  
**Frenchman, Frances, m.**  
friend, amigo, m.  
friendly, amistoso.  
friendship, amistad, f.  
fruit, fruta, f.  
full, lleno.

## G.

Galileo, Galileo.  
garden, jardin, m.  
gardener, jardinero, m.  
gas, gas, m.  
generally, generalmente.  
generous, generoso.

genius, ingenio, m.  
gentleman, caballero, m.  
German, Aleman, m.  
Germany, Alemania, f.  
to get angry, enfadarse,  
    1.  
to get vexed, formalizarse, 1.  
girl, muchacha, f.  
to give, dar, 1.  
I give, doy.  
to give back, devolver, 2.  
give, de V.  
give me, dame V.  
given, dado.  
gives, da.  
glass, vidrio, m.  
glass (to drink in), vaso,  
    m.  
gloriously, gloriosa-  
    mente.  
glove, guante, m.  
to go, ir, 3. marchar, 1.  
to go away, irse, 3.  
God, Dios, m.  
godfather, padrino, m.  
godmother, madrina, f.  
goes, va.  
goes out, sale.  
are you going? i va V.?  
I am going, voy.  
gold, oro, m.  
good, bueno, bien.  
good by, adios.  
good day, buenos dias.  
good morning, buenos  
    dias.  
good night, buenas  
    noches.  
goods, mercancías, f. pl.  
to go out, salir, 3.

do you go out? *¿ sale  
V. ?*

to go to bed, *acostarse*, 1.

to govern, *gobernar*, 1.

government, *gobierno*, m.

to grant, *querer*, 2.

grandee, *grande*, m.

grass, *yerba*, f.

greatness, *grandeza*, f.

greedy, *codicioso*.

Greek, *griego*.

green, *verde*.

grief, *pesar*, m.

grocer, *pulpero*, m.

guilty, *culpado*.

gun, *fusil*, m.

**H.**

to be in the habit, *soler*, 2.

hair, *pelo*, m.

half, *mitad*, f.

ham, *jamon*, m.

hand, *mano*, f.

to hand, *entregar*, 1.

handkerchief, *pañuelo*, m.

handsome, *hermoso*.

to happen, *acontecer*, 2.

happy, *dichoso*, *feliz*.

hard, *penoso*.

hardly, *apenas*.

has, *tiene*.

hat, *sombrero*, m.

to hate, *odiar*, 1. *aborrecer*, 2.

hatter, *sombrerero*, m.

haughty, *soberbio*.

to have, *tener*, 2.  
have, *tienen*.

headache, *el dolor de cabeza*.

healthy, *salubre*.

to hear, *oir*, 3.

heaven, *cielo*, m.

heir, *heredero*, m.

to help, *ayudar*, 1.

Henry, *Enrique*.

her, *su*.

here, *aqui*.

here is, *aquí tiene V.*

hero, *héroe*, m.

high, *alto*.

his, *su*.

history, *historia*, f.

hogshead, *bocoy*, m.

to hold, *tener*, 2.

holiday, *dia festivo*.

holy day, *fiesta*, f.

at home, *en casa*.

homely, *feo*.

honest, *honrado*.

hope, *esperanza*, f.

to hope, *esperar*, 1.

horse, *caballo*, m.

on horseback, *á caballo*.

hotel, *hotel*, m. *fonda*, f.

hour, *hora*, f.

house, *casa*, f.

to the house, *á casa*.

how, *como*.

how much, *cuanto*.

however, *por mas... que*, *sin embargo*.

humanity, *humanidad*, f.

hunter, *cazador*, m.

hurricane, *huracan*, m.

husband, *marido*, m.

**I.**

idleness, *ociosidad*, f.

if, *si*.

ignorance, *ignorancia*, f.

ignorant, *ignorante*.

ill, *enfermo*, *malo*.

immediately, *en seguida*.

immovable, *inmóvil*.

impatient, *impaciente*.

important, *importante*.

impossible, *imposible*.

in, *en*.

incapable, *incapaz*.

inclined, *propenso*.

indifferent, *indiferente*.

indomitable, *indomable*.

to induce, *inducir*, 3.

industrious, *industriosos*.

inhabitant, *habitante*, m.

to inherit, *heredar*, 1.

inkstand, *tintero*, m.

inn, *posada*, f.

innocence, *inocencia*, f.

innocent, *inocente*.

to inquire, *preguntar*, 1.

insane, *loco*.

insolence, *insolencia*, f.

instant, *instante*, m.

to instruct, *instruir*, 3.

instrument, *instrumento*, m.

to intend, *pensar*, 1.

do you intend? *¿ piensa V. ?*

intelligent, *inteligente*.

intention, *intencion*, f.

interesting, *interesante*.

in this way, *de este modo*.

to interest, *interesar*, 1.  
intoxicated, *borracho*.

to introduce, *presentar*,  
1.

invitation, *invitacion*, f.

to invite, *convidar*, 1.

to invoke, *invocar*, 1.

iron, *hierro*, m.

is, *es*.

Isabella, *Isabel*.

island, *isla*, f.

Italy, *Italia*, f.

### J.

jeweller, *joyero*, m.

John, *Juan*.

journey, *viaje*, m.

judgment, *sentencia*, f.

to judge, *juzgar*, 1.

Julius, *Julio*.

to jump, *saltar*, 1.

June, *Junio*, m.

### K.

to keep, *guardar*, 1.

key, *llave*, f.

to kill, *matar*, 1.

kindness, *bondad*, f.

king, *rey*, m.

kingdom, *reino*, m.

kitchen, *cocina*, f.

knife, *cuchillo*, m.

to know, *conocer*, 2. sa-  
ber, 2. *reconocer*, 2.

do you know? *¿ sabe  
V.?* *¿ conoce V.?*

I know, *conozco*, *yo sé*.

known, *conocido*.

knows, *sabe*.

### L.

lamp, *lámpara*, f.

language, *idioma*, m.

*lengua*, f.

lane, *callejuela*, f.

last, *último*, *pasado*.

lasted, *durado*.

last night, *anoche*.

late, *tarde*.

Latin, *Latin*.

to laugh, *reir*, 3.

to laugh at, *burlarse*, 1.

laughs, *rie*.

law, *ley*, f.

lawsuit, *pleito*, m.

lawyer, *abogado*, m.

lazy, *haragan*.

lead, *plomo*, m.

league, *legua*, f.

to learn, *aprender*, 2.

learned, *aprendido*.

at least, *á lo menos*.

to leave, *salir*, 3. *salir*

*de*, *dejar*, 1. *alejarse*,

1. *partir*, 3.

leaves, *sale*.

leg, *pierna*, f.

lemonade, *limonada*, f.

to lend, *prestar*, 1.

lesson, *lección*, f.

to let, *alquilar*, 1.

letter, *carta*, f.

liberal, *liberal*.

liberality, *liberalidad*,  
f.

liberty, *libertad*, f.

library, *biblioteca*, f.

license, *licencia*, f.

life, *vida*, f.

light, *luz*, f.

to light, *encender*, 2.

do you like? *¿ le gusta  
á V.?*

I like, *me gusta*.

to limp, *cojear*, 1.

lion, *leon*, m.

list, *lista*, f.

to listen to, *escuchar*, 1.

little, *pequeño*, *chiquito*.

little, *poco*, adv.

to live, *vivir*, 3.

lively, *alegre*.

lives, *vive*.

to lock up, *encerrar*, 1.

lodging, *alojamiento*, m.

London, *Londres*.

long, *largo*.

long time, *mucho tiempo*.

to look at, *mirar*, 1.

to look for, *buscar*, 1.

to lose, *perder*, 2.

loss, *pérdida*, f.

lost, *perdido*.

loud, *alto*.

Louisa, *Luisa*.

love, *amor*, m.

to love, *amar*, 1.

do you love? *¿ ama V.?*

I love, *amo*.

loved, *amado*.

low, *bajo*, *comun*.

luck, *dicha*, f.

### M.

madam, *señora*.

mahogany, *caoba*, f.

mail, *correo*, m.

to make, *hacer*, 2.

to make a mistake,  
*equivocarse*, 1.

<b>manner, costumbre, f.</b>	<b>money, dinero, m.</b>	<b>neck, pescuezo, m.</b>
<b>manufacturer, fabri-</b>	<b>month, mes, m.</b>	<b>to need, necesitar, 1.</b>
<b>cante.</b>	<b>monument, monumento,</b>	<b>do you need? ¿necesita-</b>
<b>man, hombre, m.</b>	<b>m.</b>	<b>V.?</b>
<b>to manage, gobernar, 1.</b>	<b>moon, luna, f.</b>	<b>I need, necesito.</b>
<b>to manufacture, fabri-</b>	<b>Moor, moro, m.</b>	<b>needs, necesita.</b>
<b>car, 1.</b>	<b>more, mas.</b>	<b>neither, tampoco, ni.</b>
<b>many, muchos, muchas.</b>	<b>morning, mañana, f.</b>	<b>never, nunca, jamas.</b>
<b>maple, arce, m.</b>	<b>the most, la mayor</b>	<b>new, nuevo.</b>
<b>march, marcha, f.</b>	<b>parte.</b>	<b>news, noticia, f.</b>
<b>to march, marchar, 1.</b>	<b>mother, madre, f.</b>	<b>newspaper, periodico, m.</b>
<b>to marry, casar, 1. ca-</b>	<b>motive, motivo, m.</b>	<b>next, proximo.</b>
<b>sarse, 1.</b>	<b>to mount, montar, 1.</b>	<b>next week, la semana</b>
<b>mask, máscara, f.</b>	<b>mountain, monte, m.</b>	<b>que viene.</b>
<b>mason, albañil, m.</b>	<b>mouse, raton, m.</b>	<b>night, noche, f.</b>
<b>master, amo, m.</b>	<b>mouth, boca, f.</b>	<b>no, no, ninguno.</b>
<b>matter, asunto, m.</b>	<b>to move, mover, 2.</b>	<b>nobody, nadie.</b>
<b>matter of importance,</b>	<b>movement, movimiento,</b>	<b>noise, ruido, m.</b>
<b>cosa, f.</b>	<b>m.</b>	<b>no longer, ya no.</b>
<b>maxim, máxima, f. sen-</b>	<b>Mr., Señor,</b>	<b>no...more, no...mas.</b>
<b>tencia, f.</b>	<b>Mrs., Señora.</b>	<b>none, ninguno.</b>
<b>means, medio, m.</b>	<b>much, mucho, mucha.</b>	<b>no one, nadie.</b>
<b>to measure, medir, 3.</b>	<b>mud, lodo, m.</b>	<b>nor, ni.</b>
<b>meat, carne, f.</b>	<b>music, música, f.</b>	<b>north, norte, m.</b>
<b>to meet, encontrar, 1.</b>	<b>must, deber, 2.</b>	<b>no sooner, apénas.</b>
<b>memory, memoria, f.</b>	<b>my, mi.</b>	<b>not any, ninguno.</b>
<b>merchant, comerciante,</b>		<b>not anybody, nadie.</b>
<b>m. mercader, m.</b>		<b>not anything, nada.</b>
<b>merit, merito, m.</b>	<b>N.</b>	<b>not either, tampoco.</b>
<b>mile, milla, f.</b>	<b>nail, uña, f.</b>	<b>nothing, nada.</b>
<b>military, militar.</b>	<b>name, nombre, m.</b>	<b>novel, novela, f.</b>
<b>milk, leche, f.</b>	<b>nation, nacion, f.</b>	<b>now, ahora.</b>
<b>mine, mina, f.</b>	<b>natural, natural.</b>	<b>number, número, m.</b>
<b>minute, minuto, m.</b>	<b>navigation, navegacion,</b>	<b>nut, nuez, f.</b>
<b>mirror, espejo, m.</b>	<b>f.</b>	
<b>miser, avaro, m.</b>	<b>near, cerca.</b>	
<b>misery, miseria, f.</b>	<b>nearly, cerca de.</b>	<b>O.</b>
<b>misfortune, desgracia, f.</b>	<b>necessary, preciso, me-</b>	
<b>mistake, equivocacion, f.</b>	<b>nester, necesario.</b>	
<b>mob, populacho, m.</b>	<b>necessity, necesidad, f.</b>	
<b>moment, momento, m.</b>	<b>by necessity, por pre-</b>	
	<b>cision.</b>	

obstinate, <i>porfiado</i> .	painting, <i>pintura</i> , f.	polite, <i>cortés, comedido</i> .
to obtain, <i>obtener</i> , 2. conseguir, 3.	palace, <i>palacio</i> , m.	Pompey, <i>Pompeyo</i> .
occasion, <i>ocasión</i> , f.	paper, <i>papel</i> , m.	poor, <i>pobre</i> .
to occupy, <i>ocupar</i> , 1. of, de.	parents, <i>padres</i> , m. pl.	port, <i>puerto</i> , m.
to offend, <i>ofender</i> , 2.	park, <i>parque</i> , m.	possession, <i>posesion</i> , f.
to offer, <i>ofrecer</i> , 2. su- ministrar, 1.	part, <i>parte</i> , f.	possible, <i> posible</i> .
officer, <i>oficial</i> , m.	to pass, <i>pasar</i> , 1.	post, <i>correo</i> , m.
office, <i>escritorio</i> , m.	past, <i>pasado</i> .	posterity, <i>posteridad</i> , f.
often, <i>a menudo</i> .	paternal, <i>paternal</i> .	postman, <i>cartero</i> , m.
oil, <i>aceite</i> , m.	patience, <i>paciencia</i> , f.	post-office, <i>correo</i> , m.
old, <i>viejo</i> .	patient (sick person), <i>enfermo</i> , m.	pound, <i>libra</i> , f.
on, <i>sobre</i> .	to pay, <i>pagar</i> , 1.	power, <i>poder</i> , m.
only, <i>solamente</i> .	peace, <i>paz</i> , f.	powerful, <i>poderoso</i> .
to open, <i>abrir</i> , 3.	pear, <i>pera</i> , f.	to practise, <i>practicar</i> , 1.
opened, <i>abierto</i> .	to peel, <i>descascarar</i> , 1.	praise, <i>alabanza</i> , f.
opinion, <i>opinión</i> , f. con- cepto, m.	pencil, <i>lápiz</i> , m.	to praise, <i>alabar</i> , 1.
orange, <i>naranja</i> , f.	penknife, <i>cortaplumas</i> , m.	precept, <i>prcecepto</i> , m.
to order, <i>mandar</i> , 1.	people, <i>gente</i> , f.	to prefer, <i>preferir</i> , 3.
ordinary, <i>común</i> .	to people, <i> poblar</i> , 1.	to prepare, <i>preparar</i> , 1.
other, <i>otro</i> .	perhaps, <i>acaso, tal vez</i> .	prerogative, <i>preroga- tiva</i> , f.
ounce, <i>onzá</i> , f.	person, <i>persona</i> , f.	to prescribe, <i>prescribir</i> , 3.
out, <i>afuera</i> .	Peter, <i>Pedro</i> .	to present, <i>presentar</i> , 1.
outcry, <i>grito</i> , m.	Philip, <i>Felipe</i> .	press, <i>imprenta</i> , f.
overcoat, <i>sobretodo</i> , m.	physician, <i>médico</i> , m.	to pretend, <i>pretender</i> , 2.
to overwhelm, <i>colmar</i> , 1.	picture, <i>retrato</i> , m. cuau- dro.	pretty, <i>bonito</i> .
to owe, <i>deber</i> , 2.	piece, <i>pieza</i> , f. pedazo, m.	price, <i>precio</i> , m.
I owe, <i>debo</i> .	pink, <i>clavel</i> , m.	prince, <i>príncipe</i> , m.
owes, <i>debe</i> .	pious, <i>pió</i> .	principle, <i>principio</i> , m.
owner, <i>dueño</i> , m.	place, <i>lugar</i> , m.	prison, <i>careel</i> , f.
ox, <i>buey</i> , m.	plant, <i>planta</i> , f.	prisoner, <i>prisionero</i> , m.
P.		
package, <i>paquete</i> , m.	to play, <i>jugar</i> , 1. repre- sentar, 1.	privilege, <i>privilegio</i> , m.
page, <i>página</i> , f.	to play on, <i>tocar</i> , 1.	probable, <i>probable</i> .
painful, <i>penoso</i> .	to please, <i>complacer</i> , 2.	probably, <i>probablemente</i> .
	pleased, <i>contento</i> .	procession, <i>procesión</i> , f.
	pleasure, <i>gusto</i> , m.	professor, <i>profesor</i> .
	poison, <i>veneno</i> , m.	profitable, <i>ventajoso</i> .

<i>proof, prueba, f.</i>	<i>recompense, recompensa, f.</i>	<i>to rot, podrir, 3.</i>
<i>to be proper, convenir, 3.</i>	<i>red, colorado, encendido.</i>	<i>rudeness, groseria, f.</i>
<i>property, propiedad. f.</i>	<i>to re-establish, restablecer, 2.</i>	<i>ruin, ruina, f.</i>
<i>propitious, propicio.</i>	<i>refreshment, refresco, m.</i>	<i>to ruin, arruinar, 1.</i>
<i>to propose, proponer, 2.</i>	<i>regiment, regimiento, m.</i>	<i>to run, correr, 2.</i>
<i>proud, orgulloso.</i>	<i>to regret, sentir, 3.</i>	<i>Russia, Rusia.</i>
<i>to prove, probar, 1.</i>	<i>to reign, reinar, 1.</i>	<i>Russian, Ruso.</i>
<i>provided, con tal que.</i>	<i>to rejoice, alegrarse, 1.</i>	
<i>public, público.</i>	<i>to relate, referir, 3.</i>	<b>S.</b>
<i>pulled down, demolido.</i>	<i>to remain, quedarse, 1.</i>	
<i>to punish, castigar, 1.</i>	<i>to remember, acordarse, 1.</i>	
<i>pupil, discípulo, m.</i>	<i>to remove, apartar, 1.</i>	
<i>to put on, ponerse, 2.</i>	<i>to repeat, repetir, 3.</i>	
<i>put, puesto.</i>	<i>to repent, arrepentirse, 3.</i>	
<b>Q.</b>		
<i>queen, reina, f.</i>	<i>to repress, reprimir, 3.</i>	
<i>question, pregunta, f.</i>	<i>to reside, residir, 3.</i>	
<i>quick, ligero.</i>	<i>to resolve, resolver, 2.</i>	
<i>quickly, pronto.</i>	<i>to rest, descansar, 1.</i>	
<i>quiet, quieto.</i>	<i>to respect, respetar, 1.</i>	
	<i>to result, provenir, 3.</i>	
	<i>to return, volver, 2. de-volver, 2.</i>	
	<i>return, vuelva V.</i>	
	<i>to revolt, sublevar, 1.</i>	
	<i>rich, rico.</i>	
	<i>a very rich man, rica-chon, m.</i>	
	<i>right, derecho.</i>	
	<i>ripe, maduro.</i>	
	<i>to rise, levantarse, 1.</i>	
	<i>river, rio, m.</i>	
	<i>road, camino, m.</i>	
	<i>rogue, pícaro, m.</i>	
	<i>Roman, Romano, m.</i>	
	<i>Romulus, Rómulo.</i>	
	<i>room, cuarto, m.</i>	
	<i>rose, rosa, f.</i>	
<b>R.</b>		
<i>railroad, ferro carril, m.</i>		
<i>rain, lluvia, f.</i>		
<i>to rain, llover, 2.</i>		
<i>rare, raro.</i>		
<i>rather, algo.</i>		
<i>to read, leer, 2.</i>		
<i>read, leído.</i>		
<i>ready, listo.</i>		
<i>reason, razon, f.</i>		
<i>to receive, recibir, 3.</i>		
<i>received, recibido.</i>		
<i>to recommend, recomen-dar, 1.</i>		

do you sell? <i>¿vende V.?</i>	situation, <i>empleo</i> , m.	speaks, <i>habla</i> .
I sell, <i>vendo</i> .	colocacion, f.	species, <i>especie</i> , f.
sells, <i>vende</i> .	skilful, <i>hábil</i> .	speculation, <i>especulacion</i> , f.
to send, <i>mandar</i> , 1. en- viar, 1.	slate, <i>pizarra</i> , f.	to spend, <i>gastar</i> , 1.
send, <i>mande V.</i>	to sleep, <i>dormir</i> , 3.	spends, <i>gasta</i> .
sent, <i>enviado</i> .	sleigh, <i>trineo</i> , m.	splendid, <i>magnifico</i> .
servant, <i>criado</i> , m.	slowly, <i>despacio</i> .	spoken, <i>hablado</i> .
servant-girl, <i>criada</i> , f.	small, <i>pequeño</i> .	spot, <i>lugar</i> , m.
served, <i>servido</i> .	smell, <i>olor</i> , m.	spring, <i>primavera</i> , f.
service, <i>servicio</i> , m.	snow, <i>nieve</i> , f.	squadron, <i>escuadra</i> , f.
several, <i>varios</i> , m. va- rias, f.	so, <i>así</i> , <i>tan</i> .	stab (with a poniard), <i>puñalada</i> , f.
to shave, <i>afeitar</i> , 1.	society, <i>sociedad</i> , f.	stable, <i>caballeriza</i> , f.
sheet, <i>sábana</i> , f.	sold, <i>vendido</i> .	to stand, <i>pararse</i> , 1.
shilling, <i>real</i> , m.	some, <i>alguno</i> .	standing, <i>parado</i> .
ship, <i>buque</i> , m.	somebody, <i>alguien</i> , <i>al-</i> <i>guno</i> .	star, <i>estrella</i> , f.
shirt, <i>camisa</i> , f.	some one, <i>alguno</i> .	state, <i>estado</i> , m.
shoe, <i>zapato</i> , m.	something, <i>algo</i> .	statue, <i>estatua</i> , f.
shoemaker, <i>zapatero</i> , m.	something else, <i>otra</i> <i>cosa</i> .	to steal, <i>robar</i> , 1.
to shoot, <i>afusilar</i> , 1.	sometimes, <i>algunas</i> <i>veces</i> .	steam, <i>vapor</i> , m.
shop, <i>tienda</i> , f.	somewhere, <i>alguna</i> <i>parte</i> .	steamer, <i>vapor</i> , m.
short, <i>corto</i> .	son, <i>hijo</i> , m.	stocking, <i>media</i> , f.
to show, <i>mostrar</i> , 1.	song, <i>cancion</i> , f.	store, <i>almacen</i> , m.
to shut, <i>cerrar</i> , 1.	soon, <i>pronto</i> .	stranger, <i>estrangero</i> , m.
shut, <i>cerrado</i> .	I am sorry for it, <i>lo</i> <i>siento</i> .	strawberry, <i>fresa</i> , f.
sick, <i>enfermo</i> .	so that, <i>así que</i> .	street, <i>calle</i> , f.
side, <i>lado</i> , m.	soup, <i>sopa</i> , f.	strength, <i>fuerza</i> , f.
silent, <i>callado</i> .	sour, <i>agrio</i> .	to strike, <i>pegar</i> , 1.
silk, <i>seda</i> , f.	to sow, <i>sembrar</i> , 1.	strong, <i>fuerte</i> .
silly, <i>tonto</i> .	Spain, <i>España</i> , f.	student, <i>estudiante</i> , m.
silver, <i>plata</i> , f.	Spaniard, <i>Español</i> , m.	studied, <i>estudiado</i> .
since, <i>desde</i> , <i>desde que</i> .	Spanish, <i>español</i> .	studious, <i>estudiooso</i> .
to sing, <i>cantar</i> , 1.	do you speak?	study, <i>estudio</i> , m.
singer, <i>cantatriz</i> , f.	<i>¿habla V.?</i> sing.	to study, <i>estudiar</i> , 1.
singing, <i>canto</i> , m.	<i>¿hablan V.V.?</i> pl.	do you study? <i>¿estudian</i> <i>V. V.?</i>
sings, <i>canta</i> .	I speak, <i>hablo</i> .	we study, <i>estudiamos</i> .
singular, <i>singular</i> .	they speak, <i>hablan</i> .	to subdue, <i>someter</i> , 2.
Sir, <i>señor</i> .		suburbs, <i>contornos</i> , m.
sister, <i>hermana</i> , f.		pl.
to sit down, <i>sentarse</i> , 1.		

such as, *tal*.  
 suddenly, *de repente*.  
 to suffer, *padecer*, 2.  
 to suffocate, *sufocar*, 1.  
 sugar, *azúcar*, m.  
 sun, *sol*, m.  
 sunshade, *quitasol*, m.  
 supper, *cena*, f.  
 to support, *mantener*, 2.  
 to suppose, *suponer*, 2.  
 supreme, *supremo*.  
 sure, *seguro*.  
 surprised, *sorprendido*.  
 to surrender, *rendirse*, 3.  
 to suspend, *suspender*, 2.  
 sweet, *dulce*.  
 swollen, *hinchado*.

## T.

table, *mesa*, f.  
 tailor, *sastre*, m.  
 to take, *tomar*, 1. *llevar*, 1. *conducir*, 3.  
 to take a walk, *dar un paseo*, *pasearse*, 1.  
 to take interest, *interesarse*, 1.  
 to take off, *quitarse*, 1.  
 to take possession, *apoderarse*, 1.  
 tale, *cuento*, m.  
 talent, *talento*, m.  
 tall, *alto*.  
 Tartary, *Tartaria*, f.  
 tea, *té*, m.  
 teacher, *maestro*, m.  
 teaches, *enseña*.

tear, *lágrima*, f.  
 Telemachus, *Telémaco*.  
 to tell, *decir*, 3.  
 tell, *diga V.*  
 tells, *dice*.  
 thankful, *agradecido*.  
 thank you, *gracias*.  
 I (or we) thank you, *muchas gracias*.  
 that, *aquellos*, *eso*.  
 that thing, *aquello*.  
 theatre, *teatro*, m.  
 then, *después*.  
 theological, *teológico*.  
 theoretical, *teórico*.  
 there, *ahí*. *alli*.  
 therefore, *así*.  
 there is, *hay*.  
 thief, *ladron*, m.  
 thing, *cosa*, f.  
 to think, *pensar*, 1.  
 this, *esto*.  
 this thing, *esto*.  
 three, *tres*.  
 through, *por*.  
 thunder, *trueno*, m.  
 thus, *así*.  
 tiger, *tigre*, m.  
 till, *hasta*.  
 time, *tiempo*, m. *hora*, f. *vez*, f.  
 timid, *timido*.  
 tired, *cansado*.  
 to-day, *hoy*.  
 together, *junto*.  
 to-morrow, *mañana*.  
 too, *demasiado*, *tambien*.  
 too many, *demasiados*.  
 too much, *demasiado*.  
 tooth, *diente*, m.  
 tower, *torre*, f.

town, *pueblo*, m.  
 to translate, *traducir*, 3.  
 translation, *traducción*, f.  
 transparent, *trasparente*.  
 to travel, *viajar*, 1.  
 to treat, *tratar*, 1.  
 tree, *árbol*, m.  
 to tremble, *temblar*, 1.  
 trifile, *bagatela*, f. *friolera*, f.  
 trimmed, *bordado*.  
 to trouble, *molestar*, 1.  
 trunk, *baul*, m.  
 truth, *verdad*, f.  
 turkey, *pavo*, m.  
 to turn, *move*, 2. *volver*, 2.  
 two, *dos*.

## U.

ugly, *feo*.  
 umbrella, *paraguas*, m.  
 uncle, *tío*, m.  
 under, *bajo*.  
 to understand, *entender*, 2. *comprender*. 2.  
 unfortunate, *desgraciado*.  
 unfortunately, *por desgracia*.  
 unhappy, *infeliz*.  
 unless, *á menos que*.  
 until, *hasta*, *hasta que*.  
 unwell, *malo*.  
 unworthy, *indigno*.  
 upon, *sobre*.  
 to upset, *derribar*, 1.  
 up stairs, *arriba*.

**urbanity, urbanidad, f.**  
**us, nosotros.**  
**useful, útil.**  
**useless, inútil.**

**V.**

**vegetable, legumbre, f.**  
**verse, verso, m.**  
**very, muy, mismo.**  
**vessel, buque, m. barco, m.**  
**vest, cha'eco, m.**  
**victory, victoria, f.**  
**village, pueblo, m. aldea, f.**  
**virtue, virtud, f.**  
**to visit, visitar, 1.**  
**volume, tomo, m.**

**W.**

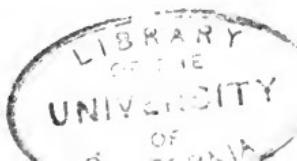
**to wait, esperar, 1.**  
*aguardar, 1.*  
**walk, paseo, m.**  
**to walk, andar, 1.**  
**walking-stick, bastón, m.**  
**wall, muro, m.**  
**war, guerra, f.**  
**warm, caliente.**  
**to warm, calentar, 1.**  
**was, éra.**  
**to wash, lavar, 1.**

**washerwoman, lavandera, f.**  
**watchful, vigilante.**  
**water, agua, f.**  
**way, modo, m. medio.**  
**weak, débil.**  
**week, semana, f.**  
**to weep, llorar, 1.**  
**weeps, llora.**  
**well, pozo, m.**  
**well, bien, pues, bueno.**  
**what, qué.**  
**when, cuando, qué.**  
**where, donde.**  
**which, qué.**  
**white, blanco.**  
**who, quien.**  
**whom, quien.**  
**whose? ¿ de quien?**  
**why? ¿ porqué?**  
**wife, mujer, f.**  
**will find, encontrará.**  
**I will have, quiero.**  
**William, Guillermo.**  
**will you have? ¿ quiere V.?**  
**wind, viento, m.**  
**window, ventana, f.**  
**wine, vino, m.**  
**winter, invierno, m.**  
**wise, sabio.**  
**wisely, sabiamente.**  
**wish, quieren.**  
**do you wish? ¿ quiere V.?**  
**I wish, quiero.**

**we wish, deseamos.**  
**wishes, quiere, desea.**  
**with, con.**  
**within, dentro de.**  
**with me, conmigo.**  
**without, afuera, sin.**  
**woman, mujer, f.**  
**wood, bosque, m. leña, f.**  
**word, palabra, f.**  
**work, trabajo, m. obra, f.**  
**to work, trabajar, 1.**  
**workman, obrero, m.**  
**works, trabaja.**  
**world, mundo, m.**  
**to be worth, valer, 2.**  
**worthy, digno.**  
**would to God! Ojalá!**  
**wounded, herido.**  
**to write, escribir, 3.**  
**do you write? ¿ escribe V.?**  
**I write, escribo.**  
**writes, escribe.**  
**writing, escritura, f.**  
**written, escrito.**

**Y.**

**yard, patio, m. vara, f.**  
**year, año, m.**  
**yes, si.**  
**yesterday, ayer.**  
**yet, todavía, aún.**  
**young, jóven.**  
**youth, juventud, f.**



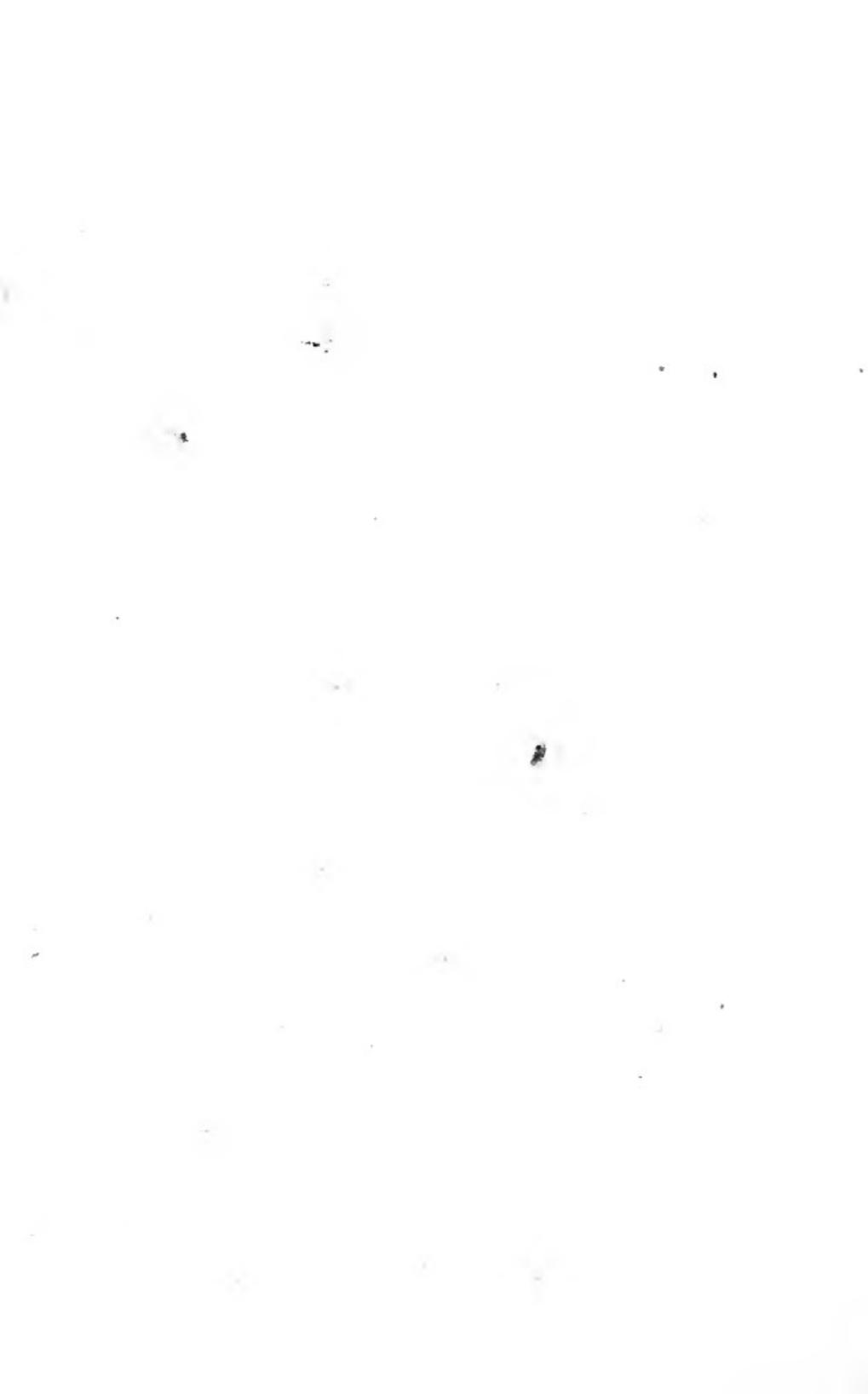


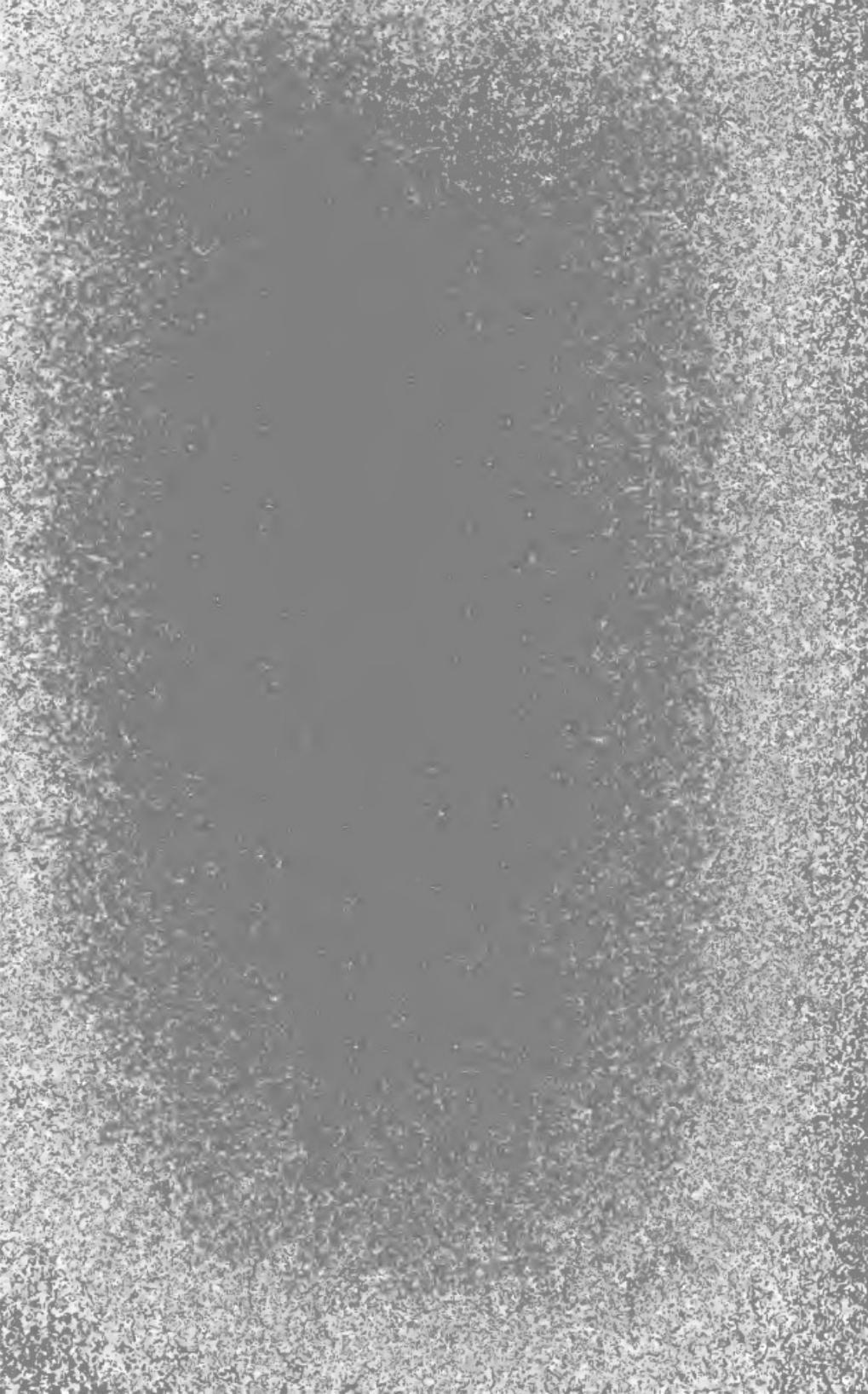


De esta segunda edición de "Las Tardes", (depurada ligeramente en la forma), se han tirado diez ejemplares sobre papel de hilo Calpe-Ledger numerados del 1 al 10 y firmados por el autor.

Terminóse de imprimir en los talleres gráficos Porter Hermanos, para la editorial "Babel", el 31 de Diciembre de 1927.

La justificación del tiraje que dibujara Guillermo Korn para la circulación inicial, auténtica, asimismo, los ejemplares de la presente edición.









THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

**AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS**

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

**ICLF (N)**

MAY 24 1938

MAY 4 1939

FEB 17 1941 M

MAR 3 1941 M

SEP 18 1945

MAR 30 1945

OCT 14 1945

OCT 14 1948

REC'D

SEP 6 '67 - 2 PM

LOAN DEPT.

JUL 12 1990

YR 00986

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C003325372

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

